Lucent's

General Knowledge

GK

Lucent's

General Knowledge

downloaded from: shashidthakur23.blog.com

GK

CONTENTS

1. **Indian History** 1–126

I. ANCIENT INDIA : 1. Harappan/Indus Civilization 2. Vedic Culture 3.I. Mahajanapada Period 3.II. Religious Movements 4. Maurya Period 5.I. Post-Maurya/Pre-Gupta Period 5.II. The Sangam Period 6. Gupta Period 7. Post-Gupta Period/Vardhana Dynasty. II. MEDIEVAL INDIA : 8. Early-Medieval Period I. North India (Rajputa Period) II. South India (Cholas & Others) 9. Sultanate Period I. The Delhi Sultanate II. Vijayanagar & Other Kingdoms 10. Religious Movements I. Bhakti Movement II. Sufi Movement 11. Mughal Period 12. Maratha State & Maratha Confederacy 13. The Advent of the Europeans. III. MODERN INDIA : 14. Expansion of British Power (In the context of Bengal, Mysore, Punjab etc.) 15. Economic Impact of British Rule 16. Socio-Religious Movements in 19th-20th Centuries 17. Freedom Struggle I. The Revolt of 1857 II. Moderate Phase III. Extremist Phase IV. The Gandhian Era IV. MISCELLANEOUS : Important Dates, Places, Foreign Travellers/Envoys, Abbreviated or Alternative Names, Sayings, Battles, Reforms/Acts, Committees/Commissions, Congress Session and Governor-Generals & Viceroys.

2. **World History** 127–156

I. ANCIENT WORLD : Mesopotamian Civilization, Egyptian Civilization, Harappan Civilization, Chinese Civilization, Iranian Civilization, Greek Civilization, Roman Civilization, Seven Wonders of Ancient World. II.MEDIEVAL WORLD : Medieval Europe (Feudalism, Crusades), Arab Civilization, Medieval China, Medieval Japan, Seven Wonders of Medieval World. III. MODERN WORLD : Renaissance, Reformation,Geographical Discoveries, Glorious Revolution, Industrial Revolution, American Revolution, French Revolution, Unification of Italy, Unification of Germany, First World War, Russian Revolution, Chinese Revolution, Turkish Revolution, World Depression of 1929-34, Fascism in Italy, Nazism in Germany, Militarism in Japan, Second World War. IV. MISCELLANEOUS : Important Dates, Association of places, Abbreviated or Alternative Names, Important Battles.

3. **Geography** 157–238

The Solar System, Continents and Oceans, Biosphere, Lithosphere, Hydrosphere, Atmosphere, Latitudes and Longitudes, Different heat zones of the earth, Longitudes and time zones, International Date Line, Motion of the earth, Effect of the tilted axis on day and night, the Atmosphere (composition and layer of the Atmosphere), Weather and Climate, Atmospheric Pressure, Internal Structure of the earth, Rocks, Earthquakes and Volcanoes, Various Landforms (Mountains, Plateaus, Plains, Grasslands, Landforms created by the river system, Landforms created by glacier, Landforms created by the action of wind, Landforms created by the actions of Groundwater), The Indian Sub continent; Position, extent and physical features, Climatic diversity in the Indian Sub-continent, Soil resources of the Indian sub-continent, Agriculture in India, Land use pattern of India, Water resources and their utilization in India, Multipurpose river valley projects, Transport in India, India-Facts and figures (States and their capitals, Population of India and states, Wildlife sanctuaries and national parks in India, Important Irrigation and power projects, Indian satellites : at a glance), General introduction to Asia, Geography of the Indian subcontinent, Countries with their capitals and currency, River side cities, Wonders of the world, Countries and their main produces and industries, Towns associated with some important industries, Famous sites (India), Famous Sites (World), Changed names, Continents earth area, Continents highest and lowest points, Three deepest oceans, Highest mountain peaks (world), Geographical epithets, Important boundary lines, Tribes and their homelands, Glossary

4. **Indian Polity and Constitution** 239–318

1. Evolution of Indian Constitution, 2. Constituent Assembly and Making of the Constitution 3. Different Sources of the Indian Constitution 4. Important Articles of the Constitution 5. Important Amendments of the Constitution 6. Some Special features of the Indian Constitution. 7. Federal and Unitary features of the Indian Union 8. The preamble 9. Lapse of Paramountcy 10. Integration and Merger of Indian States 11. The Union and its Territories 12. Reorganization of States 13. Citizenship 14. Fundamental Rights 15. Directive Principles of State Policy 16. Fundamental Duties 17. Procedure of Amending the Constitution 18. Executive of the Union 19. The Parliament of India 20. Executive of the States 21. Special Position of J & K 22. Panchayats 23. Municipalities 24. The Supreme Court 25. The High Court 26. Inter-State Council 27. Finance Commission 28. Planning Commission 29. National Development Council 30. National Integration Council 31. Inter-State Relations 32. Emergency Provisions 33. Public Service Commissions 34. Election 35. Delimitation Commission of India 36. The Official Languages 37. National Symbols 38. Glossary of Constitutional Terms

5. **Indian Economy** 319–400

1. Highlights of Indian Economy 2. Economy and Economics 3. Characteristics of Indian Economy 4. Agriculture & Land Development 5. National Income 6. Planning 7. Unemployment 8. Trade & Commerce 9. New Economic Policy 10. Indian Financial System 11. Indian Fiscal System 12. Banking in India 13. Tax System 14. Industry 15. Foreign Trade 16. Miscellaneous Facts 17. Glossary of Economic and Financial Terms 18. Some Noteworthy Facts ★ Appendix-1 Highlights of Economic Survey 2014-15, ★ Appendix-2 Socio Economic and Caste Census 2011

6. **Physics** 401–450

1. Unit 2. Motion 3. Work, Energy and Power 4. Gravitation 5. Pressure 6. Floatation 7. Surface Tension 8. Viscosity 9. Elasticity 10. Simple Harmonic Motion 11. Wave 12. Sound Wave 13. Heat 14. Light 15. Static Electricity 16. Current Electricity 17. Magnetism 18. Atomic & Nuclear Physics 19. Electronics 20. Scientific Instruments 21. Inventions 22. Important Discoveries Relating to Physics 23. Various Units of Measurement-Weight 24. Conversion of Units from one System to another System

7. **Chemistry** 451–496
1.Substance&itsnature2.AtomicStructure3.PeriodicClassificationofElements 4.ChemicalBonding5.Oxidation&Reduction6.Acids,Bases&Salts7.Behaviour of Gases 8. Electrolysis 9. Carbon & its Compounds 10. Fuels 11. Metallurgy 12. Important Facts About Some Metals 13. Non-Metals 14. Common Facts

8. **Biology** 497–558
1. Introduction 2. Classification of Organism 3. Cytology 4. Genetics 5. Organic Evolution. Botany : 1. Classification of Plant Kingdom 2. Plant Morphology 3. Plant Tissue 4. Photo-synthesis 5. Plant Harmones 6. Plant Diseases 7. Ecology 8. Pollution. Zoology : 1. Classification of Animal Kingdom 2. Animal Tissue 3. Human Blood 4. System of Human Body 5. Nutrients 6. Human Diseases 7. Miscellaneous.

9. **Miscellany** 559–630
1. Firsts in India (Male) 2. Firsts in India (Female) 3. Firsts in World (Male & Female) 4. Superlatives - India 5. Superlatives - World 6. Important Monuments 7. International Boundaries 8. National Emblems 9. National Animals 10. News Agencies 11. Map Lines 12. Political Parties 13. Intelligence Agencies 14. Parliaments 15. Important Signs/Symbols 16. Official Books 17. Newspapers 18. UNO 19. World Organisations 20. UN Secretary Generals 21. International Decades 22. International Years 23. SAARC Years 24. International Weeks 25. Important Days (India & World) 26. India's World Heritage Sites 27. Famous Tourist Spots of India 28. Defence of India 29. Internal Security of India 30. Defence Training Institutions 31. Foundation Day of Some States 32. Research Centres of India 33. Nuclear & Space Research Centres in India 34. Health & Medicinal Research Centres in India 35. Defence Institutes in India 36. Government Industrial Undertakings 37. Musical Instruments & their Exponents 38. States & their Folk Dances 39. Famous Places associated with Eminent Persons 40. Crematorium of Famous Persons 41. Nicknames 42. Great Works associated with Famous Persons 43. Awards & Honours 44. National/Padma Awards 45. Gallantry Awards 46. Jnanpith Awards 47. Dada Saheb Phalke Awards 48. Books & Authors 49. Games & Sports– Olympic Games, Commonwealth Games, Asian Games, SAF Games, Afro-Asian Games, Sports & Related Informations, Cricket & World Cups, Football, Hockey, Tennis, Cups & Trophies, Famous Stadiums, National Games & Sports, Court/Campus/Field, No. of Players in popular Games & Sports 50. National Parks.

10. **Computer** 631–646
Introduction, Generation of Computer, Some Important Facts related to computers, Hardware, Software, Keyboard Shortcuts (Commands), Glossary, Abbreviations associated with computer, Abbreviations.

★ **Appendix** 647–648
Census of India 2011 : Figures At a Glance

★★★

Indian History 1

Ancient India

1. Harappan/Indus Civilization (2500 BC-1750 BC)

- The oldest name—Indus Civilization.
- According to archaeological tradition, the most appropriate name—Harappan Civilization (Harappa–the first discovered site).
- According to geographical point of view, the most suitable name—Inuds–Saraswati Civilization (the largest concentration of settlement–along the Indus–Saraswati river valley; 80% settlement along the Saraswati).
- The most accepted period—2500 BC–1750 BC (by Carbon-14 dating).
- *John Marshall* was the first scholar to use the term 'Indus Civilization'.
- The Indus Civilization belongs to Proto-Historic Period (Chalcolithic Age/ Bronze Age).
- The Indus Civilization was spread over Sindh, Baluchistan, Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Western U.P. and Northern Maharashtra.
- Scholars generally believe that Harappa-Ghaggar–Mohenjodaro axis represents the heartland of the Indus Civilization.
- The Northern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Ropar* (Sutlej)/Punjab (Earlier); *Manda* (Chenab)/Jammu-Kashmir (Now).

  The Southern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Bhagatrav* (Kim)/Gujarat (Earlier); *Daimabad* (Pravara)/Maharashtra (Now).

  The Eastern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Alamgirpur* (Hindon)/Uttar Pradesh.

  The Western-most site of Indus Civilization—*Sutkagendor* (Dashk)/Makran Coast (Pakistan–Iran Border).

Capital Cities—Harappa, Mohenjodaro

Port Cities—Lothal, Sutkagendor, Allahdino, Balakot, Kuntasi

Site	River	District	State / Province	Country	Excavators
Harappa	Ravi	Sahiwal	Punjab	Pakistan	Daya Ram Sahni (1921), Madho Swaroop Vatsa (1926), Wheeler (1946)
Mohenjodaro (Nakhlistan i.e. Oasis of Sindh)	Indus	Larkana	Sindh	Pakistan	Rakhal Das Bannerji (1922), Mackay (1927) Wheeler (1930)
Chanhudaro	Indus	Nawabshah	Sindh	Pakistan	Mackay (1925), N.G. Mazumdar (1931)
Lothal	Bhogava	Ahmedabad	Gujarat	India	S.R. Rao (1954)
Kalibanga (i.e. the bangles of black colour)	Ghaggar	Hanumangarh	Rajasthan	India	Amalanand Ghosh (1951), B.V. Lal and B.K. Thapar (1961)
Banawali	Ghaggar	Fatehabad	Haryana	India	R. S. Bist (1973)
Dholavira	Luni	Kutchh	Gujarat	India	J.P. Joshi (1967-68)

Site	Archaeological Finds
Harappa	6 Granaries in row, Working floors, Workmen's quarters, Virgin-Goddess (seal), Cemetery (R-37, H), Stone symbols of Lingam (male sex organ) and Yoni (female sex organ), Painted pottery, Clay figures of Mother Goddess, Wheat and Barley in wooden mortar, Copper scale, Crucible for bronze, Copper-made mirror, Vanity box, Dice.
Mohenjodaro	Great Granary, Great Bath (the largest building of civilization), Assembly hall, Shell strips, Pashupati Mahadeva/Proto-Shiva (seal), Bronze Image of a nude woman dancer, Steatite image of bearded man, Human skeltons huddled together, Painted seal (Demi-God), Clay figures of Mother Goddess, A fragment of woven cotton, Brick Kilns, 2 Mesopotamian seals, 1398 seals (56% of total seals of civilization), Dice.
Chanhudaro	City without a citadel, Inkpot, Lipstick; Metal-workers', shell-ornament makers' and bead-makers' shops; Imprint of dog's paw on a brick, Terracotta model of a bullock cart, Bronze toy cart.
Lothal	Dockyard, Rice husk; Metal-workers', shell-ornament makers' and bead-makers' shopes; Fire altars, Terracotta figurine of a horse, Double burial (burying a male and a female in a single grave), Terracotta model of a ship, Dying vat, Persian/Iranian seal, Baharainean seal, Painted jar (bird and fox).
Kalibanga	Ploughed field surface (Pre-Harappan), 7 Fire altars, Decorated bricks, Wheels of a toy cart, Mesopotamian cylindrical seal.
Banawali	Lack of chess-board or gridiron pattern town planning, Lack of systematic drainage system, Toy plough, Clay figures of Mother Goddess.
Dholavira	A unique water harnessing system and its storm water drainage system, a large well and a bath (giant water reservoirs), Only site to be divided into 3 parts, Largest Harappan inscription used for civic purposes, A stadium.
Surkotada	Bones of horse, Oval grave, Pot burials.
Daimabad	Bronze images (Charioteer with chariot, ox, elephant and rhinoceros)

- *Mohenjodaro* – the largest site of Indus Civilization, *Rakhigarhi*—The largest Indian site of Indus Civilization.
- **Common Features of Major Cities**: 1. Systematic town-planning on the lines of 'grid system' 2. Use of burnt bricks in constructions 3. Underground drainage system (giant water reservoirs in *Dholavira*) 4. Fortified citadel (exception–Chanhudaro).
- *Surkotada* (Kutchh district, Gujarat): the only Indus site where the remains of a horse have actually been found.
- **Main Crops** : Wheat and Barely; Evidence of cultivation of rice in *Lothal* and *Rangpur* (Gujarat) only. **Other Crops** : Dates, mustard, sesamum, cotton etc. Indus people were the first to produce cotton in the world.
- **Animals**: Sheep, goat, humped and humpless bull, buffalo, boar, dog, cat, pig, fowl, deer, tortoise, elephant, camel, rhinoceros, tiger etc.
- Lion was not known to Indus people. From *Amari*, a single instance of the Indian rhinoceros has been reported.
- There was extensive inland and foreign trade. Foreign trade with *Mesopotamia or Sumeria* (Modern Iraq), *Bahrain* etc. flourished.

Imports	From
Gold	Kolar (Karnataka), Afghanistan, Persia (Iran)
Silver	Afghanistan, Persia (Iran), South India
Copper	Khetri (Rajasthan), Baluchistan, Arabia
Tin	Afghanistan, Bihar
Lapis Lazuli and Sapphire	Badak-shan (Afghanistan)
Jade	Central Asia
Steatite	Shaher-i-Sokhta (Iran), Kirthar Hills (Pakistan)
Amethyst	Maharasthtra
Agate, Chalcedonies and Carnelians	Saurashtra and West India

- **Exports** : Agricultural products, cotton goods, terracotta figurines, pottery, certain beads (from *Chanhudaro*), conch-shell (from *Lothal*), ivory products, copper etc.
- A very interesting feature of this civilization was that *Iron was not known to the people.*
- The Sumerian texts refer to trade relations with '*Meluha*' which was the name given to the Indus region.
- *Shatughai* and *Mundigaq* were the Indus sites found in Afghanistan.
- The Sumerian texts also refer to two intermediate stations—*Dilmun* (Bahrain) and *Makan* (Makran coast). *Susa* and *Ur* are Mesopotamian places where Harappan seals were found.
- The Harappans were the earliest people to produce cotton (It was called '*Sindon*' by the Greeks).
- As there is no evidence of coins, barter is assumed to have been the normal method of exchange of goods.
- *Lothal* was an ancient port of Indus civilization.
- The Indus Civilization was primarily urban.
- There is no clear-cut evidence of the nature of polity, but it seems that the ruling authority of Indus Civilization was a class of merchants.
- The Harappan people didn't worship their gods in temple. No temple in fact has been unearthed. An idea of their religion is formed from the statues and figurines found.
- The most commonly found figurine is that of Mother-Goddess *(Matridevi or Shakti)*. There is evidence of prevalence of *Yoni* (female sex organ) worship.
- The chief male deity was the *'Pasupati Mahadeva'* i.e. the lord of Animals (Proto-Shiva) represented in seals as sitting in yogic posture; he is surrounded by four animals (elephant, tiger, rhino and buffalo) and two deer appear at his feet. There was the prevalence of Phallic *(lingam)* worship.
- Thus *Shiva-Shakti* worship, the oldest form of worship in India, appears to have been part of the religious belief of Harppan people (esp. humped bull).
- The remains and relics also reveal that zoolatry i.e. animal worship and tree worship (esp. peepal) were in vogue in those days.

- There is the evidence of pictographic script, found mainly on seals. The script has not been deciphered so far, but overlap of letters on some of the potsherds from *Kalibanga* show that writing was boustrophedon or from right to left and from left to right in alternate lines. It has been referred to as Proto-Dravidian.

Note : The oldest script in Indian subcontinent is the Harappan script, but the oldest deciphered script is Brahmi script known from about 5th century BC. Most later Indian script developed from Brahmi.

- Steatite was mainly used in the manufacture of seals.
- Humpless bull is represented in most of the Indus seals.
- Inhumation or complete burial was the most common method of disposal of the dead.
- The origin of the *'Swastika'* symbol can be traced to the Indus Civilization.
- 'Indra is accused of causing the decline of Indus Civilisation' *—M. Wheeler.*
- The Rigveda speaks of a battle at a place named *'Hariyumpia'* which has been identified with *Harappa.*
- The majority of scholars believe that the makers of this civilization were Dravidian.
- Contemporary civilizations of Indus Civilization—*Mesopotamia, Egypt and China.*

2. Vedic Culture (1500 BC-600 BC)

Original Home of the Aryan

- The location of the original home of the Aryans still remains a controversial point. Some scholars believe that the Aryans were native to the soil of India and some other scholars believe that the Aryans were migrated from outside [Central Asia *(Max Muller)*/ Europe/ Arctic region *(B. G. Tilak)*].
- According to popular belief, the Aryans are supposed to have migrated from Central Asia into the Indian subcontinent in several stages or waves during 2000 BC–1500 BC.
- *Boghazkai Inscription* (Asia Minor, Turkey), which mentions 4 vedic gods *Indra, Varuna, Mitra* and *Nasatyas,* proves Central Asian Theory as their homeland.
- The group that came to India first settled in the present Frontier Province and the Punjab – then called *Sapta Sindhu* i.e. region of seven rivers. They lived here for many centuries and gradually pushed into the interior to settle in the valleys of the Ganges and the Yamuna.

Vedic Literature (1500 BC-600 BC)

- It is presumed that the Rig Veda was composed while the Aryans were still in the Punjab.
- Vedic Literature comprises of four literary productions : 1. *The Samhitas or Vedas* 2. *The Brahamans* 3. *The Aranyakas* 4. *The Upanishads.*
- Vedic Literature had grown up in course of time and was really handed down from generation to generation by word of mouth. Hence these are called *Shruti* (to hear).
- The most important of Vedic Literature are *Vedas. Vedas* are called *Apaurasheya* i.e. not created by man but God-gifted and *Nitya* i.e. existing in all eternity.

- There are four Vedas–*Rig Veda, Sama Veda, Yajur Veda* and *Atharva Veda.* The first three Vedas are jointly called *Vedatrayi* i.e. trio of Vedas.
- Of the four Vedas, the *Rig Veda* (Collection of lyrics) is the oldest text in the wold, and therefore, is also known as 'the first testament of mankind'. The Rig Veda contains 1028 hymns, divided into 10 mandalas. Six mandalas (from 2nd to 7th mandalas) are called *Gotra/ Vamsha Mandalas (Kula Granth).* The 1st and 10th mandalas are said to have been added later. The 10th mandala contains the famous *Purushasukta* which explains the 4 Varnas – Brahmana, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra. The hymns of Rig Veda were recited by *Hotri.*
- The *Sama Veda* (book of chants) had 1549 hymns. All hymns (excluding 75) were taken from the Rig Veda. The hymns of the Sama Veda were recited by *Udgatri.* This Veda is important for Indian music.
- The *Yajur Veda* (book of sacrificial prayers) is a ritual veda. Its hymns were recited by *Adhvaryus.* It is divided into two parts–*Krishna Yajur Veda* and *Shukla Yajur Veda.* In contrast to the first two which are in verse entirely, this one is in both verse and prose.
- The *Atharva Veda* (book of magical formulae), the fourth and the last one, contains charms and spells to ward off evils and diseases. For a very long time it was not included in the category of the Vedas.
- The *Brahmans* explain the hymns of the Vedas. They are written in prose and ritualistic in nature. *Brahma* means 'sacrifice'. The various sacrifices and rituals have been elaborately discussed in the *Brahamanas.* Every Veda has several Brahamanas attached to it :

Rig Veda	*Aitareya* and *Kaushitiki/ Sankhyan.*
Sam Veda	*Panchvisha (Tandya Maha Brahamana), Shadvinsh, Chhandogya* and *Jaiminaya.*
Yajur Veda	*Shatapatha* (the oldest and the largest Brahamana) and *Taittariya.*
Atharva Veda	*Gopatha.*

- The word *Aranya* means 'the forest'. The 'forest texts' were called *Aranyaka,* because they were written mainly for the hermits and the students living in jungles. The Aranyaka are the concluding portions of the Brahamanas.
- The *Upanishadas* are philosophical texts. They are generally called *Vedanta,* as they came towards the end of the Veda. There are 108 Upanishadas. *Vrihadaranyaka* is the oldest Upanishada.

Literature of Vedic Tradition (600 BC-600 AD)

- Literature of Vedic Tradition (*Smriti* i.e. rememberance literature) comprises of 6 literary works : 1. Vedangas/Sutras 2. Smritis Dharmashastras 3. Mahakavyas (Epics) 4. Puranas 5. Upvedas 6. Shad-Dharshanas.

There are six *Vedangas* :

1. Shiksha (Phonetics) : *'Pratishakhya'*–the oldest text on phonetics.
2. Kalpa Sutras (Rituals) : a. *Shrauta Sutras/ Shulva Sutras*–deal with the sacrifices, b. *Grihya Sutras*—deal with family ceremonies, c. *Dharma Sutras*—deal with Varnas, Ashramas etc.
3. Vyakarana (Grammar) : *'Ashtadyayi' (Panini)*–the oldest grammar of the word.

4. Nirukta (Etymology) : 'Nirukta' *(Yask)* based on 'Nighantu' (Kashyap)-collection of difficult vedic words—*('Nighantu'—the oldest word-collection of the world; 'Nirukta'—the oldest dictionary of the world).*
5. Chhanda (Metrics): *'Chhandasutras' (Pingal)*-famous text.
6. Jyotisha (Astronomy): *'Vedanga Jyotisha' (Lagadh Muni)*-the oldest Jyotisha text.

➢ There are six famous *Smritis*: (i) *Manu Smriti* (Pre-Gupta Period)—the oldest Smriti text; Commentators: *Vishwarupa, Meghatithi, Gobindraj, Kulluk Bhatt,* (ii) *Yajnvalkya Smriti* (Pre-Gupta Period)—Commentators : *Vishwarupa, Jimutvahan* ('Daybhag'), *Vijnyaneshwar,* ('Mitakshara') *Apararka* (a king of Shilahar Dynasty) (iii) *Narad Smriti* (Gupta period), (iv) *Parashara Smriti* (Gupta period), (v) *Brihaspati Smriti* (Gupta period), (vi) *Katyayana Smriti* (Gupta period).

➢ There are mainly two *Mahakavyas* (Epics) :

1. **The Ramayana** *(Valmiki)*: It is known as *'Adi Kavya'* (the oldest epic of the world). At present, it consists of 24,000 shlokas i.e. verses (Originally 6,000, Later – 12,000, Finally – 24,000) in 7 Kandas i.e. sections. 1st and 7th Kandas were the latest additions to the Ramayana.
2. **The Mahabharata** *(Ved Vyasa)* : The longest epic of the world. At present, it consists of 1,00,000 shlokas i.e. verses (Originally–8,800-Jay Samhita, Later–24,000-Chaturvinshati Sahastri Samhita/Bharata, Finally–1,00,000-Shatasahastri Samhita/Maha Bharata) in 18 Parvans i.e. chapters, plus the Harivamsa supplement. *Bhagavad Gita* is extracted from Bihshma Parvan of Mahabharata. Shanti Parvan is the largest parvan (chapter) of the Mahabarata.

➢ The *Purana* means 'the old'. There are 18 famous 'Puranas'. The *Matsya Purana* is the oldest Puranic text. The other important Puranas are the *Bhagavata, The Vishnu, The Vayu and The Brahamnda*. They describe genealogies of various royal dynasties.

➢ *The Upavedas (the auxiliary vedas)* were traditionally associated with vedas :

Upavedas	Associated with
1. *Ayurveda* i.e. Medicine	Rig Veda
2. *Gandharvaveda* i.e. Music	Sama Veda
3. *Dhanurveda* i.e. Archery	Yajur Veda
4. *Shilpveda/Arthaveda* i.e. the science of craft/wealth (Vishwakarma)	Atharva Veda

➢ There are 6 schools of Indian philosophy known as *Shad-Darshanas.*

Darshana	Founder	Basic Text
1. Sankhya Darshana	Kapila	Sankhya Sutra
2. Yoga Darshana	Patanjali	Yoga Sutra
3. Nyaya Darshana	Akshapada Gautama	Nayaya Sutra
4. Vaishesika Darshana	Uluka Kanada	Vaishesika Sutra
5. Mimansa/Purva-Mimansa	Jaimini	Purva Mimansa Sutra
6. Vedant/Uttara-Mimansa	Badarayana	Brahma Sutra/Vedant Sutra

Rig Vedic/Early Vedic Period (1500 BC–1000 BC)

Geographical Area

➢ Rig Veda is the only source of knowledge for this period.

➢ From the names of rivers, mountains *(Himvant i.e. Himalaya, Munjavant i.e. Hindukush)* and ocean in Rig Veda we have a clear idea of the geographical area in which Rigvedic people lived.

➢ Rig Veda mentions 40 rivers. The *Nadisukta* hymn of the Rig Veda mentions 21 rivers which include the Ganges in the east and the Kubha (Kabul) in the west.

➢ Rigvedic people, who called themselves Aryans, were confined in the area which came to be known as *Sapta Sindhu* i.e. land of the seven rivers. Sapta Sindhu comprises *Sindhu* and their five tributaries – *Vitasta, Asikani, Vipas, Parushni & Sutuadri* and *Saraswati.*

Rigvedic Name	Modern Name	Region
Sindhu	Indus	Punjab
Vitasta	Jhelum	Punjab
Asikani	Chenab	Punjab
Vipas	Beas	Punjab
Parushni	Ravi	Punjab
Sutudri	Sutlej	Punjab
Saraswati	Sarsuti	Rajasthan
Drishadvati	Ghaggar	Rajasthan
Kubha	Kabul	Afghanistan
Suvastu	Swati	Afghanistan
Krumu	Kurram	Afghanistan
Gomati	Gomal	Afghanistan

➢ According to the Rig Veda, the most mentioned river—Sindhu, the most pious river—Saraswati, mention of the Ganges–1 time, mention of Yamuna–3 times.

➢ **The Dasrajan War** (The Battle of Ten Kings)
According to Rig Veda, the famous Dasrajan war was the internecine war of the Aryans. The Dasrajan war gives names of ten kings who participated in a war against *Sudas* who was *Bharata* king of *Tritsus* family. The ten kings were of the states of Purus, Yadus, Turvasas, Anus and Druhyus along with five others viz. Alinas, Pakhtas, Bhalanas, Sibis and Vishanins. The battle was fought on the bank of Parushni (Ravi) in which *Sudas* emerged victorious.

Polity

➢ *The Kula (the family)* was the basis of both social and political organisations. Above the Kula were *the Grama, the Vis, the Jana* and *the Rashtra*. A group of Kula *(families)* formed a Grama (the village) and so on.

➢ Regarding the form of government it was of patriarchal nature. Monarchy was normal, but non-monarchical polities were also there.

➢ The Rashtra was ruled by a King or Rajan and the royal descent was by hereditary based on the law of primogeniture. Probably elective monarchy was also known.

➢ Very little is known about ministers of the king. *The Purohita* or domestic priest was the first ranking official. He was the king's preceptor, friend, philosopher and guide. Other important royal officials were *Senani* (army chief) and *Gramani (head of village).*

Unit	Head
Kula (the family)	Kulapa
Grama (the village)	Gramani
Vis (the clan)	Vispati
Jana (the people)	Gopa/Gopati
Rashtra (the country)	Rajan

➢ The army consisted of foot-soldiers and charioteers. Wood, stone, bone and metals were used in weapons. Arrows were tipped with points of metal or poisoned horn. References are made to the moving fort *(Purcharishnu)* and a machine for assaulting strongholds.

- The king had religious duties also. He was the upholder of the established order and moral rules.
- Rig Veda speaks of assemblies such as the *Sabha, Samiti, Vidath, Gana*. Sabha was committee of few privileged and important individuals. Two popular assemblies, Sabha and Samiti, acted as checks on the arbitrary rule of kings. Later Vedas record that the Sabha functioned as a court of justice.
- Theft, burglary, stealing of cattle and cheating were some of the then prevent crimes.

Society

- The Rigvedic society comprised four varnas, namely *Brahmana, Kshatriya, Vaisya* and *Shudra*. This classification of society was based on the professions or occupations of the individuals.
- Teachers and priests were called *Brahamanas*; rulers and administrators were called *Kshatriyas*; farmers, merchants and bankers were called *Vaishyas*; and artisans and labourers were reckoned as *Shudras*.
- These vocations were followed by persons according to their ability and liking, and the occupations had not become hereditary as they became later on.
- Members of the same family took to different professions and belonged to different varnas as well illustrated by a hymn of the Rig Veda. In this hymn a person says : *'I am a singer; my father is a physician, my mother is a grinder of corn.'*
- The unit of society was family, primarily monogamous and patriarchal.
- Child marriage was not in vogue.
- A widow could marry the younger brother of her deceased husband (*Niyoga*).
- The father's property was inherited by son.
- Right to property existed in respect of moveable things like cattle, horse, gold and ornaments and also in respect of immovable property like land and house.
- The home of the teacher was the school where he taught the particular sacred texts.
- Milk and its products–curd, butter and ghee–formed an important part of the diet. There is also the mention of grain cooked with milk *(Kshirapakamodanam)*.
- The meat of fish, birds and animals was eaten.
- The cow was already deemed *Aghanya* i.e. not to be killed.
- Rig Veda prescribes a penalty of death or expulsion from the kingdom to those who kill or injure cows.
- Alcoholic drinks, *Sura* and *Soma* were also consumed.
- Aryans were primarily agricultural and pastoral people who reckoned their wealth in terms of cows.
- Amusements included music, dancing, chariot-racing and dicing. One stanza in the Rig Veda known as the gambler's lament says : *'My wife rejects me and her mother hates me'*.

Religion

- During the Rigvedic time the Gods worshipped were generally the personified powers of Nature. It was believed that divine powers were capable of conferring both boons and punishments on man. Fire was sacred as it was regarded to be the intermediary between man and God.
- There were nearly 33 Gods. Later day tradition classified them into 3 categories of terrestrial *(prithvisthana)*, aerial or intermediate *(antarikshasthana)* and celestial *(dyusthana)* god.

1. **Terrestrial** *(Prithvisthaniya)*: *Prithivi, Agni, Soma, Brihaspati* and rivers.
2. **Aerial/Intermediate** *(Antarikshasthaniya)*: *Indra, Rudra, Vayu-Vata, Parjanya.*
3. **Celestial** *(Dyusthaniya)* : *Daus, Surya* (In 5 forms : *Surya, Savitri, Mitra, Pushan, Vishnu*), *Varuna, Aditi, Usha* and *Asvin.*

- *Indra, Agni* and *Varuna* were the most popular deities of Rigvedic Aryans.

  Indra or *Purandara* (destroyer of fort) : The most important god (250 Rigvedic hymns are devoted to him); who played the role of warlord and was considered to be the rain god.

  Agni : The second most important god (200 Rigvedic hymns are devoted to him); fire god was considered to be the intermediary between the gods and the people.

  Varuna : Personified water; was supposed to uphold '*Rita*' or the natural order *('Ritasyagopa')*.

- *Surya* (Sun) was worshiped in 5 forms : *Surya, Savitri, Mitra, Pushan* and *Vishnu.*

  Surya (Sun) : God who used to drive daily across the sky in his chariot driven by seven horses.

  Savitri (the god of light) : The famous *Gayatri Mantra* is addressed to her.

  Mitra : A solar god.

  Pushan : The god of marriage; main function–guarding of roads, herdsmen and straying cattle.

  Vishnu : A god which covered earth in three steps *(Upakrama).*

- *Soma* : Originally a plant producing a potent drink during courses of *Agnishtoma* sacrifice, could be hemp/ *bhang*, called king of plants; identified later with the moon. The 9th mandala of Rig Veda, which contains 114 hymns, is attributed to the *Soma*. That's why it is called 'the *Soma Mandala*'.
- Other Gods/Goddesses : *Rudra* (the god of animals), *Dyaus* (the oldest god and the father of the world), *Yama* (the god of death). *Ashwin/ Nastya* (the god of health, youth and immortality); *Aditi* (the great mother of gods), *Sindhu* (river goddess).
- Sometimes gods were visualised as animals but there was no animal worship.
- The nature of Rigvedic religion was Henotheism i.e. a belief in many gods but each god standing out in turns as the highest.
- Their religion primarily consisted of the worship of gods with a simple ceremonial known as *Yajna* or sacrifice. Sacrifices consisted of offerings of milk, ghee, grain, flesh and soma.

Economy

- The Aryans crossed the nomadic stage. Yet, great importance was attached to herds of cattle. Various animals were domesticated.
- The vedic people were probably not familiar with cat and camel. Tiger was not known, but the wild animals like lion, elephant and boar were known to them.
- In all probability, very little of trade was there.
- Money and markets were known but they were not extensively used. Cows and gold ornaments of fixed value were the media of exchange. Coins were not known.
- Complexity in producing goods made its appearance. Men of various professions like carpenters, smiths, tanners, weavers, potters and grinders of corn were there.
- The art of healing wounds and curing diseases were in existence. There were experts in surgery. Along with herbs and drugs charms and spells were regard as equally potential in healing diseases.
- OCP (Ochre Coloured Pottery) Culture : 1500 BC-1000 BC.

Later Vedic Period : 1000 BC - 600 BC

Geographical Area

- During the later Vedic Period, the Aryan settlements covered virtually the whole of Northern India. —*Aryavarta*
- The centre of culture now shifted from Saraswati to Ganges *(Madhya desa)*.
- There was mention of more rivers such as *Narmada, Sadanira* (modern Gandak), *Chambal* etc.
- The expansion of people towards the east is indicated in a legend of *Satapatha Brahamana*–how *Videha Madhava* migrated from the Saraswati region, crossed Sadanira and came to the land of Videha (modern Tirhut). "He (Agni) then went burning along the earth towards the east, and Gotama Rahugana (the priest) and Videgh Mathava followed after him." —*Satapatha Brahamana*
- Emergence of *Janapadas—Kuru* (Combination of *Purus* and *Bharatas*), *Panchala* (Combination of *Turvashas* and *Krivis*), *Kashi* etc. in Doab region.
- Later Vedic literatures mention Vindhya mountain (Southern mountain).
- Reference to the territorial divisions the later Vedas gives three broad divisions of India, viz. *Aryavarta* (Northern India), *Madhya desa* (Central India) and *Dakhinapath* (Southern India).

Polity

- Large kingdoms and stately cities made their appearance in the later Vedic Period.
- In *Taittariya Brahmana* we notice the theory of the divine origin of kingship.
- The governmental machinery became more elaborate than before, as a sequel to the growth of the power of the king. New civil functionaries, besides the only civil functionary of the Rigvedic period the purohita came into existence. These were : the *Bhagadudha* (Collector of taxes), the *Suta/Sarathi* (the Royal herald or Charioteer), the *Khasttri* (Chamberlain), the *Akshavapa* (Courier).

- The military officials of the Rigvedic times, the Senani (the general) and the Gramani (the head of the village) continued to function.
- The period also saw the beginning of a regular system of provincial government. Thus, we find *Sthapati* being entrusted with the duty of administering outlying areas occupied by the aboriginals and *Satapati* being put over a group of one hundred villages. *Adhikrita* was the village official. *Ugras*, mentioned in the Upanishada, was probably a police official.
- The popular control over the affairs of the kingdom was exercised through *Sabha* and *Samiti*, as in the Rigvedic period. *Vidatha* had completely disappeared by now.
- Even during the later vedic times, kings did not possess a standing army.
- Judiciary also grew. The king played a great role in administering criminal law. The killing of an embryo, homicide, the murder of a Brahmana, in particular, stealing of gold and drinking sura were regarded as serious crimes. Treason was a capital offence.

Society

- As the time passed by *Yajnas* became elaborate and complicated ceremonial leading to the emergence of learned men known as *Brahmanas*.
- And as the Aryans expanded to the east and south, group of people known as *Kshatriyas* emerged to conquer territories and administer them. The remaining Aryans formed a separate class known as *Vaishyas*, a word derived from *Vis* meaning 'people'. The non-Aryan formed the fourth class known as *Shudras*.
- Neverthless, these divisons of society were not rigid.
- The institution of *Gotra* i.e. the clan appeared in later Vedic Period.
- The higher castes could marry with the lower ones, but marriage with shudras was not permitted. The idea of pollution appeared in society.
- The earliest reference to the 4 *Ashramas* (the stages of life)—*Brahmacharya, Grihastha, Vanprastha* and *Sanyasa*–is found in the *Jabala Upanishad*. The Ashrama system was formed to attain 4 *Purusharthas (Dharma, Artha, Kama and Moksha)*.
- The status of women declined. According to *Aitareya Brahamana* a daughter is the sources of misery but a son is the protector of family.
- According to *Maitrayani Samhita* there are three evils—liquor, woman and dice.
- Though monogamy (a man having one wife) was the ideal but polygamy (a man having more than one wife) was frequent.
- Woman were prohibited to attend the political assemblies.
- *Yajnavalkya–Gargi dialogue (Vrihadarnyaka Upanishada)* indicates that some women had got higher education.

Types of Hindu Marriage *(Vivaha)*

Brahma Vivaha	Giving the girl to a man with dowry.
Daiva Vivaha	Giving the girl to the priest himself in lieu of his fees.
Arsha Vivaha	Giving the girl to a man after accepting a bride-price.
Prajapatya Vivaha	Giving the girl to a man without demanding a bride-price.

Gandharva Vivaha	Love marriage.
Asura Vivaha	Marriage with a purchased girl.
Rakshasa Vivaha	Marriage with the daughter of a defeated king or with a kidnapped girl.
Paishacha Vivaha	Marriage to a girl after seducing or raping her.

- *Anuloma Vivaha* : marriage between a bridegroom from an upper caste and a bride from a lower caste; *Pratiloma Vivaha*–the reverse of Anuloma Vivaha.
- **16 Samskaras :** 1. Garbhadhana 2. Pumsavana 3. Simantonnayan 4. Jatakarma 5. Namakaran 6. Nishkramana 7. Annaprashana 8. Chudakarma 9. Karnachhedana 10. Vidyarmbha 11. Upanayana 12. Vedarambha 13. Samavaratana 14. Vivaha 15. Vanprastha 16. Antyesti.

Religion

- The earlier divinites *Indra* and *Agni* were relegated into the background while *Prajapati* (creator of the Universe, later known as *Brahma*), *Vishnu* (Patron god of Aryans) and *Rudra* (God of animals, later identified with *Shiva/Mahesha*) rose in prominence. Now *Prajapati* became supreme God.
- *Pushana*, who protected cattle in the early Vedic Period now became the god of *Shudras*.
- *Brihadaranyaka Upanishada* was first the work to give the doctrine of transmigration *(Punarjanma/Samsara-chakra)* and deeds *(Karma)*.

	12 Ratninas (Satapatha Brahamana)	
1.	Purohita	the Priest
2.	Mahishi	the Queen
3.	Yuvaraja	Crown prince
4.	Suta/Sarathi	the Royal herald/the Charioteer
5.	Senani	the General
6.	Gramani	Head of the village
7.	Kshata	Gateman/Chamberlain
8.	Sangrahitri	Treasurer
9.	Bhagadudha	Collector of taxes
10.	Akshavapa	Courier
11.	Palagala	Friend of King
12.	Govikarta	Head of forest department

- The early simple ceremonial of Rigvedic Period gave place to elaborate sacrifices requiring the services of as many as 17 priests. In the later Vedas and Brahamanas sacrifices *(Yajnas)* came into prominence.
- There were two varieties of sacrifices—

1. *Laghuyajnas* (Simple/Private Sacrifices) : Performed by householder e.g. *Pancha Mahayajna, Agnihotra, Darsha Yajna* (on *Amavasya* i.e. on the last day of the dark fortnight), *Purnamasa Yajna* (on *Purnima* i.e. on the day of full moon) etc.
2. *Mahayajnas* (Grand/Royal Sacrifices) : Sacrifices that could only be undertaken by an aristocratic and wealthy man and the king.
   (a) *Rajasuya Yajna* : Royal consecration, which in its full form comprised a series of sacrifices lasting over a year. In later days it was replaced by simplified *Abhisheka* i.e. anointment.
   (b) *Vajapeya Yajna* : Drink of strength, which lasted for a period of seventeen days upto full one year.
   (c) *Asvamedha Yajna* : Horse sacrifice, which lasted for three days.

   (d) *Agnishtoma Yajna* : Sacrifice of animals dedicated to Agni, which lasted one day, although Yajnika (performer of Yajna) and his wife spent ascetic life for a year before Yajna. On the occasion of the this Yajna, *soma rasa* was consumed.

- Towards the end of the Vedic Period, there was the emergence of a strong reaction against cults, rituals and priestly domination; Reflection of this mood is found in the *Upanishadas*.

Economy

- Land had now become more valuable than cows. Agriculture began to replace rearing of cattle. The plough was at times drawn by 24 oxen. Manure was known.
- Rice, barley, beans, sesame and wheat were cultivated.
- Production of goods advanced as indicated by new occupations like fisherman, washerman, dyers, door-keepers and footmen.
- Indicating specialisation distinction was drawn between the chariot-maker and the carpenter and the tanner and the hide-dresser.
- Considerable advance was made in the knowledge of metals. Mention of tin, silver and iron was made apart from gold and *ayas* (either copper or iron) in the Rig Veda.
- Evidence was there regarding organsiation of merchants into guilds because of reference to corporations *(Ganas)* and aldermen *(Sreshtins)*.
- PGW *(Painted Grey Ware)* Culture : 1100 BC – 600 BC.

3.1. Mahajanapada Period (600 BC-325 BC)

	16 Mahajanapadas (Modern Area)	**Capital**
1.	Anga (districts of Munger and Bhagalpur in Bihar)	Champa/Champanagari
2.	Magadha (districts of Patna, Gaya and Nalanda in Bihar)	Girivraj, Rajgriha/Rajgir (Bimbisara), Patliputra (Udayin), Vaishali (Shishunaga), Patliputra (Kalashok)
3.	Vajji (districts of Muzaffarpur & Vaishali in Bihar)	Videha, Mithila, Vaishali
4.	Malla (districts of Deoria, Basti, Gorakhpur and Siddharthnagar in U.P.)	Kuishinara and Pawa
5.	Kashi (district of Varanasi in U.P.)	Varanasi
6.	Kosala (districts of Faizabad, Gonda, Bahraich in U.P.)	North Kosal-Sravasti/Sahet-Mahet South Kosal-Saket/Ayodhya
7.	Vatsa (districts of Allahabad, Mirzapur in U.P.)	Kausambi
8.	Chedi (Bundelkhand area)	Shaktimati/Sotthivati
9.	Kuru (Haryana and Delhi area)	Indraprastha (modern Delhi)
10.	Panchala (Ruhelkhand, Western U.P.)	North Panchal–Ahichhatra South Panchal–Kampilya
11.	Shurasena (Brajmandal)	Mathura
12.	Matsya (Alwar, Bharatpur and Jaipur in Rajasthan)	Viratnagar
13.	Avanti (Malwa)	North Avanti–Ujjayini South Avanti–Mahishmati

	16 Mahajanapadas (Modern Area)	Capital
14.	Ashmaka (between the rivers Narmada and Godavari)	Potana/Patali
15.	Gandhara (western part of Pakistan and Afghanistan)	Taxila (near Rawalpindi, Pakistan) and Pushkalavati
16.	Kamboja (Hazara district of Pakistan)	Rajapur/Hataka

- Buddhist literature *(Anguttara Nikaya, Mahavastu)* and Jain literature *(Bhagavati Sutta)* present a list of 16 Mahajanapadas (i.e., great states) with minor variation of names.
- There were two types of states—monarchical and non-monarchical/republican. Monarchial states–Anga, Magadha, Kashi, Kosala, Vatsa, Chedi, Shursena, Matsya, Avanti, Gandhara.

  Republican States–Vajji, Malla, Kuru, Panchal, Kamboja, Shakya (Kapilvastu), Koliyas (Ramgrama), Moriya (Pipplivana).

Rise of Magadha

- The political history of India from 6th century BC onwards is the history of struggle between four states—Magadha, Kosala, Vatsa and Avanti for supremacy.
- Ultimately the kingdom of Magadha emerged to be the most powerful one and succeeded in founding an empire.

Reason of Magadha's success

1. Magadha enjoyed an advantageous geographical position in the age of iron, because the richest iron deposits were situated not far away from Rajgir, the earliest capital of Magadha and could be used for making weapons and implements. Iron axes were perhaps useful in clearing the thick forests, and iron-tipped plaough-shares ploughed the land better and helped to increase grain production.
2. Magadha lay at the centre of the middle Gangetic plain. The alluvium, once cleared of the jungles, proved immense fertile and food surplus was thus available.
3. Magadha enjoyed a special advantage in military organisation. Although the Indian states were well acquainted with the use of horses and chariots, it was Magadha which first used elephants on a large scale in its war against its neighbours.

Haryanaka Dynasty : 544 BC-412 BC

Bimbisara (Shronika) : 544 BC-492 BC

- He was the founder of Haryanka dynasty.
- Magadha came into prominence under the leadership of *Bimbisara*.
- He was a contemporary of *Gautama Buddha*.
- He married the princesses of Kosala (*Kosaldevi/ Mahakosala*-sister of Kosal King Prasenjit), Lichchhavi (*Chellana*-sister of Lichchhavi Head Chetaka) and Madra (*Khema*-daughter of Madra king), which helped him in his expansionist policy.
- He gained a part of *Kashi* as the dowry in his marriage with the sister of king Prasenjit of Kosala.

- He conquered *Anga*.
- He sent a royal physician, *Jivaka* to Ujjain, when Avanti King *Pradyota* was suffered by jaundice.
- Known as *Seniya*, he was the first Indian king who had a regular and standing army.
- He built the city of New Rajagriha.

Ajatashatru (Kunika) : 492 BC-460 BC

- Bimbisara was succeeded by his son Ajatashatru. Ajatashatru killed his father and seized the throne.
- Ajatashatru followed a more aggressive policy. He gained complete control over *Kashi* and broke the earlier amicable relations by attacking his maternal uncle Prasenjit, the king of Kosala.
- The *Vajji* confederation was Ajatashatru's next target of attack. This war was a lengthy one and tradition tells us that after a long period of 16 years, he was able to defeat the Vajji only through deceit, by sowing the seeds of discord amongst the people of Vajji.
- The three things that played important role to defeat the Vajji—1. *Sunidha* and *Vatsakar*—Ajatashatru's diplomatic ministers, who sowed the seeds of discord amongst Vajjis, 2. *Rathamusala*—a kind of chariot to which a mace was attached 3. *Mahashilakantaka*—a war engine which catapulted big stones.
- In this way *Kashi* and *Vaishali* (the capital of Vajji) were added to Magadha, making it the most powerful territorial power in the Ganges Valley.
- He built the fort of *Rajagriha* and a watch-fort *(Jaladurga)* at a village called *Patali*, on the banks of the Ganges.

Udayin : 460 BC-440 BC

- Ajatshatru was succeeded by his son Udayin.
- His reign is important because he laid the foundations of the city of *Patliputra* at the confluence of the Son and the Ganges and shifted the capital from Rajagriha to Patliputra.
- Udayin was succeeded by *Anuruddha, Munda* and *Naga-Dasak* respectively who all were weak and parricides.

Shisunaga Dynasty : 412 BC-344 BC

- *Nag-Dasak* was unworthy to rule. So the people got disgusted and elected Shisunaga as the King, the minister of the last king.
- The most important achievement of *Shisunaga* was the destruction of the Pradyota dynasty of *Avanti*. This brought to an end the hundred year old rivalry between Magadha and Avanti. From then on Avanti become a part of the Magadha rule.
- Shisunaga was succeeded by *Kalashoka (Kakavarna)*. His reign is important because he convened *the Second Buddhists Council* in *Vaishali* (383 BC).

Nanda Dynasty : 344 BC-323 BC

- The Shisunaga dynasty was overthrown by *Mahapadma* who established a new line of kings known as the Nandas.
- Mahapadma is known as *Sarvakshatrantak* i.e. Uprooter of all the Kshatriyas (Puranas) and *Ugrasena* i.e. Owner of huge army (Pali texts).

- The Puranas call Mahapadma *Ekrat* i.e. the sole monarch. He seems to have overthrown all the dynasties which ruled at the time of Shisungas. He is often described as 'the first empire builder of Indian history'.
- Mahapadma was succeeded by his eight sons. *Dhanananda* was the last one.
- The last king Dhanananda is possibly identical with the *Agrammes* or *Xandrames* of the Greek texts.
- It was during the rule of Dhanananda that the invasion of Alexander took place in north-west India in 326 BC.
- According to Greek writer Curtius, Dhanananda commanded a huge army 20,000 cavalry, 200,000 infantry, 2,000 chariots and 3,000 elephants. It was the might of Dhanananda that terrorised Alexander and stopped his march to the Gangetic Valley.
- The Nanda dynasty came to an end about 322-21 BC and was supplanted by another dynasty known as Mauryas, with *Chandragupta Maurya* as the founder.

Foreign Invasions

I. Iranian/Persian Invasion—Darius's Invasion (518 BC)

- The Achaemenian rulers of Iran (Persia), who expanded their empire at the same time as the Magadhan princes, took advantage of the political disunity on the North-West Frontier of India.
- The Achaemenian ruler *Darius I (Darayabahu)* penetrated into North-West India in 518 BC and annexed Punjab, West of the Indus and Sindh. This area constituted the 20th province *(Kshatrapi)* of Iran, the total number of provinces in the Iranian empire being 28. This province was the most fertile area of the Iranian empire. From this province the empire received 360 talent gold as revenue.
- The Indo-Iranian contact lasted for about 200 years.

Effects of Iranian Invasion

1. It gave an impetus to Indo-Iranian trade and commerce.
2. Through the Iranian, the Greeks came to know about the great wealth of India and this eventually led to Alexander's invasion of India.
3. The Iranian scribes brought into India a form of writing which came to be known as the *Kharosthi* script. It was written from right to left like the Arabic.
4. Iranian influence on the Mauryan Sculpture is clearly perceptible, especially in the bell shaped capitals. Iranian influence may also be traced in the preamble of Ashoka's edicts as well as in certain words used in them.

II. Macedonian Invasion—Alexander's Invasion (326 BC)

- In the 4th century BC, the Greeks and the Iranian fought for the supremacy of the world. Under the leadership of Alexander of Macedonia the Greek finally destroyed the Iranian empire.
- Alexander succeeded his father Philip to the throne of Macedonia. He was then only 20 years of Age.
- From his very childhood he used to dream of world-conquest. He quickly conquered many areas.

- As a preliminary step to conquer India, the Kabul valley and the hilly area of North-West frontier were conquered, and he reached Ohind near Attock in 326 BC.
- The rulers of Taxila and Abhisara submitted but *Porus (Puru)* refused to do so.
- Alexander then crossed the Jhelum by a trick. Porus was defeated in the battle that followed, but Alexander treated him very generously for his bravery. (*Battle of Vitasta* i.e. modern *Jhelum*, Greek-*Hydaspes* – 326 BC).
- This was how the Indians were defeated because of their disunity.
- After a brilliant victory at Sakala, the Greek forces reached the *Beas*. Alexander had to return from this place as his soldiers refused to go any further. The battle of Jhelum and Sakla had opened their eyes and they were afraid of the great Magadhan empire across the Beas.
- After making administrative arrangements for the conquered territory, Alexander marched back in Sep. 325 BC.
- He reached Babylon in 323 BC where he died at the age of 33.

Effects of Alexander's Invasion

1. By opening up both the land and sea routes between India and Europe, it brought both of them closer to each other.
2. Indirectly this invasion made possible the establishment of Indo-Bacterian and Indo-Parthian states, which at a later stage considerably influenced Indian architecture (Gandhara school of sculpture), astronomy, coinage etc.
3. The invasion opened the eyes of Indian politicians to the necessity of creating a unified empire.
4. The date of the Invasion of Alexander is the 'first reliable date in early Indian history' and considerably helps us in solving chronological difficulties.

3.2. Religious Movements (600 BC-400 BC)

Various religious movements viz. Buddhism, Jainism etc. were born and grew up in the Post-Vedic Period known as the Period of Second Urbanisation or the Age of Buddha (6th Century BC to 4th Century BC).

Causes of Religious Movements

1. The vedic philosophy had lost its original purity.
2. The vedic religion had become very complex and had degenerated into superstitions, dogmas and rituals.
3. Supremacy of the Brahmans created unrest in the society and Kshatriyas reacted against the Brahmanical domination.
4. Introduction of a new agricultural economy in Eastern India.
5. The desire of Vaishyas to improve their social position with the increase in their economic position due to the growth of trade.

Buddhism

Buddha's Life

- *Gautama Buddha*, foudner of Buddhism, was born in 563 BC (widely accepted), on the vaisakha purnima day at *Lumbinivana* (Rummindehi District, Nepal) in the *Sakya Kshatriya* clan.

- His father *Suddhodhana* was the republican king of Kapilvastu and mother *Mahamaya* was a princess of Kollia republic.
- After his mother's early death, he was brought up by his step mother and aunt *Mahaprajapati Gautami*.
- His father married him at an early age to *Yasodhara* (Princess of Shakya dynasty) from whom he had a son *Rahul*.
- Four sights–an old man, a diseased person, a dead body and an ascetic–proved to be a turning point in his carrier.
- At the age of 29, he renounced home, this was his *Mahabhinishkramana* (great going forth) and became a wandering ascetic.
- His first teacher was *Alara Kalama* (Sankhya philosopher) from whom he learnt the technique of meditation.
- His next teacher was *Udraka Ramputra*.

Great Events of Buddha's Life	Symbols
Janma (Birth)	Lotus and Bull
Mahabhinishkramana (Renunciation)	Horse
Nirvana/Sambodhi (Enlightenment)	Bodhi tree
Dharmachakra pravartana (First Sermon)	Wheel
Mahaparinirvana (Death)	Stupa

- At the age of 35, under a pipal tree at *Uruvella (Bodh Gaya)* on the bank of river *Niranjana* (modern name Falgu) he attained *Nirvana* (enlightenment) after 49 days of continuous meditation; now he was a fully enlightened *(Buddha or Tathagat)*.
- Buddha delivered his first sermon at *Sarnath* (Dear park) to his five disciples, this is known as *Dharmachakra Pravartana* (Turning of the wheel of law).
- He died at the age of 80 in 483 BC at *Kushinagar* (identical with the village Kasia in Kushinagar district of U.P.). This is known as *Mahaparinirvana* (Final Blowing out).
- *Kanthaka*–Budhha's horse, *Channa*–Buddha's charioteer, *Devadatta*–Buddha's cousin, *Sujata*–the farmer's daughter who gave him rice milk at Bodh Gaya and Other names of Buddha–Gautama (Clan name), Siddharta (Childhood name), Shakya Muni.

Doctrine of Buddhism

Chatwari Arya Satyani (Four Noble Truths)

It is the essence of Buddhism.

1. Life is full of sorrow *(Dukha)*: *Sabbam Dukkam*.
2. There are causes of sorrow *(Dukha Samudaya)*: *Dwadash Nidan/ Pratitya Samutpada*.
3. This sorrow can be stopped *(Dukha Nirodha)*: *Nirvana*.
4. There is a path leading to the cessation of sorrow *(Dukha Nirodha Gamini Pratipada)*: *Ashtangika Marga*.

Note :

1. Pratitya samutapada is also known as *Hetuvada* (theory of cause-effect) and *Kshanabhanga Vada* (theory of momentariness/impermanence).
2. Desire is root cause of sorrow.
3. The ultimate aim of life is to attain *nirvana*, the eternal state of peace and bliss, which means liberation from the cycle of birth and death.

---

4. *Ashtangika Marga* (Eight fold path) are : right observation, right determination, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right exercise, right memory and right meditation.
5. *Madhya Marga/ Madhyama Pratipada* (the middle path)—Man should avoid both extremes, i.e. a life of comforts and luxury, and a life of severe asceticism.

Triratna i.e. Three Jwels of Buddhism

1. *Buddha* (the enlightened) 2. *Dharma* (doctrine) 3. *Sangha* (commune)

Buddhist C.	Year	Venue	Chairman	Patron	Result
1st Buddhist Council	483BC	Saptaparni Cave, Rajgriha	Mahakassapa	Ajatashatru (Harayanka Dynasty)	Compilation of Sutta-Pitaka and Vinaya Pitaka by Ananda and Upali respectively
2nd Buddhist Council	383BC	Chullavanga Vaishali	Sabbakami	Kalashoka (Shisunaga Dynasty)	(i) The monks of Vaishali wanted some change in rites. (ii) Schism into Sthaviravadins and Mahasanghikas.
3rd Buddhist Council	250BC	Ashokarama Vihar, Patliputra	Mogaliputta Tissa	Ashoka (Maurya Dynasty)	(i) Compilation of Abhidhamma Pitaka (ii) Decision to send missionaries to various parts of the world
4th Buddhist Council	98 AD	Kundala Vana, Kashmir	Chairman-Vasumitra Vice chairman-Ashvaghosa	Kanishka (Kushana Dynasty)	(i) Compilation of Mahavibha sha shastra (Sanskrti comment on Tripitaka) (ii) the division of Buddhists into Hinayanists and Mahayanists

Buddhist Literature

I. Pali Texts

Tripitaka : Pitaka literally means 'basket' and it was called so, because the original texts were written on palm-leaves and kept in baskets. *Sutta Pitaka*—Buddha's sayings, *Vinay Pitaka*—monastic code, *Abhidhamma pitaka*—religious discourses of Buddha (Abhidhamma Pitaka comprises of Dighgha Nikaya, Majhim Nikaya, Sanyukta Nikaya, Anguttar Nikaya and Khuddak/ Kshudraka Nikaya).

Milindapanho (i.e. Questions of Milinda)—a dialogue between *Milinda* (identical with Indo-Greek ruler *Menander*) and Buddhist saint *Nagasena*.

Dipavamsha and *Mahavamsha*—The great chronicles of Sri Lanka.

II. Sanskrit Texts

Buddha Charita, Saundarananda, Sutralankar, Sariputra Prakaran and Vajra Suchi–*Ashwagosha*; Mahavibhasha Shastra–*Vasumitra*; Visudhamagga, Atthakathayen and Sumangalvasini–*Buddhagosha*; Madhyamika Karika and Prajnaparimita Karika–*Nagarjuna* etc.

Sects of Buddhism

Hinayana (i.e. the Lesser Vehicle) : 1. Its followers believed in the original teaching of Buddha 2. They sought individual salvation through self-discipline and meditation. 3. They did not believe in idol-worship. 4. They favoured *Pali* language. 5. It is known as 'Southern Buddhist Religion', because it prevailed in the South of India, e.g. Sri Lanka, Burma (Myanmar), Syam (Thailand), Java etc. 6. There were two subsects of Hinayana– *Vaibhasika* and *Sautantrika*.

Mahayana (i.e. the Greater Vehicle) : 1. Its followers believed in the heavenliness of Buddha 2. They sought the salvation of all through the grace and help of Buddha and Bodhisatva 3. They believed in idol-worship 4. They favoured *Sanskrit* language 5. It is known as 'Northern Buddhist Religion', because it prevailed in the North of India, e.g. China, Korea, Japan, etc. 6. There were two subsects of Mahayana—*Madhyamika/ Shunyavada* (founder–Nagarjuna) and *Yogachar/ Vijnanavada* (founder–Maitreyanath and his disciple Asanga).

***Vajrayana*:** 1. Its followers believed that salvation could be best attained by acquiring the magical power, which they called *Vajra*. 2. The chief divinities of this new sect were *the Taras*. 3. It became popular in Eastern India, particularly Bengal and Bihar.

Bodhisattvas

1. Vajrapani : like Indra, he holds a thunderbolt, foe of sin and evil.
2. Avlokitesvara (the lord who looks down) also called *Padmapani* (the lotus bearer) : kind-hearted.
3. Manjushri (Stimulator of understanding) : He holds a book describing 10 paramitas (spiritual perfections).
4. Maitreya : The future Buddha.
5. Kshitigriha : guardian of purgatories.
6. Amitabha/ Amitayusha : Buddha of heaven.

Sacred Shrines

- Lumbini, Bodh Gaya, Sarnath and Kusinagar, where the four principal events of the Buddha's life, namely Birth, Enlightenment, First Sermon and Death took place. To these are added four places Sravasti, Rajgriha, Vaishali and Sankasya–these eight places have all along been considered as the eight holy places (Ashtasthanas).
- Other centres of Buddhism in Ancient India–Amaravati and Nagarjunikonda in Andhra Pradesh; Nalanda in Bihar; Junagadh and Vallabhi in Gujarat; Sanchi and Bharhut in M.P.; Ajanta-Ellora in Maharashtra; Dhaulagiri in Orissa; Kannauj, Kaushambi and Mathura in U.P.; and Jagadala and Somapuri in West Bengal.
- Buddhist architecture was developed in three forms :
  1. Stupa—relics of the Buddha or some prominent Buddhist monks are preserved
  2. Chaitya—prayer hall
  3. Vihara—residence

Buddhist Universities	Place	Founder
Nalanda	Badagaon, Bihar	Kumargupta I (Gupta ruler)
Odantpuri	Biharsharif, Bihar	Gopala (Pala ruler)
Vikramshila	Bhagalpur, Bihar	Dharmapala (Pala ruler)
Somapuri	North Bengal	Dharmapala (Pala ruler)
Jagadal	Bengal	Ramapala (Pala ruler)
Vallabhi	Gujarat	Bhattarka (Maitrak ruler)

Royal Patrons : Bimbisara and Ajatashatru *(Magadhan ruler)*, Prasenjit *(Kosala ruler)*, Udayan *(Vatsa ruler)*, Pradyota *(Avanti ruler)*, Ashoka and Dasharatha *(Mauryan ruler)*, Milinda/Menander *(Indo-Greek ruler)*, Kanishka *(Kushana ruler)*, Harshavardhana *(Vardhana ruler)*; Gopala, Dharmapala and Rampala *(Pala rulers)*.

Note :

1. Ashoka, the greatest patron of Buddhism, called 3rd Buddhist council and sent mission, comprising of his son Mahendra and his daughter Sanghamitra to SriLanka.
2. Kanishka called 4th Buddhist council and sent mission to China, Korea and Japan.
3. Palas of Bengal and Bihar were last great patrons of Buddhism.

Jainism

- According to Jain tradition there were 24 *Thirthankaras* (literally Ford maker, across the stream of existence), the first being Rishabhadeva/Adinatha and last being Mahavira.
- The *Vishnu Purana* and the *Bhagavat Purana* describe Rishabha as an incarnation of Narayana.
- The name of two Jain Tirthankaras–*Rishabha* and *Arishtanemi*–are found in the *Rig Veda*.
- Historicity of early 22 Thirthankaras is ambiguous.
- We have historical proof of only the last two–*Parshwanath* (23rd) and *Mahavira* (24th).
- *Parshwanath* was a prince of Benaras who abandoned the throne and led the life of a hermit and died at *Sammet-Shikar/ Parshwanath (Parasanath)* Hill, *Giridih, Jharkhand*. His four main teachings (*Chaturthi*) were 1. *Ahimsa* (non-injury) 2. *Satya* (non-lying) 3. *Asteya* (non stealing) 4. *Aparigraha* (non-possession). *Mahavira* adopted all these four teachings and added one more, that is *Brahmacharya* (Chastity) to it.

24 Tirthankaras

	Name	Symbol
1.	Rishabha	Bull
2.	Ajitnath	Elephant
3.	Sambharnath	Horse
4.	Abhiaandam	Monkey
5.	Sumatinath	Curlew
6.	Padmaprabhu	Red Lotus
7.	Suparswanath	Swastik
8.	Chandraji Prabhu	Moon
9.	Suvidhinath	Crocodile
10.	Shitalnath	Srivatsa
11.	Shreganath	Rhinoceros
12.	Vasupujya	Buffalo
13.	Vimalnath	Boar
14.	Anantnath	Falcon
15.	Dharmanath	Vajra
16.	Shantinath	Deer
17.	Kuntunath	He-Goat
18.	Arnath	Fish
19.	Mallinath	Waterpot
20.	Muniswasth	Tortoise
21.	Neminath	Blue Lotus
22.	Arishtanemi	Conch Shell
23.	Parshwanath	Serpent
24.	Mahavira	Lion

Mahavira's Life

- Mahavira was born in 540 BC in a village *Kundgrama* near *Vaishali* in *Bihar*.
- His father *Siddhartha* was the head of the *Jnathrika Kshtriya* clan under Vajji of Vaishali and his mother *Trishala* was the sister of Chetaka, the king of Vaishali. Mahavira was also related to Bimbisara, the ruler of Magadha, who had married Chellana, the daughter of Chetaka.
- Mahavira was married to *Yashoda* (daughter of Samarvira king) and a

produced a daughter *Anonja Priyadarshini* whose husband *Jamali*, became the first disciple of Mahavira.

- At the age of 30, after the death of his father, he renounced his family, became an ascetic and proceeded in search of truth. He was accompained by *Makkhal Gosala*, but later due to some differences Gosala left him and founded *Ajivika* sect.
- At the age of 42, under a sal tree at *Jambhikagrama* on the bank of river *Rijupalika*, Mahavira attained *Kaivalya* (supreme knowledge).
- From now onwards he was called *Kevalin* (perfect learned), *Jina* or *Jitendriya* (one who conquered his senses), *Nrigrantha* (free from all bonds), *Arhant* (blessed one) and *Mahavira* (the brave) and his followers were named jain.
- He delivered his first sermon at *Pava* to his 11 disciples (known as *11 Gandharas/ Gandharvas*). Later, he founded a *Jain Sangha* (Jain commune) at Pava.
- At the Age of 72 in 468 BC, he passed away at *Pavapuri* near *Biharsharif* in *Bihar*. *Sudharma* only one of 11 Ganadharas who survived after the death of Mahavira.

Doctrines of Jainism

Triratna i.e. Three Gems of Jainism

The aim of existence is to attain through the triratna of

1. *Samyak Shradha/ Viswas* (Right faith) : It is the belief in Thirathankaras.
2. *Samyak Jnan* (Right knowledge) : It is the knowledge of the Jain creed.
3. *Samyak Karma/ Acharana* (Right action/ conduct) : It is the practice of the 5 vows of Jainism.

Pancha Mahavaratas i.e. Five Vows of Jainism

Five vows of Jainism are : 1. *Ahimsa* (non-injury) 2. *Satya* (non-lying) 3. *Asteya* (non-stealing) 4. *Aparigraha* (non-possession) 5. *Brahmacharya* (chastity). The first four vows were laid down by Parshwanath. The fifth one was added by Mahavira.

Types of Knowledge

There are 5 types of knowledge : 1. *Mati jnana*–Perception through activity of sense organs, including the mind 2. *Shruta jnana*–Knowledge revealed by scriptures 3. *Avadhi jnana*–Clairvoyant perception 4. *Manahparyaya jnana*–Telepathic knowledge 5. *Keval jnana*–Temporal knowledge or Omniscience.

***Syadvada* i.e. The Theory of May Be/Perhaps** : All our judgements are necessarily relative, conditional and limited. According to Syadavada seven modes of prediction (*Saptabhangi Nayavad*) are possible. Absolute affirmation and absolute negation both are wrong. All judgements are conditional. Syadvada is also known as *Anekantvada* i.e. the theory of plurality or multi-sidedness.

The Principles of Jainism as Preached by Mahavira : 1. Rejected the authority of the Vedas and vedic rituals 2. Did not believe in the existence of God. 3. Believed in Karma and the transmigration of soul 4. Laid great emphasis on equality.

Jain Council	Year	Venue	Chairman	Patron	Result
1st	300 BC	Patliputra	Sthulabhadra	Chandragupta Maurya	Compilation of 12 Angas.
2nd	512 AD	Vallabhi	Devardhi Kshmasramana	---	Final compilation of 12 Angas and 12 Upangas.

Jain Literature

- The sacred literature of the Svetambaras is written in a type of *Prakrit* called *Ardhamagadhi Prakrit*, and may be classified as follows : 1. 12 *Angas* 2. 12 *Upangas* 3. 10 *Parikarnas* 4. 6 *Chhedasutras* 5. 4 *Mulasutras* 6. 2 *Sutra-Granthas*.

Note : 14 Purvas/Parvas–It is the part of 12 Angas and the oldest text of Mahavira's preachings.

- Besides this, the important jain texts are :
  1. *Kalpasutra* (in Sanskrit)—Bhadrabahu 2. *Bhadrabahu Charita* 3. *Parishishta Parvan* (an appendix of *Trishashthishalaka Purush*)–Hemchandra.

Sects of Jainism

- In 298 BC, there was a serious famine in Magadha (South Bihar) leading to a great exodus of many Jain monks to the Deccan and South India *(Shravanbelgola)* along with *Bhadrabahu* and *Chandragupta Maurya*. They returned back after 12 years. The leader of the group, which stayed back at Magadha was *Sthulabhadra*. When the Jains (Bhadrabahu and others) returned from South India, they held that complete nudity be an essential part of the teachings of Mahavira, while the monks in Magadha began to put on white clothes.
- Thus arose the two sects *Shvetambaras* (white clad) and *Digambaras* (sky-clad).
  1. *Shvetambaras* (i.e. those who put on white robes)—*Sthulabhadra*
  2. *Digambaras* (i.e. those who were stark naked)—*Bhadrabahu*.

Examples of Jain Architecture

1. Gumphas i.e. Caves e.g. Hathigumpha, Baghagumpha etc., Udaigiri and Khandagiri (Orissa)—Kharvela
2. Dilwara temples e.g. Vimalavasahi temple, Tejapala temple–Mount Abu (Rajasthan)
3. Temples—Giranar and Palitana (Gujarat)
4. Temples e.g. Pavapuri temple, Rajagriha temple–Bihar
5. Statue of *Gometeshwar/Bahubali*—Shravanbelgola (Karnataka).

Royal Patrons

I. North India :

1. Nandas; Bimbisar, Ajatshatru and Udayin (Haryank); Chandragupta Maurya, Bindusara and Samprati (Mauryan)–Magadha
2. Pradyota (Avanti)
3. Udayan (Sindhu-Sauvira)
4. Kharavela (Kalinga).

II. South India :

1. Ganga Dynasty
2. Kadamb Dynasty
3. Amoghavarsha (Rashtrakuta Dynasty)
4. Siddharaj Jai Singh and Kumarpala (Chaulukya/Solanki) – the last great patrons of Jainism.

4. Maurya Period (322 BC-185 BC)

Sources for Mauryan History

1. Literary Sources

- ➢ *Kautilya's 'Arthasastra'*: It is the most important literary source for the Mauryas. It is a treatise on government and polity. It gives a clear and methodological analysis of political and economic conditions of the Mauryan period.
- ➢ *Megasthenese's 'Indica'*: Megasthenese was the ambassador of Selecus Nikator in the court of Chandragupta Maurya. His 'Indica' is foremost among all the foreigners' accounts for Maurya. But its original copy is lost, and it has survived only as quotations in the text of classical Greek writers, such as *Strabo, Diodorous, Arrian, Plutarch* and Latin writers such as *Pliny* and *Justin*. It refers to Mauryan administration, 7-caste system, absence of slavary and usuary in India etc.
- ➢ *Visakha Datta's 'Mudra Rakshasa'* : Though it was written during Gupta Period, it describes how Chandragupta Maurya get Chanakya's assistance to overthrow the Nandas. Besides this, it gives an excellent account of the prevailing socio-economic conditions.
- ➢ *Puranas* : Though they are a collection of legends interspread with religious teachings, they give us the chronology and lists of Mauryan kings.
- ➢ *Buddhist Literature* : 1. Indian Buddhist text *Jatakas* (a part of Khuddaknikaya of Suttapitaka which describes 549 stories of Buddha's previous births) reveal a general picture of socio-economic conditions of Mauryan period. 2. Ceylonese Buddhist chronicles *Dipavamsa* and *Mahavamsa* describe the part played by Ashoka in spreading Buddhism to Sri Lanka. 3. Tibetan Buddhist text *Divyavadana* gives information about Ashoka and his efforts to spread Buddhism.

2. Archaeological Sources

- ➢ *Ashokan Edicts and inscriptions* : There are Rock Edicts, Pillar Edicts and Cave Inscriptions located at several places in the Indian sub-continent. Their importance came to be appreciated only after their decipheration by *James Princep* in 1837 and also the identification of Ashoka as the author of these edicts in the beginning of the 20th century. Majority of them are in the nature of Ashoka's proclamations to the public at large, and only a small group of them describe his own acceptance of Buddhism and his relationship with the Sangha (Commune). Though *Prakrit* was the language used in them, the script varied from region to region (*Kharoshti* in the North-West, *Greek* and *Aramaic* in the West and *Brahmi* in the East of India).
- ➢ *Other Inscriptions* : Junagadh Rock Inscription of Rudradaman, Sohgaura Copper Plate Inscription in Gorakhpur district of U.P., Mahasthan Inscription in Bogara district of Bangladesh. – All these are directly concerned with the Mauryan Period, though they are believed to be not necessarily those of Ashoka.
- ➢ *Material Remains* : Wooden palace of Chandragupta Maurya, Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW), Silver and Copper punch-marked coins found in Kumharar (Patna) and other places are the material remains of the Mauryan period.

Ashokan Edicts and Inscriptions	Contents	Found at
I. Rock Edicts		
(i) 14 Major Rock Edicts	Various Principles of Dhamma	Manshera (Pakistan) Shahbajgarhi (Mardan, Pakistan), Kalsi (Dehradun, Uttarakhand), Junagadh (Girnar, Gujarat), Sopara (Thane, Maharashtra), Yerragudi (Kurnul, Andhra Pradesh), Dhauli (Khurda, Orissa), Jaugada (Ganjam, Orissa)
(ii) 2 Kalinga Rock Edicts	New system of administration after the Kalinga war	Dauli or Tosali (Khurda, Orrisa), Jaugada (Ganjam, Orissa)
(iii) Minor Rock Edicts	Personal history of Ashoka and summary of his dhamma	Sasaram (Bihar), Maski (Andhra Pradesh), Bhabru-Bairat (Rajasthan), Rupanath (MP), Gavimath, Palkig-undu, Siddhpur, Jating Rameshwar, Brahmagiri (Karnataka)
(iv) Bhabru-Bairat Rock Edicts	Ashoka' conversion to Buddhism	Bhabru-Bairat (Rajasthan)
II. Pillar Edicts		
(i) 7 Pillar Edicts	Appendix to rock Edicts	Merrut-Delhi (Chhoti Lata), Topra-Delhi (Badi Lata), Allahabad (UP); Lauriya Nandangadh, Lauriya Areraj and Rampurva (Bihar)
(ii) 4 Minor Pillar Edicts	Signs of Ashoka's fanaticism to Dhamma	Sanchi (MP), Sarnath and Allahabad (UP)
(iii) 2 Tarai Pillar Edicts	Ashoka's respect for Buddhism	Rummandei/Lumbini and Nigaliva (Tarai of Nepal)
III. Cave Edicts		
3 Barabar Cave Edicts	Ashoka's toleration	Barabar Hills (Gaya, Bihar)

Ashokan 14 Major Rock Edicts

	Contents
1.	Prohibition of animal sacrifices and festive gatherings.
2.	Measures of social welfare.
3.	Respect to Brahamanas.
4.	Courtesy to relatives, elders, consideration for animals.
5.	Appointment of Dhamma Mahamatras and their duties.
6.	Need for efficient organisation of administration (orders to Dhamma Mahamatras).
7.	Need for tolerance among all religious sects.
8.	System of Dhamma-yatras.
9.	Attack on meaningless ceremonies and rituals.
10.	Conquest through Dhamma instead of war.
11.	Explanation of Dhamma-policy.
12.	Appeal for tolerance among all religious sects.
13.	Kalinga war, mention 5 contemporary Hellenic (Greek) kings.
14.	Inspiration to spend religious life.

Origin of the Mauryas

- The Puranas describe them as *Shudras*.
- 'Mudrakshasa' of Vishakhadatta uses the terms *Vrishal/ Kulhina* (of low clan).
- The Classical writers, such as Justin, describe Chandragupta only as a man of humble origin.
- The Junagarh Rock Inscription of Rudradaman (150 AD) has some indirect evidence, suggesting that the Mauryas might have been of *Vaishya* origin.
- The Buddhist work, on the other hand, try to link the Mauryan dynasty with the *Sakya Kshatriya* clan to which Buddha belonged. According to them, the region from which the Mauryas came was full of peacocks *(Mor)*, and hence they came to be known as '*Moriyas*'. It is obvious from this that the Buddhists were trying to elevate the social position of Ashoka (their patron) and his predecessors.
- In conclusion, we can say that the Mauryas belonged to the *Moriya* tribe and were certainly of a low caste, though it is not clear as to which low caste.

Chandragupta Maurya : 322 BC-298 BC

- Chandragupta dethroned the last Nanda ruler *Dhananand* and occupied *Patliputra* in 322 BC with the help of *Kautilya (Chankya)*.
- In 305 BC, Chandragupta Maurya defeated *Selecus Nikator*, who surrendered a vast territory including Aria (herat), Arachosia (Kandhar), Gedrosia (Baluchistan) and Paropanisade (Kabul), in return for 500 elephants. According to treaty between Chandragupta and Selecus, the Hindukush became boundry between their states.
- *Megasthenese* was a Greek ambassador sent to the court of Chandragupta Maurya by Selecus Nikator.
- Chandragupta became a jain and went to *Chandragiri Hill, Sravanbelgola* (Karnataka) with Bhadrabahu, where he died by slow starvation *(Kaya-Klesha/Salekhan)*.
- Under Chanragupta Maurya, for the first time, the whole of Northern India was united.
- Trade flourished, agriculture was regulated, weights and measures were standardised and money came into use.
- Taxation, sanitation and famine relief became the concerns of the state.

Bindusara : 298 BC-273 BC

- Chandragupta Maurya was succeeded by his son Bindusara.
- Bindusara, known to the Greeks as *Amitrochates* (derived from the Sanskrit word *Amitraghata* i.e. slayers of foes), is said to have carried his arms to the Deccan (upto Mysore).
- Bindusara asked *Antiochus I* of *Syria* to send some sweet wine, dried figs and a sophist. Antiochus I sent wine and figs but politely replied that Greek philosphers are not for sale.
- Bindusara patronised *Ajivikas*.

Ashoka : 273 BC-232 BC

- According to Buddhist texts when Ashoka, the son of Bindusara, was born, his mother, happy to have a child, said, 'Now I am Ashoka', i.e., without sorrow. And so the child was named.

- It appears from the available evidence (Buddhist literature mainly) that there was a struggle for the throne among the princes on the death of Bindusara.
- According to Buddhist tradition, Ashoka usurped the throne after killing his 99 brothers and spared *Tissa*, the youngest one. Radhagupta a minister of Bindusara helped him in fratricidal struggle.
- This war of succession accounts for interregnum of four years (273-269 BC), and only after securing his position on the throne, Ashoka had himself formally crowned in 269 BC.
- Under Ashoka, the Mauryan Empire reached its climax. For the first time, the whole of the sub-continent, leaving out the extreme south, was under imperial control.

Ashoka	Maski minor rock edict.
Devanampriyas Ashoka Rajas	Gurjara minor rock edict
Raja Ashoka	Nittur minor rock edict
Raja Ashoka Dewanampiya	Udegolum minor rock edict.
Piyadassi Raja Magadh	Bhabru-Bairat minor rock edict.
Piyadassi Raja	Barabar cave inscription
Piyadassi	Kandhar major rock edict and Deepvamsa.
Ashoka Maurya	Rudradaman's Junagarh rock edict.
Ashoka Vardhan	Puranas.

- Ashoka fought the *Kalinga war* in 261 BC in 9th years of his coronation. The king was moved by the massacre in this war and therefore abandoned the policy of physical occupation in favour of policy of cultural conquest. In other words, *Bherighosa* was replaced by *Dhammaghosa*.
- Ashoka was not an extreme pacifist. He did not pursue the policy of peace for sake of peace under all conditions. Thus, he retained Kalinga after his conquest and incorporated it into his empire.
- Ashoka sent missionaries to the kingdoms of the Cholas and the Pandyas, and five states ruled by Greek kings (Antiochus II, Syria; Philadelphos Ptolemy II, Egypt; Antigonus, Mecedonia; Maggus, Syrina; Alexander, Epirus). We also know that he sent missionaries to Ceylon (Sri Lanka) and Suvarnbhumi (Burna) and also parts of South-East Asia.

Ashoka's Dhamma

- Ashoka's Dhamma cannot be regarded as a sectarian faith. Its broad objective was to preserve the social order it ordained that people should obey their parents, pay respect to Brahmanas and Buddhist monks and show mercy to slaves and servants.
- He held that if people behaved well they would attain Swarga (heaven). He did never say that they would attain Nirvana, which was the goal of Buddhist teachings.

Later Mauryas : 232 BC-185 BC

- The Mauryan dynasty lasted 137 years.
- Ashoka's death was followed by the division of the Mauryan Empire into two parts-Western and Eastern.

- The Western part came to be ruled by *Kunala* (son of Ashoka) and the Eastern part came to be ruled by *Dasaratha*.
- The last Mauryan ruler, *Brihadratha*, was assassinated in 185 BC by his commender-in-chief, *Pushyamitra Sunga*, who established his own Sunga dynasty.
- **Causes for the Decline :** 1. Highly centralised administration *(Romila Thapar)* 2. Pacific policy of Ashoka *(H.C. Raychaudhuri)* 3. Brahmanical reaction *(H.P. Sastri)* 4. The partition of the Mauryan Empire 5. Weak later-Mauryan Rulers 6. Pressure on Mauryan economy (D.D. Kosambi) 7. Neglect of North-West Frontier.

Mauryan kings	Other names of the king	Ambassdor (Greek king)
Chandragupta	Sandrocottus-Strabo, Justin Androcottus-Arrian, Plutarch Vrishala/Kulahina (i.e. of low clan)–Vishakhadatta (Mudrarakshasa)	Megasthenese (302-298 BC) (Selecus Nikator-Persia and Babylonia)
Bindusara	Amitrochates—Greek texts Vindupala—Chinease text Sinhasena—Jain text Bhadrasara—Vayu Purana	Dimachos (Antiochus I - Syria) Dionysius (Philadelphos/Potlemy II-Egypt)

Mauryan Administration

I. Central Administration

- **The king :** The Mauryan government was a centralised bureaucracy of which the nucleus was the king. According to Kautilya/Chanakya, there are 7 elements of states *(Saptanga theory)*–*Raja* (the king), *Amatya* (the secretaries), *Janapada* (territory), *Durg* (Fort), *Kosha* (the treasure), *Sena* (Army) and *Mitra* (Friend). The king was regarded as the soul among all the seven elements of the state.
- **The Mantri Prishad :** The king was assisted by Mantri Parishad, whose members included – 1. *The Yuvaraja* (the crown prince) 2. *The purohita* (the chief priest) 3. *The Senapati* (the commander-in-chief) (iv) a few other ministers.

Important officials

Sannidhata	Chief treasury officer
Samaharta	The collector general of revenue
Vyavaharika (Dharmastha)	Chief Justice of Dharmasthiya Nyayalaya (Civil Court)
Pradeshta	Chief Justice of Kantakashodhan Nyayalaya (Criminal Court)
Dhamma Mahamatra	A new post created by Ashoka, empowered with the dual functions of propagating Dhamma and taking care of the common folk for their material well-being.
Rashtrapala/Kumara	The viceroys in charge of a province
Pradesika	They were the modern district magistrate
Rajukas	They were the later day Patwaris and responsible for surveying and assessing the land
Yukta	A subordinate revenue officer of the district level
Sthanika	The collecting officer directly under the control of the Pradeshika
Gopa	Responsible for accounts
Nagaraka	The officer in charge of the city administration
Akshapatala	Accountant General
Sitaadhyaksha	Supervised agriculture
Panyadhyaksha	Superintendent of commerce
Samsthaadhyaksha	Superintendent of Market
Pautavadhyaksha	Superintendent of weights and measures
Navaadhyaksha	Superintendent of ships
Sulkaadhyaksha	Collector of tolls
Akaradhyaksha	Superintendent of mines
Lohadhyaksha	Superintendent of Iron

II. Provincial Administration

Province	Capital
Uttarapatha i.e. Northern Province	Taxila
Avantirashtra i.e. Western Province	Ujjain
Prachi i.e. Eastern and Central Province	Patliputra
Kalinga i.e. Eastern Province	Toshali
Dakshinapatha i.e. Southern Province	Suvarnagiri

Note : According to the Junagadh Rock Edict of Rudradaman, Saurashtra was governed by Pushyagupta, the vaishya, at the time of Chandragupta Maurya and by the Yavan king Tushaspa at the time of Ashoka.

Administrative Unit	Head
Chakra (i.e. province)	Rashtrapala/Kumara
Ahar/Vishaya (i.e. District)	Pradeshika (administrative) and Rajuka (land revenue)
Sangrahana (a group of 10 villages)	Gopa
Gram (i.e. village)	Gramika

III. Municipal Administration

- Kautilya devotes a full chapter to the rules of the *Nagarak* i.e. city superintendent. His chief duty was maintenance of law and order.
- Megasthenese account of the system : 6 committees of five members each, and their functions; 1st – Industrial Arts, 2nd – Entertainment of Foreigners, 3rd – Registration of Births and Deaths, 4th – Trade and Commerce, 5th – Public sale of manufactured goods, and 6th– Collection of taxes on the articles sold (1/10th of purchase price).

IV. Army

- The most striking feature of Mauryan administration was the maintenance of a huge army. They also maintained a Navy.
- According to Megasthenese the administration of Army was carried by a board of 30 officers divided into 6 committee, each committee consisting of 5 members. They are 1. Infantry 2. Cavalry 3. Elephants 4. Chariots 5. Navy 6. Transport.
- In the Mauryan period, there were two types of *Gudhapurushas* (detectives)– *Sansthan* (Stationary) and *Sanchari* (Wandering).

Economy

- The state controlled almost all economic activities.
- Tax collected from peasants varied from 1/4 to 1/6 of the produce.
- The state also provided irrigation facilities (*Setubandha*) and charged water tax.
- Tolls were also levied on commodities brought to town for sale and they were collected at gate.
- The state enjoyed monopoly in mining, forest, salt, sale of liquor, manufacture of arms etc.
- *Sohgaura* (Gorakhpur district, U.P.) copper plate inscription and *Mahasthana* (Bogara district, Bangladesh) inscription deal with the relief measures to be adopted during a famine.
- **Important ports:** *Bharukachch/Bharoch* and *Supara* (Western coast), *Tamralipti* in Bengal (Eastern coast).
- During Mauryan period, the punch-marked coins (mostly of silver) were the common units of transactions.

Society

- *Kautilya/Chanakya/Vishnugupta* is not as rigid on the Varna system as the earlier Smriti writers.
- Kautilya's 'Arthashastra' looked upon the *Shudras* as an Aryan community which is distinguished from Malechha or non-Aryan community.
- Reduction of gap between the *Vaishyas* (most of whom were now concentrating on trade though others continued cultivation) and the *Shudras* (quite a few of whom were now agriculturists and others being artisans).
- *Magasthenese* states that Indian society was divided into 7 classes :

  1. Philosophers 2. Farmers 3. Soldiers 4. Herdsmen 5. Artisans 6. Magistrates 7. Councillors. The 'classes' mentioned above appear to have been economic than social.
- Though Megasthenese stated that there were no slavery in India; yet, according to Indian sources, slavery was a recognised institution during Mauryan reign. It appears that Megasthenese was thinking of slavery in full legal sense as it existed in the West.
- Women occupied a high position and freedom in the Mauryan society. According to Kautilya, women were permitted to have a divorce or remarry. Women were employed as personal body-guards of the king, spies and in other diverse jobs.

Mauryan Art

- Anand Coomarswamy classified Mauryan Art into two groups :

1. **Royal/Court Art** : The Royal Palace of Chandragupta Maurya (Kumharar, Patna) and City of Patliputra, Ashokan Pillars, Caves, Stupas etc.
2. **Folk/Popular Art** : 1. Figure Sculpture of Yaksha-Yakshini etc. e.g. Yaksha of Parkham (Mathura), Yakshini of Besanagar/Vidisha (M.P.), Chanwar-bearer Yakshini of Didarganj (Patna). 2. Terracotta objects. 3. Inscribed stone portrait of Emperor Ashok/Broken relief sculpture of Emperor Ashok (Kanaganhalli, Karnataka).

- The Mauryas introduced stone masonry on large scale during Ashoka.
- Fragments of stone pillars and wooden floor and ceiling indicating the existence of an 80-pillared hall have been discovered at Kumhrar on outskirts of Patna. Seeing this *Fahien* remarks as follows : '*These palaces are so beautiful and excellent that they appear to be the creation of God rather than of men*'.
- The pillars represent the masterpieces of Mauryan sculpture. Each pillar is made of single piece of sandstone, only their capitals, which are beautiful pieces of sculpture in form of lion or bulls, are joined with pillar on the top.
- Four lion capital at Sarnath and Sanchi. Lioned capital of Sarnath was adopted as 'National Emblem' of India on 26 Jan., 1950.
- Single lion capital at Rampurva and Lauriya Nandangarh.
- Single bull capital at Rampurva.
- A carved elephant at Dhauli and engraved elephant at Kalsi.
- The Mauryan artisans who started the practice of hewing out caves from rocks for monks to live in. The earliest example are *Barabar caves* (Sudama, World Hut, Chaupada of Karna, Rishi Lomesh) in Gaya (Ashokan). The other examples are *Nagarjuni caves* in Gaya *(Dasharath)*.
- Stupas were built throughout the empire to enshrine the relics of Buddha. Of these, the most famous are at Sanchi and Bharhuta.

> 'At all times, whether I am eating, or am in the women's apartments, or in my inner apartments, or at the cattleshed, or in my carriage, or in my gardens–wherever I may be–my Mahamattar should keep me in touch with public business'. —*Rock Edict VI*
>
> 'All men are my children'. —*Kalinga Rock Edict I (Dhauli)*

5.I. Post-Maurya/Pre-Gupta Period (185 BC-319 AD)

I. Native Successors of Mauryas

Sunga Dynasty : 185 BC - 73 BC **[Capital-Vidisha (M.P.)]**

- Sunga Dynasty was established by *Pushymitra Sunga*, a Brahmin Commander-in-Chief of last Mauryan ruler named Brihadratha in 185 BC.
- Pushyamitra was a staunch adherent of orthodox Hinduism. However, the great Buddhist stupa at Bharhut (in M.P.) was built during the reign of Sungas.
- Pushyamitra was succeeded by his son *Agnimitra*, the hero of Kalidasa's drama *'Malvikagnimitra'*.
- After Agnimitra, a series of weak rulers such as Vasumitra, Vajramitra, Bhagabhadra, Devabhuti, followed, leading to the decline of the dynasty.
- During their rule there was a revival of Brahminical influence. The Bhagavata religion became important.
- *Patanjali*, author of the 'Mahabhasya', was born at Gonarda in Central India. Patanjali was the priest of 2 Asvamedha Yajnas, performed by Pushymitra Sunga.
- In arts, the Bharhut Stupa is the most famous monument of the Sunga period.
- The fine gateway railing which surrounds the Sanchi stupa, built by Ashoka, constructed during the Sunga period.
- Other examples of Sunga Art : Vihar, Chaitya and Stupa of Bhaja (Poona), Amaravati Stupa, Nasika Chaitya etc.

Kanva Dynasty : 73 BC - 28 BC [Capital - Patliputra]

- In 73 BC, Devabhuti, the last ruler of the Sunga dynasty, was murdered by his minister *Vasudeva*, who usurped the throne and founded the Kanva dynasty.
- The period of Kanva rule came to an end in 28 BC.

Satavahana Dynasty : 60 BC - 225 AD

[Capital - Pratishtana/Paithan (Maharashtra)]

- The most important of the native successors of the Mauryas in the Deccan and Central India were the Satvahanas.
- The Satvahanas are considered to be identical with the Andhras who were mentioned in the Puranas.
- The early Satvahana kings appeared not in Andhra but in Maharashtra where most of their early inscriptions have been found.
- *Simuka* (60 BC-37 BC) was the founder of the Satvahana dynasty.
- *Satakarni I*, its 3rd ruler, raised its power and prestige by conquests.
- *Hala*, its 17th ruler, was the author of 'Gathasaptasati' or, 'Sattasai' in Prakrit. *Gunadhya*, the author of 'Vrihat Katha' (in Prakrit), was the contemporary of Hala.
- It was *Gautamiputra Satakarni* (106 - 130 AD) who revived the Satavahana power and defeated the Saka Ksatrap Nahapana. He was the greatest Satavahan ruler (23rd Satavahana ruler).
- *Vasishthiputra Sri Satakarni*, its 24th ruler, was married to the daughter of Saka Kstrapa Rudradaman, but defeated by him twice.
- *Yajna Sri Satakarni*, its 27th ruler, was the dynasty's last great ruler.
- *Pulamavi III*, its 30th ruler, was the last Satavahana ruler.
- Satavahanas were finally succeeded by the Ikshvakus in 3rd Century AD.
- Satavahanas started the practice of donating land with fiscal and administrative immunities to Brahmanas and Buddhist monks, which eventually weakened their authority. The earliest inscriptional evidence of land grant in India belongs to 1st century BC.
- Under the Satavahanas, many Chaityas (worship halls) and Viharas (monasteries) were cut out from rocks mainly in North-West Deccan or Maharashtra. The famous examples were *Nasik*, *Kanheri* and *Karle*.
- Stupas (large round structure erected over a sacred relic) were seen scattered all around Ellora. The most famous of these attributed to the Satavahana period are *Amravati*, a sculptural treasure house, and *Nagarjunakonda*.
- The official language of the Satavahanas was *Prakrit*.
- The Satavahanas issued their coins in lead (mainly), copper, bronze and potin.

Cheti/Chedi Dynasty of Kalinga

- The history of Kalinga after the death of Ashoka is shrouded in obscurity. A new dynasty, known as the Cheti or Chedi dynasty, rose in the region probably in the 1st century BC.
- Our information about this dynasty is derived solely from the *Hathigumpha inscription* (near Bhubaneshwar, Orissa) of *Kharavela*, the 3rd ruler of dynasty.
- A follower of Jainism, Kharavela was liberal patron of Jain monks for whose residence he constructed caves on the *Udayagiri* hill, near Bhubaneshwar in Orissa.

II. Foreign Successors of Mauryas

The Indo-Greeks : 2nd Century BC

- Indo-Greeks (Bacterian Greeks) were the first foreign rulers of North-Western India in the Post-Maurya period.
- The most famous Indo-Greek ruler was *Menander* (165 BC-145 BC), also known as *Milinda*. He was converted to Buddhism by Nagasena or Nagarjuna.
- The Indo-Greek rule is important in the history of India because of the large number of coins which they issued.
- The Indo-Greeks were the first rulers in India to issue coins which can definitely be attributed to the kings.
- They were the first to issue gold coins.
- They introduced Hellenic i.e. Greek features in art giving rise to *Gandhar school* in the North-Western India.

The Sakas : 1st Century BC-4th Century AD

- The *Sakas*, also known as *Scythians*, replaced the Indo-Greeks in India.
- Among the five branches of Sakas with their seats of power in different parts of India, the most important was the one which ruled in Western India till the 4th Century AD.
- The most famous Saka ruler in India was *Rudradaman* (130 AD-150 AD). He is famous not only for his military conquests (particularly against the Satavahanas) but also for his public works (he repaired the famous Sudarsan lake of the Mauryan period) and his patronage of Sanskrit (he issued the first-ever long inscription in chaste Sanskrit).
- Other important Saka ruler in India were Nahapana, Ushavadeva, Ghamatika, Chashtana etc.
- In about 58 BC a king of Ujjain - Vikramaditya - is supposed to have fought effectively against the Sakas. An era called *Vikrama Samvat* is reckoned from 58 BC.

The Parthians : 1st Century BC-1st Century AD

- Originally the *Parthians (Pahlavas)* lived in Iran, they replaced the Sakas in North-Western India, but controlled an area much smaller than the Sakas.
- The most famous Parthian king was *Gondophernes* in whose reign *St. Thomas* is said to have come to India for the propagation of Christianity.

The Kushans : 1st Century AD-3rd Century AD

- The Kushans were one of the five Yeuchi clans of Central Asia.
- They replaced the Parthians in North-Western India and then expanded to the lower Indus basin and the upper and middle Gangetic basin.
- The first Kushan dynasty was founded by *Kadphises I/ Kujul Kadhphises*. The second king was *Kadphises II/ Vema Kadphises* who issued gold coins.
- The second Kushan dynasty was founded by *Kanishka*. Its kings extended the Kushan power over upper India. Their capitals were at *Peshawar (Purushapura)* and *Mathura*.
- The most famous Kushan ruler was Kanishka (78 AD - 101 AD), also known as 'Second Ashoka'. He started an era in 78 AD which is now known as the *Saka era* and is used by the Government of India.

- Kanishka was a great patron of Mahayana Buddhism. In his reign *4th Buddhist council* was held in *Kundalavana, Kashmir* where the doctrines of the Mahayana form of Buddhism were finalised.
- The last great Kushan ruler was Vasudeva I.
- The Kushans controlled famous *silk route* starting from China, passing through their empire on to Iran and Western Asia. This route was a source of great income to the Kushans.
- The Kushans were the first rulers in India to issue gold coins on a wide scale.
- In the royal court of Kanishka a host of scholars found patronage. *Parsva, Vasumitra, Asvaghosha, Nagarjuna, Charak* and *Mathara* were some of them.

Facts About Post-Mauryas

Three school of Sculpture :

1. *Amaravati* School (150 BC - 400 AD) - Satvahanas
2. *Gandhar* School (50 BC - 5th Century AD) - Saka - Kushans
3. *Mathura* School (150 AD - 300 AD) - Saka-Kushans.

Note : The influence of Greek sculpture is very evident in the Gandhar school, while Mathura school, evolved an indigenous form.

- In 46-47 AD, *Hippalus*, a greek sailor, discovered the monsoon sea-route to India from West Asia.
- **Important ports** : *Barygaza (Bharoch)* and *Barbairicum* (Western Coast); *Aricameda* (*Podeku*-according to 'Periplus')-near Pandicheri-Eastern Coast.
- 'Bullion was flowing out of Rome to India'—*Pliny*.
- 'Geographica'—*Strabo*, 'Geography'—*Ptolemy*, 'Natural History'—*Pliny*, 'Periplus of the Erithryan Sea'–Unknown.
- India had contacts with Central Asia, China, Graceo-Roman World and South-East Asia.

5.II. The Sangam Period (1st-3rd Century AD)

Three Early Kingdoms

Kingdom	Emblem	Capital	First Ruler	Famous Ruler
The Chera	Bow	Vanji/Karayur; Main Ports : Muzris and Tondi	Udiyangeral	Senguttuvan (Red Chera)
The Chola	Tiger	Uraiaur–Inland capital–famous centre for cotton trade; Puhar/Kaveripattanam–coastal capital-main port	Elara	Karikala
The Pandya	Fish	Madurai–Inland capital–venue of Ist and IIIrd sangam; Korkai/Colchoi–coastal capital–famous for pearls.	Mudukudumi	Nendujeliyan

The Cheras

- The Chera country occupied the portion of both Kerala and Tamil Nadu.
- The capital of Cheras was *Vanji*.
- Its main ports were *Muzris* and *Tondi*.
- The Romans set up two regiment at *Muzris* (identical with *Cranganore*) in Chera country. They also built a temple of Augustus at Muzris.
- One of the earliest and better known among Chera rulers was *Udiyangeral*. It is said that he fed both the armies of Kurukshetra war and so earned the title Udiyangeral.
- The greatest of Chera king, however, was *Senguttuvan* or *Red Chera*. It is said that he invaded the North and even crossed the Ganges.
- He was also the founder of the famous *Pattini cult* related to worship of goddess of chastity–*Kannagi*.

The Cholas

- The Chola kingdom called as Cholamandalam was situated to the North-East of Pandya kingdom between Pennar and Vellar rivers.
- The Chola kingdom corresponded to the modern Tanjore and Tiruchchirappalli districts.
- Its inland capital was *Uraiyaur*, a place famous for cotton trade. One of the main sources of wealth for Cholas was trade in cotton cloth.
- *Puhar* identical with *Kaveripattanam* was the main port of Cholas and served as alternative capital of Cholas.
- The earliest known Chola king was *Elara* who conquered Sri Lanka and ruled over it for nearly 50 years.
- Their greatest king was *Karikala* (man with charred leg) who founded *Puhar (Kaveripattanam)* and constructed 160 km of embankment along the Kaveri river with the help of 12,000 Sri Lankan slaves.
- They maintained an efficient navy.
- The Cholas were wiped out in the attack of Pallavas from the North.

The Pandyas

- The Pandyas were first mentioned by Megasthanese, who said their Kingdom was famous for pearls.
- The Pandya territory included modern districts of Tirunelvelli, Ramand and Madurai in Tamil Nadu. It had its capital at Madurai, situated on the banks of Vaigai river.
- The Pandya king profited from trade with Roman Empire and sent emissaries to Roman emperor *Augustus* and *Trojan*.
- The Pandyas find mention in the Ramayana and Mahabharata.
- The earliest known Pandyan ruler was *Mudukudumi*.
- The greatest Pandya king, *Nendujelian*, accused *Kovalan* of theft. As a result, the city of Madurai was laid under a curse by *Kannagi* (Kovalan's wife).

Sangam Administration

- The king was the centre of administration. He was called *Ko, Mannam, Vendan Korravan* or *Iraivan*.
- *Avai* was the court of the crowned monarch.
- **Important officials** *(Panchmahasabha)*: 1. *Amaichchar* (Ministers) 2. *Purohitar* (Priests) 3. *Dutar* (Envoys) 4. *Senapatiyar* (Commander) 5. *Orar* (Spies).

- The kingdom was divided into *Mandalam/ Nadu* (Province), *Ur* (town), *Perur* (Big village), *Sirur* (Small village).
- *Pattinam* (Name of coastal town), *Puhar* (Harbour areas), *Cheri* (Suburb of town).
- **Revenue Administration :** *Karai* (Land Tax), *Irai* (Tribute paid by feudatories and booty collected in war), *Ulgu* (Custom duties), *Iravu* (Extra demand or forced gift), *Variyam* (A well known unit of territory yielding tax), *Variyar* (Tax collector).
- It is said that in Chola territory, watered by Kaveri, the space in which an elephant could lie down produced enough to feed seven persons. It implies the lands were very fertile with irrigation facilities.

Sangam Literature

Sl. No.	Venue	Under the Chairmanship of	Surviving Texts	Patron (Pandya Rulers)
Ist Sangam	Ten-Madurai (Old capital of Pandyas, engulfed in sea)	Agastasya (Agattiyar)	x	89
IInd Sangam	Kapatapuran/Alvai (engulfed in sea)	Agastaya (founder chairman); Tolakapiyyar (later chairman)	only 'Tolkappiyam'	59
IIIrd Sangam	North Madurai	Nakkirar	Ettutogai, Pattu-pattu, Patinenki-lakanakku etc.	49

- *Sangam* was an assembly of Tamil poets held under royal patronage of Pandyan kings in Madurai. According to tradition, the assembly lasted for 9,990 years and was attended by 8,598 poets and 197 Pandyan kings.
- *The first Sangam* was attended by Gods and legendary sages All its works have perished.
- Of *the second Sangam*, the only surviving work is *Tolkappiyam*, an early work on Tamil grammar written by *Tolakapiyyar*.
- Of *the third Sangam*, the mostly works are surviving. These are *Ettutogai* (i.e. 8 anthologies), *Pattupattu* (i.e. 10 idylls), *Patinenkilakanakku* (i.e. 18 didactical texts) etc.
- Ettutogai and Pattupattu are called Melakanakku (18 major works) and narrative in form. Patinenkanakku is called Kilakanakku (18 minor works) and didactive in form.
- *Kural* or *Muppal*, a part of Patinenkilakanakku and written by *Tiruvalluvar* is called 'The Bible of Tamil Land'. It is treatise on polity, ethics and social norms.

The Epics : Silappadikaram, Manimekalai, Sivaga Sindamani etc.

- Silappadikaram *(the story of the Anklet)* : Written by *Ilango Adigal*, it deals with the story of Kovalan and Madhavi of Kaveripattinam. It is called 'Illiyad of Tamil poetry'.
- Manimekalai : Written by *Sittalai Sattanar*, it deals with the adventures of Manimekalai, the daughter born of Kovalan and Madhavi. It is a sequel of Silappadikaram and strongly tinged with Buddhism.

- Sivaga Sindamani *(Jivaka Chintamani)* : Written by Jain *Tiruttakrdevas* and strongly tinged with Jainism.
- Bharatam : Written by *Perudevanar*.

Panchtinai (five Tamil regions)	Occupation	Inhabitants
Kurinji (hilly backwoods or montane)	Hunting, Gathering	Kurvar, Vetar
Palai (Parched or arid zone)	Cattle lifting, Highway robbery	Eyinar, Maravar
Mullai (Pastoral tract)	Shifting Agriculture, Animal husbandry	Ayar, Idaiyar
Marutam (Wetland)	Plough Agriculture	Ulavar, Vellalar
Neital (littoral/coastal)	Fishing, Salt extraction	Paratavar, Valayar

6. Gupta Period (319 AD-540 AD)

- In 4th Century AD a new dynasty, the Guptas, arose in Magadha and established a large kingdom over the greater part of Northern India (though their empire was not as large as that of the Mauryas). Their rule lasted for more than 200 years.
- This period is referred as the 'Classical Age' or 'Golden Age' of ancient India and was perhaps the most prosperous era in the Indian history.
- According to epigraphic evidence, the founder of the dynasty was a person named *Gupta*. He used the simple title of Maharaja.
- Gupta was succeeded by his son *Ghatotkach*, who also inherited the title of Maharaja.

The Gupta Dynasty	
Chandragupta I	319-334 AD
Samudragupta	335-380 AD
Ramgupta	380 AD
Chandragupta II (Vikramaditya)	380-414 AD
Kumargupta (Mahendraditya)	415-455 AD
Skandagupta I	455-467 AD
Purugupta→	
Kumargupta II→	
Buddhgupta→	
Narsimhagupta→	
Kumargupta III	467-540 AD

Chandragupta I : 319-334 AD

- He was the first Gupta ruler to assume the title of *Maharajadhiraja*.
- He strengthened his kingdom by matrimonial alliance with the powerful family of Lichchhavis who were the rulers of Mithila. His marriage to Lichchhvi princess *Kumaradevi*, brought to him enormous power, resources and prestige. He took advantage of the situation and occupied the whole of fertile Gangetic Valley.
- He started the *Gupta Era* in 319-20 AD.
- Chandragupta I was able to establish his authority over Magadha, Prayaga and Saketa.
- **Original type of Gold Coins *(Dinaras)*:** Chandragupta I-Kumaradevi type.

Samudragupta : 335-380 AD

- Samudragupta was the greatest king of Gupta dynasty.
- The most detailed and authentic record of his reign is preserved in the *Prayaga Prasasti/Allahabad pillar inscription*, composed by his court poet *Harisena*.
- According to Prayaga Prasasti, he was a great conqueror.
- In the Gangetic Valley and Central India, Samudragupta annexed the territories

of the defeated monarchs, but in South India he remained content with victories alone and did not annex the territories of the vanquished rulers.

- Samudragupta's military compaigns justify description of him as the '*Napoleon of India*' by *V.A. Smith.*
- The reference to his dominion over Java, Sumatra and Malaya islands in the sea shows that he had a navy.
- When he died his mighty empire bordered that of the Kushan of Western province (modern Afghanistan and Pakistan) and Vakatakas in Deccan (modern Southern Maharashtra).
- His greatest achievement was the political unification of most of India or Aryavarta into a formidable power.
- **Titles :** *Kaviraja* i.e. king of poets (Prayaga Prasasti), *Param Bhagavat* (Nalanda copper plate), *Ashvamedha-parakrama* i.e. whose might was demonstrated by the horse-sacrifice (coin), *Vikram* i.e. prowess (coin), *Sarva-raj-ochchetta* i.e. uprooter of all kings (coin) etc. Note : Only Gupta ruler had the title of *Sarva-raj-ochehhetta*
- **Original types of Gold Coins** ***(Dinars)*** **:** Garud type, Dhanurdhari i.e. Archer type, Axe type, Ashvamedha type, Vyaghrahanan i.e. Tiger killing type, Veenavadan i.e. lute playing type.
- Samudragupta was a Vaishnavite.
- According to the Chinese writer Wang-Hiuen-Tse, *Meghavarna*, king of Sri Lanka, sent an embassy to Samudragupta for his permission to build a monastery for Buddhist pilgrims at Bodh Gaya.

Chandragupta II 'Vikramaditya' : 380-414 AD

- According to 'Devi Chandragupta' (Vishakhadatta), Samudragupta was succeeded by *Ramgupta.* It seems Ramgupta ruled for a very short period. He was 'the only Gupta ruler to issue copper coins'.
- Ramagupta, a coward and impotent king, agreed to surrender his queen *Dhruvadevi* to Saka invader. But the prince Chandragupta II, the younger brother of the king, resolved to go to the enemy's camp in the guise of the queen with a view to kill the hated enemy. Chandragupta II succeeded in killing the Saka ruler.
- Chandragupta II also succeeded in killing Ramgupta, and not only seized his kingdom but also married his widow Dhruvadevi.
- Chandragupta II extended the limits of empire by matrimonial alliances (with the Nagas and Vakatakas) and conquests (Western India). He married *Kubernaga* of Naga dynasty and married his daughter *Prabhavatigupta* with Vakataka prince *Rudrasena II.*
- As a result of the overthrow of Saka rule in Wstern India, the Gupta empire extended upto Arabian sea. He issued silver coins in the memory of victory over Sakas. He was 'the first Gupta ruler to issue silver coins' and adopted the titles *Sakari* and *Vikramaditya. Ujjain* seems to have been made the second capital by Chandragupta II.
- *Mehrauli* (near Kutub Minar, Delhi) Iron Pillar inscription says that the king defeated the confederacy of Vangas and Vahilkas (Bulkh).

- **Navaratna (i.e. nine gems) of Chandragupta II :** 1. *Kalidasa* (Poetry–Ritusamhar, Meghadutam, Kumarsambhavam, Raghuvamshama; Dramas–Malvikagnimitra, Vikramorvashiyam, Abhijnan-Shakuntalam) 2. *Amarsinh* (Amarsinhkosha) 3. *Dhanavantri* (Navanitakam–medicine text) 4. *Varahmihira* (Panch Sidhantaka, Vrihatsamhita, Vrihat Jataka, Laghu Jataka) 5. *Vararuchi* (Vartika–a comment on Ashtadhyayi) 6. *Ghatakarna* 7. *Kshapranak* 8. *Velabhatt* 9. *Shanku.*
- It was in Chandragupta's time that the Chinese pilgrim *Fahien* visited India.
- **Titles :** *Devagupta/Devaraja/Devashri, Parama Bhagavata, Narendra Chandra, Sinh Vikram* etc.
- **Original types of Gold coins** ***(Dinaras)*** **:** Ashvarohi type, Chhatradhari type, Chakra–Vikram type etc.

Kumaragupta I : 415-455 AD

- Chandragupta II was succeeded by his son Kumaragupta I.
- Towards the end of his reign, the Gupta empire was threatened from the North by the *Huns,* who were temporarily checked by his son Skandagupta.
- Kumaragupta was the worshipper of god *Kartikeya.*
- He founded the *Nalanda Mahavihara* which developed into a great centre of learning.
- **Titles :** *Mahendraditya, Mahendra Sinh* and *Ashvamedha Mahendrah* (coins) etc.
- **Original types of Gold Coins** ***(Dinars)*** **:** Khadgadhari type, Gajarohi type, Gajarohi Sinh-nihanta type, Khang-nihanta i.e. rhinoceros-slayer type, Kartikeya type, Apratigh-mudra type etc.

Skandagupta : 455-467 AD

- Skandagupta, the last great ruler of the Gupta dynasty.
- During his reign the Gupta empire was invaded by the *Huns.* He succeeded in defeating the *Huns.* Success in repelling the *Huns* seems to have been celebrated by the assumption of the title 'Vikramaditya' (Bhitari Pillar Inscription).
- The continuos attacks of the *Huns* weakened the empire and adversely affected its economy. The gold coinage of Skandagupta bears testimony to this.
- The decline of the empire began soon after his death.
- **Titles :** *Vikramaditya* and *Kramaditya* (coins), *Param Bhagavat* (coins), *Sharkropama* (Kahaum Pillar Inscription), *Devaraja* (Arya Manjushri Mula Kalpa) etc.

The Huns : 500-530 AD—Huns were primitive pastoralists owing herds of cattle and horses but knowing nothing of agriculture. They roamed in the Steppe in search of pasture and water. From the Oxus, the white Huns came into Afghanistan, destroyed the local power and, after establishing themselves there, began to pour into India in 458 AD. However, Skandagupta who was at the time ruling in Northern India, checkmated them effectively. Whenever the Gupta empire's resistance collapsed the Huns occupied the areas upto Central India and Malwa about 500 AD. There were two powerful Hun rulers *Toramana* and his son *Mihirkula.* They ruled during 500-530 AD. Mihirkula, a Shaivite, was a persecutor of Buddhism. In 530 AD, the Huns were uprooted by Yashodarmana of Mandsaur.

Vakatakas : 3rd Century-5thCentury AD—The Vakatakas were the most important power that held sway over parts of Deccan and Central India after the fall of the Satavahanas and before the rise of Chalukyas. The founder of the Vakataka dynasty was *Vindhyasakti* (255-75 AD). Vindhyasakti was succeeded by his son *Pravarasena I* (275-335 AD), who was the real founder of the Vakataka empire. He perfomed 4 *Ashuvamedha Yajnas*. After his death, the empire was divided. *Rudrasena I* took over the reigns of main branch i.e. Northern branch. He was the contemporary of Samudragupta. Rudrasena I was succeeded by *Prithvisen I*. He was contemporary of Chandragupta II. Chandragupta married his daughter Prabhavatigupta to the prince Rudrasena II. Prithvisena I was succeeded by his son *Rudrasena II*. Rudrasena II died after a short reign of five years, leaving behind two minor sons-*Divakarasena* and *Damodarsena*. Prabhavatigupta ruled as a regent of her son. Later, Damodarsena, became ruler, with the name *Pravarasena II*. Pravarasena II composed 'Setubandh/Ravanaho' (Poetry) in Marathi Script.

Gupta Inscriptions

Rulers	Inscriptions	Their Character
Samudragupta	Prayaga/Allahabad Stone Pillar	Prasasti
	Eran Stone Pillar	Prasasti
	Nalanda Copper Plate	Royal Charter
Chandragupta II	Mehrauli Iron Pillar	Prasasti
Skandagupta	Junagarh Rock	Prasasti
	Bhitari Pillar	Prasasti
	Indore Stone Pillar	Royal Charter (Evidence of sub-infeudation)
Buddhagupta	Paharpur Copper Plate	Royal Charter (Evidence of state ownership of land)

Administration

- Centralised control was not as fully realized under Guptas as it had been under the Mauryas.
- Guptan administration was, thus, highly decentralised, and as patrimonial bureaucracy reached its logical conclusion. In hereditary grants it reflected the quasi-feudal character of the economy.
- It comprised a network of self governing tribes and tributary kingdoms and their chiefs often served as representatives of imperial powers.
- The Gupta king took exalted titles like the Mahadhiraja, Samrat, Ekadhiraja, Chakravartin, befitting their large empire and imperial status.
- The practice of appointing the crown prince *(Kumara)* came in vogue.
- The Gupta kings were assisted by a council of ministers *(Mantripari-shad/Mantrimandalam)*. The existence of such a council is implied in the Prayaga/Allahabad Pillar Inscription, which speaks of the delight of the 'Sabhyas' (members) at the selection fo Samudragupta for the throne.
- Among the high officers we may take special notice of the *Kumaramatya* and the *Sandhivigrahika*, who are not known to inscriptions of earlier period.
- The *Kumaramatyas* formed the chief cadre for recruiting high officials under the Guptas. It was from them the Mantris, Senapati, Mahadanda-nayaka (Minister of Jsutice) and Sandhivigrahika (Minister of peace and war) were generally chosen.

- The office of *Sandhivigrahika* first appears under Samudragupta, whose amatya *Harisena* held this title.
- Other Important officials : *Mahapratihari* (the Cheif usher of the Royal Palace), *Dandapashika* (Chief officer of Polcie Department), *Vinayasthitisthapak* (Chief Officer of Religious affairs), *Mahapilupati* (Chief of Elephant corps), *Mahashvapati* (Chief of Cavalry) etc.
- The important *Bhuktis* (i.e. provinces) of Gupta period were:Magadha, Barddhaman, Pundra Vardhana, Teerbhukti (Northen Bihar), Eastern Malwa, Western Malwa and Saurashtra.

Adminsitrative Unit	Head
Bhukti/Bhoga (i.e. Province)	Uparika/Bhogapati
Vishaya (i.e. District)	Vishayapati/Ayukta
Vithika/Nagar (i.e. City)	Nagarpati/Purapala
Gram (i.e. village)	Gramika

- The administration of city was in the hand of a council *(Paura)*, which consisted of the president of the city corporation, the chief representative of the guild of merchants, a representative of the artisans and the Chief Accountant.
- Whereas under the Mauryas, the city committee was appointed by the Maurya government, under the Guptas, it was comprised of the local representatives.
- Decentaralisation of the administrative authority began during the Gupta period.
- It was during the Gupta rule that the village headmen became more important than before.
- The Gupta military organsiation was feudal by character (though the emperor had a large standing army).
- In the Gupta period for the first time civil and criminal law were clearly defined and demarcated.
- Gupta kings depended primarily on land revenue, varying from 1/4 to 1/6 of the produce.
- In Gupta period the army was to be fed by the people whenever it passed through the countryside. This tax was called *Senabhakta*.
- The villagers were also subjected to forced labour called *vishti* for serving royal army and officials.
- The Gupta period also experienced an excess of land grants. (*Agarhara* grants, *Devagrahara* grants). Land grants included the transfer of royal rights over salt and mines, which were under the royal monopoly during the Maurya period.

Society

- The varna system begins to get modified owing to the proliferation of castes. This was chiefly due to three factors : (i) A large number of foreigners had been assimilated into the Indian society primarily and were known as *Kshatriyas* (ii) There was a large absorption of tribal people into Brahamanical society through land grants. The acculturated tribes were absorbed into the *Shudra Varna*. (iii) Guilds of craftsmen were often transformed into castes as a result of the decline of trade and urban centres and the localised character of crafts.
- The social positions of *the Shudras* seems to have improved in this period. They were permitted to listen to the epics and *Puranas* and also worship a new god called Krishna.

- From around the 3rd century onwards the practice of untouchability appears to have intensified and their number registered a rise. *Katyayana*, a smriti writer of the Gupta periods, was the first to use the expression *asprasya* to denote the untouchable.
- The position of women deteriorated further. Polygamy was common.
- Early marriages were advocated and often pre-puberty marriages took place.
- The first example of *Sati* appears in Gupta time in 510 AD in Eran in Madhya Pradesh. (*Bhanugupta's Eran Inscription* – 510 AD)
- Women were denied any right to property except for *Stridhana* in the form of jewellery and garments.
- Under the patronage of Gupta ruler, Vaishnavism became very popular.
- The gods were activated by their unions with the respective consorts. Thus, Laxmi got her association with Vishnu and Parvati got her association with Shiva.
- This was the period of evolution of Vajrayanism and Buddhist tantric cults.
- Idol worship became a common feature of Hinduism from Gupta period onwards.

Economy

- It is argued by many scholars that the state was the exclusive owner of land. The most decisive argument in favour of the exclusive state ownership of land is in the *Pahadpur Copper Plate inscription* of Buddhagupta.
- From the economic stand point, we may classify land under the Gupta period into 5 groups : 1. *Kshetra Bhoomi*-Cultivable land 2. *Khila*– Waste land 3. *Vastu Bhoomi*–Habitable land 4. *Charagah Bhoomi*–Pasture land 5. *Aprahata Bhoomi*–Forest land.
- In the Gupta period land survey is evident from the *Poona plates of Prabhavati Gupta* and many other inscriptions.
- An officer named *Pustapala* maintained records of all land transactions in the district.
- The Guptas issued the largest number of gold coins in ancient India, but in gold content, Gupta coins are not as pure as Kushanas.
- The Guptas also issued good number of silver coins for local exchange.

Bhaga	King's customary share of the produce normally amounting to 1/6th of the produce, paid by all cultivators.
Bhoga	Periodic supplies of fruits, fire wood, flowers etc., which the villagers had to furnish to king.
Bali	Originally it was a voluntary offering by the people to the king, but later it became compulsory. During the Gupta period, it seems to be an additional and oppressive tax.
Uparikara	An extra tax levied on all subjects.

- The Gupta copper coins are very few as compared to those of Kushanas, which show that use of money did not touch common people.
- Gupta period witnessed decline in long distance trade.
- Trade with the Roman Empire declined after 3rd century AD.

- Indian merchants began to rely more heavily on the South-East Asian trade.
- The ports of the East coast– *Tamralipti, Ghantashala* and *Kandura*–handled the North-Indian trade with South-East Asia; and those of the West coast– *Bharoach, Chaul, Kalyan* and *Cambay*–traded with the Mediterranean and West Asia.

Culture

- The architecture of the Gupta period may be divided into three categories :

1. Rock-cut caves : *Ajanta* and *Ellora* Group (Maharashtra) and *Bagh* (MP).
2. Structural Temples : *Dasavatara temple* of Deogarh (Jhansi district, UP)–the oldest and the best, *Siva temple* of Bhumra (Nagod, MP), *Vishnu* and *Kankali temple* (Tigawa, MP), *Parvati temple* of Nanchana-Kuthwa (Panna district, MP), *Shiva temple* of Khoh (Satna, Panna, MP), *Krishna brick temple* of Bhittargaon (Kanpur, UP), *Laxman temple* of Sirpur (Raipur, MP), *Vishnu temple* and *Varah temple* of Eran (MP).
3. Stupas : *Mirpur khas* (Sindh), *Dhammekh* (Saranath) and *Ratnagiri* (Orissa).

- The art of architecture attained great heights. By evolving the *Nagara Style (Shikhar style)*, the Gupta art ushers in the history of Indian architecture. Shikhara Shrine, a Vaishnava symbol, one of the most characteristic features of temple architecture, found its fullest development during this period. The temple architecture, with its *garbha griha* (shrine room) in which the image of the god was placed, began with the Guptas.
- The fragmentary remains of *Dasavatara temple of Deogarh* is the example of the most ornate and beautifully composed Gupta temple building.
- The centres of the Gandhar sculptures declined and their places were taken by *Benaras, Patliputra* and *Mathura*.
- For the first time we get images of *Vishnu, Shiva* and other Gods.
- Among the best specimen of the images of Buddha is a *seated Buddha image of Sarnath*, which depicts the Buddha preaching the Dhamma.
- Of the Brahmanical images perhaps the most impressive was *the Great Boar (Varah)* carved in relief at the entrance of a cave at Udayagiri.
- The painting of this period are found in *Bagh* (Dhar district, MP), and *Ajanta* (Aurangabad district, Maharashtra). The frescoes of the Ajanta caves are the masterpieces of the paintings of this age.

Religious Literature

A. Hindu Texts : Some of the old religious books (viz. *Vayu Purana, Vishnu Purana, Matsya Purana; Ramayan* and *Mahabharata, Manu Smriti*) were re-written. *Narada Smriti, Parashara Smriti, Bhrihaspati Smriti* and *Katyayana Smriti* were written in this period.

B. Buddhist Texts : Abhidharma Kosha *(Dignaga)*; Vishudhimagga *(Buddhghosa)*

C. Jain texts : Nyayavartam *(Sidhsena)*

Secular Literature

Ritusamhar (first poetry), Meghadutam, Kumarasam-bhavam, Raghuvamsam; Malavikagnimitra (first drama), Vikramorvashi-yam, Abhijnana-Shakun-talam *(Kalidasa)*; Mudrarakshasa *(Visakhadatta)*; Kiratarjuniya *(Bharavi)*; Kavyadarsa, Dasa Kumar Charita *(Dandin)*; Mrichchhakatika *(Sudraka)*; Panchatantra *(Vishnu Sharma)*; Kamasutra *(Vatsyayan)*.

Scientific Literature

Aryabhatiya, Surya Sidhant *(Aryabhatta)*; Brahmasidhanta *(Brahmagupta)*; Pancha Sidhantaka, Vrihat Samhita, Vrihat Jataka, Laghu Jataka *(Varahamihira)*; Ashtanga Hridaya (medicine) *(Vagbhatta)*; Navanitakam *(Dhanvantri)*; Mahabhaskarya, Laghubhaskarya *(Bhaskara)*; Hastvayurveda *(Palkapya)*

Note :

1. 'Manusmriti' was translated in English under the title of 'Institutes of Hindoo Law' by William Jones.
2. 'Abhijnana Shakuntalam (i.e. recognition of Shakuntala) was translated in English by William Jones.
3. Kalidas is known as 'the Shakespeare of India'.
4. 'Mrichchakatika' (i.e. the clay cart), love story of a poor brahman Charudatta and virtuos courtesan Vasantasena, is notable for its realistic depiction of city life.
5. 'Kamsutra' is the earliest book on sex.
6. 'Brahmasidhanta' was translated in Arabic under the title of 'Sind Hind'.

Gupta Period : Golden Age of Ancient India—Reality or Myth ?

Arguments :

For : 1. There were political units; foreign rule was completely removed and peace and prosperity prevailed 2. Enlightened character of government, i.e. taxes were light, punishment mild, etc. 3. Revival of Hinduism but there was tolerance of all other religions 4. Use of Sanskrit developed and art and literature flourished during the period 5. Great personage like Kalidasa, Amarsinha, Dhanavantri, Aryabhatta, Varahamihira etc. lived during this period.

Against : 1. Existence of too many feudatories 2. Absence of large Central army and Bureaucracy 3. Development of Feudal elements (Increasing land grants, Serfdom, Sub-infeudation etc.) 4. Decline of trade and Guilds 5. Decline of urban centres 6. Increasing Varna distinction and social disorder 7. Decline in status of women.

7. Post-Gupta Period/Vardhana Dynasty (550 AD-647 AD)

Pushyabhuti/Vardhana Dynasty

- The Pushyabhuti or Vardhana dynasty was founded at *Thaneswar* (Kurukshetra district, Haryana) by *Pushyabhuti* probably towards the beginning of the 6th century. Pushyabhuti were the feudatories of the Guptas, but has assumed independence after the Hun invasions.
- The first important ruler of the dynasty was *Prabhakaravardhana* (580-605 AD).
- Prabhakaravardhana was succeeded by his eldest son *Rajyavardhana* (605-606 AD).
- Rajyavardhana had to face problems from the day of his succession to the throne. *Grahavarman*, the Maukhari ruler of Kannauj and husband of *Rajyashri* (sister of Rajyavardhana) was murdered by *Deva Gupta* (the ruler of Malwa) who in alliance with *Shashanka* (ruler of Gaud or North-Western Bengal) now occupied Kannauj and imprisoned Rajyashri.
- Rajyavardhana, therefore, undertook a campaign against Deva Gupta and killed him but he was killed by Shashanka in 606 AD. In the meanwhile Rajyashri escaped into the forests of Central India.

Harshavardhana : 606-647 AD

- After the killing of Rajavardhana, his younger brother, Harshavardhana also known as *Siladitya*, ascended the Pushyabhuti throne in 606 AD and from this year started the *Harsha Era*.
- After ascending the throne Harsha first rescued his widowed sister Rajyashri, from the Vindhyan forest, where she was going to throw herself into the fire.
- Harsha drove out Shashanka from Kannauj who had occupied it after killing of Rayavardhana. He not only unified *Kannauj* with Thaneswar but also made it his new capital, which made him the most powerful king of North India.
- Harsha thereafter, proceeded towards the east against *Shashanka* with a view to avenge the death of his brother, Rajyavardhana and brother-in-law, Grahavarman. Harsha was not successful in his first expedition against Gaud, but in his second expedition towards the close of his reign, after the death of Shashanka (died in 637 AD), he conquered Magadha and Shashanka's empire.
- Harshavardhana defeated *Dhruvasena II*, the Maitraka ruler of Vallabhi. However, Harsha, in order to secure the safety of the western boundary, reinstated him and gave his daughter in marriage to Dhruvasena II. Dhruvasena II accepted the position of a feudatory vassal. It was an important diplomatic achievement of Harsha.
- The course of Harsha's conquests suffered a serious setback on his expedition towards the Deccan. *Pulkeshin II* of Chalukya dynasty of Vatapi/Vadami inflicted a decisive defeat on him at the bank of Narmada. It was the only defeat of Harsha's victorious life. The Chalukya records describe Harsha as the lord of whole of Northern country *(Sakalottarapatheshvara)*.
- The area under his control covered many parts of Northern India, Eastern Rajasthan and the Ganges Valley as far as Assam. His empire included territories of distant feudal kings too.
- Harsha maintained diplomatic relations with China. In 641 AD, he sent an envoy to Tai-Tsung, the Tang Emperor of China. Three Chinese missions subsequently visited his court. *Hiuen-Tsang*, the celebrated Chinese pilgrim, visited India during Harsha's reign. He spent about eight years (635-643 AD) in the dominions of Harsha.
- Hiuen-Tsang mentions two most celebrated events of Harsha's reign the assemblies at Kannauj and at Prayaga. The *Kannauj assembly* (643 AD) was held in the honour of Hiuen-Tsang and to popularise Mahayana sect of Buddhism. The *Prayaga assembly* was held in 643-644 AD. In *Prayaga*, Harshavardhana used to celebrate religious festivals at the end of every five years, at the confluence of the Ganges, the Yamuna and the Saraswati. It is said that this was the beginning of *Kumbha fair*.
- Harshavardhana was a Shaiva by faith, but he showed equal respect to other sects. Hiuen-Tsang portrays him as a liberal Buddhist (Mahayana) who also honoured gods of others sects.
- According to Hiuen-Tsang, *Nalanda University*, meant for Buddhist monks, was maintained by the revenue from 100 villages which granted by Harshavardhana.

- He died in 647 AD. Harsha does not appear to have any heir to his throne which was usurped after his death by his minister named Arunashva.
- Harshavardhana was not only a patron of learning, but was himself an accomplished author. He wrote three Sanskrit plays–*Nagananda, Ratnavali* and *Priyadarsika*. He gathered around him a circle of learned men, of whom *Banabhatta*, the author of *Harshacharita* (an important historical work narrating the incidents of the earleir part of Harsha's reign) and *Kadambari* (a poetical novel of great literary merit) and *Mayur*, the author of *Mayur Shataka* and *Surya Shatak* are the well known.
- Harsha governed his empire on the same lines as the Guptas did, except that this administration had become more feudal and decentralised.

States of the Deccan and South India

Chalukyas of Vatapi/Vadami : 543-755 AD

- The Vakataka power was followed by Chalukyas.
- Chalukyas established their capital at Vatapi/Badami in the district of Bijapur in Karnataka.
- *Pulakesin II* (609-42 AD) was able to check Harsha's design to conquer Deccan.
- *Aihole inscription* is an eulogy written by his court poet *Ravikirti*.
- He sent an ambassador to the Persian King Khusrau II in 625 AD and also received one from him.
- The Chinese pilgrim *Hiuen-Tsang* visited his kingdom.
- Pallava ruler *Narsimhavarman 'Mammala'* invaded the Chalukya kingdom, killed Pulakesin II and captured Vatapi. He adopted the title *Vatapikonda* i.e. the conqueror of Vatapi.
- In 757 AD, Chalukyas were overthrown by their feudatories, the Rashtrakutas.

Vesara Stye/Deccan Style

- Chalukyas began the Vesara style or Deccan style in building structural temples, which however, reached culmination, only under the Rashtrakutas and the Hoyasalas.
- **Specimens of Chalukyan Temples** : 1. Vesar style–*Jinendra temple/ Meguti temple*–Aihole (Ravikirti); *Vishnu temple*–Aihole, *Ladh Khan temple* (attributed to god Surya)–Aihole, *Durga temple*–Aihole; Aihole is called a 'town of temples' because it contains about 70 temples. 2. Nagara style : *Papanatha temple*–Pattadakal 3. Dravida style : *Virupaksha temple* and *Sangamesvara temple*– Pattadakal.

Pallavas of Kanchi : 575-897 AD

- There is controversy regarding the origin of Pallavas. Possibly the Pallavas were a local tribe who established their authority in the Tondaimandalam or the land of creepers.
- They were orthodox Brahmanical Hindus and their capital was Kanchi.
- Both Chalukyas and Pallavas tried to establish their supremacy over land between Krishna and Tungabhadra.
- Pallava king *Narsimhavarman* (630-668 AD) occupied Chalukyan capital Vatapi in about 642 AD and assumed the title *Vatapikonda* i.e. conqueror of Vatapi.

- Pallavas were instrumental in spreading Indian culture in South-East Asia. Till the 8th century AD Pallava influence was predominant in Cambodia. The Pallava type of Shikhara is to be found in the temples of Java, Cambodia and Annam.

Pallava Art

- Pallavas began the Dravida stye of temple architecture, which reached culmination under the rule of Cholas.
- The development of temple architecture, particularly Dravida style, under the Pallavas can be seen in four stages :

Mahendravarmana Group	Mahendravarmana I (600-630 AD)	Temple at Bhairavkona (North Arcot Distt.), Ananteswar temple at Undavalli (Guntur Distt.)
Mammala Group	Narsimhavarmana I 'Mammala'(630-668 AD)	Mandapa temples and Ratha temples (Sapt Pagodas) at Mammalapuram (Mahabalipuram)
Rajasimha Group	Narsimhavarmana II 'Rajsimha' (680-720 AD)	Kailashnatha and Vaikunth Perumal Temple at Kanchi, Shore temple at Mammalapuram
Aparajit Group	Nandivarmana 'Aparajit' (879-897 AD)	Mukteshwar and Matangeshwar temple at Kanchi, Parshurameswar temple at Gudimallam

- The Pallavas also contributed to the development of sculpture in South India. The Pallava sculpture is indebted largely to the Buddhist tradition. It is more monumental and linear in form, thus avoiding the typical ornamentation of the Deccan sculpture. The best example is the Descent of the Ganges or Arjuna's Penance at Mammalapuram.

Gupta 'n' Post-Gupta Dynasties and Their Founders

Dynasty	Founder
The Chalukyas of Vatapi	Jayasimha
The Gangas of Talakad	Konakanivarma
The Guptas of Magadha	Shri Gupta
The Kadambas of Vanavasi	Mayurasharman
The Kingdom of Gaud	Shashanka
The Kingdom of Thaneswar	Pushyabhuti
The Later-Guptas of Magadha-Malwa	Krishnagupta
The Maitrakas of Vallabhi	Bhattarka
The Maukharis of Kannauj	Yajnavarman
The Pallavas of Kanchi	Simhavarman
The Pandyas of Madurai	Kodungon
The Vakatakas	Vindhyashakti

Medieval India

8. Early-Medieval Period (650-1206)

I. North India (Rajputa Period)

After Harshavardhana, the Rajputas emerged as a powerful force in Northern India and dominated the Indian political scene for nearly 500 years from the 7th century.

10 Important Rajputa Kingdoms	Period	Capital	Founder
Chauhan/Chahaman of Delhi-Ajmer	7th Cen.-1192	Delhi	Vasudeva
Pratihara/Parihar of Kannauj	730-1036	Avanti, Kannauj	Nagabhatt I
Pawar/Parmar of Malwa	790-1150	Ujjain, Dhar	Seeak II 'Sri Harsha'
Chaulukya/Solanki of Kathiyawar	942-1187	Anihalvada	Mularaja I
Rastrakuta of Malkhand	752-973	Malkhand/ Manyakheta	Dantidurg (Danti Varman II)
Chandela of Jejakabhukti.	831-1202	Khajuraho, Mahoba, Kalinjar	Nannuk Chandela
Kalchuri/Haihaya of Chedi.	850-1211	Tripuri	Kokkala I
Gadhawal/Rathor of Kannauj	1090-1194	Kannauj	Chandradeva
Tomar of Surrounding areas of Haryana and Delhi	—	Dhillika	—
Guhilota/Sisodiya of Mewar	8th Cen.-1930	Chittor	Bappa Rawal, Hammir I

Tripartite Struggle

- Towards the close of the 8th century AD, there were three great power in India- the *Palas* in the East, the *Gurjar-Partihara* in the North and the *Rashtrakutas* in the Deccan.
- The tripartite struggle for the supremacy among the Palas, Partiharas and the Rashtrakutas was the important event of these centuries.
- The main cause for this struggle was the desire to possess the city of Kannauj (Kannauj Distt., UP) Which was then a symbol of sovereinity.

The Palas : 750-1150 Capital : Muddagiri/Munger (Bihar)

- *Gopala* founded the Pala empire in 750 AD.
- His son *Dharmpala* (770-810) succeeded him. Dharmpala revived *Nalanda University*.
- He founded the *Vikramshila University*.
- The Pala dynasty was succeeded by *Sena dynasty* of Bengal. *Jayadeva* ('Gita Gobinda') was the great court poet of *Luxman Sen*.

The Pratiharas : 730-1036

- The Pratiharas are also called Gurjara-Pratiharas probably because they originated from Gujarat or South-West Rajasthan.
- *Bhoja/Mihir Bhoja* (836-882) was the greatest ruler of of this dynasty.
- He was a devotee of Vishnu and adopted the title of *'Adivarah'*.

The Rashtrakutas : 752-973

- *Dantidurg* (752-756), who fixed his capital at *Malkhand/Malkhed* (Gulbarga distt., Karnataka), founded the Kingdom.
- The greatest Rashtrakuta rulers were *Govinda III* (793-814) and *Amoghvarsha* (814-878). Amoghvarsha ruled for 64 years but by temperament he preferred pursuit of religion and literature to war. He was himself an author and wrote *Kavirajamarga*, the earliest Kannada book on Poetics.
- The famous rock-cut *temple of Kailash (Shiva) at Ellora* was built by one of the Rashtrakuta kings *Krishna I*.

Other Important Rulers

- **Prithviraj Chauhan (1178-92) :** He ruled over Delhi and Agra and fought two important battles, viz. *First Battle of Tarain* was fought in 1191 between the forces of Prithviraj Chauhan and Mohammad Ghori in which the latter was defeated. *Second Battle of Tarain* was fought in 1192 when Mohammad Ghori again invaded India in which Prithviraj Chauhan was defeated and captured and later on slain. The Kingdom of Delhi fell to Mohammad Ghori.

  The Battle of Tarain had great significance in the political scene as it led to the establishment of Muslim rule over North India and, subsequently, in the South for several centuries.
- **Jai Chand Gadhawal/Rathor (1169-94) :** He was the last Rajputa King who was also defeated and killed by Mohammad Ghori in the *Battle of Chandawar* (1194).
- **Rana Kumbha, the Sisodiya ruler of Mewar (1433-68) :** Rana Kumbha was the famous ruler of Mewar. He defeated Mohammad Khilji and erected the Tower of victory *(Vijay Stambha)* in *Chittor*. His successors *Rana Sangram Singh (Rana Sanga)* and *Rana Pratap* were also great kings of Mewar state.
- **Salient features of the Rajputa Kingdoms :** The country remained free of invasions but lost foreign contact. The caste system was rigid. The Rajputas were proud, warrior and people but hospitable. In the field of culture many great fortresses and temples were built by them such as *Khajuraho* (MP), *Lingaraja temple* (Bhubaneshwar, Orissa), *Sun temple* (Konarka,. Orissa), the *Jagannath temple* (Puri), *Dilwara temple* (Mount Abu).
- **Causes of the Decline of Rajputas :** Lack of unity and foresightedness, caste the system, and defective military organization were some of the causes for the downfall of the Rajputas.

II. South India (Cholas and Others)

The Chola Empire : 850-1279AD

Capital : Tanjore, Gangaikondacholapuram

- The founder of the Chola dynasty was *Vijayalaya*, who was at first a feudatory of the Pallavas. He captured Tanjore in 850 AD.
- The greatest Chola rulers were *Rajaraja* (985-1014AD) and his son *Rajendra I* (1014-1044AD).
- *Rajaraja* buit *Vrihadeshwar/Rajarajeshwar* temple (attributed to Shiva) at Tanjore.

- *Rajendra I* conquered Orissa, Bengal, Burma and Andaman and Nicobar islands. The Chola dynasty was at its zenith during his reign.
- Rajendra I assumed the title of Gangaikondachola and built a city called Gangaikondacholapuram.
- The last ruler of Chola dynasty was Rajendra III.
- The king was the head of central authority helped by a council of ministers, but the administration was democratic.
- The Chola empire was divided into *Mandalams* (Province) and these in turn were divided into *Valanadu* (Commissionary), *Nadu* (District) and *Kurram* (a group of villages).
- The arrangement of local self-government is regarded as the basic feature of the administration of Cholas.
- Land revenue and trade tax were the main sources of income.
- The style of architecture which came into vogue during this period is called Dravida e.g. *Kailashnath temple* of *Kanchipuram*.
- Another aspect was image-making which reached its climax in dancing figure of Shiva called *Nataraja*.
- *Kambana* who wrote *Ramavataram* was one of the greatest figures of Tamil poetry. His Ramayana is also known as *Kamba Ramayana*.
- *Kambana, Kuttana* and *Pugalendi* are considered as 'three gems of Tamil poetry'.
- In the temples, the *Vimana* or the tall pyramidal tower dominates the whole structure of the shrine and imparts an extraordinary dignity to it.
- *Gopuram* and *Garbhagriha* are the other two important structures.
- The best specimens are the temples of Vijayalaya, Choleshwara, the Nageshwara temple, the Koranganath temple and the Muvarakovitha temple.

Other Kingdoms of South

Kingdom	Capital	Real Founder
Western/Later Chalukyas (973-1200)	Kalyani, Karnataka	Tailap II
Kakatiyas (1110-1326)	Warangal, Andhra Pradesh	Prolaraja II
Yadavas (1187-1312)	Devagiri, Maharashtra	Bhillam V
Hoyasalas (1173-1342)	Dwarasamudra, Karnataka	Vittigadev 'Vishnuvardhan'

Note : The temple of Hoyasaleshwara at Dwarasamudra (Modern Halebid) is the greatest achievement of Hoyasala art.

9. Sultanate Period (1206-1526AD)

I. The Delhi Sultanate

The Background of Delhi Sultanate

- **First Muslim Invasion-Mohammad Bin Qasim's Invasion (712AD) :** Mohammad Bin Qasim invaded India in 712 AD and conquered Sindh which became the province of Omayyad Khilafat.
- **First Turk Invasion-Mahmud Ghaznavi's Invasion (998-1030 AD) :** Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni led about 17 expeditions to India to enrich himself by taking away the wealth from India. In 1025 he attacked and raided the most celebrated Hindu temple of Somnath that lies on the coast in the extreme south of Kathiwar. The temple was destroyed in 1026 AD.

- **Second Turk Invasion-Mohammad Ghori's Invasion (1175-1206 AD):** Mohammad Ghori invaded India and laid the foundation of the Muslim dominion in India. He may be considered the 'founder of muslim rule' in India.
- **Reasons for the Success of Turks in India :** 1. Rajputas lacked unity and organisation and were divided by rivalries 2. There was no central government 3. The Rajput Kingdoms were small and scattered 4. The Turks were better organised and took advantage of the lack of mutual co-operation among the Rajputas.

The Delhi Sultanate : 1206-1526 AD

- Mohammed Ghori's conquests became the nucleus of a new political entity in India-the Delhi Sultanate. This period can be divided into 5 distinct periods viz. 1. The Slave Dynasty (1206-90) 2. The Khilji Dynasty (1290-1320) 3. The Tughlaq Dynasty (1320-1414) 4. The Sayyid Dynasty (1414-51) 5. The Lodhi Dynasty (1451-1526).

The Slave Dynasty : 1206-90 AD

Qutubuddin Aibak : 1206-10

- A Turkish slave by origin, he was purchased by Mohammad Ghori who later made him his Governor. After the death of Ghori, Aibak became the master of Hindustan and founded the Slave Dynasty in 1206. For his generosity, he was given the title of *Lakh Bakhsh* (giver of Lakhs).
- He died in 1210 while playing *Chaugan* or Polo.
- He constructed two mosques-*Quwat-ul-Islam* at Delhi and *Adhai din ka Jhonpra* at Ajmer. He also began the constrction of *Qutub Minar*, in the honour of famous Sufi Saint *Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki*.
- Aibak was a great patron of learning and patronised writers like *Hasan-un-Nizami*, author of 'Taj-ul-Massir' and *Fakhruddin*, author of 'Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi'.

Shamsuddin Iltutmish : 1211-36

- He was a slave of Qutubuddin Aibak and occupied the throne of Delhi in 1211 after deposing *Aram Bakhsh*.
- He was a very capable ruler and is regarded as the 'real founder of the Delhi Sultanate'. He made *Delhi* the capital in place of Lahore.
- He saved Delhi Sultanate from the wrath of *Chengiz Khan*, the Mongol leader, by refusing shelter to *Khwarizm Shah*, whom Chengiz was chasing.
- He introduced the silver coin *(tanka)* and the copper coin *(jital)*. He organised the *Iqta System* and introduced reforms in civil administration and army, which was now centrally paid and recruited.
- He set up an official nobility of slaves known as *Chahalgani/ Chalisa* (group of 40).
- He completed the construction of *Qutub Minar* which was started by Aibak.
- He patronised *Minhaj-us-Siraj*, author of 'Tabaqat-i-Nasiri'.

Ruknuddin : 1236

- ➢ He was the son of Iltutmish and was crowned by her mother, *Shah Turkan*, after death of Iltutmish. He was deposed by Razia, daughter of Iltutmish when he was out of capital to curb a rebellion in Avadh against him.

Razia Sultana : 1236-40

- ➢ Though Iltutmish had nominated his daughter Razia as the successor, the nobles placed Ruknuddin Firoj on the throne. However, Razia got rid of Ruknuddin and ascended the throne.
- ➢ She was the 'first and only Muslim lady who ever ruled India'.
- ➢ She was popular among the people but was not acceptable to the nobles and theologians. She further offended the nobles by her preference for an Abyssian slave *Yakut*.
- ➢ Soon after her accession, the governors of Multan, Badaun, Hansi and Lahore openly revolted against her. There was a serious rebellion in Bhatinda. *Altunia*, governor of Bhatinda refused to accept suzerainity of Razia. Razia accompanied by Yakut marched against Altunia.
- ➢ However, Altunia got Yakut murdered and imprisoned Razia. Subsequently, Razia married Altunia and both of them marched towards Delhi.
- ➢ In 1240 AD, Razia became the victim of a conspiracy and was assassinated near Kaithal (Haryana).

Bahram Shah : 1240-42

- ➢ After Razia, Iltutmish's third son Bahram Shah was put on the throne by the powerful turkish council *Chalisa*.
- ➢ He was considered only as de jure ruler, while Naib-e-mamlakat (the regent) was the de facto ruler.
- ➢ Bahram Shah lost his life after his failed attempt to assert his authority once on the throne.

Masud Shah : 1242-46

- ➢ He was the son of Ruknuddin but was deposed after *Balban* and Nasiruddin Mahamud's Mother, *Malika-e-Jahan*, conspired against him and established Nasiruddin Mahamud as the new Sultan.

Nasiruddin Mahamud : 1246-66

- ➢ He was the son of Iltutmish and was known as the *Darvesi King* as he was very pious and noble. He died in 1266.

Ghiyasuddin Balban : 1266-87

- ➢ Balban ascended the throne in 1266.
- ➢ He broke the power of *Chalisa* and restored the prestige of the crown. That was his greatest contribution towards the stability of the Sultanate.
- ➢ To keep himself well-informed Balban appointed spies.
- ➢ He created a strong centralised army to deal with internal disturbances and to cheek Mongols who were posing a serious danger to Delhi Sultante.
- ➢ He established the military department *Diwan-i-Arz*.
- ➢ The Persian court model influenced Balban's conception of Kingship. He took up the title of *Zil-i-Ilahi* (Shadow of God).

- ➢ He introduced *Sijda* (prostration before the monarch) and *Paibos* (kissing the feet of monarch) as the normal forms of salutation.
- ➢ He destroyed the Mewati Rajputa brigandage in the *doab*, where forests were cut and forts built.
- ➢ In his last days he overlooked the Sultanate affairs due to the death of his eldest and most loving son, *Muhammad*, and rebellion by his closest and most loved slave, *Tughril*. Muhammad died fighting the Mongolians in 1285 while Tughril was captured and beheaded.

Kaiqubad : 1287-90

- ➢ A grandson of Balban was seated on the throne by *Fakruddin*, the Kotwal of Delhi who assumed high political authority during the last days of Balban. But Kaiqubad was killed by the Khiliji family, which saw the end of Slave dynasty and beginning of Khiliji dynasty at Delhi throne.

The Khilji Dynasty : 1290-1320 AD

Jalaluddin Khilji : 1290-96

- ➢ Jalaluddin Khilji founded the Khilji dynasty.

Alauddin Khilji : 1296-1316

- ➢ He was a nephew and son-in-law of Jalaluddin Khilji. Alauddin Khilji killed him and succeeded the throne in 1296.
- ➢ He was the first Turkish Sultan of Delhi who separated religion from politics. He proclaimed 'Kingship knows no Kinship'.

Alauddin's Imperialism

- ➢ Alauddin annexed Gujarat (1298), Ranthambhor (1301), Mewar (1303), Malwa (1305), Jalor (1311). In Deccan, Aluddin's army led by *Malik Kafur* defeated *Ram Chandra* (Yadava ruler of Devagiri), *Pratap Rudradeva* (Kakatiya ruler of Warangal), Vir *Ballal* III (Hoyasala ruler of Dwarsamudra) and *Vir Pandya* (Pandya ruler of Madurai).

Administrative Reforms

- ➢ In order to avoid the problems created by the nobles, Alauddin issued 4 ordinances. *The Istordince* aimed at the confiscation of the religious endowments and free grants of lands. By *the IInd ordinance* Alauddin reorganised the spy system. *The IIIrd ordinance* prohibited the use of wine. *The IVth ordinance* issued by Alauddin laid down that nobles should not have social gathering and they should not inter-marry without his permission.
- ➢ He introduced the system of *Dagh* (the branding of horse) and Chehra (descriptive roll of soldiers).
- ➢ Alauddin ordered that all land was to be measured and then the share of state was to be fixed.
- ➢ The post of special officer called *Mustakharaj* was created for the purpose of collection of revenue.
- ➢ The peasants had to pay the produce as land revenue.
- ➢ Alauddin sought to fix cost of all commodities. For the purpose he set up three markets at Delhi : one market for food grains, the second for costly cloth and third for horses, slaves and cattle. Each market was under the control of a high

officer called *Shahna* who maintained a register of the merchants and strictly controlled the shopkeepers and the prices. The check on market was kept by two officers- *Diwan-i-Riyasat* and *Shahna-i-Mandi*.

- All goods for sale were brought to an open market called *Sara-i-Adal*.
- Many forts were built by him and the most important of them was Alai fort. He also constructed the *Alai Darwaja*, the entrance gate of Qutub Minar. He also built the Palace of thousand Pillars called *Hazar Sutun*.
- He was a patron of art and learning. *Amir Khusrau*, the poet-musician was his favourite court poet.
- In 1316, after death of Alauddin, Malik Kafur, called *Hajardinari* seized the throne. Before Kafur died, he nominated Shihabuddin (Alauddin's 6 year old prince) as King but imprisoned the eldest prince Mubarak Khan. Kafur was killed by the loyalists of the royal family of Alauddin.

Mubarak Khan : 1316-20

- After the death of Kafur, Mubarak khan was freed from prison and worked as regent for Shihabuddin. He captured the throne at the first opportunity he got, but could rule only for a years as he sank into debauchery and could not give up his dissipated lifestyle. He awarded his lover *Mubarak Hassan* authority over army and palace guards, who soon obtained full control over Sultan's palace. Mabarak Hassan was given the title Khusrau Khan by the Sultan and within months Khusrau killed Mubarak Khan and assumed the title of Nasirudin in mid-1320.

Khusrau Khan : 1320

- Khusrau Khan was killed by Ghazi Malik, governor of Dipalpur, when he tried to oppose a rebellion by Ghazi Malik and his son Fakhruddin Jauna. This brought the end of Khilji dynasty and established the Tughlaq dynasty on the throne of Delhi.

The Tughlaq Dynasty : 1320-1414 AD

Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq : 1320-25

- Khusrau Khan, the last king of the Khilji dynasty was killed by Ghazi Malik. Ghazi Malik ascended the throne assuming the title Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq.
- He died in an accident and his son Jauna (Ulugh Khan) succeeded him under the title Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq.

Mohammad-bin Tughlaq : 1325-51

- Prince *Jauna*, son of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq ascended the throne in 1325.
- He tried to introduce many administrative reforms. He had 5 ambitious projects for which he became particularly debatable.

1. **Taxation in the Doab (1326) :** The Sultan made an ill-advised financial experiment in the Doab between the Ganges and Yamuna. He not only increased the rate of taxation but also revived and created some additional *Abwabs* or cesses. Although the share of the state remained as in time of Alauddin, it was fixed arbitrary not on the basis of actual produce. Prices were also fixed artificially for covering the produce into money. It is said that the increase was twenty fold and to this were added *Ghari* or house tax and the *Charahi* or pasture tax. The Sultan created a new department of Agriculture called *Diwan-i-Kohi*. The

main object of this department was to bring more land under cultivation by giving direct help to peasants.

2. **Transfer of Capital (1327) :** The most controversial step which Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq under took soon after his accession was the so-called transfer of capital from *Delhi* to *Devagiri*. Devagiri had been a base for the expansion of Turkish rule in South India. It appears that the Sultan wanted to make Devagiri second capital so that he might be able to control South India better. Devagiri was thus named *Daulatabad*. After a couple of years Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to abandon Daulatabad largely became he soon found that just as he could not control South India from Delhi, he could not control North from Daulatabad.
3. **Introduction of Token Currency (1329) :** Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to introduce bronze coins, which were to have same value as the silver coins. Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq might have been successful if he could prevent people from forging the new coins. He was not able to do so and soon the new coins began to be greatly devalued in markets. Finally Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to withdraw the token currency. He promised to exchange silver pieces for bronze coins.
4. **Proposed Khurasan Expedition (1329) :** The Sultan had a vision of universal conquest. He decided to conquer Khurasan and Iraq and mobalised a huge army for the purpose. He was encouraged to do so by Khurasani nobles who had taken shelter in his court. Moreover, there was instability in Khurasan on account of the unpopular rule of Abu Said. This project was also abandoned.
5. **Qarachil Expedition (1330) :** This expedition was launched in Kumaon hills in Himalayas allegedly to counter Chinese incursions. It also appears that the expedition was directed against some refractory tribes in Kumaon-Garhwal region with the object of bringing them under Delhi Sultanate. The first attack was a success but when the rainy season set in, the invaders suffered terribly.

- His five projects led to revolts. His last days were spent in checking the revolts (altogether 36 revolts in 25 years).

1335	Mudurai became independent (Jalaluddin Ahsan Shah)
1336	Foundation of Vijayanagar (Harihar and Bukka), Warangal became independent (Kanhaiya)
1341-47	Revolts of Sada Amirs and Foundation of Bahamani in 1347 (Hasan Gangu)

- He died in *Thatta* while campaigning in Sindh against Taghi, a turkish slave.

Firoz Shah Tughlaq : 1351-88

- He was a cousin of Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq. After his death the nobles and theologians of the court selected Firoz Shah as the next Sultan.
- After his accession Firoz Tughlaq was faced with the problem of preventing the imminent break up of Delhi Sultanate. He adopted the policy of trying to appease the nobality, army and theologians and of asserting his authority over only such areas, which could be easily administered from the centre. He therefore made no attempt to re-assert his authority over South India and Deccan.
- He decreed that whenever a noble died his son should be allowed to succeed to his position including his Iqta and if he had no sons, his son-in-law and in his absence his slave was be succeed.

- Firoz extended the principle of heredity to the army. Soldiers were allowed to rest in peace and to send in their place their sons. The soldiers were not paid in cash but by assignments on land revenue of villages *(Vajeha)*. This novel technique of payment led to many abuses.
- Firoz tried to win over the theologians proclaiming that he was a true Muslim king and the state under him was truly Islamic. In order to keep the theologians satisfied a number of them were appointed to high offices.
- He tried to ban practices which the orthodox theologians considered as non Islamic. Thus he prohibited the practice of Muslim women going out to worship at graves of saints.
- It was during the time of Firoz that *Jizya* became a separate tax. Firoz refused to exempt the Brahmanas from payment of Jizya since this was not provided for in *Shariat*.
- The new system of taxation was according to Quran. Four kinds of taxes sanctioned by the Quran were imposed. These taxes were *Kharaj, Zakat, Jizya* and *Khams*. Kharaj was the land tax, which was equal to 1/10 of the produce of the land, Zakat was 2°% tax on property, Jizya was levied on non-Muslims and Khams was 1/5 of the booty captured during war.
- In order to encourage agriculture, the Sultan paid a lot of attention to irrigation. Firoz repaired a number of canals and imposed *Haque-i-Sharb* or *Hasil-i-Sharb* (water tax).
- He was a great builder. The cities of Fatehabad, Hisar, Jaunpur and Firozabad stand to his credit.
- The two pillars of Ashoka, one from Topra (Haryana) and other from Merrut (U.P.) were brought to Delhi.
- The Sultan established at Delhi a hospital described as *Dar-ul-Shifa*.
- A new department of *Diwan-i-Khairat* was set up to make provisions for the marriage of poor girls.
- Another step which Firoz took was both economic end political in nature. He ordered his officials that whenever they attacked a place they should select handsome and well-born young boys and send them to Sultan as slaves.
- However, his rule was marked by peace and tranquility, and the credit for it goes to his Prime Minister *Khan-i-Jahan Maqbul*.
- He died in 1388.

After Firoz Shah Tughlaq : 1388-1414

- The Tughlaq dynasty could not survive much after Firoz Shah's death. The Malwa, Gujarat and Sharqi (Jaunpur) Kingdoms broke away from the Sultanate.
- **Timur's Invasion : 1398-99-** *Timur, the lame*, a Turkish Chief and cruel conqueror from Mangolia and descendant of Chengiz Khan, invaded India in 1398 during the reign of *Muhammad Shah Tughlaq*, the last ruler of Tughlaq dynasty. Taimur's army mercilessly sacked and plundered Delhi. Timur returned to Central Asia, leaving a nominee named Khizr Khan to rule to Punjab. In 1404 he died while on his way to conquer China.

The Sayyid Dynasty : 1414-50 AD

- **Khizr Khan (1414-21) :** Timur's nominee captured Delhi and was proclaimed the new Sultan. He was the first of the Sayyid dynasty which ruled over Delhi and surrounding districts.

- **Mubarak Shah (1421-34) :** He succeeded Khizr at the throne after his successful expeditions against Mewatis, Katehars and the Gangetic Doab area. He was killed by the nobles in his own court.
- **Muhammad Shah (1434-43) :** The nobles put Muhammad Shah on the throne, but he could not survive the in-fighting among the nobles in the court. He was authorised to rule only a meagre area around 30 miles, and rest the of the Sultanate was ruled by nobles.
- **Alam Shah (1443-51) :** The last Sayyid king descended in favour of Bahlol Lodhi and retired. Thus began the Lodhi dynasty which was confined to Delhi and a few surrounding areas.

The Lodhi Dynasty : 1451-1526 AD

Bahlol Lodhi : 1451-88

- Bahlol Lodhi was one of the Afghan Sardars. He established himself in Punjab after the invasion of Timur.
- He founded the Lodhi dynasty.

Sikandar Lodhi : 1489-1517

- Sikandar Lodi was the son of Bahlol Lodhi who conquered Bihar and Western Bengal.
- He shifted his capital from Delhi to *Agra*, a city founded by him.
- Sikandar was a fanatical Muslim and broke the sacred images of the Jwalamukhi Temple at Nagar Kot and ordered the temples of Mathura to be destroyed.
- He took a keen interest in the development of agriculture. He introduced the *Gaz-i-Sikandari* (Sikandar's yard) of 32 digits for measuring cultivated fields.

Ibrahim Lodhi : 1517-26

- He was the last king of the Lodhi dynasty and the last Sultan of Delhi.
- He was the son of Sikandar Lodhi.
- The Afghan nobility was brave and freedom-loving people but it was because of its fissiparous and individualistic tendencies that the Afghan monarchy was weakened. Moreover, Ibrahim Lodhi asserted the absolute power of the Sultan. As a result, some of the nobles turned against him.
- At last Daulat Khan Lodhi, the governor of Punjab invited Babur to overthrow Ibrahim Lodhi. Babur accepted the offer and inflicted a crushing defeat on Ibrahim Lodhi in *the first battle of Panipat* in 1526. Ibrahim Lodhi was killed in the battle Normal and with him ended the Delhi Sultanate.

Causes of Decline of Delhi Sultanate

The main causes were : 1. Despotic and military type of government which did not have the confidence of the people 2. Degeneration of Delhi Sultans (esp. the wild projects of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq, Incompetence of Firoz Tughlaq) 3. War of succession as there was no fixed law for succession 4. Greed and incompetency of the nobles 5. Defective military organisation 6. Vastness of empire and poor means of communication 7. Financial instability 8. Number of slaves increased to 1,80,000 in Firoz Tughlaq's time which was a burden on the treasury 9. Invasion of Timur.

Mongolian Invasions During Delhi Sultanate

Regime of Sultan	Year	Events
Iltutmish	1221 AD	Chengiz Khan came up to the bank of Indus.
Masud	1241 AD	Tair Bahadur entered Punjab. Towards the end of the 1245 AD, Balban fought back the Mongolians and recovered Multan which was captured by the Mongols.
Balban	1279 AD	Prince Muhammad of Multan, Bughra Khan from Samana and Malik Mubarak of Delhi combined together to defeat the Mongols.
Balban	1286 AD	Tamar invaded India. Prince Muhammad was killed in the battle, and was decorated with the *Khan-i-Shahid* title.
Jalaluddin Khilji	1292 AD	Abdullah came to the Northern part of India. About 4,000 Mongols got converted to Islam and became the famous *'New Musalman'*.
Alauddin Khilji	1296-99 AD	Zafar Khan defeated the Mongols at Jalandhar and Saldi, their leader was taken prisoner.
		Zafar Khan was killed in the battle.
Alauddin Khilji	1304 AD	Ali Beg and Tash were defeated.
Muhammad- bin-Tughlaq	1329 AD	Tarmashirin Khan was able to reach the outskirts of Delhi but was defeated by Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.

Administration under Delhi Sultanate

- The Turkish Sultan in India declared themselves Lieutenant of the faithful i.e. of the Abbasid caliphate of Baghdad and included his name in *Khutba*, it did not mean that the caliph became the legal ruler. The caliph had only a moral position.
- Political, legal and military authority was vested in the Sultan. He was responsible for administration and was also the commander-in-chief of the military forces.
- No clear law of succession developed among Muslim rulers. Thus military strength was the main factor in succession to the throne.

Central Administration

Department	Head (Founded by)
Diwan-i-Wizarat (Department of Finance)	Wazir
Diwan-i-Ariz (Military Department)	Ariz-i-Mumalik
Diwan-i-Insha (Department of Correspondence)	Dabir-i-Mumalik
Diwan-i-Risalat (Department of Appeals)	Dabir-i-Mulq
Diwan-i-Mustakharaj (Department of Arrears)	(Founded by Alauddin khilji)
Diwan-i-Riyasat (Department of Commerce)	Rais-i-Mumalik (Founded by Alauddin khilji)
Diwan-i-Kohi (Department of Agriculture)	(Founded by Md-bin-Tughlaq)
Diwan-i-Bandgan (Department of Slaves)	(Founded by Firoz Tughlaq)
Diwan-i-Khairat (Department of Charity)	(Founded by Firoz Tugulaq)
Diwan-i-Isthiaq (Department of Pensions)	(Founded by Firoz Tughloq)

Administrative Unit	Head
Iqta (i.e. Province)	Muqti or Wali
Shiq (i.e District)	Siqdar
Paragana (i.e. Taluka)	Chaudhary and Amil
Gram (i.e. Village)	Muqaddam, Khut

Art and Architecture Under Delhi Sultanate

- The new features brought by the Turkish conquerors were : 1. the dome 2. the lofty towers 3. the true arch unsupported by beam 4. the vault.
- They also brought with them an expert knowledge of the use of concrete and mortar, which had hitherto been little used in India.
- *The Adhai-din ka Jhonpra* at Ajmer has a beautiful prayer hall, an exquisitely carved Mehrab of white marble and a decorative arch screen.
- The first example of true or voussoired arch is said to be the *tomb of Ghiyasuddin Balban* in Mehrauli (Delhi).
- In the Khilji period the usage of voussoired arch and dome was established and for all. Famous examples is *the tomb of Hazrat Nizamuddin Aulia* at Delhi.
- The Tughlaq buildings show stark simplicity and sobriety, probably indicating less financial resources as well as puritanical tests. Slopping walls and a dark appearance characterise the buildings. Some notable Tughlaq monuments were the fort of Tughlaquabad, the tomb of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq which marked a new phase in Indo-Islamic architecture by serving as a model for later tombs and the fort of Adilabad.
- The Sayyid period was too short to allow construction of elaborate buildings.
- The construction of double domes was the main feature of Lodhi Architecture. One building worth noting is the *Moth ki Masjid* erected by the prime minister of Sikandar Lodhi.

Literature of Delhi Sultanate

Book	Author	Historical Importance
Tahqiq-i-Hind	Alberuni	Alberuni was an Arabian scholar who wrote about the Slave dynasty
Tabaqat-i-Nasiri	Minhaj-us-Siraj	Gives an account of Iltutmish's reign
Laila-Majnu	Amir Khusrau	Court poet of Alauddin Khilji
Khazain-ul-Futuh	Amir Khusrau	Describes conquests of Alauddin Khilji
Tughlaq-Nama	Amir Khusrau	Gives account of Ghiyasuddin's reign
Nuh-Siphir	Amir Khusrau	Poetic description of Alauddin Khilji
Fatawa-i-Jahandari	Ziauddin Barani	Gives an account of the Tughlaq dynasty
Tarikha-i-Firoz Shahi	Ziauddin Barani	Gives an account of Firoz Shah's reign
Fatwah-i-Firoz Shahi	Firoz Shah	Gives an account of his reign
Kitab-fi-Tahqiq	Alberuni	About Indian sciences
Qanun-e-Masudi	Alberuni	About astronomy
Jawahar-fil-Jawahir	Alberuni	About mineralogy
Qamas	Firozabadi	Arabic words dictionary

Book	Author	Historical Importance
Taj-ul-Maathir	Hasan Nizami	History of Ilbaris, the slave dynasty
Chach Namah	Abu Bakr	History of Sindh region
Lubab-ul-Alab	Bhukhari	Persian anthology
Khamsah	Amir khusrau	Literature and Poems
Shah Namah	Firdausi	About Mohmud Ghazni's reign
Kitab-ul-Rehla	Ibn Battutah	A travelogue with stories
Miftah-ul-Futuh	Amir Khusrau	Jalaluddin's conquest and life
Multa-ul-Anwar	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Ayina-i-Sikandari	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Hasht Bihisht	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Shirin Khusrau	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Tarik-i-Firoz Shahi	Shams-i-Shiraj Afif	History of Tughlaqs
Futuh-us-Salatin	Isami	About Bahmani Kingdom

9.II. Vijayanagar and Other Kingdoms

VIJAYANAGAR EMPIRE : 1336-1565 AD

- Vijayanagar kingdom and the city were founded by Harihar and Bukka (son of Sangama) who were feudatories of Kakatiyas and later became minister i the court of Kampili.
- Vijayanagar kingdom lay in the Deccan, to the south of the Bahmani kingdom.
- Vijayanagar period can be divided into four distinct dynasties viz. Sangama, Saluva, Tuluva and Aravidu.

The Sangama Dynasty : 1336-1485 AD

- **Harihara I and Bukka I (1336-56) :** They laid the foundation of Vijaya-nagar. Vijayanagar-Bahamani conflict began with the foundation of kingdoms. Clas of interests in three areas : Raichur doab (between Krishna and Tungabhadra), Krishna-Godavari delta and Marathwada.
- **Bukka I (1356-79) :** Bukka I strengthened the city of Vidyanagar and rename it Vijayanagar. He restored harmony between the warring Vaishnavas and the Jains. The Rais of Malabar, Ceylon and other countries kept ambassadors at his court.
- **Harihar II (1379-1404) :** Bukka I was succeeded by his son Harihar II.

Dynasty	Period	Founder
Sangama	1336-1485	Harihar and Bukk
Saluva	1485-1505	Saluva Narsimha
Tuluva	1505-1570	Veer Narsimha
Aravidu	1570-1650	Tirumala

- **Deva Raya I (1406-22) :** He was the third son of Harihara II. His greates achievement was his irrigation works where a dam was built across th Tungabhadra, with canals leading to the city. *Nicolo de conti* visited Vijayanag during his reign.
- **Deva Raya II (1423-46) :** He was the grandson of Deva Raya I. Ahmad Shah of Bahamani invaded Vijayanagar and exacted a war indemnity. Deva Raya began the practice of employing Muslim cavalrymen and archers in the arm on large scale (Their induction had began during Deva Raya I). He was called *Praudh Deva Raya*. In his inscriptions he has the title of *Gajabetekara* (the elephant hunter). Sri Lanka paid a regular tribute to him. He had learning for Vira Shavism, yet he respected other religions. *Dindima* was the court poet, whereas *Srinatha* was given the title of 'Kavisarvabhauma'. *Abdur Razzak*, the envoy of Shah Rukh visited Vijayanagar during his reign.

The Saluva Dynasty : 1486-1505 AD

- **Saluva Narsimha (1486-91) :** He founded the Saluva dynasty.
- **Tirumal (1491) and Immadi Narasimha (1491-1505) :** Both were minors during the regency of *Narsa Nayaka*. *Vosco Da Gama* landed in Calicut during his reign in 1498.

The Tuluva Dynasty : 1505-70 AD

- **Vira Narsimha (1505-09) :** Vir Narsimha, the son of Narsa Nayaka, became the king after the assassination of Immadi Narsimha, the last Saluva ruler.

Krishna Deva Raya : 1509-29 AD

- Saluva Timma, the chief minister of Vira Narsimha, placed Krishna Deva Raya, the brother of Vira Narsimha, on the throne.
- Krishna Deva Raya maintained friendly relations with *Albuquerque*, the Portuguese governor, whose ambassador Friar Luis resided in Vijayanagar. He won Orissa (Gajapti kingdom) for Vijayanagar and Vijayanagar emerged strongest during his reign.
- He built the *Vijaya Mahal* (House of Victory), the *Hazara Rama temple* and the *Vithal Swami temple*.
- He took the titles of *Yavanaraja Sthapnachrya* (restorer of the Yavana kingdom i.e. Bidar kingdom) and *Abhinava Bhoja*. He is also known as *Andhra Bhoj* and *Andhra Pitamaha*.
- He was a gifted scholar in both Telugu and Sanskrit, of which only two works are extant : the Telugu work on polity '*Amuktamalyada*' and the Sanskrit drama '*Jambavati Kalyanam*'.
- His court was adorned by the 'Ashtadiggajas' (the eight celebrated poets of Telugu) : 1. *Peddana* ('Manucharitam') 2. *Timmaya* ('Parijata Apaharanama') 3. *Bhattamurthi* 4. *Dhurjati* 5. *Mallan* 6. *Raju Ramchandra* 7. *Surona* 8. *Tenali Ramkrisha* ('Panduranga Mahamatya').
- Krishna Deva Raya, a contemporary of *Babur*, was the most illustrious ruler of the Deccan.
- *Duarte Barbosa* and *Dominigo Paes*, Portuguese travellers, visited Vijaya-nagar during the time of Krishna Deva Raya.
- **Achyuta Deva Raya (1529-42) :** Krishna Deva Raya nominated his brother Achyuta Deva Raya as the successor. During his reign, *Farnao Nunij*, a Portugese horse trader, visited Vijayanagar.
- **Venkata I (1542) and Sadashiva Raya (1543-76) :** Real power was exercised by *Rama Raja/Raya* and his two brothers. The five successor states of the Bahamani empire were divided through Rama Raja's diplomacy. The *Battle of Talikota* (also called the *Battle of Rakshasa-Tangadi*) was fought on 23 Jan., 1565. Rama Raja was taken prisoner and executed by Hussain Nizam Shah I.

The city of Vijayanagar, which was the pride of medieval world, was mercilessly destroyed. *Caesar Frederick*, a Portuguese traveller, visited Vijayanagar in 1567-68 during the reign of Sadashiva Raya.

The Aravidu Dynasty : 1570-1650 AD

- Tirumala Raya, the brother of Rama Raja, ruled in the name of Sadasiva Raya. On his failure to repopulate Vijayanagar, he shifted the capital to *Penugonda*. He divided his empire into three practically linguistic sections.
- The empire slowly shrunk and the Aravidu dynasty ended in 1646.

Administration

- *Nayankar System* was the special feature of provincial administration.
- *Ayngar System* was the special feature of village administration. A body of 12 functionaries, known as ayangars, conducted village affairs.
- They were granted tax free lands *'Manyams'* which they were to enjoy in perpetuity.

Administrative unit	Head
Mandalam (i.e. Province)	Mandaleswar
Nadu (i.e. District)	Naduprabhu
Gram (i.e. Village)	Gauda

- The Vijayanagar rulers issued gold coins called *Varahas* or *Pagodas*. The *Perta* was half a Varaha. *The Fanam* was one tenth of Perta. All were of gold mixed with alloy. The *Tar* was a silver coin. The *Jital* was a copper coin.

Society

- It was the only empire in Medieval India which employed women in the state services. Women even went to battles. Also, it was only state that promoted widow remarriage. Status of women improved during this time.
- Viprulu : Brahmins, Rajulu : Kshatriya, Nalavajativaru : Shudras Vipravinodins : Artisans, Kaikollas : Weavers, Sahagaman : Sati, Besabaga : Forced labour.

Architecture

- The Vijayanagar rulers produced a new style of architecture called as *Provida* style. The large number and prominence of pillars and piers are some of the distinct features. Horse was the most common animal on the pillars.
- Another important features were the *Mandapa* or open pavilion with a raised platform, meant for seating deities and *Amman Shrine*.
- Important temples were *Vithalswami* and *Hazara Rama Temple* at Hampi, *Tadapatri* and *Parvati temples* at Chidambaram and *Varadraja* and *Ekambarnath temples* at Kanchipuram.
- The Vijayanagar rulers started the practice of inscribing the stories of the Ramayana and the Mahabharata on the walls of the various temples. Vithalswami and Hazara Rama Temple are examples of this type of wall inscription.

Bahmani Kingdom

- **Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah (1347-58)** : He was also known as *Hasan Gangu*. He founded the Bahmani kingdom with its capital at *Gulbarga* (First capital).
- **Tajuddin Firoz Shah(1397-1422)** : The greatest among them all. He was determined to make Deccan the cultural centre in India. He inducted large number of Hindus in the administration on large scale. He paid much attention to the ports of his kingdom, Chaul and Dabhol which attracted trade ships from Persian Gulf and Red Sea.
- **Ahmad Shah Wali(1422-35)** : Transferred the capital from Gulbarga to Bidar.

Break up of Bahmani Empire into 5 Kingdoms

5 Kingdoms	Year	Founder	Dynasty	Annexation (by)
1. Berar	1484	Fataullah Imad Shah	Imad Shahi	1574 (Ahmadnagar)
2. Bijapur	1489	Yusuf Adil Shah	Adil Shahi	1686 (Aurangzeb)
3. Ahmadnagar	1490	Malik Ahmad	Nizam Shahi	1633 (Shahjahan)
4. Golconda	1518	Quli Qutub Shah	Qutub Shahi	1687(Aurangzeb)
5. Bidar	1526-27	Amir Ali Barid	Barid Shahi	1610(Bijapur)

- *Ibrahim Adil Shah*, the greatest ruler of Adil Shahi dynasty, introduced *Dakhini* in place of Persian as court language.
- *Gol Gumbaj* was built by *Muhammad Adil Shah*; it is famous for the so-called 'Whispering Gallery'.
- *Quli Qutub Shah* built the famous *Golconda Fort*.
- *Muhammad Quli Qutub Shah* was the greatest ruler of Qutub Shahi dynasty and it was he who founded the city of *Hyderabad* originally known as *Bhagyanagar* after the name of the Sultan's favourite, Bhagyamati and he also built the famous *Charminar*.

Other Provincial Kingdoms

Kingdon	Capital	Founder
Jaunpur (Sharqui)	Jaunpur	Malik Sarwar (Khwaja Jaha)
Malwa	Dhar, Mandu	Dilawar Khan Ghori
Gujarat	Ahmadabad	Ahmad Jafar Khan, Muzaffar shah
Bengal	Lakhnauti, Pandua, Ekdala	Shamsuddin Iliyas Shah
Khandesh	Burhanpur and Asirgadh	Malik Raza Faruqui

10. Religious Movements in 15th-16th Centuries

I. Bhakti Movement

- The Bahkti movement was based on the doctrine that the relationship between God and man is through love and worship rather than through performing any ritual or religious ceremonies.
- It was in South India for the first time that Bahkti movement grew from a mere religious doctrine to a broad based popular movement based on social and religious equality. It was led by popular saint poets called *'Alvars'*, who represented emotional side of Vaishnavism through collective songs called *Prabandhas*. It declined after the 10th century.
- But it was revived as a philosophical and ideological movement by *'Acharyas'* (who represented intellectual side of Vaishnavism in the 11th century). Most important among them was *Ramanuja*, whose disciple *Ramananda* took it to North India.
- **Main Features** : 1. Discarded rituals and sacrifices 2. Emphasised purity of heart and mind, humanism and devotion 3. Monotheistic in nature 4. God has

either form (*Saguna*) or be formless (*Nirguna*) 5. Knowledge was a constituent part 6. An egalitarian movement. Denounced casteism. 7. Best form of worship is singing Bhajans and realisation of God by personal effort. No need of priestly class 8. Saint, preached in local languages.

Philosophy	Founder
Vishishtadvaita	Ramanuj Acharya
Dvaitadvaita/Bhedabhed	Nimbark Acharya
Dvait	Madhva Acharya
Shuddhadvaita	Vishnu Swami

Bhakti Saints

- **Ramanuja (1017-1137)** : The Vaishnava saint from South India. The earliest exponent of Bhakti movement and *Vishitadvaita* philosophy.
- **Ramananda (14-15 Century)** : The first great Bhakti saint of North India who opened the doors of Bhakti without any distinction of birth, caste, creed or sex.
- **Kabir (1440-1510)** : The most radical disciple of Ramananda, who was opposed to caste, creed, image worship, unnecessary rituals and sought to remove distinction between Hindus and Muslims and believed in social unity.
- **Guru Nanak (1469-1538)** : A Nirguna Bhakti saint and social reformer. The first Sikh Guru and founder of Sikhism.
- **Chaitanya (1486-1533)** : One of the great saints of Krishna Bhakti cult and founder of *Gaudiya* or *Bengal Vaishnavism*.
- **Vidyapati (14-15th Century)** : Maithili saint-poet who wrote thousands of love-ballads on Radha-Krishna ('Padavali').
- **Purandar Das (1480-1564)** : The foremost and the most prolific Vaishnav saint-composer in Karnataka. Believed to have laid the foundations of the modern phase of Karnataka music.
- **Mirabai (1498-1546)** : The Rathor princess of Merata and daughter-in-law of Rana Sanga of Mewar. The most well-known woman Bhakti saint of the Krishna cult of Vaishnavism.
- **Vallabhacharya (1479-1531)** : A great saint of the Krishna Bhakti cult of Vaishnavism, who propounded the philosophy of *Pushti Marg*.
- **Surdas (1483-1563)** : A blind poet of Agra. He sang the glory of Krishna in his *'Sursagar'*.
- **Tulsidas (1532-1623)** : The greatest saint-poet of the Ram Bhakti cult of Vaishnavism. The celebrated author of *'Ramcharitamanas', 'Kavitawali'* and *'Gitawali'*.
- **Shankara Deva (1449-1568)** : The founder of the Vaishnava devotional movement in Assam.
- **Dadu Dayal (1544-1603)** : A Nirguna Bhakti saint belonging to the tanner caste, who was born in Gujarat but spent his whole life in Rajasthan. Founder of the *Dadu panth*.
- **Thyagaraja (1767-1847)** : A Telugu who spent his life in Tamil Nadu. The greatest saint-composer of Karnataka music. He adorned God in the form of Rama, the incarnation of Vishnu and Hero of Valmiki's Ramayana.

Bhakti saints of Maharashtra Dharma

- **Jnanesvara/Jnanadeva (1271-1296)** : The fountain-head of the Bhakti movement in Maharashtra, founder of Marathi language and literature, wrote a long commentary on the *Bhagvad Gita* called the *'Bhavarthadipka'*, more commonly known as *'Jnaneshvari'*.

- **Namadeva (1270-1350)** : A contemporary of Jnanesvara. He was a tailor by caste and was opposed to all caste distinctions. The object of his devotion was *Vithoba* or *Vithal* (identified with Vishnu) of Pandharpur. The cult of Vithoba or Vithal known as *Varkari* sect was founded by Namadeva.
- **Eknath (1533-1599)** : A great scholar saint from Maharashtra who wrote a commentary on the Ramayana called the *'Bhavartha Ramayana'* and another commentary on the eleventh book of the Bhagavata Purana.
- **Tukaram (1598-1650)** : The greatest Bhakti poet from Maharashtra, wrote devotional poems, known as *Abhangas* which are the glory of devotional poetry.
- **Ramdas (1608-1681)** : The last great saint poet from Maharashtra. *'Dasabodha'* is the compilation of his writings and sermons.

II. Sufi Movement

- Sufism is the mystical movement in Islam. The sufis while accepting the Shariat did not confine their religious practice to formal adherence and stressed cultivation of religious experience aimed at direct perception of God.
- The sufi doctrine was based on union with God which can be achieved through love of God, prayers, fasts and rituals, without reference to Hindu or Muslim.
- **Main Features** : 1. Organised in different *Silsilas* (orders) 2. Absorbed variety of ideas and practices from Hinduism, Christianity, Buddhism and Zorastrianism. 3. Sufis aimed at service of mankind through spiritual self development 4. Eager for Hindu-Muslim unity and cultural synthesis 5. Opposed to orthodoxy, they preached faith and devotion to God. 6. Discouraged materialistic life but not in favour of complete renunciation.

Sufi Saints

- **Khwaja Ali Hujjwiri (11th Century)** : Also Known as *Data Ganj Baksh*, the earliest Sufi saint of eminence known to have settled in India, the author of the celebrated manual of Sufism entitled *'Kashf-ul-Mahjub'*.
- **Shaikh Bahauddin Zakariya (1182-1262)** : The founder of the *Suhara-wardi* order who founded the first leading *Khanqah* in India at Multan.
- **Khwaja Muinuddin Chisti (1141-1236)** : The founder of the *Chisti* order-the first and most popular liberal Sufi order in India. He settled down at Ajmer about 1206. Other Chisti Sufi saints who followed khwaja Muinuddin Chisti or Khwaja Ajmeri were: *Sheikh Hamiduddin Nagauri* (1192-1274); *Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki*, (died 1236) in whose memory Qutub Minar was built by Iltutmish; *Baba Fariduddin Ganj-i-Shakar* (1175-1265) popularly known as *Baba Farid*, built his Khanqah at Ajodan (Punjab) and was the first great Punjabi poet of Sufism; *Shaikh Nizamuddin Auliya* (1236-1325) who gained the popular title *Mehboob-i-Ilahi* (the beloved of the God), built his Khanqah in Delhi and was one of the most famous Sufi saint of the Chisti Order; *Shaikh Nasiruddin Mahmud* (d.1365), the charismatic Chisti saint, who was later known as *Chirag-i-Delhi* (the Lamp of Delhi); *Syed Muhammad Gesu Daraz* (d. 1421) who settled down at Gulbarga (Karnataka) was popularly

known as *Bandanawaz* (Benefactor of God's creatures) and authored more than 30 books on Sufism-he was one of the early writers and poets in Urdu.

- **Shaikh Badruddin Samarkandi (13 Century) :** Founded *Firdausi* order which was restricted to Bihar.
- **Shah Nayamatu lah Qadiri and Shah Abdullah Shuttari (15th Century):** Shah Nayamatullah Qadiri founded the *Qadiriya* order and Shah Abdullah Shuttari (d. 1458) founded the *Shuttari* order. The former spread in Uttar Pradesh and Deccan, while the latter spread mainly in Madhya pradesh and Gujarat. *Miyan Mir* (1550-1635) was the most popular Sufi saint of the Qadiriya order.
- **Khwaja Baqi Billah (1536-1603) :** Founded the *Naqsbandiah* order and its most famous saint was *Shaikh Ahmad Sirhindi* (d.1625) known as *Mujaddid Alif.*

Sufi Words	Meaning
Tasawwuf	Sufism
Shaikh/Pir/ Murshid	Spiritual teacher
Murid	Disciple
Khalifah	Successor
Khanqah	The hospice
Sama	Musical recital
Raksa	Dance
Fana	Self annihilation
Ziyarat	Pilgrimage to the tombs of Sufi saints

Achievements of Bhakti and Sufi Movements

1. They influenced each other and inherited from each other 2. Bhaktism reformed Hinduism and Sufism liberalised Islam 3. Both put breaks on orthodoxy. 4. Both encouraged social reform measures 5. Atmosphere of inter-religious fraternity was created. Hindu and Muslims reconciled 6. Development of regional languages 7. A cultural synthesis took place which transformed a Muslim rule in India to a national govt. under Akbar.

11. Mughal Period (1526-40 and 1555-1857)

Babur : 1526-30

- The foundation of the Mughal rule in India was laid by Babur in 1526.
- He was a descendant of Timur (from the side of his father) and Chengiz Kha (from the side of his mother).
- Babur defeated *Ibrahim Lodhi* in the *first battle of Panipat* on April 21, 152 and established Mughal dynasty which lasted till the establishment of Britis rule in India.
- In 1527, he defeated *Rana Sanga* of Mewar at *Khanwa*.
- In 1528, he defeated *Medini Rai* of Chaneri at *Chanderi*.
- In 1529, he efeated *Muhammad Lodhi* (uncle of Ibrahim Lodhi) at *Ghaghra*.
- In 1530, he died at Agra. His tomb is at Kabul.
- He adopted *Tughluma* and flanking party system and first to use gunpowde and artillery in India.
- He wrote his autobiography *Tuzuk-i-Baburi* in Turki in which he gives a excellent account of India and his empire. Tuzuk-i-Baburi was translated i Persian (named *Baburnama*) by *Abdur Rahim Khanekhana* and in English by *Madam Bebridge*.
- He compiled two anthologies of poems, *Diwan* (in Turki) and *Mubaiyan* (i Persian). He also wrote *Risal-i-Usaz* or letters of Babur.

Humayun : 1530-40 and 1555-56

- He was the son of Babur and ascended the throne in 1530. His succession was challenged by his brothers *Kamran, Hindal* and *Askari* alongwith the Afghans.
- He fought two battles against *Sher Shah* at *Chausa* (1539) and at *Kannauj/ Bilgram* (1540) and was completely defeated by him.
- He escaped to Iran where he passed 12 years of his life in exile.
- After Sher Shah's death Humayun invaded India in 1555 and defeated his brothers the Afghans. He once again became the ruler of India.
- He died while climbing down the stairs of his library (at *Din Panah*) in 1556 and was burried in Delhi.
- His sister, *Gulbadan Begum*, wrote his biography *Humayunama*
- He built *Din Panah* at Delhi as his second capital.

Sur Empire (Second Afghan Empire) : 1540-55

Sher Shah : 1540-45

- He was the son of *Hasan Khan*, the Jagirdar of Sasaram. Ibrahim Lodhi transferred his father's jagir to him.
- In 1527-28, he joined Babur's service and then returned to South Bihar as deputy governor and guardian of the minor king Jalal Khan Lohani, son of Bahar Khan Lohani.

Adminstrative Unit	Head
Iqta (i.e. Province)	Haqim and Amin
Sarkar (i.e. District)	Shiqdar-i-Shiaqdaran and Munsif-i-Munsifan
Pargana (i.e. Taluka)	Shiqdar and Munsif
Gram (i.e. Village)	Muqaddam and Amil

- Sher Shah usurps throne as *Hazarat-i-Ala*. He gained Chunar by marrying *Lad Malika*, the widow of governor of Chunar Fort.
- In 1539, he defeated Humayun in the *battle of Chausa* and assumed the title *Sher Shah* as emperor.
- In 1540, he defeated Humayun in the *battle of Kannauj/Bilgram* and annexed Kannauj.
- As an emperor, he conquested Malwa (1542), Ranthambhor (1542), Raisin (1543), Rajputana-annexation of Marwar (1542), Chittor (1544) and Kalinjar (1545). He died in 1545 while conquesting Kalinjar.
- During his brief reign of 5 years he introduced a brilliant administration, land revenue policy and several other measures to improve the economic conditions of his subjects.
- He issued the coin called *Rupia* and fixed standard weights and measures all over the empire.
- He also improved communications by building several highways. He built the *Grand Trunk Road* (G.T. Road), that runs from Calcutta to Peshawar.
- He set up cantonment in various parts of his empire and strong garrison was posted in each cantonments.
- He introduced the principle of local responsibility for local crimes. Muqaddams were punished for failure to find culprits.
- Land was measured and 1/3rd of the average was fixed as land tax. The peasant was given a *patta* (title deed) and a *qabuliyat* (deed of agreement) which fixed

the peasant's rights and taxes. Zamindar were removed and the taxes were directly collected.

- He built *Purana Quila* at Delhi. - shershah
- He was buried in Sasaram.
- Sher Shah was succeded by *Islam Shah* (1545-54); Islam Shah by *Muhammad Adil Shah* (1554-55).

Akbar : 1556-1605

- Akbar, the eldest son of Humayun, ascended the throne under the title of *Jalaluddin Muhammad Akbar Badshah Ghazi* at the young age of 14 at *Kalanaur*, Punjab and his tutor *Bairam Khan* was appointed as the regent.
- *Second Battle of Panipat* (5 Nov., 1556) was fought between *Hemu* (the Hindu General of Muhammad Adil Shah) and Bairam Khan (the regent of Akbar). Hemu was defeated, captured and slain by Bairam Khan.
- This war ended the Mughal-Afghan contest for the throne of Delhi in favour of the Mughals and enabled Akbar to reoccupy Delhi and Agra.
- Akbar ended the regency of Bairam Khan in 1560 and at the age of 18 assumed the reigns of the kingdom.
- Akbar was under the influence of Maham Anga and Adham Khan junta from 1560 to 1562. [Petticoat Govt. : 1560-62]
- In his bid to expand his empire he conquered various provincial states.
- The Rajputa kingdom of Mewar put up a fierce defence under *Rana Uday Singh* (1537-72) and his son *Rana Pratap* (1572-97).
- Akbar tried to win over the Rajputas wherever possible and inducted Rajputa kings into Mughal service and treated them at par with Mughal nobility. By marrying *Harakha Bai*, daughter of *Bharmal/Biharimal* (Kutchhwaha Rajputa Ruler of Amer, Capital–Jaipur) in 1562. Akbar displayed his secular policy with the Hindus. Most of the Rajputa Kings recognised the supremacy of Akbar except Rana Pratap Singh and his son Amar Singh (Sisodiya Rajputas of Mewar, Capital-Chittor).
- The *Battle of Haldighati* (1576) was fought between *Rana Pratap* of Mewar and Mughal army led by *Man Singh* of Amer. Rana Pratap was defeated but he did not submit and continued the struggle.

Akbar's Conquests

Year	Province	From
1560-62	Malwa	Baz Bahadur
1561	Chunar	Afghan
1562	Merata	Jaimal
1564	Gondwana (Gadh Katanga)	Rani Durgawati (regent of Bir Narayan)
1568	Chittor	Rana Uday Singh
1569	Ranthambor	Surjan Hada
1569	Kalinjar	Ram Chandra
1570	Marwar	Chandrasena, Kalyanmal, Raj Singh, Rawal Harirai
1572	Gujarat	Bahadur Shah

Year	Province	From
1574-76	Bengal-Bihar	Daud Khan Karrani
1576	Haldighati	Rana Pratap
1581	Kabul	Mirza Hakim
1585-86	Kashmir	Yusuf Khan and Yakub Khan
1590-91	Sindh	Jani Beg Mirza
1590-92	Orissa	Kutul Khan and Nisar Khan
1591	Khandesh	Ali Khan
1595	Baluchistan	Yusufzai Tribes
1595	Kandhar	Muzaffar Husain Mirza
1597-1600	Ahmadnagar	Chand Bibi (regent of Bahadur Shah)
1601	Asirgarh	Miran Bahadur Khan

Important Years of Akbar	
1562	Visited Ajmer first time
1562	Ban on forcible conversion of war-prisoners into slaves
1563	Abolition of Pilgrimage Tax
1564	Abolition of Jaziya
1571	Fondation of Fatehpur Sikri
1574	Mansabadari System introduced
1575	Ibadatkhana was built
1578	Parliament of Religions in Ibadatkhana
1579	Proclamation of 'Mazhar' (written by Faizi)
1580	Dahsala Bandobast introduced
1582	Din-i-Ilahi/Tauhid-i-Ilahi
1584	Ilahi Samvat i.e. Calender
1587	Ilahi Gaz i.e. Yard

- As a revolt against the orthodoxy and bigotry of religious priests, Akbar proclaimed a new religion, *Din-i-Ilahi* in 1581. The new religion was based on a synthesis of values taken from several religions like Hinduism, Islam, Jainism and Christianity. It did not recognize the prophet, *Birbal* was the only Hindu who followed this new religion. Din-i-Ilahi, however, did not become popular.
- Akbar built *Fatehpur Sikri*, *Agra Fort*, *Lahore Fort* and *Allahabad Fort* and *Humayun's Tomb* at Delhi. Fatehpur Sikri, place near Agra–it is said that Akbar had no son for a long time. *Sheikh Salim Chisti*, a Sufi saint blessed Akbar with a son who was named *Salim/Sheikho Baba* (Jahangir). In honour of Salim Chisti, Akbar shifted his court from Agra to Fatehpur Sikri.
- He was patron of the art and in his court many persons flourished.
- **Navaratna i.e. nine jewels of Akbar :** 1. *Birbal* (administrator) 2. *Abul Fazl* (scholar and statesman) 3. *Faizi* (scholar and statesman, brother of Abul Fazl) 4. *Todarmal* (Finance Minister, *Dahsala Bandobast/Jabti*) 5. *Bhagwandas* (Mansabdar, son of Bharmal) 6. *Man Singh* (Mansabdar, Grandson of Bharmal) 7. *Tansen* (Musician) 8. *Abdur Rahim Khanekhana* (Statesman, Hindi poet) 9. *Mulla Do Pyaja*
- *Tulsidas* ('Ramcharitamanas') also lived during Akbar's period.
- When Akbar died, he was buried at *Sikandara* near Agra.
- Akbar is considered 'the real founder of the Mughal empire' in India.
- He was the first Mughal ruler who divorced religion from politics.

- *Birbal* was killed in the battle with Yusufzai Tribe (1586).
- *Abul Fazl* was murdered by *Bir Singh Bundela* (1601).
- Akbar gave Mughal India one official language (Persian).

Jahangir : 1605-27

- Salim, son of Akbar, came to the throne after Akbar's death in 1605. He issued 12 ordinances.
- He is known for his strict administration of justice. He established *Zanjir-i-Adal* (i.e. Chain of Justice) at Agra Fort for the seekers of royal justice.
- In 1611, Jahangir married *Mihar-un-nisa*, widow of Sher Afghan, a Persian nobleman of Bengal. Later on she was given the title *Nurjahan*. Nurjahan excercised tremendous influence over the state affairs. She was made the official *Padshah Begum*.
- Jahangir issued coins jointly in Nurjahan's name and his own.
- Jahangir also married *Manmati/Jagat Gosai/JodhaBai* of Marwar, and a Kachhwaha princess.
- In 1608, *Captain William Hawkins*, a representative of East India Company came to Jahangir's court. He was given the mansab of 400. In 1615 *Sir Thomas Roe*, an ambassador of King James I of England also came to his court. Though initially Jahangir resisted, later on he granted permission to the English to establish a trading port at Surat.
- A political triumph during Jahangir reign was the submission of *Rana Amar Singh* of Mewar (1615). Jahangir captured the strong fort of Kangara (1620). A part of Ahmadnagar was also annexed. *Malik Amber* ceded back to the Mughal the territory of Balaghat (Maharashtra).
- His reign was marked by several revolts. His son *Khusrau*, who received patronage of 5th Sikh Guru *Arjun Dev*, revolted against Jahangir (1605). Arjun Dev, was later sentenced to death for his blessing to the rebel prince (1606). During his last period, *Khurram (Shanjahan)*, son of Jahangir, and *Mahavat Khan*, military general of Jahangir also revolted (Khurram : 1622-25 and Mahavat Khan : 1626-27).
- He wrote his memoirs *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri* in Persian.
- He was buried in Lahore.

Shahjahan : 1628-58

- Mother's name-*Jagat Gosai/Jodha Bai* (daughter of Raja Jagat Singh).
- Shahjahan ascended the throne in 1628 after his father's death.
- He was best known for his Deccan and foreign policies.
- The first thing that he had to face was revolts in Bundelkhand (Jujhar Singh Bundela of Orchha : 1628-35) and the Deccan (Khan-i-Jahan Lodhi, the governor of Deccan : 1629-31)
- Three years after his accession, his beloved wife *Mumtaj Mahal* (original name-*Arzumand Bano*) died in 1631. To perpetuate her memory he built the Taj Mahal at Agra in 1632-53.
- In 1631-32, he defeated the Portuguese.
- In addition to Jahangir's empire, Nizam Shahi's dynasty of Ahmadnagar was brought under Mughal control (1633) by Shahjahan. The Deccan Sultanate of Bijapur and Golconda accepted his suzreignty in 1636.

- He sent his army to Balkh in order to secure the defence of North-Western India (1647). Shajahan who had recovered Kandhar (Afghanistan) in 1638 from the Iranians lost it again in 1647 despite three campaigns under prince Murad, Aurangzeb and Dara.
- Shahjahan's reign is described by French traveller *Bernier* and *Tavernier* and the Italian traveller *Nicoli Manucci*. *Peter Mundi* described the famine that occured during Shahjahan's time.
- Shahjahan's reign is said to have marked the pinnacle of the Mughal dynasty and empire. He is known for the promotion of art, culture and architecture during his time. The *Red Fort, Jama Masjid* and *Taj Mahal* are some of the magnificent structures built during his reign.
- Shahjahan's failing health set off the war of succession among his four sons in 1657. Aurangzeb emerged the victor who crowned himself in July 1658. Shahjahan was imprisoned by his son Aurangzeb in the Agra Fort where he died in captivity in 1666. He was buried at Taj (Agra).

War of Succession		
War of Bahadurpur, near Banaras	Feb. 1658	Dara and Shah Shuja
War of Dharmat, near Ujjain	April 1658	Dara and Aurangzeb-Murad
War of Sumugarh, near Agra	May 1658	Dara and Aurangzeb-Murad
War of Khajua, near Allahabad	Dec. 1658	Aurangzeb and Shah Shuja
War of Deorai, near Ajmer	Mar. 1659	Aurangzeb and Dara

Aurangzeb : 1658-1707

- Aurangzeb defeated Dara at Dharmat (1658), Samugarh (1658) and Deorai in which Samugarh was decisive one and Deorai was last one.
- After victory, Aurangzeb was crowned at Delhi under the title *Alamgir*. He ruled for 50 years till his death in Feb., 1707 in Ahmadnagar.
- During the first 23 years of the rule (1658-81) Aurangazeb concentrated on North India. During this period the Marathas under *Shivaji* rose to power and were a force to reckon with.
- Aurangzeb captured *Guru Teg Bahadur*, the 9th Guru of Sikhs in 1675 and executed him when he refused to embrace Islam. The 10th and last Sikh Guru, *Guru Gobind Singh*, son of Guru Teg Bahadur, organised his followers into community of warrior called *Khalsa* to fight the Muslim tyranny and avenge the killing of his father. Guru Gobind Singh was, however assassinated in 1708 by an Afghan at Nander in Deccan. *Banda Bairagi*, a trusted disciple of Guru Gobind Singh continued the war against Mughals.

Revolts During Aurangzeb's reign

Revolts	Year of Beginning	Leaders	Causes
I. North India (1658-81)			
Jat	1669	Gokula, Rajaram, Churamani	Agrarian policy
Bundela	1671	Champat Rai, Chhatrasal	Political and religious

Revolts	Year of Beginning	Leaders	Causes
Satnami	1673	Followers of Satnami Sect	Religious suppression
Sikh	1675	Guru Teg Bahadur, Guru Gobind Singh	Religious
Rajput: Rathor (Marwar)	1678	Durgadas (General of Ajit singh)	Succession to throne of Marwar
II. South India (1682-1707)			
Annexation of Bijapur	1686	Sikandar Adil Shah	Violation of treaty
Annexation of Golconda	1687	Abul Hasan Kutub Shah	Helping attitude to Maratha
Mughal-Maratha Struggle	1689	Sambhaji, Rajaram, Tarabai	Rising aspiration of Maratha nationalism

- Aurangzeb left the North in 1682 and for the next 25 years (1682-1707) made desperate bids to crush the Marathas.
- Shivaji was the most powerful Maratha king and an arch enemy of Aurangzeb. When Aurangzeb could not eliminate him, he conspired in 1665 with Jai Singh of Amber, a Rajput, to eliminate Shivaji. On a assurance given by Jai Singh, Shivaji visited Aurangzeb's court. Shivaji was imprisoned by Aurangzeb but he managed to escape and in 1674 proclaimed himself an independent monarch. He died in 1680 and was succeeded by his son Sambhaji, who was executed by Aurangzeb in 1689. Sambhaji was succeeded by his brother Rajaram and after his death in 1700, his widow Tarabai carried on the movements.
- The mughal conquests reached a climax during Aurangzeb's reign, as Bijapur and Golconda were annexed in 1686 and 1687, respectively.
- Aurangzeb died in 1707. He was buried at Khuldabed (Daulatabad).
- He was called *Zinda Pir*, the living saint.
- *Jaziya* was re-introduced. However, the Hindu Mansabdars maintained their high proportion during his rule.
- **Decline of the Mughal Empire:** After Aurangzeb, the Mughal empire rapidly declined. Important causes of the decline were: 1. Aurangzeb's Rajputa, Deccan and religious policies 2. Weak successors who were incompetent both as administrators and generals 3. Wars of succession 4. Factionalism among nobality after Aurangzeb 5. Jagirdari crisis 6. Growth of Maratha and other regional powers in Bengal, Hyderabad, Avadh, Mysore etc. 7. Foreign invasions by *Nadir Shah* (1739) and *Abdali* 8. British conquest of India.

Important Years of Aurangzeb's religious policy	
1659	Forbade inscription of kalama on the coins, celebration of Nauroj Festival; Appointment of *Muhatasib* (Regulator of moral character)
1663	Ban on Sati custom
1668	Ban on Hindu Festival
1669	Ban on Jharokha darshan, Forbade music in the court.
1670	Ban on Tuladan (weighing of the emperor)
1679	Re-introduction of *Jaziya*.

Later Mughals

Bahadur Shah I (1707-1712) : Original Name-*Muazzam*, Title-*Shah Alam I*.

Jahandar shah (1712-1713) : Ascended the throne with the help of Zulfikar Khan; Abolished Jaziya.

Farrukh Siyar (1713-1719) : Ascended the throne with the help of Sayyid brothers-Abduall Khan and Hussain Khan.

Muhammad Shah (1719-1748) : In 1738-39, *Nadir Shah* raided India and took away Thakht-i-Taus (the peacock throne) and Kohinoor diamond.

Ahmed Shah (1748-1754) : Ahmad shah Abdali (General of Nadir Shah) marched towards Delhi and Mughals ceded Punjab and Multan.

Alamgir II (1754-1759) : Ahmad Shah occupied Delhi. Later, Delhi was plundered by Marathas.

Shah Alam II (1759-1806) : Nazib Khan became very powerful in Delhi so much so that he could not enter Delhi for 12 years.

Akbar II (1806-1837) : Pensioner of East India Company.

Bahadur Shah II (1837-1857) : Last Mughal Emperor who was made premier during 1857 revolt. He was deported to *Rangoon* (Burma, now Mayanmar) in 1858 where he died in 1862.

Administration

- Mughal empire was divided into *Subas* which were further subsidvided into *Sarkar, Pargana* and *Gram*.
- However, it also had other territorial units as *Khalisa* (royal land), *Jagirs* (autonomous rajyas) and *Inams* (gifted lands, mainly waste lands).
- There were 15 Subas (provinces) during Akbar's reign, which laterincreased to 20 under Aurangzeb's reign.

Administrative Unit	Incharge
Suba (i.e. Province)	Sipahsalar/Subedar/Nizam—The Head Executive Diwan-Incharge of revenue department
Sarakar (i.e. District)	Fauzdar-Administrative Head Amal/Amalguzar-Revenue collection
Pargana (i.e. Taluka)	Siqdar-Administrative Head Amin, Qanungo-Revenue officials
Gram (i.e. Village)	Muqaddam-Headman, Patwari-Accountant

- Akbar introduced Mansabdari system. The term *Mansab* indicates the rank of its holder. Mansab dari was both civil and military. Almost the whole nobility, bureaucracy and military hold Mansabs.
- The Mughal Mansab was dual i.e. *Zat* (personal rank and pay status) and *Sawar* (number of horsemen to maintain).
- Mansabadar were of 3 categories: *Mansabadars, Amirs* and *Amir-i-umda*.
- According to pay mode they were of 2 types: *Naqdi* (paid through cash) and *Jagirdar* (paid through Jagirs).
- Jahangir added *Duaspah Sih-aspah* system i.e. one's sawar rank can be raised without raising his zat rank.
- Shahjahan added *Jama-Dami* or *Mahana Zagir* (Monthly Scale) system.
- It ultimately caused Jagirdari and agrarian crisis, which was a major cause of decline of Mughals.

- There were several methods of revenue collection in practice viz. *Kanku* (estimate), *Rai* (yield per unit area) and *Zabti* (based on the yields of crops).
- *Dahsala Bandobast* or *Zabti*: A standard method of collection based on rates of crops determined after 10 years assessment. *Todar Mal* pioneered it.
- Jagirdari system was the assignment of land in proportion to a Jagirdar's salary. Hence, every Mansabdar was entitled to a jagir if he was not paid in cash.
- *Madad-i-maash* or *Suyur ghal* or *Inam* were land grants to people of fovour/religious assignment.

Mughal Culture

- Babur built two mosques, one at Kabulibagh in Panipat and the other at Sambhal in Rohilakhand.
- *Humayun's tomb* was built by his widow *Haji Begum*.
- An unusual building at Fatehpur Sikri is *Panch Mahal*. Panch Mahal has the plan of Buddhist vihara.
- The *Mariam's palace, Diwan-i-Aam, Diwan-i-khas* at Sikri are Indian in their plan.
- *Buland Darwaja* (built after Gujarat victory), formed the main entrance to Fatehpur Sikri.
- *Salim Chisti's tomb* (redone in Marble by Jahangir) is the first Mughal building in pure marble). *Palace of Birbal, Palace of Tansen* are also inside the Fatehpur Sikri.
- Akbar also began to build his own tomb at *Sikandara* which was later completed by Jahangir.
- The architecture of Fatehpur Sikri is known as Epic in red sand stone.
- Nurjahan built *Itimad-ud-daula/Mirza Ghiyas Beg's marble tomb* at Agra, which is noticable for the first use of *pietra dura* (floral designs made up of semiprecious stones) technique.
- Jahangir introduced vigorous use of marble instead of red sand stone and use of pietra dura for decorative purpose.
- Jahangir built *Moti Masjid* in Lahore and his mausoleum at *Shahdara* (Lahore).
- Mosque building activity reached its climax in *Taj Mahal*. Shahjahan also built the *Jama Masjid*.
- Some of the important buildings built by Shahajahan at Agra are *Moti Masjid* (only Mosque of marble). *Khaas Mahal, Mussmman Burz* (Jasmine Palace where he spent his last year in captivity) etc.
- He laid the foundations of *Shahjahanabad* in 1637 where he built the *Red Fort* and *Takht-i-Taus (Peacock throne)*.
- Only building by Aurangzeb in the Red Fort is *Moti Masjid*.
- Only monument associated with Aurangzeb is *Bibi ka Makbara* which is the tomb of his wife *Rabbia-ud-daura* in Aurangabad.
- Aurangzab also built the *Badshahi Masjid* in Lohore.
- Humayun had takan into his service two master painter *Mir Syed Ali* and *Abdus Samad*.

- *Daswant* and *Basawan* were two famous painters of Akbar's court.
- *Abdul Hassan, Ustad Mansur* and *Bishandas* were three famous painters of Jahangir's court.
- Jahangir claims that he could distinguish the work of each artist in a picture.

Titles given by Mughal Ruler

Title	Person	Field	Ruler
Jagat Guru	Harivijay Suri	Jain Religion	Akbar
Zari Kalam	Mohammad Husain	Literature	Akbar
Sirin Kalam	Abdus Samad	Literature	Akbar
Raj Kavi	Faizi	Literature	Akbar
Kavi Priya	Birbal	Literature	Akbar
Nadir-ul-Asra	Ustad Mansur	Painting	Jahangir
Nadir-uz-Zaman	Abdul Hassan	Painting	Jahangir
Guna Samudra	Lal khan	Music	Shahjahan
Raj Kavi	Kalim	Literature	Shahjahan
Mahakaviray	Sundardas	Literature	Shahjahan

Literature of Mughal Period

Book	Author	Contents
Tuzuk-i-Baburi	Babur	Describes military tactics and administrative organisation during Babur's reign
Qanun-i-Humayun	Khwand Amair	Describes Humayun's administration, festivities and buildings of that period
Humayun Nama	Gulbadan Begum	Biography of Humayun
Akbar Nama	Abul Fazl	Gives a history of Akbar's reign
Tobaqat-i-Akbari	Khwajah Nizamuddin Ahmad Baksh	-do-
Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri	Jahangir	Memoirs of his own reign
Iqbalnama-i-Jahangiri	Muhammad Khan	History of Jahangir's reign
Chahar Chaman	Chandra Bhan Brahman	History of Shahjahan's rule
Alamgir-nama	Munshi Mirza Muhamma Kazin	Gives an account of Aurangzeb's first 10 years of rule
Massir-i-Alamgiri	Saqi Mustaid Khan	Official history of Aurangzeb's reign written after his death
Ain-i-Akbari	Abul Fazl	History of Akbar's reign
Muntakhab-ul-Tawarikh	Badauni	History of Akbar's rule
Tawarikh-i-Alfi	Mulla Daud	-do-
Nuriyya-i-Sultaniyya	Abdul Haq	Theory of Kinship during Mughal Period
Waqt-i-Hyderabad	Nimat Khan Ali	Aurangzeb's Golconda conquest
Futuhat-i-Alamgiri	Ishwar Das	Aurangzeb's history
Nuskha-i-Dilkusha	Bhimsen Saxena	Analysis of Aurangzeb's rule and character

Book	Author	Contents
Khulasat-ul-Tawarikh	Sujan Raj Khatri	History of Aurangzeb's rule
Padshah Namah	Abdul Hamid Lahori	History of Shah Jahan's reign
Padshah Namah	Mumahad Waris	-do-
Shahjahan Namah	Muhammad Salih	-do-
Shahjahan Namah	Inyat Khan	-do-
Hamlai-Haidri	Muhammad Rafi Khan	History of Aurangzeb's rule
Namah-e-Alamgiri	Aquil Khan Zafar	-do-
Sirr-i-Akbar	Dara Shikoh	Urdu translation of Upanishad
Safinat-ul-Auliya	-do-	Biographies of Sufi Saints
Majma-ul-Bahrain	-do-	Philosophical ideas discussed
Raqqat-e-Alamgiri	Aurangzeb	A compendium of his letters
Hasmat-ul-Arifin	Dara Shikoh	Religious ideas discussed

12. Maratha State (1674-1720) and Maratha Confederacy (1720-1818)

Maratha State : 1674-1720

Shivaji : 1674-80

- Born at Shivneri Fort in 1627.
- Father-*Shahji Bhonsle*, Mother-*Jija Bai*, Religious Teacher-*Samarth Ramdas*.
- Shivaji inherited the Jagir of Poona from his father in 1637.
- After the death of his guardian, *Dadaji Kondadev*, in 1647, he assumed full charge of his Jagir.
- He conquered many Forts viz. Singh Garh/Kondana (1643), Rohind and Chakan (1644-45), Toran (1646), Purandhar (1648), Rajgarh/Raigarh (1656), Supa (1656) and Panhala (1659).
- *Afzal Khan* was deputed by Adil Shah (Ruler of Bijapur) to punish Shivaji; but the later Afzal Khan was killed by Shivaji in 1659.
- *Shaista Khan*, governor of Deccan, was deputed by Aurangzeb to put down the rising power of Shivaji in 1660. Shivaji lost Poona and suffered several defeats till he made a bold attack on Shaista Khan (1663) and plundered Surat (1664) and later Ahmadnager.
- *Raja Jai Singh* of Amber was then appointed by Aurangzeb to put down Shivaji (1665). Jai Singh succeeded in beseiging Shivaji in the fort of Purandhar. Consequently the *treaty of Purandhar* (1665) was signed according to which Shivaji ceded some forts to the Mughals and paid a visit to the Mughal court at Agra.
- In 1674 Shivaji was coronated at capital Raigarh and assumed the title of *Haindava Dharmodharak* (Protector of Hinduism).
- After that *Chhatrapati* Shivaji continued the struggle with Mughals and Siddis (Janjira). He conquested Karnataka during 1677-80.

Shivaji's Administration

- Shivaji divided his territory under his rule *(Swaraj)* into three provinces, each under a viceroy. Provinces were divided into *prants* which were subdivided into *parganas* or *tarafs*. The lowest unit was village headed by *Patel* (Headman).
- Shivaji was helped by the *ashtapradhan* (eight minister) which was unlike a collective of ministers, for there was no collective responsibility; each minister was directly responsible to Shivaji.

Shivaji's Ashtapradhan

Peshwa (Mukhya Pradhan)	Finance and general administration, later he became Prime Minister and assumed great importance.
Majumdar (Amatya)	Revenue and Finance Minister
Waqenavis (Mantri)	Home Minister
Dabir (Sumant)	Foreign Minister
Surnavis (Sachiv)	Head of Royal correspondence
Pandit Rao (Sadar)	Head of religious affairs
Sar-i-Naubat (Senapati)	Military commander. This is an honorary post with no real military powers.
Nyayadhish	Justice

- Most of the administrative reforms of Shivaji were based on Malik Ambar's (Ahmadnagar) reforms.
- Assessment of land revenue was based on measurement. The *Kathi* of Malik Ambar was adopted as the unit of measurement.
- Land revenue was fixed 1/3rd i.e. 33% of the gross produce (initially), 2/5th i.e. 40% of the gross produce (after reforms).
- *Chauth* was 1/4th i.e. 25% of the land revenue was paid to the Marathas so for not being subjected to Maratha raids.
- *Sardeshmukhi* was an additional levy of 10% on those lands of Maharashtra over which the Maratha claimed hereditary rights, but which formed part of the Mughal Empire.

Sambhaji : 1680-89

- Sambhaji, the elder son of Shivaji, defeated Rajaram, the younger son of Shivaji, in the war of succession.
- He provided protection and support to *Akbar II*, the rebellious son of Aurangzeb.
- He was captured at Sangameswar by a Mughal noble and executed.

Rajaram : 1689-1700

- He succeeded the throne with the help of the ministers at Rajgarh.
- He fled from Rajgarh to Jinji in 1689 due to a Mughal invasion in which Rajgarh was captured along with Sambhaji's wife and son (Shahu) by the Mughals.
- Rajaram died at Satara, which had become the capital after the fall of Jinji to Mughal in 1698.
- Rajaram created the new post of *Pratinidhi*, thus taking the total number of minister to nine (Pratinidhi + Ashtapradhan).

Tarabai : 1700-07

- Rajaram was succeeded by his minor son Shivaji II under the guardianship of his mother Tarabai.
- Tarabai continued the struggle with Mughals.

Shahu : 1707-1749

- Shahu was released by the Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah.
- Tarabai's army was defeated by Shahu in the *battle of Khed* (1700), and Shahu occupied Satara.
- But the Southern part of the Maratha kingdom with its capital Kolhapur continued to be under the control of the descendents of Rajaram (Shivaji II and later Shambhaji II).
- Shahu's reign saw the rise of Peshwas and transformation of the Maratha kingdom into an empire based on the principle of confederacy.

Balaji Viswanath (1713-20) : The First Peshwa

- He began his career as a small revenue official and was given the title of *Sena Karte* (marker of the army) by Shahu in 1708.
- He became *Peshwa* in 1713 and made the post the most important and powerful as well as hereditary.
- He played a crucial role in the final victory of Shahu by winning over almost all the Maratha Sardars to the side of Shahu.
- He concluded an agreement with the Syed Brothers-King Maker (1719) by which the Mughal emperor Farrukh Siyar recognised Shahu as the king of the Swarajya.

Maratha Confederacy : 1720-1818

Baji Rao I : 1720-40

Kingdom	Territory
The Scindia	Gwalior
The Holkar	Indore
The Pawar	Dhar
The Gaekwad	Baroda
The Bhonsle	Nagpur
The Peshwa	Poona

- Baji Rao, the eldest son of Balaji Viswanath, succeeded him as *Peshwa* at the young age of 20.
- He was considered the greatest exponent of guerrilla tactics after Shivaji and Maratha power reached its zenith under him.
- Under him several Maratha families became prominent and got themselves entrenched in different parts of India.
- After defeating and expelling the Siddis of Janjira from the mainland (1722), he conquered Bassein and Salsette from the Portuguese (1739).
- He also defeated the Nizam-ul-Mulk near Bhopal and concluded the *treaty of Doraha Sarai* by which he got Malwa and Bundelkhand from the latter (1738).
- He led innumerable successful expeditions into North India to weaken the Mughal empire and to make the Marathas the supreme power in India.
- He said about Mughals : *'Let us strike at the trunk of the withering tree and the branches will fall of themselves'*.

Balaji Baji Rao : 1740-61

- Popularly known as *Nana Saheb*, he succeeded his father at the age of 20.
- After the death of Shahu (1749), the management of all state affairs was left in his hands.

- In an agreement with the Mughal emperor Ahmad Shah, the Peshwa was to protect the Mughal empire from internal and external enemies (like Ahmad Shah Abdali) in return for Chauth (1752).
- *Third battle of Panipat (Jan 14, 1761)* resulted in the defeat of the Marathas by Ahmad Shah Abdali and the death of Viswas Rao and Sadashiv Rao Bhau. This event shocked the Peshwa Balaji Baji Rao and after six month he also died. This battle ended the Maratha power.
- **Successors of Balaji Baji Rao :** *Madhav Rao* (1761-72), *Narayan Rao* (1772-73), *Sawai Madhav Rao* (1773-95) and *Baji Rao II* (1795-1818).

Anglo-Maratha Wars

- **First Anglo-Maratha War (1775-82) :** Favouring the cause of Raghunath Rao (Raghoba) for Peshwaship, English (Hastings) came in conflict with the Marathas. On being defeated, the British had to sign the humiliating *Convention of Wadgaon* (1779).
- British later signed *Treaty of Salbai* (1782), renouncing the cause of Raghoba.
- **Second Anglo-Maratha war (1803-06) :** The Maratha Peshwa signed the *Subsidiary Alliance Treaty of Bassein* (1802).
- The Maratha confederacy, which did not like the idea challenged the British power but were defeated by the British.
- **Third Anglo-Maratha war (1817-18) :** Lord Hastings was determined to proclaim British paramountcy in India. He moved against *Pindaris* transgressed the sovereignty of the Maratha chiefs and the war began.
- The Marathas were decisively defeated.

13. The Advent of the Europeans

Company	Estb.	Head Quarter/Capital
Portugese East India company	1498	Cochin (1510-30), Goa (1530-1961)
English East India Company	1600	West coast : Surat (1608-87), Bombay (from 1687) East coast : Koromandal, Masulipattanum (1611-41), Madras (from 1641) Bengal : Under Madras (upto 1700) Calcutta (from 1700)
Dutch East India Company	1602	East coast : Koromandal, Pulicut (upto 1690), Negapattanum (from 1690); Bengal : Hugli (from 1655)
Danish East India Company	1616	Serampur (Bengal) : 1676-1845
French East India Company	1664	Surat (1668-73), Pondicherry (1673-1954)

Note : Danish company were forced to sell all their settlements in India to the British in 1845.

Portugese

- The Cape route was discovered from Europe to India by *Vasco da Gama*. He reached the port of Calicut on May 17, 1498 and was received by the Hindu ruler of Calicut (Known by the title of *Zamorin*).
- This led to the establishment of trading stations at Calicut, Cochin and Cannanore.
- Cochin was the early capital of the Portuguese in India. Later Goa replaced it.
- *Francisco de Almeida* was the first governor of Portuguese. Almeida (1505-09) introduced *'the policy of Blue water'*.

- *Alfonso d' Albuquerque* was the second governor of Portuguese. Albuquerque (1509-15) introduced *'the policy of Imperialism'*. He captured Goa from the ruler of Bijapur in 1510.
- *Nino da Cunha* (1529-38) transferred his capital from Cochin to Goa (1530) and acquired Diu and Bassein (1534) from Bahadur Shah of Gujarat.
- *Martin Alfonso de Souza* (1542-45) : The famous Jesuit Saint *Fransisco Xavier* arrived in India with him.
- The Portuguese power witnessed a decline by the end of the 16th century.
- They lost Hugli in 1631 after being driven out by Qasim khan, a Mughal noble of Shahjahan.
- In 1661 the King of Portugal gave Bombay to Charles II of England as dowry when he married the former's sister.
- The Marathas captured Salsette and Bassein in 1739.
- In the end they were left only with Goa, Diu and Daman which they retained till 1961.

Dutch

- Formation of the company in March, 1602, by a charter of Dutch parliyament the Dutch East India Company was formed with powers to make wars, conclude treaties, acquire territories and build fortresses.
- The Dutch set up factories at Masulipattam (1605), Pulicat (1610), Surat (1616), Bimilipatam (1641), Karaikal (1645), Chinsura (1653), Kasimbazar, Baranagore, Patna, Balasore, Negapatam (all in 1658) and Cochin (1663).
- The Dutch replaced the Portuguese as the most dominant power in European trade with the East, including India.
- Pulicat was main centre in India till 1690, after which Negapatam replaced it.
- The Dutch conceded to English after their defeat in the *battle of Bedera* in 1759.

English

- Before the English East India Company established trade in India, *John Mildenhall*, a merchant adventurer, was the first English man who arrived in India in 1599 by the over land route, ostensibly for the purpose of trade with Indian merchants.
- 'The Governor and Company of Merchants of London Trading into the East Indies', popularly known as the English East India company, was formed in 1600.
- *Captain William Hawkins* arrived at Jahangir's court (1609) to seek permission to open a factory at Surat. A Farman was issued by Jahangir permitting the English to build a factory at Surat (1613).
- *Sir Thomas Roe* came to India as ambassador of James I to Jahangir's court in 1615 to obtain the permission to trade and erect factories in different parts of the empire.
- The English East India Company acquired Bombay from Charles II on lease. *Gerald Aungier* was its first governor from 1669 to 1677.
- In 1690, *Job Charnock* established a factory at Sutanati and the zamindari of the three villages of *Sutanati*, *Kalikata* and *Gobindpur* was acquired by the British (1698). These villages later grew into the city of *Calcutta*. The factory at Sutanati was fortified in 1696 and this new fortified settlement was named *Fort William* in 1700.

- In 1694, the British parliament passed a resolution giving equal rights to all Englishmen to trade in the East. A new rival company, known as 'the English Company of Merchants Trading to the East Indies' was formed (1698).
- The final amalgamation of the company came in 1708 under the title of 'The united company of Merchants of England Trading to the East Indies'. This new company continued its existence till 1858.

French

- The French East India Company was formed by *Colbert* under state patronage in 1664.
- The first French factory was established at Surat by *Francois Caron* in 1668.
- A factory at Masulipatam was set up in 1669.
- The French power in India was revived under *Lenoir* and *Dumas* (governors) between 1720 and 1742. They occupied Mahe in the Malabar, Yanam in Coromandal and Karaikal in Tamil Nadu (1739).
- The arrival of *Dupleix* as French governor in India in 1742 saw the beginning of Anglo-French conflict (Carnatic Wars) resulting in their final defeat in India.

Anglo-French Conflict/Carnatic Wars

- An instance of Anglo French rivalry.
- **First Anglo-French war (1746-48) :** The French besieged Madras. At St. Thome battle the Nawab of Carnatic's army was defeated by French under Dupleix.
- The *Treaty of Aix-La-Chapelle (1748)* ended the war of Austrian succession and First Anglo-French war in India.
- **Second Anglo-French war (1749-54) :** Dupleix aligned with Muzaffar Jung (Hyderabad) and Chanda Sahib (Carnatic/Arcot). After initial reverses, Robert Clive emerged victorious.
- The *treaty of Pondicherry/Treaty by Godehu* (new French governor in place of Dupleix) : 1754-ended the Second Anglo-French War.
- **Third Anglo-French war (1758-63) :** French Count de Lally captured Fort St. David. French were defeated at Wandiwash (1760). It was a decisive defeat of French.
- The *treaty of Paris (1763)* ended the Third and Final Anglo-French war in India. Pondicherry was returned to French by this treaty.

Modern India

14. Expansion of British Power

(In the context of Bengal, Mysore, Punjab etc.)

Bengal

- *Murshil Quli Khan (1717-27)* : In 1717, Murshid Quli Khan was appointed as Bengal's Subedar i.e. governor by Mughal emperor Farrukh Siyar. Grant of the Governorship of Orissa also to him by Farrukh Siyar in 1719. He transferred the capital of Bengal from Dacca to *Murshidabad*.
- *Shujauddin (1727-39)* : He was the son-in-law of Murshid Quli Khan. He was granted the Governorship of Bihar by Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah 'Rangeela' in 1733.

- *Sarfaraj Khan (1739-40)* : He was the son of Shujauddin and was murdered by Alivardi Khan, the Deputy Governor of Bihar, in 1740.
- *Alivardi Khan (1740-56)* : Legalised his usurpation by receiving a *farman* from Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah 'Rangeela' after paying him Rs. 2 Crores. He prevented the English and the French from fortifying their factories at Calcutta and Chandranagore respectively.

Sirajuddaula : 1756-57

- Alivardi Khan was succeeded by his grandson Sirajuddaula.
- Sirajuddaula seized the English factory at Kasimbazar. On 20th June, 1756, Fort William surrendered but Robert Clive recovered Calcutta.
- On 2nd Jan. 1757, *Treaty of Alinagar* was signed, where by Siraj conceded practically all the demands. British then captured Chandranagore, the French settlement, on March 1757.
- The *Battle of Plassey* was fought on 23 June, 1757. Owing to the conspiracy, the Nawab was defeated.
- The following betrayed the Nawab :

  Mir Jafar : Mir Bakshi

  Manikchand : Officer in charge of Calcutta

  Amichand : Rich Sikh merchant

  Jagat Seth : Biggest banker of Bengal

  Khadim Khan : Commanded a large number of Nawab's troops.

Mir Jafar : 1757-60

- The company was granted undisputed right to free trade in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. It received the zamindari of 24 Parganas. Mir Jafar, however, fell into arrears and was forced to abdicate in favour of his son-in-law Mir Qasim.

Mir Qasim : 1760-64

- Mir Qasim ceded Burdwan, Midnapore and Chittagong. He shifted his capital from Murshidabad to *Munger.*
- Mir Qasim soon revolted as he was angry with the British for misusing the *dastak* (free duty passes). However, having been defeated by the British, he fled to Awadh, where he formed a confederacy with Awadh ruler Shujauddaula and Mughal emperor Shah Alam II.
- The *Battle of Buxar (1764)* : Mir Qasim, Shujauddaula and Shah Alam II were defeated by Munro.
- Mir Jafar was again placed on the throne.
- **Successors of Mir Qasim** : Mir Jafar (1764-65), Nazmuddaulah (1765-66), Saifuddaula (1766-70), Mubaraquddaula (1770-72).
- On Mir Jafar's death, his son Nazmuddaula was placed on the throne and signed a treaty on 20th Feb., 1765 by which the Nawab was to disband most of his army and to administer Bengal through a Deputy Subedar nominated by the Company.
- Clive concluded two separate *treaties of Allahabad* with Shah Alam II (12 Aug., 1765) and Shujauddaula (16 Aug., 1765).

Dual Government of Bengal : 1765-72

- Dual Government of Bengal started in 1765.
- The Company acquired both *Diwani and Nizamat* rights from Nazmuddaula, the Nawab of Bengal. But the company did not take over direct administration and revenue collection.
- Warren Hastings ended the dual system of government in 1772.

Mysore

Haidar Ali : 1761-82

- Haidar Ali began his career as a soldier in the service of the Mysore state, later he became the faujdar of *Dindigul.* He established a modern arsenal in Dindigul with the help of French.
- In 1761, he overthrowed the Nanjarajar (the powerful Prime Minister of Wodeyar king Krishraja I) and usurped power, though continuing to recognise Krishnraja I as the lawful ruler.
- **First Anglo-Mysore war (1766-69)** : Haider Ali defeated the British. The *Treaty of Madras (1769)* signed.
- **Second Anglo-Mysore war (1780-84)** : Warren Hastings attacked French port Mahe, which was in Haidar Ali's territory.
- Haidar Ali led a joint front with Nizam and Maratha and captured Arcot (Capital of Carnatic state).
- In 1781, Haidar Ali was defeated at Porto Novo by Eyrecoot.
- He died during the Second Anglo-Mysore war.

Tipu Sultan 1782-99

- Haidar Ali was succeeded by his son Tipu Sultan in 1782.
- He continued the Second Anglo-Mysore war till 1784.
- The *Treaty of Mangalore (1784)* was signed by Tipu Sultan which ended the Second Anglo-Mysore war.
- **Third Anglo-Mysore war (1790-92)** : Maratha and Nizam aided the British, Cornwallis capatured Bangalore. By the *Treaty of Seringapatnam (1792),* Tipu ceded half of his territory.
- **Fourth Anglo-Mysore war (1799)** : Lord Wellesly attacked and Tipu Sultan died.
- Tipu was the only Indian ruler who have understood the importance of economic strength as the foundation of military strength.
- Tipu established the embassies to France, Turkey, Iran and Pegu to develop foreign trade.
- Tipu planted a 'tree of liberty' at his capital Seringapatnam and became a member of Jacobian Club.

Punjab

- Guru Gobind Singh, the 10th and the last Guru of the Sikhs, transformed the religious sect into a military brotherhood.
- In the confusion and disorder that followed the invasion of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali, the sikhs increased their military strength and became a strong power.

- **Maharaja Ranjit Singh (1792-1839) :** He was the greatest Indian ruler of his time and founder of the Sikh rule in the Punjab. Born in 1780 at Gujranwala, he occupied *Lahore* in 1799 and made it his capital. He conquered Amritsar in 1802, occupied Ludhiana and after incessant wars, annexed Kangra, Attock, Multan, Kashmir, Hazara, Bannu, Derajat and Peshawar. He died in 1839.
- **Successors of Ranjit Singh :** *Kharak Singh* (1839-40), *Naunihal Singh* (1840), *Sher Singh* (1841-43), *Dalip Singh* (1843-49).
- The Sikh power was broken by the British after the death of Ranjit Singh.
- **First Anglo-Sikh war (1845-46) :** Sikhs were defeated in all the four battles at Mudki, Ferozshah, Aliwal and Sobraon. The *Treaty of Lahore (1846)* ended the war. Sir Henry Lawerence became the first resident.
- **Second Anglo-Sikh war (1848-49) :** Dalhousie annexed Punjab. Sir John Lawerence became the first chief commissioner of Punjab.

Kingdom	Year	Founder	Annexation
Nawab of Bengal	1713	Murshid Quli Jafar Khan	1765 (Treaty of Allahabad)
Maratha-confederacy	1720	Baji Rao I	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Nawab of Carnatic/Arcot	1720	Saadatulla Khan	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Nawab of Avadh	1722	Mir Muhammad Amin Saadat Khan 'Burhan-ul-Mulk'	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance), 1856 (Dalhousie)
Nizam of Hyderabad	1724	Mir Qamruddin Chin Kilich Khan 'Nizam-ul-Mulk'	1798 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Mysore	1761	Haidar Ali	1799 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Punjab	1792	Ranjit Singh	1849 (Dalhousie)

15. Economic Impact of British Rule

Three Stages of British Colonialism

First phase-The Mercantile phase (1757-1813)

- The East India Company used its political power to monopolize trade and dictate terms to traders of Bengal.
- Imposition of inflated prices of goods led to buccaneering capitalism whereby wealth flowed out of barrel of the British trader's gun.
- Revenues of Bengal were used to finance exports to England.

Second phase-The Industrial phase (1813-1858)

- India was exploited as a market for British goods.
- Act of 1813 allowed one way trade for the British, as a result the Indian markets flooded with cheap and machine-made imports. Indian traders lost foreign as well as home market.
- Indians were forced to export raw materials and import finished goods.
- Heavy import duty on Indian products to England to discourage them in the market.

Third phase-Financial phase (1860 onwards)

- The British consolidated their position in India and made India a market for manufacturers and a supplier of foodstuffs and raw materials.

- Introduction of Railways (1853), Post and Telegraph (1853), Banking System (Avadh Commercial Bank-1881).
- Heavy British investment in India and burden of public debt increases.
- Industries came into existence (Tata Iron and Steel in 1907).

Drain of Wealth

- *Dadabhai Naoroji* cited it in his book "Poverty And Un-British Rule in India" (1867). *R C Dutta* in his "Economic History of India" (1901) blamed British policies for Indian economic ills.
- Drain of Wealth theory refers to a portion of national product of India which was not available for consumption to its people.
- Constituents of drain were :

1. Extortion by company servants the fortunes from rulers, zamindars, merchants and common man and sending them home.
2. Purchasing goods out of revenues of Bengal and exporting them. This was called investment.
3. Duty free trade provided to the British gave them a competitive edge over Indian traders. These subsidies were financed from Indian treasury.
4. Remittances or salaries and other incomes by company officials send to England.
5. Home charges or cost of salaries and pensions of company officials in India were paid from the treasury of India.
6. Hefty interests were paid to British investors.

- **Effects**

1. It stunted the growth of Indian enterprise and checked and retarded capital formation in India.
2. It financed capitalist development in Britain.
3. India was kept as a zone of free trade without allowing it to develop the ability to compete.
4. Plantations, mines, jute mills, banking, shipping, export-import concerns promoted a system of interlocking capitalist firms managed by foreigners. It drained resources from India.

Land Revenue Systems

Permanent Settlement/Istamarari (Sthayi) Bandobast

- Introduced in Bengal, Bihar, Orissa, and districts of Benaras and Northern districts of Madras by *Lord Cornwallis* in 1793.
- *John Shore* planned the Permanent Settlement.
- It declared zamindars as the owners of the land. Hence, they could keep 1/11th of the revenue collected to themselves while the British got a fixed share of 10/11th of the revenue collected. The zamindars were free to fix the rents.
- Assured of their ownership, many zamindars styed in towns (absentee landlordism) and exploited their tenants.

Ryotwari System

- Introduced in Bombay and Madras. *Munro* (Viceroy) and *Charles Reed* recommended it.

- In this, a direct settlement was made between the government and the ryo (cultivator).
- The revenue was fixed for a period not exceeding 30 years, on the basis of the quality of the soil and the nature of the crop. It was based on the scientific rent theory of Ricardo.
- The position of the cultivator became more secure but the rigid system of revenue collection often forced him into the clutches of the moneylender.
- Besides this, the government itself became a big zamindar and retained the right to enhance revenue at will while the cultivator was left at the mercy of its officers.

Mahalwari System

- Modified version of zamindari settlement introduced in the Ganges valley, NWFP, parts of Central India and Punjab.
- Revenue settlement was to made by village or estates with landlords. In Western Uttar Pradesh, a settlement was made with the village communities, which maintained a form of common ownership known as Bhaichare, or with Mahals, which were groups of villages.
- Revenue was periodically revised.

Colonial Impact of Land Revenue Systems

1. The land settlements introduced market economy and did away with customary rights. Cash payment of revenue encouraged money-lending activity.
2. It sharpened social differentiation. The rich had access to the courts to defend their property.
3. Forcible growing of commercial crops led the peasants to buy food grains at high prices and sell cash crops at low prices.
4. The stability of the Indian villages was shaken and the entire set up of the rural society began to break up.

Peasant Movements

Movement	Place	Year	Leaders
Indigo Revolt	Bengal	1859	Bishnu and Digambar Biswas
Pabna	Bengal	1870	Ishwar Roy, Sabu Pal, Khoodi Mollah
Deccan Riots	Maharashtra	1875	----
Ramosi Movement	Maharashtra	1879	Vasudev Balwant Phadke
Bijolia	Rajasthan	1913	Sitaram Das, Vijay Pathik Singh
Champaran	Bihar	1917	Gandhiji
Kheda	Gujarat	1918	Gandhiji and Vallabh Bhai Patel
Moplah	Kerala	1921	Sayyad Ali and Sayyid Fazl
Bordoli/Borsad	Gujarat	1928	Vallabh Bhai Patel
Tebhaga	Bengal	1946	Kamparan Singh, Nyamat Ali
Punnapra-Waylar	Kerala	1946	----
Telengana	Andhra P.	1946	Kumaraiya and Sundaraiya
UP Kisan Sabha	UP	1918	Indra Narayan Dwivedi and Gauri Shankar Mishra

Movement	Place	Year	Leaders
Avadh Kisan Sabha	UP	1920	Baba Ramachandra
Eka Movement	Avadh	1921	Madari Pasi
Forest Satyagrah	South India	1931	NV Rama Naidu, N G Ranga
All India Kisan Sabha	Lucknow	1936	Sahajanada Saraswati

Tribal Revolts

Tribe	Year	Leaders	Cause
Chuar	1766-72	Raja Jagannath	Excess Revenue demand, Bengal famine
Bhills	1817	Sewaram	Agrarian hardship
Hos	1820	......	British occupation of Singhbhum
Ramosi	1822	Chittur Singh, Pratap Singh, Dattaraya Patkar	British Rule
Kolis	1824		Dismantle of forests
Ahom	1828-33	Gomadhar Kunwar	British occupation
Khasi	1829-32	Tiruth Singh	British occupation
Kol	1831-32	Buddhu Bhagat	Land transfer to outsiders
Santhals	1855-56	Sidhu and Kanhu	British Rule
Naikda	1858	Rup Singh	For Dharma Raj against ban Joria Bhagat on grazing and timber
Bhuyan and Juang	1867-68 1891	Ratna Nayak Dharni Nayak	Installation of British protege on throne
Kacha Nagas	1882	Sambhuden	British intervention
Munda (Ulgulan)	1899	Birsa Munda	Land system, Missionary activity and forced labour
Bhills	1913	Govind Guru	A temperance and purification movement
Oraons (Tana Bhagat)	1914	Jatra Bhagat and other Bhagats	Religious Reason
Chenchus	1921-22	----	British control of forests
Koyas/Rampas	1922-24	Alluri Sitaram Raju	British Rule
Naga	1932	Jadunang (1905-31) and Rani Gaidinliu	A reformist movement later directed against excess of British rule

Civil Revolts

Sanyasi (Bengal, 1780) : led by religious monks against British restrictions and ruin of peasantry.

Kattabomman Revolt (1792-98) : by Vira Pandya Kattabomman against imposition of British Suzerainity.

Paik Revolt (Orissa, 1804-06) : led by Bakshi Jagabandhu against British occupation and revenue policy.

Velu Thampi (Travancore, 1805) : led by Velu Thampi against British extortions.

Kittur Revolt (Karnataka, 1824) : by Chinnama and Ryappa against British interference in Kittur.

Pagal Panthis (Maimansinh, 1825-33) : by Karam Shah and Tipu. Religiou nature.

Raju (Vizag, 1827) : by Birabhadra Raju.

Faraizi (1838) : by Haji Saraitullah and Dadu Mian for cause of tenants.

Satavandi (Maharashtra, 1839) : by Phond Savant and Anna Sahib again British rule.

Kuka (1840) : by Bhagat Jawahar Mal or Sian Saheb in Punjab.

Gadakari (1844) : against revenue policy in Kolhapur.

Poligar (Karnool, 1846) : by Narasimha Reddy.

16. Socio-Religious Movements in 19th-20th Centuries

Socio-Religious Movements and Organisations

Year	Place	Name of the Organisation	Founder
1815	Calcutta	Atmiya Sabha	Rammohan Roy
1828	Calcutta	Brahmo Samaj	Rammohan Roy
1829	Calcutta	Dharma Sabha	Radhakant Dev
1839	Calcutta	Tattvabodhini Sabha	Debendranath Tagore
1840	Punjab	Nirankaris	Dayal Das, Darbara Singh, Rattan Chand etc.
1844	Surat	Manav Dharma Sabha	Durgaram Mancharam
1849	Bombay	Paramhansa Mandli	Dadoba Pandurang
1857	Punjab	Namdharis	Ram Singh
1861	Agra	Radha Swami Satsang	Tulsi Ram
1866	Calcutta	Brahmo Samaj of India	Keshab Chandra Sen
1866	Deoband	Dar-ul-Ulum	Maulana Hussain Ahmed
1867	Bombay	Prarthna Samaj	Atmaram Pandurang
1875	Bombay	Arya Samaj	Swami Dayanand Saraswati*
1875	New York (USA)	Theosophical Society	Madam H.P. Blavatsky and Col H.S. Olcott
1878	Calcutta	Sadharan Brahmo Samaj	Anand Mohan Bose
1884	Pune (Poona)	Deccan Education Society	G.G. Agarkar
1886	Aligarh	Muhammadan Educational Conference	Syed Ahmad Khan
1887	Bombay	Indian National Conference	M.G. Ranade
1887	Lahore	Deva Samaj	Shivnarayan Agnihotri
1894	Lucknow	Nadwah-ul-Ulama	Maulana Shibli Numani
1897	Belur	Ramakrishna Mission	Swami Vivekanand
1905	Bombay	Servents of Indian Society	Gopal Krishna Gokhale
1909	Pune (Poona)	Poona Seva Sadan	Mrs Ramabai Ranade and G.K. Devadhar
1911	Bombay	Social Service League	N.M. Joshi
1914	Allahabad	Seva Samiti	H.N. Kunzru

Important Socio-Religious Reformers

Swami Sahajanand (1781-1830) : His original name being Gyanashyama, founded the *Swaminarayan sect* in Gujarat, which believed in a theistic God and prescribed a moral code for its followers.

Raja Rammohan Roy (1772-1833) : Born in 1772 at Radhanagar in Burdwan district (West Bengal) founded *Atmiya Sabha* in Calcutta in 1815 to propagate monotheism and reforms in the Hindu society. The Atmiya Sabha was named *Brahmo Sabha* and finally *Brahmo Samaj* in 1828. Launched a movement for the abolition of Sati through his journal *Sabad Kaumudi* (1819).

Debendranath Tagore (1817-1905) : Took over the leadership of the Brahmo Samaj after Raja Rammohan Roy. Founded *Tattvabodhini Sabha* in 1839 and published *Tattvabodhini Patrika*, a Bengali monthly to propagate the ideas of Raja Rammohan Roy. In 1859, the Tattvabodhini Sabha was amalgamated with the Brahmo Samaj. He compiled selected passages from the Upanishads, which came to be known as *Brahma Dharma*.

Keshav Chandra Sen (1838-1884) : Keshav Chandra Sen was the leader of the Brahmo Samaj during the absence of Debendranath Tagore. He started *Bamabodhini Patrika*, a journal for women. He launched radical reforms, such as giving up of caste names, inter-caste and widow remarriages and launched movement against child marriages. These radical reforms led to to the first schism in the Brahmo Samaj. The original Brahmo Samaj came to be known as *Adi Brahmo Samaj* and the other, the *Brahmo Samaj of India* which was established by Keshav Chandra Sen in 1866. Sen formed the *Indian Reform Association* in 1870, which persuaded the British Government to enact the *Native Marriage Act of 1972* (popularly known as *Civil Marriage Act*) legalising the Brahmo marriages and fixing the minimum marriageable age for boys and girls.

Atmaram Pandurang (1823-1898) : Atmaram Pandurang founded *Prarthana Samaj* in 1867 in Bombay. M.G. Ranade joined it in 1870.

Swami Dayanand Saraswati (1824-1883) : Swami Dayanand Saraswati, originally known as *Mula Shankar* founded the *Arya Samaj* in 1875 in Bombay, wrote *Satyartha Prakash* (in Hindi) and *Veda-Bhashya Bhumika* (partly in Hindi and partly in Sanskrit).

Blavatsky (1831-91) and Olcott (1832-1907) : Madam H.P. Blavatsky, a Russian woman and Col. H.S. Olcott, an American, founded the *Theosophical Society* in New York in 1875, but shifted the headquarter of the Society to Adyar near Madras in 1882.

Swami Vivekanand (1863-1902) : Swami Vivekanand (originally *Narendranath Dutta*), founded the *Ramakrishna Mission* in 1887 as a social service league which was registered as a Trust in 1897.

Lower Caste/Caste Movements and Organisations

Movement/Organisation	Year	Place	Founder
Satya Shodhak Samaj	1873	Maharashtra	Jyotiba Phule
Aravippuram Movement	1888	Aravippuram, Kerala	Shri Narayan Guru
Shri Narayan Dharma Paripalana Yogam (S.N.D.P.) Movement	1902-03	Kerala	Shri Narayan Guru, Dr. Palpu and Kumaran Asan

Movement/Organisation	Year	Place	Founder
The Depressed Class Mission Society	1906	Bombay	V.R. Shinde
Bahujan Samaj	1910	Satara, Maharashtra	Mukundrao Patil
Justice (Party) Movement	1915-16	Madras, Tamil Nadu	C.N. Mudaliar, T.M. Nair and P. Tyagaraja Chetti
Depressed Class Welfare Institute (Bahiskrit Hitkarini Sabha)	1924	Bombay	B.R. Ambedkar
Self-Respect Movement	1925	Madras, Tamil Nadu	E.V. Ramaswami Naiker 'Periyar'
Harijan Sevak Sangh	1932	Pune	Mahatma Gandhi

17. Freedom Struggle

I. The Revolt of 1857

- The Revolt of 1857 is an important landmark in the history of India which occurred during the governer-generalship of Lord canning.
- **Causes of the Revolt** : The revolt of 1857 was a combination of political, economic, socio-religious and military causes.

  Political : Nana Sahib was refused pension, as he was the adopted son of peshwa Baji Rao II. Avadh was annexed in 1856, on charges of mal-administration Satara, Jhansi, Nagpur and Sambhalpur were annexed owing to Doctrine of Lapse.

  Economic : Heavy taxation, forcibly evictions, discriminatory tariff policy against Indian products and destruction of traditional handicrafts that hit peasants and artisans.

  Socio religious : British social reforms (abolition of sati, 1829; legalisation of widow remarriage, 1856 etc.) hurted the sentiments of orthodox and conservative People.

  Military : Discrimination with Indian soldiers.
- **Immediate cause** : The introduction of *Enfield rifles* whose cartidges were said to have a greased cover made of beef and pork sparked off the revolt.
- **The Beginning and Spread of the Revolt** : On March 29, 1857, an Indian sepoy of 34 Native Infantry, *Mangal Pandey*, killed two British officers-*Hugeson* and *Baugh*-on parade at Barrackpore (near Calcutta). The Indian soldiers present, refused to obey orders to arrest Mangal Pandey. However, he was later on arrested, put to and hanged.
- The mutiny really started at *Merrut* on 10th May 1857. The occasion was the punishment of some sepoys for their refusal to use the greased cartridges. The soldiers alongwith other groups of civilians, went on a rampage shouting '*Maro Firangi ko*'. They broke open jails, murdered Europeans, burnt their houses and marched to Delhi after sunset.
- The appearance of the marching soldiers next morning (i.e. 11th May) in Delhi was a signal to the local soldiers, who in turn revolted, seized the city and proclaimed the 82-year old *Bahadur Shah 'Zafar'*, as *Shahenshah-i-Hindustan (i.e. Emperor of India).*

Centre	Beginning Date	Ending Date	Indian Leader	British Suppressor
Delhi	11 May, 1857	20 Sep., 1857	Bahadur Shah II 'Zafar' and Bakht Khan (Commanding General)	John Nicholson
Kanpur	4 June, 1857	6 Dec., 1857	Nana Sahib and his loyal commander Tantiya Tope	Colin Campbell
Lucknow	4 June, 1857	21 Mar., 1858	Begum Hazrat Mahal	Colin Campbell
Jhansi	4 June 1857	18 June, 1858	Rani Laxmi Bai	Huge Rose
Allahabad	5 June, 1857	March, 1858	Liyaqat Ali	Colonel Neil
Jagdishpur (Bihar)	Aug., 1857	Dec., 1858	Kuer Singh and Amar Singh	William Taylor and Vincet Eyre

- Within a month of the capture of Delhi, the revolt spread to the different parts of India (esp. all over the North India, Central India and Western India). South remained quite and Punjab and Bengal were only marginally affected.

Note :

1. **Bahadur Shah II** : was Deported to Rangoon, where he died in 1862. His sons were dead; **Nana Sahib (original name – Dhundhu Pant)**, **Begum Hazrat Mahal and Khan Bahadur Khan** : Escaped to Nepal; **Tantiya Tope (Original name – Ramchandra Pandurang)** : was captured and executed on 15th April, 1859; **Rani Laxmi Bai** : Died in the battle-field; **Kuer Singh** : was wounded and died on 26 April, 1858.
2. Sir Huge Rose described Laxmi Bai as 'the best and bravest military leader of the rebel'.
3. **Other Important Leaders** : **Khan Bahadur Khan** (Bareilly), **Maulavi Ahmadullah** (Faizabad), **Azimullah Khan** (Fatehpur), **Devi Singh** (Mathura), **Kadam Singh** (Merrut) etc.
4. English authority re-established in India during July-Dec. 1858.

Causes of Failure : The Revolt of 1857 was an unsuccessful but heroic effort to eliminate foreign rule. The main causes were : 1. Disunity of Indians and poor organisation 2. Lack of complete nationalism-*Scindias, Holkars, Nizam* and others actively helped the British 3. Lack of coordination between sepoys, peasants, zamindars and other classes 4. Many had different motives for participating in the revolt.

Significance : The important element in the revolt lay in Hindu-Muslim unity. People exhibited patriotic sentiment without any touch of communal feelings. It no doubt began as a mutiny of soldiers, but soon turned into a revolt against British rule in general.

Nature of the Revolt of 1857

- There are two main views about the nature of the Revolt of 1857 :

1. **Sepoy Mutiny** : Syed Ahmed Khan, Munshi Jeevan Lal and Durgadas Bandyopadhyaya (Contemporary Historians); Stenley (Secretary of state for India), John Lowerence, John Seeley, Malleson, R.C. Mazumdar.
2. **National Struggle/War of Independence** : Benjamin Disraely, Karl Marx, V.D. Savarkar, K.M. Pannikar, Ishwari Prasad, A.L. Shrivastva, Tarachand.

- **Other views** : Racial Struggle / Black-White Struggle–*Medley;* Religious Struggle / Hindu-Muslim–Christian Struggle–*Rees;* Civilisation-Barbarism Conflict / English-Indian Conflict–*T.R. Holmes;* Hindu-Muslim Conspiracy against Christian–*Outram and Taylor.*

Important Books on 1857

Book	Year	Author
The First Indian War of Independence-1857-59	1859	Karl Marx
Causes of Indian Revolt	1873	Sayed Ahmad Khan
The India War of Independence	1909	V.D. Savarkar
The Sepoy Mutiny and the rebellion of 1857	1957	R.C. Mazumdar
Civil Rebellion in Indian Mutinies	1957	S.B. Chowdhury
Rebellion, 1857 : A Symposium	1957	P.C. Joshi
1857	1957	S.N. Sen

Select Opinions on 1857

"It was wholly unpatriotic and selfish Sepoy Mutiny with no native leadership and no popular support."
John Seeley

"The so-called First National War of Independence is neither 'First', nor 'National', nor 'a war of Independence."'
R.C. Mazumdar

"A national revolt rooted in deep mistrust."
Benjamin Disraely (Opposition Leader)

"The Revolt of 1857 was 'the First war of Independence."'
V.D. Savarkar

"What began as a fight for religion ended as a war for independence."
S.N. Sen

Impact of the Revolt of 1857

1. In August 1858, the British parliament passed an act, which put an end to the rule of the Company. The control of the British government in India was transferred to The British Crown.
2. A minister of the British government, called the Secretary of state for India was made responsible for the governance of India.
3. The British Governor-General of India was now also given the title of Viceroy, who was also the representative of the monarch.
4. Marked the end of British Imperialism and Princely States were assured against annexation. Doctrine of Lapse was withdrawn.
5. After the revolt, the British pursued the policy of *'divide and rule'*.
6. Far-reaching changes were made in the administration and increase of white soldiers in the army.
7. Total expense of the suppression was thrown on the Indian people.
8. It has been said that Julius Caesar was more powerful than Julius Caesar alive. The same may be said about the Revolt of 1857. Whatever might have been its original character, it soon became a symbol of challenge to the mighty British empire in India and remained a shining star for the rise and growth of the Indian national movement.

17. II Moderate Phase (1885-1905)

Important Organisations Before Congress

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder(s)
1. Landholders Society	Calcutta	1837	Dwarka Nath Tagore
2. British India Society	London	1839	William Adam
3. British India Association *(Result of the merger of 1 and 2)*	Calcutta	1851	Devendra Nath Tagore
4. Madras Native Association	Madras	1852	C.Y. Mudaliar
5. Bombay Association	Bombay	1852	Jagannath Shanker Sheth
6. East India Association	London	1866	Dadabhai Naoroji
7. Poona Sarvajanik Sabha	Poona	1870	S.H. Chiplunkar, G.V. Joshi, M.G. Ranade
8. Indian Society	London	1872	Anand Mohan Bose
9. Indian League	Calcutta	1875	Shishir Kumar Ghosh
Indian Association	Calcutta	1876	Surendra Nath Bannerji and Anand Mohan Bose
India National Conference	Calcutta	1883	-do-
10. Madras Mahajan Sabha	Madras	1884	P.Rangia Naydu, V. Raghava-chari, Anand Charlu, G.S. Aiyer
11. Bombay Presidency Association	Bombay	1885	Ferozshah Mehta, K.T. Tailang, Badruddin Tyebji

Indian National Congress (I.N.C.) : Bombay, 1885, A.O. Hume

- The Indian National Union was formed in 1884 by A.O. Hume, an Englishman and a retired civil servant, in association with various national leaders who called for a conference in Pune in December 1885.
- The conference received the unanimous support of all Indian leaders, but the venue was shifted to Bombay for various reasons (esp. outbreak of cholera in Pune).
- Further, the leaders decided to rename the Indian National Union as Indian National Congress.
- The first session of the Indian National Congress was held at *Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College* in Bombay under the presidentship of *W.C. Bannerji*, a veteran lawyer of Calcutta.
- It was attended by 72 delegates from all over India.
- From 1885 onwards the INC met every year and its cause spread rapidly among middle class Indians.
- With the foundation of INC in 1885, the struggle for India's independence was launched in a small, hesitant and mild but organized manner.
- The first two decade of INC are described in history as those of moderate demands and a sense of confidence in British justice and generosity. Their aim was not to be aggressive for attaining independence lest the British should suppress this. This resulted in *Indian Council Act* in 1892 which allowed some members to be indirectly elected by Indians but keeping the official majority intact.
- **Moderate Leaders :** Dada Bhai Naoroji, A.O. Hume, Badruddin Tayebji, M.G. Ranade, W.C. Bannerji, Ferozshah Mehta, Surendra Nath Bannerji, C. Shankaran Naiyar, Madan Mohan Malviya, V.S. Shrinivas Shastri, Tej Bahadur

Sapru, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, Anand Mohan Bose, E. Dinesh Wacha, Ra Bihari Ghosh, Mohan Lal Ghosh, P. Anand Charlu, C.Y. Chintamani, R.C. Dutt, S. Subrahmanyam Aiyer, K.T. Tailang, Madhusudan Das, Rahimtulla M. Sayani.

Select Opinions about INC

'INC represents only a microscopic minorities.'

Lord Dufferin (1884-88) (Contemporary Viceroy)

'The congress is tottering to its fall, and one of my great ambitions, while in India, is to assist it to a peaceful demise.'

Lord Curzon (1899-1905) (Viceroy)

'INC is a begging institute.' *Aurobindo Ghosh* (Extremist Leader)

'INC should distinguished between begging and claiming the rights.'

Bal Gangadhar Tilak (Extremist Leader)

'INC playing with bubbles.' *Bipin Chandra pal* (Extremist Leader)

17.III. Extremist Phase (1905-17)

Reasons for the Emergence of Extremists : 1. Realization that the true nature of British rule was exploitative 2. International influences and events which demolished the myth of White/European supremacy. These included-Abyssinia/Ethopia's victory over Italy (1896), Boer wars (1899-1902) in which the British faced reverse, Japan victory over Russia (1905) 3. Dissatisfaction with the achievements of Moderates 4. Reactionary policies of Curzon such as Calcutta Cooperation Act (1904), Indian Universities Act (1905) and Partition of Bengal (1905) 5. Existence of a militant school of thought and emergence of a trained leadership.

Prominent Extremist Leaders

1. **Bal Gangadhar Tilak :** 'Lokmanya' Tilak was the uncompromising leader of extremists. He was influenced by Agarkar, Ranade and Naoroji. He launched two newspapers the *Kesari* (in Marathi) and the *Maratha* (in English). He Organised *Ganpati Festival* (1893) and *Shivaji Festival* (1895). He was deported to *Mandlay Jail* (Burma) for writing seditious articles. He started *Home Rule League* in 1916. He wrote *Gita Rahasya*. Tilak asserted : *'Swaraj is my Birth Right and I will have it.'*
2. **Lala Lajpat Rai :** Extremist from Punjab. Under the influence of Arya Samaj he founded National School at Lahore. He presided over the AITUC in 1920. Boycotted Simon Commission and demonstrated against it at Lahore during which he was brutally assaulted by the police and subsequently succumbed to his injuries.
3. **Bipin Chandra Pal :** Discarded orthodox Hinduism and entered Brahmo Samaj and visited England and America. He founded English weekly *New India*. He led the Swadeshi movement. He carried gospels of Boycott, Swadeshi, National Education, Swaraj and the Passive Resistance. He founded *Vande Matram*.
4. **Sri Aurobindo Ghosh :** He Passed ICS exam with record marks in Greek and Latin. He had European upbringing. He worked for secret societies in Bengal and Maharashtra. He started Bengali daily *Jugantar*. He wrote seditious articles in Vande Matram. He was put to trial for Maniktalla (Calcutta) Bomb Conspiracy Case. He finally retired to the life of Yoga at Pondicherry.

Other Extremist Leaders : Chakravarthi Viji Raghvachariar, Aswini Kumar Dutta, Raj Narayan Bose, T. Prakasham, Chidambaram Pillai etc.

Methods of Extremists : 1. Passive Resistance i.e. non-cooperating with the British Government by boycotting government service, courts, schools and colleges. 2. Promotion of Swadeshi and boycott of foreign goods.

The Partition of Bengal (1905) and Boycott and Swadeshi Movement (1905-08)

- The Partition of Bengal came into effect on Oct. 16, 1905, through a Royal Proclamation, reducing the old province of Bengal in size by creating a new province of East Bengal, which later on became East Pakistan and present day Bangladesh.
- The government explained that it was done to stimulate growth of under-developed Eastern region of the Bengal. But, actually, the main objective was to 'Divide and Rule' the most advanced region of the country at that time. The main reason for partition of Bengal was to destroy the political influence of the educated middle class among whom the Bengali intelligentsia were the most prominent. It also set up a communal gulf between Hindus and Muslims. The INC unanimously condemned the partition of Bengal.
- The Boycott and Swadeshi movement had its genesis in the antipartition movement which was started to oppose the British decision to divide Bengal.
- With the start of the Swadeshi movement at the turn of the country, the Indian National Movement took a major leap forward.
- The INC took up the Swadeshi call in Benaras Session, 1905 presided over by G.K. Gokhle and supported the Swadeshi and Boycott Movement of Bengal. Militant nationalism spearheaded by Trio of *Lal-Bal-Pal* (Lala Lajpat Raj, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal) and Aurobindo Ghosh was however, in favour of extending the movement to the rest of India and carrying it beyond the programme of just Swadeshi and Boycott of goods to full-fledged political mass struggle.
- On August 7, 1905, a resolution to boycott British goods were adopted at a meeting of the INC held in Calcutta. It was started as a purely economic measure for the development of Indian industry.
- Bonefire of foreign goods was launched on a large scale in all the major cities. *Tilak* took the movement to different parts of India esp. in Pune and Mumbai. *Ajit singh* and *Lala Lajpat Ray* spread the Swadeshi message in Punjab and other parts of Northern India. *Syed Haidar Raza* set up the agenda in Delhi. Rawalpindi, Kangra, Jammu, Multan and Hardwar witnessed active public participation in Swadeshi Movement. *Chidambram Pillai* took the movement to Madras Presidency which was also galvanised by *Bipin Chandra pal's* extensive lecture tour.

Muslim League (1906) : In Dec., 1906, *All India Muslim League* was set up by *Nawab Salimullah* of Dacca (Dhaka) at Dacca (Dhaka). The League supported the partition of Bengal, opposed the Swadeshi movement, and demanded special safeguards for its community and a separate electorate of Muslims. This led to communal differences between Hindus and Muslims.

Calcutta session of INC (1906)-Swaraj : In Dec. 1906 at Calcutta, the INC under the leadership of *Dada Bhai Naoroji* adopted 'Swaraj' as the goal of Indian people. Naoroji in his presidential address declared that the goal of the INC was 'self government of Swaraj like that of United Kingdom'. The differences between the moderates and the extremists, esp. regarding the pace of the movement and the techniques of the struggle to be adopted, came to head in 1907 at the Surat Session of the congress where the party split with serious consequences for the Swadeshi movement.

Surat Split (1907) : The INC split into two groups—the extremists and the moderates, at the Surat session in 1907 held on the banks of the river Tapi. The extremists were led by *Tilak, Lajpat Rai* and *Bipin Chandra Pal* and the moderates were led by *Gopal Krishna Gokhle*. At the Surat session, the moderate and extremist delegates of congress met in an atmosphere surcharged with excitement and anger.

The suddenness of the Surat fiasco took the extremist leaders by surprise and they offered their cooperation to the working committee of the congress by accepting presidentship of Ras Bihari Ghose. But the moderates would not relent as they found themselves on firm ground. The government observing the opportunity launched a massive attack on the extremists by suppressing the newspaper and arresting their main leader, *Tilak*, and sending him to *Mandalay Jail* (Burma) for 6 years. The extremists were not able to organise an effective alternative party or to sustain the movement. *Aurbindo Ghosh* gave up politics and left for Pondicherry. *Bipin Chandra Pal* also left politics temporarily. *Lajpat Rai* left for Britain. After 1908, the national movement as a whole declined.

Morley-Minto Reforms (1909) : Morley-Minto Reforms were introduced in 1909 during the period when *Lord Minto* was the Viceroy of India. The reforms envisaged a separate electorate for Muslims besides other constitutional measures. The government thereby sought to create a rift within the Congress by winning the support of the moderates on the one hand, and favour of Muslims against Hindus on the other. To achieve the latter objective, the reforms introduced the system of separate electorates under which Muslims could only vote for Muslim candidates. This was done to encourage the notion that the political, economic and cultural interests of Hindus and Muslims were separate and not common. Indian political leaders were however dissatisfied by these reforms.

Home Rule Movement (1915-16) : *B.G. Tilak* founded Indian Home Rule League at Pune on 28 April, 1916. *Annie Besant*, inspired by the Irish rebellion, started Home Rule Movement in India in September, 1916. The movement spread rapidly and branches of the Home Rule League were established all over India. B.G. Tilak wholeheartedly supported this movement. He joined forces with Annie Besant and persuaded the Muslim League to support this programme.

Lucknow Pact–Congress-League Pact (1916) : An important step forward in achieving Hindu-Muslim unity was the Lucknow pact (1916). Anti-British feelings were generated among the Muslims following a war between Britain and Turkey which opened the way for the Congress and Muslim League unity. Both the Congress and the Muslim League held session at Lucknow in 1916 and concluded the famous Lucknow pact. The congress accepted the separate electorate and both organisations jointly demanded 'dominion status' for the country.

Hindu-Muslim unity alarmed the British and forced the government to announce its future policy. In 1916, a British policy was announced whereby association of Indians was in government increased and there was to be a gradual development of local self-governing institutions.

Montagu Declaration/August Declaration of 1917: The control over the Indian government would be transferred gradually to the Indian people. This was the result of Hindu-Muslim unity exhibited in Lucknow pact.

Indian Revolutionary Organisations (India)

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder
Vyayam Mandala	Poona	1896-97	Chapekar Brothers
Mitra Mela	Nasik *(Later Poona)*	1901	Savarkar Brothers
Anushilan Samiti	Midnapur	1902	Pramath Nath Mitra
Abhinava Bharata	Poona	1904	Vikram Damodar (V.D.) Savarkar
Swadesh Bandhav Samiti	Warisal	1905	Ashwini Kumar Dutta
Anushilan Samiti	Dacca	1907	Pulin Bihari Das
Bharat Mata Society	Punjab	1907	Ajit Singh, Sufi Amba Prasad
Hindustan Republican Assoiation/ Army (H.R.A.)	Kanpur	1924	Sachindra Nath Sanyal
Bharat Naujawan Sabha	Lahore	1926	Bhagat Singh
Hindustan Socialist Republican Association/Army (H.S.R.A)	Delhi	1928	Chandrashekhar Azad

Indian Revolutionary Organisations (Abroad)

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder
India Home Rule Society (India House)	London	1904	Shyamji Krishna Verma
Abhinava Bharat	London	1906	Vikram Damodar Savarkar
Indian Independence League	California (USA)	1907	Tarak Nath Das
Gadar Party	San Fransico	1913	Lala Hardayal
Indian Independence League	Berlin (Germany)	1914	Lala Hardayal and Virendra Nath Chattopadhyaya
Indian Independence League and Government	Kabul	1915	Raja Mahendra Pratap

Revolutionary Events/Cases

Name of the Event/Case	Place	Year	Accused
Murder of Rand and Amherst *(Plague Commissioners)*	Poona	1897	Chapekar Brothers, Damodar and Balkrishna
Attempt to murder Kingsford *(a Vindictive Judge)*	Muzaffarpur	1908	Khudiram Bose and Prafulla Chaki
Manikatalla *(Calcutta)* and Alipur Bomb Conspiracy Case	Manikatalla, *(Calcutta)* Alipur	1908	Aurbindo Ghosh
Murder of Jackson *(District Magistrate)*	Nasik	1909	Anant Karkare
Murder of Curzon Wyllie	London	1909	Madan Lal Dhingra
Attempt to murder Hardinge *(Viceroy)* *(Delhi Bomb Case)*	Delhi	1912	Ras Bihari Bose and Basant Kumar
Kakori Train Dacoity Case *(Kakori-a station in Lucknow-Saharanpur division)*	Kakori	1925	Ram prasad Bismil and Ashafaqulla

Name of the Event/Case	Place	Year	Accused
Murder of Saunders *(A.S.P. of Lahore)*	Lahore	1928	Bhagat Singh
Assembly Bomb case	Delhi	1929	Bhagat Singh and Batukeshwar Dutta
Chittagong Armoury Dacoity	Chittagong	1930	Surya Sen
Murder of Miachel O' Dwyer	London	1940	Udham singh

17. IV. The Gandhian Era (1917-47)

Mahatma Gandhi (1869-1948) : Chronological Overview

In South Africa : 1893-1914

1893	Departure of Gandhi to South Africa.
1894	Foundation of *Natal Indian Congress*.
1899	Foundation of *Indian Ambulance Core* during Boer Wars.
1904	Foundation of *Indian Opinion* *(magazine)* and *Phoenix Farm* at Phoenix near Durban.
1906	First Civil Disobedience Movement *(Satyagraha)* against Asiatic Ordinance in Transvaal.
1907	Satyagraha against Compulsory Registration and Passes for Asians *(The Black Act)* in Transvaal.
1908	Trial and imprisonment-Johannesburg Jail *(First Jail Term).*
1910	Foundation of *Tolstoy Farm (Later Gandhi Ashrama)* near Johannesburg.
1913	Satyagraha against derecognition of non Christian marriages in Cape Town.
1914	Quits South Africa forever and returns to India, Awarded *Kaisar-i-Hind* for raising an Indian Ambulance Core during Boer wars.

In India : 1915-48

1915	Arrived in Bombay (India) on 9 Jan, 1915; Foundation of *Satyagraha Ashrama* at Kocharab near Ahmedabad (20 May); In 1917, Ashrama shifted at the banks of Sabarmati; All India tour.
1916	Abstain from active politics (though he attended *Lucknow session* of INC held in 26-30 Dec., 1916, where *Raj Kumar Shukla*, a cultivator from Bihar, requested him to come to Champaran.)
1917	Gandhi entered active politics with *Champaran campaign* to redress grievances of the cultivators oppressed by Indigo planters of Bihar *(April 1917)*. Champaran Satyagraha was his first Civil Disobedience Movement in India.
1918	In Feb. 1918, Gandhi launched the struggle in *Ahmedabad* which involved industrial workers. Hunger strike as a weapon was used for the first time by Gandhi during Ahmedabad struggle. In March 1918, Gandhi worked for peasants of *Kheda* in Gujarat who were facing difficulties in paying the rent owing to failure of crops. Kheda Satyagraha was his first Non-Cooperation Movement.
1919	Gandhi gave a call for Satyagraha against the *Rowlatt Act* on April 6, 1919 and took the command of the nationalist movement for the first time (First all-India Political Movement), Gandhi returns Kaisar-i-Hind gold medal as a protest against *Jallianwala Bagh massacre*-April 13, 1919; *The All India Khilafat Conference* elected Gandhi as its president *(Nov. 1919, Delhi).*
1920-22	Gandhi leads the *Non-Cooperation and Khilafat Movement (Aug. 1, 1920-Feb. 1922)*. Gandhi calls off Movement *(Feb. 12, 1922)*, after the violent incident at *Chauri Chaura* on Feb. 5, 1922. Non-Cooperation Movement was the First mass based politics under Gandhi.
1924	*Belgaum (Karnataka) session* of INC-for the first and the last time Gandhi was elected the president of the Congress.
1925-27	Gandhi retires from active politics for the first time and devotes himself to 'constructive programme' of the Congress; Gandhi resumes active politics in 1927.
1930-34	Gandhi launches the *Civil Disobedience Movement* with his *Dandi march/Salt Satyagraha* (First Phase : March 12, 1930 - March 5, 1931; *Gandhi-Irwin Pact*: March 5, 1931; Gandhi attends the *Second Round Table Conference* in London as sole representative of the Congress : Sep. 7 – Dec. 1, 1931; Second Phase : Jan. 3, 1932 – April 17, 1934)
1934-39	Gandhi retires from active politics, sets up *Sevagram (Vardha Ashram)*.
1939	Gandhi resumes active politics.
1940-41	Gandhi launches *Individual Satyagraha Movement.*
1942	Call to *Quit India Movement* for which Gandhi raised the slogan, *'Do or Die'* (We shall either free India or die in the attempt), Gandhi and all Congress leaders arrested *(Aug. 9, 1942).*
1942-44	Gandhi kept in detention at the *Aga Khan Palace*, near Pune *(Aug. 9, 1942 – May. 1944)*, Gandhi lost his wife *Kasturba (Feb. 22, 1944)* and private secretary *Mahadev Desai*; this was Gandhi's last prison term.
1945	Gandhi's influence on the congress wanes perceptively after 1945.
1946	Deeply distressed by the orgy of communal violence, as a result Muslim League's Direct Action call, Gandhi travelled to *Noakhali (East Bengal–now Bangladesh)* and later on to *Calcutta* to restore communal peace.
1947	Gandhi, deeply distressed by the *Mountbatten Plan/Partition Plan (June 3, 1947)*, while staying in Calcutta to restore communal violence, observes complete silence on the dawn of India's Independence *(Aug. 15, 1947)*. Gandhi returns to Delhi *(Sep. 1947)*
1948	Gandhi was shot dead by *Nathu Ram Godse*, a member of RSS, while on his way to the evening prayer meeting at *Birla House*, New Delhi *(Jan. 30, 1948)*. He died, with 'Hey Ram' on his lips.

Note : Gandhi has suggested the winding up of Indian National Congress after India attained independence and converting it into Lok Sevak Samaj.

Facts about Gandhi

Date and Place of Birth : Oct. 2, 1869 and Porbandar, Gujarat.

Note : UNO declared Oct. 2 as 'International Non-violence Day' (Antarrashtriy Ahinsa Diwas)

Father : Karamachand Gandhi, Mother : Putali Bai, Political Guru : Gopal Krishna Gokhale, Private Secretary : Mahadev Desai.

Literary Influences on Gandhi : John Ruskin's *Unto This Last*, Emerson, Thoreau, Leo Tolstoy, *the Bible* and *the Gita*.

Literary Works : Hind Swaraj *(1909)*, My Experiments with Truth *(Autobiography, 1927)*–reveals events of Gandhi's life upto 1922.

As an Editor : *Indian Opinion* : 1903-15 *(in English and Gujarati, for a short period in Hindi and Tamil)*, *Harijan* : 1919-31 *(in English, Gujarati and Hindi)*, Young India : 1933-42 *(in English and Gujarati–named Navjeevan)*

Other Names : *Mahatma* (Saint)–by Rabindranath Tagore, 1917; *Malang Baba/ Nanga Faqir* (Naked Saint)–by Kabailis of North-West Frontier, 1930; *Half-naked Saint* (Ardha Nanga Faqir)/Indian Faqir/Traitor Faqir–by *Winston Churchill*, 1931; *Rashtrapita* (the Father of the Naiton)–by Subhash Chandra Bose, 1944.

Main Events during the Gandhian Era

Rowlatt Act (1919) : During the viceroyalty of Lord Chelmsford, a sedition committee was appointed by the government in 1918 with Justice *Rowlatt* which made certain recommendations to curb seditious activities in India. The Rowlatt Act 1919, gave unbridled powers to the government to arrest and imprison suspects without trial. The act caused a wave of anger among the people. Even before the act was passed, popular agitation began against it. Gandhiji decided to fight against this act and he gave a call for Satyagraha on April 6, 1919. He was arrested on April 8, 1919. This led to further intensification of the agitation in Delhi, Ahmedabad and Punjab.

Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (April 13, 1919) : The arrest of *Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlu* and *Dr. Satypal* on April 10, 1919, under the Rowlatt Act in connection with Satyagraha caused serious unrest in Punjab. A public meeting was held on April 13, 1919 in a park called *Jallianwala Bagh* in *Amritsar* where thousands of people including women and children assembled. Before the meeting could start General *Reginald Edward Harry (R.E.H.) Dyer* ordered indiscriminate heavy firing on the crowd and the people had no way out to escape. As a result hundreds of men women and children were killed and more than 1200 people wounded. At that time Miachel O'Dwyer was the lieutenant governor of the Punjab. The massacre was a turning point in Indo-British relations and inspired the people to provide a more unrelenting fight for freedom.

Note : Sardar Uddham Singh, an Indian patriot from Punjab, shot down Miachel O'Dwyer in London in 1940.

Khilafat movement (1920-22) : The Caliph (or, Khalifa) Sultan of Turkey, was looked upon by the Muslims as their religious head. During the first World War when the safety and welfare of Turkey were threatened by the British thereby weakening the Caliph's position, Indian Muslims adopted an aggressive anti-British attitude. *The Ali Brothers–Mohammad Ali* and *Shaukat Ali*–launched an anti-British movement in 1920–the Khilafat Movement for the restoration of the Khilafat. *Maulana Abul Kalam Azad* also led the movement. It was supported by *Gandhiji* and INC which paved the way for Hindu-Muslim unity.

Non-Cooperation Movement (1920-22) : At the *Calcutta session* in Sep. 1920 the Congress resolved in favour of the Non-cooperation Movement and defined *Swaraj as its ultimate aim* (according to Gandhi). The movement envisaged : (i) Surrender of titles and honorary offices and resignation from nominated offices; (ii) Refusal to attend government darbars and official functions and boycott of British courts by the lawyers; (iii) Refusal of general public to offer themselves for military and other government jobs, and boycott of foreign goods etc. *Gandhiji*, along with the *Ali Brothers* (of Khilafat Movement fame) undertook a nationwide tour during addressing of meetings. The educational boycott was specially successful in Bengal with Punjab too, responding under the leadership of *Lala Lajpat Rai*. Apart from educational boycott, there was boycott of law courts which saw major lawyers like *Motilal Nehru, C.R. Das, C. Rajagopalachari, Saifuddin Kitchlu, Vallabh Bh*

Patel, Aruna Asaf Ali, etc. giving up their lucrative practices in their fields. The non-cooperation movement also saw picketings of shops selling foreign cloth and boycott of the foreign cloth by the followers of Gandhiji. Another dramatic event during this period was the visit of the prince of Wales. The day he landed in India (in Bombay on Nov. 17, 1921) he was greeted with empty streets and downed shutters wherever he went.

The attack on a local police station by angry peasants at *Chauri-Chaura*, in Gorakhpur district of UP, on Feb. 5, 1922, changed the whole situation. Gandhi, shocked by Chauri-Chaura incident, withdrew the Non-Cooperation Movement on Feb. 12, 1922.

Swaraj Party (1923) : Gandhi's decision to call off the agitation caused frustration among masses. His decision came in for severe criticism from his colleagues like *Motilal Nehru, C. R. Das*and *N.C. Kelkar*, who organsied the Swaraj Party. The foundations of the Swaraj party were laid on Jan. 1, 1923, as the *'Congress Khilafat-Swaraj Party'*. It proposed then an alternative programme of diverting the movement from widespread civil disobedience programme to restrictive one which would encourage its member to enter into legislative councils (established under Mont-ford Reforms of 1919) by contesting elections in order to wreck the legislature from within and to use moral pressure to compel the authority to concede to the popular demand for self government. In the election held in 1923 the Swaraj Party captured 45 of the 145 seats. In provincial elections they secured few seats but in the Central Province they secured a clear majority. In Bengal, the Swaraj Party was the largest party. They followed the policy of undiluted opposition. The Swarajists demanded the release all the political prisoners, provincial autonomy, repealing of the repressive laws imposed by the government. However, after the death of C.R. Das in 1925 they drifted towards a policy of cooperation with the government. This led to dissension and the party broke up in 1926.

Simon Commission (1927) : The activities of the Swaraj Party had induced the British government to review the working of the dyarchy system introduced by the Montague-Chelmsford Reforms of 1919 and to report as to what extent a representative government could be introduced in India. The British government appointed the Simon Commission in Nov., 1927 for the task. All members of this commission were Europeans (Whites). Indian political leaders felt insulted and decided to boycott the commission. Wherever the commission went there were cries of '*Simon Go Back*'. It was while leading a demonstration against the Simon Commission in Lahore that a fatal lathi-blow was dealt to *Lala Lajpat Rai*. It was his death *Bhagat Singh*and his comrades were seeking to avenge when they killed a white police officials, *Saunders*, in Dec. 1928.

Nehru Committee Report (1928) : The Committee was set up under the chairmanship of *Motilal Nehru*to determine the principles of the constitution before actually drafting it. The chief architects of the report were *Motilal Nehru* and *Tej Bahadur Sapru*. The recommendation evoked a lively debate concerning the goal of India–Dominion Status or Complete Independence.

14 Points of Jinnah (March 9, 1929) : Jinnah, the leader of Muslim League, did not accept the Nehru Report. Jinnah thereafter drew up a list of demands, which was called '14 points of Jinnah'.

Lahore Session (Dec., 1929) : At its annual session held in Lahore in Dec. 19 under the presidentship of *Jawaharlal Nehru*, the Indian National Congress pas a resolution declaring *'Poorna Swaraj'* (Complete Independence) to be the goal the national movement.

On Dec. 31, 1929, the newly adopted tricolour flag was unfurled and Jan. 2 was fixed as the Independence Day which was to be celebrated every year, pleadi to the people not to submit to British rule any longer.

Dandi March/Salt Satyagraha (1930) : To achieve the goal of 'Comple Independence', *Gandhi* launched another civil disobedience movement. Along wi 78 followers, Gandhi started his famous march from *Sabarmati Ashram* on Marc 12, 1930 for the small village *Dandi* (Navsari District) to break the Salt Law. Gand covered a distance of 240 miles in 24 days (March 12 – April 5). On reaching th seashore on April 6, he broke the Salt Law by picking up salt from the seashore. B picking a handful of salt, Gandhi inaugurated the Civil Disobedience Movemen a movement that was to remain unsurpassed in the history of Indian Nationa Movement for the countrywide mass participation it unleashed. The movemen became so powerful that is sparked off patriotism even among the Indian soldie in the army. The Garhwal soldiers refused to fire on the people at Peshwar. Gandh was arrested on May 5, 1930. This was followed by another round of boycott o foreign goods and it took the shape of a nationwide Civil Disobedience Movemen in which ladies also participated. Soon thereafter followed repressive measures suc as mass arrests, lathi-charge, police-firing etc. About 1,00,000 people went in jail.

The First Round Table Conference (1930) : It was held in London on Nov. 12 1930, to discuss the Simon Commission, but was totally boycotted by the India National Congress. The Commission had proposed self-government in the province and federation of British India and the princely states at the Centre. However, th representative of the Muslim League, Liberals and other parties had assembled fo the discussion on the commission report. But in absence of the premier politic party, the First Round Table Conference had to be adjourned to Jan. 2, 1931.

Gandhi-Irwin Pact/Delhi Pact (March 5, 1931) : Early in 1931 two moderat statesman, *Sapru* and *Jayakar*, initiated efforts to bring about rapprochemen between Gandhi and the government. Six meeting with Viceroy Lord Irwin finall led to the signing of a pact between the two on March 5, 1931, whereby the congres called off the movement and agreed to join the Second Round Table Conferenc Regarding Gandhi-Irwin Pact J.L. Nehru remarks, *'This is the way the worlds ends,/ Not with a bang, but a whimper'.*

The Second Round Table Conference (1931) : It was held in London during the viceroyalty of *Lord Willingdon* during Sep. – Dec. 1931 and Gandhiji attende it on behalf of Indian National Congress. Nothing much was expected from the Conference for the imperialist political forces, which ultimately controlled the British Government in London, were opposed to any political or economic concession being given to India which could lead to its independence. The Conference, howeve failed as Gandhiji could not agree with British Prime Minister *Ramsay Mac Donal* on his policy of communal representation and refusal of the British governmen on the basic Indian demand for freedom. The conference closed on Dec. 1, 1931 without any concrete result.

The Communal Award/Mac Donald Award (Aug. 16, 1932) : While Gandhi was arrested on his return from London after the Second Round Table Conference, British Prime Minister *Ramsay Mac Donald* announced his Award on communal representation in Aug. 16, 1932. Besides containing provisions for representation of Muslims, Sikhs and Europeans, it envisaged communal representation of Depressed Classes also. Gandhi was deeply grieved by this and underwent a fast in protest against this Award since it aimed to divide India on a communal basis. While many political Indians saw the fast as a diversion from the ongoing political movement, all were deeply concerned and emotionally shaken. Almost everywhere in India mass meetings took place, political leaders of different persuasions, like *Madan Mohan Malviya, B. R. Ambedkar* and *M. C. Raja* became active. In the end the succeeded in hammering out an agreement, known as the Poona Pact.

Poona Pact/Gandhi–Ambedkar Pact (Sep. 24, 1932*) : As discussed, the Communal Award created immense dissatisfaction among Hindus. Gandhi who was on fast in protest staked his life to get the Award repudiated. According to the pact, the idea of separate electorate for the Depressed Classes was abandoned but seats reserved for them in the provincial legislatures were increased from 71 in the Award to 148, and in the central legislature to 18% of the total. Ultimately the fast ended with the *Poona Pact* which annulled the Award. The leaders of the various groups and parties among Hindus, and *B.R. Ambedkar* on behalf of the *harijans*, signed the pact. The Poona Pact between caste Hindus and the Depressed Classes agreed upon a joint electorate.

The Third Round Table Conference (Nov. 17–Dec. 24, 1932) : It was held in 1932 but again proved fruitless since the national leaders were in prison.

The Government of India Act, 1935 : The Simon Commission report submitted in 1930 formed the basis for the Government of India Act, 1935. The new Government of India Act received the royal assent on Aug. 4 1935. The Act continued and extended all the existing features of earlier constitutional reforms. But in addition there were certain new principle introduced. It provided for a federal type of government. Thus, the act: (i) Introduced provincial autonomy (ii) Abolished dyarchy in provinces (iii) Made ministers responsible to the legislative and federation at the centre. The Act of 1935 was condemned by nearly all sections of Indian public opinion and was unanimously rejected by the Congress. The Congress demanded itself the convening of a Constituent Assembly elected on the basis of adult franchise to frame a constitution for an independent India. Regarding the Government of India Act, 1935 J. L. Nehru remarks, *'It was a new charter of Slavery.'*

Although the Congress opposed the Act, yet it contested the elections when the constitution was introduced on April 1, 1937; and formed ministries, first in 6 provinces and then in another 2. The Muslim League was however, not happy with the Congress rule, esp. Mr. Jinnah, who described it in those words :*' Congress was drunk with power and was oppressive against Muslims'*.

Congress Ministries Resign (Dec. 22, 1939) : The Second World War broke out in Europe on Sep. 3, 1939 that brought Britain also within its fold. Without consulting the Indian leaders, the Viceroy declared India also as a belligerent country. This evoked sharp criticism from Indians and the Congress took the stand that India could not associate herself in a war said to be for democratic freedom when the very freedom was denied to her. The Congress demanded that India should be declared an independent nation. Then only would the country help Britain in the war. The Viceroy in his reply dated Oct. 17, 1939 rejected the Congress demand as impracticable and took the stand that the Government could think over the entire constitutional scheme after the war. The Congress condemned the Viceroy's reply and the Congress ministries everywhere resigned on Dec. 22, 1939. *Jinnah* was happy over this and he called upon the Indian Muslims to celebrate the resigning day of Congress ministries as *'the day of deliverance'.*

---

* Gazetteer of India (V–II) P.577

Pakistan Resolution/Lahore Resolution (March 24, 1940) : It was is 1930 that *Iqbal*suggested the union of the Frontier Province, Baluchistan, Sindh and Kashmir as Muslim state within the federations. This proved to be a creative idea which germinated during the early thirties to burst into vigorous life with the advent of the new reforms. The idealist *Chaudhry Rehmat Ali* developed this conception at Cambridge, where he inspired a group of young Muslims and invented the term *'Pakstan'* (later 'Pakistan') in 1935. His ideas seemed visionary during that time, but within 7 years they turned into a political programme by *Jinnah* with the new name as its slogan or banner. The ideology of Iqbal, the vision of Rehamat Ali, and the fears of Muslims were thus united by the practical genius of Jinnah to blind Muslim together as never before during the British period and ultimately led to the vivisection of India and creation of Pakistan. Pakistan Resolution was an important landmark in this context. The *Lahore session* of the Muslim League, held on March 24, 1940, passed *Pakistan Resolution* and rejected the Federal scheme as envisaged in the government of India Act, 1935.

August Offer/Linlithgow Offer (Aug. 8, 1940) : On Aug. 8, 1940, the Viceroy *Linlithgow* came out with certain proposals, known as *August Offer* declaring that the goal of British Government was to establish *Dominion Status* in India. It accepted that framing of a new constitution would be the responsibility of the Indians. It also laid down that full weight would be given to the views of minorities in the constitution. *Maulana Abul Kalam Azad*, President of the Congress, rejected the August Offer which aimed at bringing the Congress in the ongoing world war. The Muslim League, however welcomed the offer as it ensured that no further constitution would be adopted without the prior approval of Muslims. The League declared that the most difficult problem of India's future constitution could be solved only by the partition of India. In brief, the August Offer failed in gaining Indian's co-operation for war and, in fact, further widened the gulf between the Congress and the Britishers as well as between the Congress and the Muslim League.

Individual Civil Disobedience/Individual Satyagaraha (Oct., 1940 - Dec., 1941) : The Congress Working Committee decided to start individual civil disobedience on Oct. 17, 1940. *Vinoba Bhave* was the first Satyagrahi who was arrested on Oct. 21, followed soon by many more including *Nehru* and *Patel*. But the movement created little enthusianism and Gandhi suspended it.

The Cripps Mission (March-April 1942) : In 1942, the British Government realized that it could not ignore the Indian problems any more. As a result of the World War, the situation worsened for the British with Japanese advance towards Indian borders. By March 7, 1942, Rangoon fell and Japan occupied the entire South-East Asia. The British government, with a view of getting cooperation from Indians sent *Sir Stafford Cripps*, a member of the British cabinet to India to settle terms with Indian leaders who were forthwith released. Cripps proposed *Dominion Status* after the war but his proposal was rejected by all the political leaders. As no party agreed to accept these proposals, the Cripps Mission ended in failure. Regarding the Cripps Mission proposals Mahatma Gandhi remarks *'A post-dated cheque on a crumbling bank'.*

Quit India movement (1942) : On Aug. 8, 1942, the Congress in its meeting at *Gowaliya Tank, Bombay* passed a resolution known as 'Quit India' resolution, whereby *Gandhiji* asked the British to quit India and gave a call for *'Do or die'* (We shall either free India or die in the attempt) to his countrymen. On Aug. 9, 1942 all the prominent leaders like Gandhi, Nehru, Patel etc. were arrested but the rest most of (J.P., Lohiya, Aruna Ashaf Ali, Usha Mehta etc.) continued the revolutionary struggle. Violence spread throughout the country, several government offices were destroyed and damaged, the telegraph wires were cut and communication paralyzed. Parallel government were established in some places viz. 1. *Balia*, U.P. (by Chittu Pandeya)–first Parallel govt. 2. *Tamulak*, Midnapur Distt., Bengal (by Satis Samant) 3. *Satara*, Maharashtra (by Y. B. Chahvan and Nana Patil)– the longest (term) parallel govt. 4. *Talchar*, Orissa. The movement was, however, crushed by the government.

Gandhiji's Fast (Feb. 10 – March 7, 1943) : Gandhiji undertook a 21-day fast in jail. His condition deteriorated after 13 days and all hopes of his survival were given up. However, as a result of his moral strength and spiritual stamina, he survived and completed the 21-day fast. This was his answer to the government which had been constantly exhorting him to condemn the violence of the people in the Quit India Movement. Gandhi not only refused to condemn people resorting to violence but unequivocally held the government responsible for it.

C.R. Formula (1944) : In 1994, *Chakravarti Rajagopalachari (C.R.)* proposed to appoint a commission to demarcate the districts in North-West and East where Muslims were in majority. In such areas, a plebiscite was proposed to be held on the basis of adult suffrage to decide the issue of separation. They would be given freedom if they favoured a sovereign state. In case of acceptance of partition, agreement was to be made jointly for safeguarding defence, commerce, communications etc. Muslim League was to endorse Congress demand for independence and cooperate in the formation of provisional government. *Jinnah* objected, as he wanted Congress to accept two-nation theory and wanted only Muslims of the North-West and East of India to vote in the plebiscite. Hindu Leaders led by *V.D. Savarkar* condemned the plan.

Wavell Plan and Shimla Conference (June 14–July 14, 1945) : The war situation in Europe improved in the beginning of the year 1945. India's goodwill was, however, needed as the war against Japan was expected to last for about two years. The situation within the country was worsening day by day as a result of deteriorating economic situation and famines. The British Government was compelled to come forward with some sort of plan to satisfy the Indians. After consultations with the British Government on the Indian problem, *Lord Wavell*, the Viceroy of India, issued a statement known as *Wavell Plan*. The Plan, which chiefly concerned Viceroy's Executive Council, proposed certain changes in the structure of the council. One of the main proposals was that the Executive Council would be constituted giving a balanced representation to the main communities in it, including equal representation to Muslims and Hindus.

Soon after the Wavell Plan was issued the members of the Congress Working Committee were released from jails. A conference of 22 prominent Indian leaders called at Shimla to consider the Wavell Plan, reached no decision. What scuttled the conference was Mr. Jinnah's unflinching stand that the Muslim members approved only by the Muslim League should be included in the Executive Council. Communalism thus again became a stumbling block. For the Britishers, however, the dissension between the Congress and the Muslim League was a source of happiness.

INA Trial (Nov., 1945) : *P. K. Sehgal, Shah Nawaj Khan* and *Gurubaksh Singh Dhillon* were put on trial at the Red Fort in Nov., 1945. To elucidate, despite the best efforts of the Congress to win the legal battle the trial of INA prisoners led to their outright conviction on the charge of waging war against the King Emperor. The pressure of the Indian public opinion against this conviction however, soon mounted high. This shook the British Government and it was compelled to suspend the sentences imposed on the INA convicts. Further, disaffection spread fast among the soldiers. The chief defence advocate during the INA trial was *Bhulabhai Desai*. Other defence lawyers were *Tej Bahadur Sapru, Jawaharlal Nehru, Asaf Ali* and *Md. Ali Jinnah*.

Azad Hind Fauj *(Indian National Army -INA)*

The Japanese after defeating the British in South-East Asia, took a number of Indian soldiers as prisoners of war. In March 1942 a conference of Indians was held in Tokyo, and they formed the *Indian Independence League*. At the Bangkok conference (June 1942) *Ras Bihari Bose* was elected President of the League. INA was a brain-child of Mohan Singh. INA was formed by Ras Bihari Bose in 1942. In 1943, INA was reorganised by Subhash Chandra Bose

Subhas Chandra Bose had escaped to Berlin in 1941 and set up Indian League there. In July 1943, he joined the INA at Singapore. There Ras Bihari Bose handed over the leadership to him.

Provisional Government of Free India and *INA* was formed by Subhas Chandra Bose in Singapore on Oct. 21, 1943.

INA had 3 fighting brigades named after *Subhas, Gandhi* and *Nehru*. *Rani Jhansi Brigade* was an exclusive women force.

But with the defeat of Japan in 1945, the INA also died out.

Bose is said to have been killed in air crash over Taipei, Taiwan on his way to Tokyo in Aug. 18, 1945.

Royal Indian Navy (RIN)/Ratings Mutiny (Feb. 18, 1946) : On Feb., 18, 1946, Bombay Ratings of HMS Talwar struck work due to flagrant racial discrimination, unpalatable food and abuse after the arrest of B.C. Dutt who had scrawled Quit India on the ship. On Feb. 19, HMS Hindustan, in Karachi also mutinied. *VallabhBhai Patel* and *Jinnah* jointly persuaded the Ratings to surrender on Feb. 23, 1946. The Britishers for the first time seriously realized that with this awakening among the Indians and revolt in armed forces, it could not perpetuate its hold on India any more.

Cabinet Mission (March - June, 1946) : The British Prime Minister, *Lord Attlee*, made a declaration on March 15, 1946, that British Cabinet Mission would visit India to make recommendations regarding constitutional reforms to be introduced in India. The Cabinet Mission which included of *Lord Pathick Lawrence, Stafford Cripps* and *A. V. Alexander* visited India and met the representative of different political parties, but a satisfactory solution to the constitutional difficulties could not be found. The mission envisaged the establishment of a Constituent Assembly to frame the constitution as well as an interim government. The Muslim League accepted the plan on June 6, 1946, while maintaining its rights of striving for a separate Muslim state. The Congress also partially accepted the plan.

Direct Action Campaign (Aug. 16, 1946) : Provoked by the success of the Congress (in the voting for Constituent Assembly), the Muslim League launched a 'direct action' campaign on Aug. 16, 1946, which resulted in wide spread communal riots in the country.

Interim Government (Sep. 2, 1946) : On Sep. 2, 1946, an interim government was formed. Congress members led by *Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru* joined it but the Muslim League did not, on the contrary it withdrew its earlier acceptance of the Cabinet Mission Plan.

Formation of Constituent Assembly (Dec. 9, 1946) : The Constituent Assembly met on Dec. 9, 1946, and *Dr. Rajendra Prasad* was elected its President. The Muslim League did not join the Assembly.

Attlee's Announcement (Feb. 20, 1947) : On Feb. 20, 1947, British Prime Minister *Attlee* announced that the British would withdraw from India by June 30, 1948 and that Lord Mountbatten would replace Wavell.

Mountbatten Plan (June 3, 1947) : In March, 1947, *Lord Mountbatten* replaced Lord Wavell. He announced his plan on June 3, 1947. His earlier *Plan Balkan* was abandoned for this June 3, Plan. It offered a key to the political and constitutional deadlock created by the refusal of Muslim League to join the Constituent Assembly formed to frame the constitution of India. Mountbatten's formula was to divide India but retain maximum unity. The country would be partitioned but so would be Punjab and Bengal, so that the limited Pakistan that emerged would meet both the Congress and the League's position to some extent. The League's position on Pakistan was conceded in that it would be created, but the Congress position on unity would be taken into account to make Pakistan as small as possible. He laid down detailed principles for the partition of the country and speedy transfer of political powers in the form of dominion status to the newly formed dominions of India and Pakistan. Its acceptance by the Congress and the Muslim League resulted in the birth of Pakistan.

The Indian Independence Act, 1947 : The Bill containing the provisions of the Mountbatten Plan of June 3, 1947, was introduced in the British Parliament and passed as the Indian Independence Act, 1947. The Act laid down detailed measures for the partition of India and speedy transfer of political powers to the new governments of India and Pakistan.

Integration of States : By Aug. 15, 1947, all states except *Kashmir, Junagadh* and *Hyderabad* had signed the Instrument of Accession with India. *The Maharaja of Kashmir* acceded to India in Oct., 1947 when irregular Pakistani troops invaded his state. *The Nawab of Junagadh* was a Muslim whereas most of its people were Hindus. In Feb. 1948, through a referendum the people of this state decided to join India. The Nawab of Junagadh, therefore, left for Pakistan. *The Nizam of Hyderabad* was forced to accede to the Indian Union under the pressure of internal anarchy and military action against him in Sep., 1948.

French Colonies : By the end of 1954, French colonial rule in Pondicherry, Chandranagar, Mahe, Karaikal and Yanam came to an end. These territories were integrated with India.

Portuguese Colonies : The Portuguese colonies in India were Goa, Daman, Diu, Dadra and Nagar Haveli. In 1954, Dadra and Nagar Haveli were liberated by freedom fighters. Indian troops liberated Goa, Daman and Diu from the Portuguese in 1961.

Miscellaneous

Important Dates

I. Ancient	
BC	
2500-1750	Indus Valley Civilization.
563-483	Buddha's life-span.
540-468	Mahavir's life-span.
327-326	Alexander's invasion of India. It opened a land route between India and Europe.
322	Accession of Chandragupta Maurya.
305	Defeat of Seleucus at the hands of Chandragupta Maurya.
273-232	Ashoka's reign.
261	Conquest of Kalinga.
145-101	Reign of Elara, the Chola king of Sri Lanka.
58	Beginning of Vikram era.
AD	
78	Beginning of Saka era.
78-101	Kanishka's reign.
319-320	Commencement of Gupta era.
380	Accession of Chandragupta II 'Vikramaditya'.
405-411	Visit of Chinese traveller Fahien.
415	Accession of Kumaragupta I
455	Accession of Skandagupta.
606-647	Harshavardhan's reign.
II. Medieval	
712	First invasion in Sindh by Arabs (Mod. Bin Qasim).
836	Accession of King Bhoja of Kannauj.
985	Accession of Rajaraja, the Chola ruler.
998	Accession of Sultan Mahmud Ghazni.
1001	First invasion of India by Mahmud Ghazni who defeated Jaipal, ruler of Punjab.
1025	Destruction of Somnath Temple by Mahmud Ghazni.
1191	First Battle of Tarain.
1192	Second Battle of Tarain.
1206	Accession of Qutubuddin Aibak to the throne of Delhi.
1210	Death of Qutubuddin Aibak.
1221	Chengiz Khan invaded India (Mongol invasion)
1236	Accession of Razia Sultana to the throne of Delhi.

1240	Death of Razia Sultana.
1296	Accession of Alauddin Khilji.
1316	Death of Alauddin Khilji.
1325	Accession of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.
1327	Transfer of Capital from Delhi to Devagiri (Daulatabad) in Deccan by the Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.
1336	Foundation of Vijayanagar empire in the South.
1351	Accession of Firoz Shah Tughlaq.
1398	Timur's Invasion of India.
1469	Birth of Guru Nanak.
1494	Accession of Babur in Farghana.
1497-98	First voyage of Vasco da Gama to India (discovery of sea route to India via the Cape of Good Hope)
1526	First Battle of Panipat; Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodhi; foundation of Mughal dynasty by Babur.
1527	Battle of Khanwa—Babur defeated Rana Sanga.
1530	Death of Babur and accession of Humayun.
1539	Sher Shah Suri defeated Humayun in the battle of Chausa and became India's emperor.
1555	Humayun recaptured the throne of Delhi.
1556	Second Battle of Panipat (Akbar defeated Hemu).
1556	Battle of Talikota (Rakshasa-Tangadi).
1576	Battle of Haldighati—Rana Pratap was defeated by Akbar.
1582	Din-i-Ilahi founded by Akbar.
1600	English East India Company established.
1605	Death of Akbar and accession of Jahangir.
1606	Execution of Guru Arjun Dev, the 5th Guru of Sikhs.
1611	Jahangir marries Nurjahan.
1615	Sir Thomas Roe visits Jahangir.
1627	Birth of Shivaji and death of Jahangir.
1628	Shahjahan becomes emperor of India.
1631	Death of Mumtazmahal.
1634	The English permitted to trade in India (in Bengal)
1659	Accession of Aurangzeb, Shahjahan imprisoned.
1665	Shivaji imprisoned by Aurangzeb.
1666	Death of Shahjahan.
1675	Execution of Guru Teg Bahadur, the 9th Guru of Sikhs.
1680	Death of Shivaji.
1707	Death of Aurangzeb.
1708	Death of Guru Gobind Singh, the 10th Guru of Sikhs.
1739	Nadir Shah invades India.

III. MODERN

1757	Battle of Plassey; establishment of British political rule in India at the hands Lord Clive.
1761	Third Battle of Panipat.
1764	Battle of Buxar.
1765	Clive appointed Company's Governor in India.
1767-69	First Anglo-Mysore War.
1780	Birth of Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
1780-84	Second Anglo-Mysore War.
1784	Pitt's India Act.
1790-92	Third Anglo-Mysore War.
1793	The Permanent Settlement of Bengal.
1799	Fourth Anglo-Mysore War—Death of Tipu Sultan.
1802	Treaty of Bassein.
1809	Treaty of Amritsar.
1829	Practice of Sati prohibited.
1830	Raja Rammohan Roy visits England.
1833	Death of Raja Rammohan Roy at Bristol, England.
1839	Death of Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
1839-42	First Anglo-Afghan War.
1845-46	First Anglo-Sikh War.
1852	Second Anglo-Burmese War.
1853	First Railway line opened between Bombay and Thane and a Telegraph line in Calcutta.
1857	The Sepoy Mutiny or First War of Independence.
1861	Birth of Rabindranath Tagore.
1869	Birth of Mahatma Gandhi.
1885	Foundation of Indian National Congress.
1889	Birth of Jawaharlal Nehru.
1897	Birth of Subhash Chandra Bose.
1903	Tibet Expedition (Young Husband delegation).
1905	Partition of Bengal by Lord Curzon.
1906	Foundation of Muslim League by Salimullah (Nawab of Dhaka) at Dhaka.
1911	Delhi Darbar, King and Queen visit India; Delhi becomes the capital of India.
1914	World War I begins.
1916	Lucknow Pact signed by Muslim League and Congress.
1918	World War I ends.
1919	Montague-Chelmsford Reforms introduced, Jallianwala Bagh massacre at Amritsar.
1920	Khilafat Movement launched.
1927	Boycott of Simon Commission, broadcasting started in India.

1928	Death of Lala Lajpat Rai.
1929	Resolution of 'Poorna Swaraj' (complete independence) passed at Lahore Session of INC.
1930	Civil disobedience movement launched, Dandi March by Mahatma Gandhi (April 6, 1930).
1931	Gandhi-Irwin Pact.
1935	Government of India Act.
1937	Provincial Autonomy, Congress forms ministries.
1939	World War II begins (September 3).
1941	Escape of Subhash Chandra Bose from India, Death of Rabindranath Tagore.
1942	Arrival of Cripps Mission in India, Quit India movement launched (August 8).
1943-44	S.C. Bose formed Provisional Government of Free India and reorganised Indian National Army in Singapore; Bengal famine.
1945	Trial of Indian National Army at Red Fort; Shimla Conference; World War II ends.
1946	British Cabinet Mission visits India; Interim government formed at the Centre.
1947	Division of India; India & Pakistan form separate independent dominions.

Important Places

Ahichhatra : Originally *Ahikshetra* in Bareilly district of Uttar Pradesh was once the capital of Panchalas.

Aihole : In Karnataka contains chief sites of Chalukyan architecture—nearly 70 structural stone temples important in the development of Hindu architecture and sculpture.

Ajanta Caves : 66 miles north of Aurangabad in Maharashtra State. These are rock-cut Buddhist caves, 29 in number. These caves represent a record of unique painting, sculpture and architecture of the period from about the 2nd century B.C. to about 7th century A.D.

Amaravati : It is the legendary capital of Svarga. Also a historical site near modern Vijaywada, believed to have flourished under the Satavahana dynasty.

Arikamedu : It was a sea-port near Pondicherry in Chola times.

Ayodhya : A few miles from modern Faizabad, near Lucknow, was capital of the Kosala and the Solar kings of ancient India. Rama was the most prominent among them.

Badami (or Vatapi) : In Karnataka is well-known for Chalukyan sculpture found in the cave temples here. These are groups of Hindu temples dating back to 7th or 8th century and are examples of pure Dravidian architecture. Besides cave temples and rock-cut pillared halls, there is also the famous Malegitti Shivalaya temple.

Belur : In Karnataka is famous for its elaborately sculptured Cheena Kesava temple of the Hoysala period.

Bhubaneswar : In Orissa is known for ancient temples viz., Rajarani; Lingraja; Brahmesvara.

Bodh Gaya : It is situated 6 miles south of Gaya in Bihar State on the western bank of the Falgu river and connected by two metalled roads. It is famous as the place where Buddha got enlightenment. There are modern monasteries, rest houses and museum.

Chidambaram : A town 150 miles south of Chennai known as Tillai in ancient time, was once the capital of the Chola kingdom. Its temples are among the oldest in India and are gems of Dravidian architecture. It is famous as the abode of Natraja, the Dancing Shiva.

Daulatabad : Near Aurangabad in Maharashtra State is famous for rock-cut fortress of 12th century of near the tomb of the Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb.

Elephanta Caves : On the island of the same name about 6 miles from Mumbai harbour are rock-cut caves of the 7th and 8th century. The name Elephanta is due to the Portuguese, who were apparently struck by the stone elephants which were once found in the landing place.

Ellora Caves : About 15 miles north-west of Aurangabad in Maharashtra State are about 34 caves excavated in the face of a hill.

Fatehpur Sikri : 23 miles from Agra in Uttar Pradesh was the city founded by *Akbar* in 1571 but abandoned soon after. The place contains a number of places, shrines, mosques. The most notable among them is Buland Darwaza, 176 feet high and built to commemorate the conquest of Gujarat.

Halebid : In Karnataka, 10 miles from Belur, is well-known for its elaborately sculptured temples of the Hoysala period. The monuments rank among the masterpieces of Hindu art.

Hampi : In Karnataka, 9 miles from Hospet railway station, is the ruined capital of the Vijayanagar Empire.

Harappa : In Montgomery district of Punjab, now in West Pakistan, is known for excavations carried out here showing signs of Indus Valley Civilization.

Junagadh : In Gujarat State is one of the most ancient cities of India. It is situated below the Girnar Hill. The temples on the Hill are known for their architecture and paintings.

Kalibangan : In Hanumangarh district of Rajasthan where excavations brought to light the varied achievements of Indus Valley Civilisation—town planning and use of burnt bricks.

Kannauj : Capital of Harshavardhana.

Kanchipuram : Or the "Golden City", 45 miles south-west of Chennai is known for Kailashnath temple. It was the capital of successive dynasties of Hindu rulers.

Kanheri : 20 miles from Mumbai is known for its Buddhist caves dating back to the 1st century A.D.

Kanyakubja : Or modern Kannauj is an ancient city. It was the cultural centre of northern India from the seventh century to the time when the Muslims came.

Kapilvastu : A small ancient kingdom in the north of India; associated with Mahatma Buddha.

Khajuraho : In Chhattarpur in Madhya Pradesh is famous for its group of highly ornate mediaeval Hindu temples.

Kusinagar : In the district of modern Deoria, is the place where *Buddha* died.

Lothal : Ancient town, situated on the sea-plain of former Saurashtra, 450 miles south-east of Mohenjodaro. The excavation made here represent the Indus Valley Civilization.

Madurai : Popularly known as the "City of Festivals", was till the 14th century the capital of the Pandyan kingdom which had sea-borne trade with Rome and Greece. It is famous for Minakshi temple.

Mammalapuram (now *Mahabalipuram*) : Situated 53 miles from Chennai, it is known for rock-cut temples, monolithic figures and carvings of the 7th and 8th centuries A.D. The chief points of interest here are the Five Rathas or temples modelled as chariots—"Arjuna Ratha", "Draupadi Ratha", "Dharamraja Ratha" etc. Also famous for Shore temple.

Mandu : In Madhya Pradesh. It is one of the largest mediaeval city sites. It has extensive remains—fortifications and palaces—a synthesis of Hindu and Muslim styles in architecture and painting; Jama Masjid (of Mandu).

Mithila : It was the home of the three scholar sages—*Gargi, Maitreya* and *Kapila*. It was the capital town of *Raja Janak's* territory.

Mohenjodaro : In the Larkana district of Sindh (now in Pakistan) is the site of excavation revealing Indus Valley Civilization.

Nalanda : In Bihar was the seat of an ancient Buddhist University. It contains a group of Buddhist temples and monasteries.

Palitana : In Saurashtra is famous for its holly hill *Shatrunjaya*. It is the most sacred place for Shvetambara Jains.

Pandharpur : It is in Sholapur district (Maharashtra State). It stands on Bhima river and is one of the most sacred places of pilgrimage in the State.

Prabhaspatan (or**Somnath**): In Gujarat State is the site of the famous Somnath temple which was destroyed by *Mahmud Ghazni*.

Pragjyotishpur : Was the capital of an ancient tribal kingdom in Kamarupa or modern Assam.

Rajgir : 8 miles south-west of Nalanda by road is an important place of pilgrimage for Buddhists. It was the capital of *Bimbisara* in ancient times. The *Buddha* preached at Rajgir, and so did *Mahavira*, the great preceptor of the Jains.

Sanchi : In Madhya Pradesh is famous for the largest and the most well-preserved Buddhist Stupa (108-foot in diameter and 42-foot in height).

Sarnath : Near Varanasi is the place where the *Buddha* delivered his first sermon after he became the "Englightened One". The place is known for Buddhist temples and remains.

Seringapatam : In Karnataka was the ancient capital of *Tipu Sultan*. (Now known as Seringapatnam.)

Somnathpuram : In Karnataka is known for temples of Hoysala period, Kesava temple.

Sravanbelgola : In Karnataka is famous for its Jain temples and the colossal statue of *Gomateswara (Babubali)*—65-foot high erected in A.D. 983, the tallest monolithic in the world.

Srirangam : An island on the Cauvery river two miles north of Tiruchirapalli. It contains one of the largest temples in south India of the Vijayanagar period.

Sringeri : In Karnataka is a place of pilgrimage on the banks of Tung river where the great philosopher *Sankara* founded one of the principal *maths* (monasteries).

Tamralipti : A flourishing sea port in ancient India.

Tanjore : Was the capital of Cholas. It is situated in the delta of the Cauvery in Tamil Nadu. Also known for Brihadeeswara temple.

Taxila : Ancient capital of Gandhara and one of the most renowned cities of ancient north-west India.

Tirupati : In Andhra Pradesh State, situated about 100 miles to the north-west of Chennai is one of the holiest places in South India. This hill temple of Sri Venkateswara is an example of early Dravidian architecture and is one of the finest in the south.

Ujjain : Known to be the seat of king *Vikrama*, is situated on the bank of Sipra river in Madhya Pradesh. It is one of the seven sacred cities also known as *Avanti*. The Oriental Museum here has some valuable manuscripts and pieces of sculpture. Mahakaleshwar temple here is known as a pilgrimage centre.

Vaishali : In the district of Vaishali in Bihar was the capital of famous Vajji kingdom in ancient times.

Vatapi : See Badami.

Vikramasila : Was a great Tantrik University established by the Pala King *Dharampala* in A.D. 810. It was a hotbed of moral corruption, sorcery and idolatry. In AD 1198, the soldiers of Ikhtiar Khilji destroyed the structure to the ground and killed all the monks in the university.

Association of Places

Place	Associated with	Place	Associated with
Bardoli	Sardar Patel	Pondicherry	Aurobindo Ghosh
Belur	Rama Krishna Paramhans	Porbandar	Mahatma Gandhi
Chittor	Rana Pratap	Rajghat	Mahatma Gandhi
Fatehpur Sikri	Akbar, the Great	Sabarmati	Mahatma Gandhi
Jallianwala Bagh	Massacre of Indians by the British on April 13, 1919	Seringapatnam	Tipu Sultan
Haldighati	Rana Pratap		
Kapilvastu	Mahatma Buddha	Shanti Van	Jawahar Lal Nehru
Lumbini	Mahatma Buddha	Shantiniketan	Rabindranath Tagore
Macedonia	Alexander, the Great	Talwandi	Guru Nanak
Mecca	Prophet Mohammed	Ujjain	Mahavira
		Vrindaban (U.P.)	Lord Krishna

Important Foreign Travellers/Envoys

Megasthenes (302-298 BC) : An ambassador of Selecus Nikator, who visited the court of *Chandragupta Maurya*. He wrote an interesting book *'Indica'* inwhich he gave a vivid account of Chandragupta Maurya's reign.

Fa-Hien (405-411 AD) : He came to India during the reign of *Chandragupta II Vikramaditya*. The object of his visit was to see the holy places of Buddhism and to collect Buddhist books and relics. He was the first Chinese pilgrim to visit India.

Hiuen-Tsang (630-645 AD) : He visited India during the reign of *Harshavardhana*.

I-tsing (671-695 AD) : A Chinese traveller, he visited India in connection with Buddhism. His work Biographies of Eminent Monks, provides us useful information about the social, religious and cultural life of the people of this country.

Al-Masudi (957 AD) : An Arab traveller, he has given an extensive account of Idnia in his work 'Muruj-ul-Zahab'.

Al-beruni (1024-1030 AD) : His real name was *Abu Rehan Mahamud* and he came to India along with *Mahmud of Ghazni* during one of his Indian raids. He travelled all over India and wrote a book *'Tahqiq-i-Hind'*. The book dealts with the social, religious and political conditions in India.

Marco Polo (1292-1294 AD) : A Venetian traveller, he visited South India in 1294 A.D. *(during the reign of Pandyan ruler of Madurai, Madverman Kulshekhara : 1272-1311)*. His work 'The Book of Sir Marco Polo' gives an invaluable account of the economic history of India.

Ibn Batuta (1333-1347 AD) : A Morrish traveller, he visited India during the reign of *Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq*. His book *'Rehla'* (the Travelogue) throws a lot of light on the reign of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq and the geographical, economic and social conditions in India.

Shihabuddin al-Umari (1348 AD) : He came from Damascus. He gives a vivid account of India in his book, *'Masalik albsar fi-mamalik al-amsar'*.

Nicolo Conti (1420-1421 AD) : A Venetian traveller, he gives a comprehensive account of the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar.

Abdur Razzaq (1443-1444 AD) : He was a Persian traveller, who came to India and stayed at the court of the Zamorin at Calicut. He has given a vivid account of the Vijayanagar empire, especially of the city. He describes the wealth and luxurious life of the king and the nobles.

Athanasius Nikitin (1470-1474 AD) : He was a Russian merchant, who visited South India in 1470. He describes the condition of the Bahmani kingdom under *Muhammad III* (1463-82).

Duarte Barbosa (1500-1516 AD) : He was a Portuguese traveller. He has given a valuable narrative of the government and the people of the Vijayanagar empire.

Dominigo Paes (1520-1522 AD) : He was Portuguese traveller, who visisted the court of *Krishnadeva Raya* of the Vijayanagar Empire.

Fernao Nuniz (1535-1537 AD) : A Portuguese merchant, who visited the Vijayanagar empire. He wrote the history of the empire from its earliest times of the closing years of *Achyutdeva Raya's* reign.

John Hughen Von Linschotten (1583 AD) : He was a Dutch traveller, who has given a valuable account of the social and economic life of South India.

William Hawkins (1608-1611 AD) : He was an English ambassador of the British King James I to the court of Jahangir (1609).

Sir Thomas Roe (1615-1619 AD) : He was an ambassador of James I, King of England, at the court of Jahangir, the Mughal emperor.

Franciso Palsaert (1620-1627 AD) : He was a Dutch traveller, who stayed at Agra and gave a vivid account of the flourishing trade at Surat, Ahmedabad, Broach, Cambay, Lahore, Multan etc.

Peter Mundy (1630-34 AD) : He was an Italian traveller to the Mughal empire in the reign of *Shahjahan*. He gives valuable information about the living standard of the common people in the Mughal Empire.

John Albert de Mandesto (1638 AD) : He was German traveller, who reached Surat in 1638.

Jeen Baptiste Tavernier (1638-1663 AD) : He was a French traveller, who visited India six times. His account covers the reign of *Shahjahan* and *Aurangzeb*.

Nicolao Manucci (1653-1708 AD) : He was an Italian traveller, who got service at the court of *Dara Shikoh*.

Francois Bernier (1656-1717 AD) : He was French physician and philosopher. Danishamand Khan, a noble of *Aurangzeb*, was his patron.

Jean de Thevenot (1666 AD) : He was French traveller, who has given a good account of cities like Ahmedabad, Cambay, Aurangabad and Golconda.

John Fryer (1672-1681 AD) : He was an English traveller, who has given a vivid account of Surat and Bombay.

Gemelli Careri (1695 AD) : He was an Italian traveller who landed at Daman. His remarks on the Mughal emperor's military organisation and administration are important.

Abbreviated or Alternative Names

Abbreviated/Alternative Name	Original Name
Andhra Kesari	T. Prakasam
Anna	C.N. Annadurai
Badshah Khan	Abdul Ghaffar Khan
Bapu, Mahatma Gandhi	Mohan Das Karam Chand Gandhi
Beacon of Light of Asia	Subhash Chandra Bose
Chacha	Jawahar Lal Nehru
C.R.	C. Rajagopalachari
Deenbandhu	C.F. Andrews
Deshbandhu	C.R. Das
Enlightened One, The	Mahatma Buddha
Father of Indian Unrest	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
Father of the Local Self-government	Lord Ripon
Father of the Nation (India)	Mahatma Gandhi
Frontier Gandhi	Abdul Ghaffar Khan
Grand Old Man of India	Dadabhai Naoroji
Gurudev	Rabindranath Tagore
Indian Bismarck	Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
Indian Einstein	Nagarjuna
Indian Napoleon	Samudragupta
J.P./Loknayak	Jayaprakash Narayan
Lal, Bal, Pal	Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal
Liberator of the Indian Press	Sir Charles Metcalfe
Lion of Punjab (Sher-i-Punjab)	Lala Lajpat Rai
Lokmanya	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
Mahamana	Pt. Mandan Mohan Malaviya
Martin Luther of India	Dayanand Saraswati

Abbreviated/Alternative Name	Original Name
Man of Iron/Iron Man of India	Sardar Patel
Netaji	Subhas Chandra Bose
Nightingale of India	Sarojini Naidu
Parrot of India (Tuti-e-Hindustan)	Amir Khusrau
Patriot of Patriots	Subhash Chandra Bose
Punjab Kesari	Lala Lajpat Rai
Scourge of God	Chengiz Khan
Strong Man of India	Sardar Patel

Important Sayings

'Back to Vedas.' *Dayanand Saraswati*

'Dharma Chakra Pravartana.' *Mahatma Buddha*

'Dilli Chalo!' *Subhash Chandra Bose's battle cry of Azad Hind Fauj*

'Do or Die.' *Mahatma Gandhi* (while launching Quit India movement in 1942)

'Give me blood and I will give you freedom.' *Subhas Chandra Bose* (in his address to soldiers of Azad Hind Fauj)

'My ultimate aim is to wipe every tear from every eye.' *Jawahar Lal Nehru*

'Swaraj is my birthright and I will have it.' *Bal Gangadhar Tilak*

'Every blow that is hurled on my back will be a nail in the coffin of the British Empire'. *Lala Lajpat Rai*

'The Congress is tottering to its fall and one of my greatest ambitions while in India is to assist it to a peaceful demise'. *Lord Curzon*

Important Battles

Name of the	Year	Battle between	Won by	Significance
Battle of Hydaspes	326 BC	Alexander and Porus	Alexander	Fought on the bank of the Jehlum, which is called 'Hydaspes' in Greek; opened relations between India and the West.
Kalinga War	260 BC	Ashoka and King of Kalinga	Ashoka	Vast destruction and bloodshed changed the attitude of Ashoka and the embraced Buddhism.
First Battle of Tarain or Thaneswar	1191 AD	Prithviraj Chauhan and Mohd Ghori	Prithiviraj Chauhan	
Second Battle of Tarain	1192 AD	– do –	Mohd. Ghori	Establishment of an Islamic empire in India
First Battle of Panipat	1526 AD	Ibrahim Lodhi and Babur	Babur	Onset of the Mughal empire in India.
Battle of Khanwa	1527 AD	Babur and Rana Sanga	Babur	

Name of the	Year	Battle between	Won by	Significance
Battle of Chausa	1539 AD	Sher Shah and Humayun	Sher Shah	Sher Shah became emperor of India.
Second Battle of Panipat	1556 AD	Akbar and Hemu	Akbar	Ended Afghan rule, strengthened mughal rule
Battle of Talikota	1565 AD	Combined force of 4 Muslim rulers of Deccan and Ramraja of Vijayanagar	Muslim forces	Destroyed Hindu kingdom of the Deccan; sealed the fortunes of Vijayanagar empire.
Battle of Haldighati	1576 AD	Rana Pratap and Akbar	Akbar	Rana Pratap fought gallantly and took refuge in a remote fortress.
Battle of Samugarh	1659 AD	Aurangzeb and Imperial forces led by Dara	Aurangzeb	Aurangzeb captured the Mughal throne.
Battle of Plassey	1757 AD	Sirajuddaula and English forces under Clive	English forces	Fought at Plassey. The English became masters of Bengal; foundation of British rule.
Third Battle of Panipat	1761 AD	Ahmed Shah Abdali and Marathas	Ahmed Shah Abdali	Gave a setback to Marathas in the north; sealed destiny of Mughal empire and made British entry easier.
Battle of Buxar	1764 AD	Joint forces of Muslim and English forces	English forces	Led to English occupation of India.
Third Mysore War	1790-1792 AD	English forces and Tipu Sultan	English forces	Tipu Sultan had to sign treaty of the Seringa-pattam.
Fourth Mysore War	1799 AD	English forces and Tipu Sultan	English forces	Fought at Malavali and brought the Mohammedan dynasty of Mysore to end.
Second Sikh War	1848-1849 AD	English forces and Sikhs	English forces	Sikh kingdom came under the British.

Reforms/Acts

Nomenclature of the Reforms/Acts	Year	During the term of	Significance
Prohibition of Sati & Female infanticide	1829	Lord William Bentick	Supported by Raja Rammohun Roy.
Doctrine of Lapse	1848	Lord Dalhousie	Adoption of sons by rulers in the absence of their natural heirs was banned.
Widow Remarriage Act	1856	Lord Canning	Legalized the marriage of Hindu widow, Supported by Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar
Indian Councils Act	1861	Lord Canning	Envisaged association of Indians with the administration at higher level.
Ilbert Bill	1883	Lord Ripon	To bring Indian and European magistracy on equal footing.

Nomenclature of the Reforms/Acts	Year	During the term of	Significance
Indian Councils Act	1892	Lord Lansdown	Membership of central legislative councils was enlarged.
Morely-Minto Reforms	1909	Lord Minto II	Separate electroates to widen the gulf between Hindus & Muslims.
Dyarchy	1919	L. Chelmsford	Meaning dual system of Govt.
Jallianwala Bagh Massacre	1919	L. Chelmsford	Massacre at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar by General Dyer
Rowlatt Act	1919	L. Chelmsford	Extraordinary powers were given to suppress the freedom struggle with General Dyer as the Commandant.
Simon commission	1928	Lord Irwin	To report working of the reforms; recommended dyarchy in provinces; India to be constituted as a federation and Indianisation of armed forces.
Gandhi-Irwin Pact	1931	Lord Irwin	Congress called off the agitation and agreed to participate in the Second Round Table Conference.
Communal Award	1932	Lord Willingdon	Envisaged communal representation for depressed classes besides Hindus, Muslims and Sikhs.
Separate electrorates	1932	Lord Willingdon	(See Communal Award)
Government of India Act	1935	Lord Willingdon	Provided for a federal type of constitution.
Cripps Mission	1942	Lord Linlithgow	Proposed Dominion status for India after the Second World War.
INA Trial	1945	Lord Wavell	INA prisoners of war were trialed at Red Fort, Delhi and Bhulabhai Desai defended them.
Wavell Plan	1945	Lord Wavell	Envisaged constitution of executive council in such a way as to give representation to all major communities in India.
Cabinet Mission Plan	1946	Lord Wavell	Envisaged establishment of Constituent Assembly to frame the Constitution.
Mountbatten Plan	1947	L. Mountbatten	Partition Plan
Indian Independence Act	1947	L. Mountbatten	India partitioned and attained independence.

Educational Committees/Commissions

Viceroy	Committee/ Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
Lord Ripon (1880-1884)	Hunter Commission	1882	William Hunter	To study the development in education.
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	University Commission	1902	Thomas Raleigh	To study the Universities and introduce reforms.

Viceroy	Committee/ Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
Lord Chelmsford (1916-1921)	Calcutta University Commission	1917	Michael Sadler	To study the condition o University.
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Indian Disbandment Committee	1923	Lord Itchcap	To discuss the Centra Committee of Education
Lord Wavell (1943-1947)	Sargeant Plan	1944	John Sargeant	To raise the standard of Education like Britain.
Famine Commissions				
Lord Lytton (1876-1880)	Famine Commission	1880	Richard Strachey	To give relief of famine stricken
Lord Elgin (1894-1899)	Famine Commission	1897	James Lyall	To give suggestion on earlie reports
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Famine Commission	1900	Anthony McDonnell	To give the suggestion on famine report
Lord Wavell (1943-1947)	Famine Inspection Commission	1943-44	John Woodhood	To investigate in the events of Bengal Famine.
Economic Committees/Commissions				
Lord Lansdown (1888-1894)	Harshell Committee	1893	Hershell	To give suggestion regarding currency.
Lord Lansdown (1888-1894)	Opium Commission	1893	----	To investigate about the effec of opium on health.
Lord Elgin (1894-1899)	Henry Fowler Commission	1898	H. Fowler	To give suggestions on currency
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Irrigation Commission	1901	Sir Wolvin Scott Monkinj	To plan for the expenditure on Irrigation
Lord Hardinge (1910-1916)	Maclagon Committee	1914-15	Maclagon	To advise for cooperative finances
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Linlithgow Commission	1928	----	To study the problem in agriculture. (Report by Linlithgow)
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Whitelay Commission	1929	J.H. Whitelay	To study the condition of labour in Industries and gardens.
Lord Wellingdon (1931-1936)	Indian Measurement Committee	1935	Lary Hamand	To arrange for inclusion of labour in Federal Assembly.
Lord Linlithgow (1936-1943)	National Planning Committee	1938	Jawaharlal Nehru	To prepare economic plan.
Administrative Committees/Commissions				
Lord Dufferin (1884-1886)	Etkinson Commission	1886	Charles Etkinson	To involve more Indians in Civil Service

Viceroy	Committee/ Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Fraser Commission	1902	Fraser	To investigate the working of police
Lord Hardinge (1910-1916)	Royal Commission on Civil Service	1912	Lord Islington	To give 25% high posts to Indian
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Royal Commission	1924	Lord Lee	To remove defects of Civil Service
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Sandhurst Committee	1926	Andrews Skeen	To suggest Indianization of Indian army
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Butler Committee	1927	Hercourt Butler	To Examine nature of crown relation with native States

Important Congress Session

Year	Place	Importance
1885	Bombay	At Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College, 72 delegates
1886	Calcutta	436 delegates
1887	Madras	Tayabji became first Muslim President.
1888	Allahabad	George Yule became first English President
1889	Bombay	Congress represented all areas of British India.
1890	Calcutta	Decision taken to organise a session of Congress in London.
1895	Poona	Demand for a representative body only for educated class
1898	Madras	Social reform was set as the main goal.
1907	Surat	Congress split.
1908	Madras	Constitution for the Congress.
1916	Lucknow	Congress merger. Pact with Muslim League, Gandhi attended.
1917	Calcutta	Annie Besant became 1st women President.
1920	Nagpur	Gandhian programme was adopted. Change in congress constitution.
1921	Ahmedabad	Hasrat Mohani demanded for complete independence.
1922	Gaya	Formation of Swaraj Party.
1924	Belgaum	Gandhi became President.
1925	Kanpur	Sarojini Naidu became 1st Indian women President.
1927	Madras	Nehru and S. C. Bose moved resolution for independence and it was passed for the 1st time.
1928	Calcutta	First All India Youth Congress.
1929	Lahore	'Poorna Swaraj' (Complete Independence) resolution and pledge for Independence day on 26 January 1930.
1931	Karachi	Resolution for Fundamental Rights and National Economic Policy.
1934	Bombay	Formation of Congress Socialist Party.
1936	Lucknow	Support for socialism through democracy.
1937	Faizpur	Demand for Constituent Assembly.
1938	Haripura	Purna Swaraj was to cover also princely states.
1939	Tripuri	S. C. Bose resigned due to difference with Gandhi, after resignation Rajendra Prasad became President of INC.

Governor-General and Viceroys

Governors of Bengal (1757-74)

Robert Clive : Governor of Bengal during 1757-60 and again during 1765 and established Dual Government in Bengal from 1765-72.

Vanisttart (1760-65) : The Battle of Buxar (1764).

Cartier (1769-72) : Bengal Famine (1770).

Warren Hastings (1772-74) : Abolished Dual Government (1772).

Governor-Generals of Bengal (1774-1833)

Warren Hastings (1774-85) : Became Governor-General in 1774 through the Regulating Act, 1773; Wrote introduction to the first English translation of the 'Gi by Charles Wilkins; Founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal with William Jones in 1784.

Revenue Reforms : Auctioned the right to collect land revenue to the highest bidder; Divided Bengal into districts and appointed collectors and other revenue officials.

Judicial Reforms : Started Diwani and Faujdari adalats at the district level and Sadar diwani and Nizamat adalats (appellate courts) at Calcutta; Redefined Hindu and Muslim laws; A translation of the code in Sanskrit appeared in 1776 under the title of "Code of Gentoo laws".

Wars : Rohilla War (1774); 1st Anglo-Maratha War (1776-82); 2nd Anglo-Mysore War (1780-84).

Lord Cornwallis (1786-93) : First person to codify laws in 1793. The code separated the revenue administration from the administration of justice; Created post of district judge; Introduced Permanent Settlement in Bengal (1793); Cornwallis is called 'the father of civil service in India'.

Wars : 3rd Anglo-Mysore War (defeat of Tipu and the Treaty of Seringapatanam, 1792)

Sir John Shore (1793-98) : Introduced the 1st Charter Act (1793).

Wars : Battle of Kharda between Nizam and the Marathas (1795)

Lord Wellesley (1798-1805) : Started Subsidiary Alliance system to achieve British paramountcy in India. Nizam Ali (Nizam of Hyderabad) was the first Indian native ruler to accept the system of subsidiary Alliance (1798); Madras Presidency was formed during his tenure.

Wars : 4th Anglo-Mysore War (1799)—defeat and the death of Tipu Sultan; 2nd Anglo -Maratha War (1803-05)-defeat of the Scindia, the Bhonsle and the Holkar; Treaty of Bassein (1802).

George Barlow (1805-1807) : Vellore Mutiny (1806)

Lord Minto I (1807-1813) : Concluded Treaty of Amritsar with Ranjit Singh (1809); Charter Act of 1813 was passed.

Lord Hastings (1813-1823) : Adopted the policy of intervention and war.

Wars : Anglo-Nepalese War (1813-23); 3rd Anglo-Maratha War (1817-18). Hastings forced humiliating treaties on Peshwa and the Scindia; Introduced the Ryotwari settlement in Madras by Thomas Munro, the Governor.

Lord Amherst (1823-28) : ***Wars*** : 1st Burmese War (1824-26); Acquisition of territories in Malay Penisula; Capture of Bharatpur (1826).

Lord W. Bentick (1828-33) : Most liberal and enlightened Governor-General of India; Regarded as 'the Father of Modern Western Education in India'; Abolished Sati and other cruel rites (1829); Annexation of Mysore (1831). Concluded a treaty of perpetual friendship with Ranjit Singh (1831); Passed the Charter Act of 1833, which provided that no Indian subject of Company was to be debarred from holding an office on account of his religion, place of birth, descent and colour.

Governor Generals of india (1833-58)

Lord W. Bentick (1833-35) : Macaulay's minutes on education were accepted declaring that English should be the official language of India; Abolished provincial courts of appeal and circuit set up by Cornwallis, appointment of commissioners of revenue and circuit.

Wars : Annexed Coorg (1834), Central Cachar (1834) on the plea of misgovernment.

Sir Charles Metcalfe (1834-1836) : Passed the famous Press Law, which liberated the press in India.

Lord Auckland (1836-42) : 1st Anglo–Afghan War (1836-42)—great blow to the prestige of the British in India.

Lord Ellenborough (1842-44) : Brought an end to the Afghan War; Annexation of Sindh (1843); War with Gwalior (1843); Abolished slavery (1843).

Lord Hardings I (1844-48) : 1st Anglo-Sikh war (1845-46) and the Treaty of Lahore, 1846 (marked the end of Sikh sovereignty in India); Gave preference to English educated in employment.

Lord Dalhousie (1848-56) : Abolished Titles and Pensions, Introduction of Widow Remarriage Bill (Nov. 17,1855).

Wars : Introduced Doctrine of Lapse (Captured Satara (1848), Jaitpur and Sambhalpur (1849), Baghat (1850), Udaipur (1852), Jhansi (1853) and Nagpur (1854); Fought 2nd Anglo-Sikh War (1848-49) and annexed the whole of the Punjab; 2nd Anglo–Burmese War (1852) and annexation of Lower Burma or Pegu; Annexation of Berar in 1853; Annexation of Avadh in 1856 on charges of mal-administration.

Administrative Reforms : Introduced the system of Centralized control in the newly acquired territories known as Non-Regulation system; Raised Gurkha regiments.

Educational Reforms : Recommended the Thomsonian system of Vernacular education for whole of the Northwestern Provinces (1853); Wood's Educational Despatch of 1854 and opening of Anglo-Vernacular Schools and Government Colleges; An Engineering College was established at Roorkee.

Public Works : Started the first railway line in 1853 (connecting Bombay with Thana); Started electric telegraph service. Laid the basis of the modern postal system (1854); A separate public works department was set up for the first time; Started work on the Grand Trunk Rod and developed the harbours of Karachi, Bombay and Calcutta.

Lord Canning (1856-58) : The last Governor General of India; Passed Widow Remarriage Act (July 25, 1856); Revolt of 1857; Passed the Act of 1858, which ended the rule of the East India Company. Withdrew Doctrine of Lapse.

Governer Generals and Viceroys (1858-1947)

Lord Canning (1858-62) : The Indian Councils Act of 1861 was passed, which proved to be a landmark in the constitutional history of India; The Indian Penal Code of Criminal Procedure (1859) was passed; The Indian High Court Act (1861) was enacted; Income Tax was introduced for the first time in 1858; The Universities of Calcutta, Bombay and Madras founded in 1857; The Indigo riots in Bengal (1860).

Lord Elgin I (1862-63) : Wahabi Movement (Pan-Islamic Movement)

Sir John Lawrence (1864-69) : Telegraphic communication was opened with Europe; High Courts were established at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras in 1865; Expanded canal works and railways; Bhutan War (1865); Advocated State-managed railways; Created the Indian Forests Department and reorganized the native judicial service.

Lord Mayo (1869-72) : Introduced financial decentralization in India, Established Mayo College at Ajmer for the princes; Organised the Satistical Survey of India, Established the Department of Agriculture and Commerce, He was the only Viceroy to be murdered in office by a convict in Andamans in 1872, Introduction of State Railways.

Lord Northbrook (1872-76) : Kuka Movement of Punjab took rebellious turn during his period.

Lord Lytton (1876-80) : Most infamous Governor-General, Pursued free trade and abolished duties on 29 British manufactured goods which accelerated drain of wealth of India, Arranged the Grand Darbar in Delhi (in 1877) when the country was suffering from a severe famine; Passed the Royal Title Act (1876) and Queen Victoriya was declared as the Kaisar-i-Hind; Arms Act (1878) made mandatory for Indians to acquire license for arms; Passed the infamous Vernacular Press Act (1878); Proposed the plan of Statutory Civil Service in 1878-79 and lowered the maximum age limit from 21 to 19 years, the 2nd Afghan war proved a failure.

Lord Ripon (1880-84) : Repeal of the Vernacular Press Act, 1882; The First Factory Act, 1881 to improve labour condition, Resolution of Local Self Government in 1882, Resolution on Land Revenue Policy; Appointed Hunter Commission (for education reforms) in 1882; The Ilbert Bill controversy erupted during his time (1883).

Lord Dufferin (1884-88) : 3rd Burmese War (Annexation of upper and lower Burma in 1885, Establishment of Indian National Congress in 1885.

Lord Lansdowne (1888-94) : The Factory Act of 1891; Categorization of Civil Services into imperial, provincial and subordinate; Indian Council Act of 1892 (introduced elections which was indirect); Appointment of the Durand Commission to define the line between British India and Afghanistan (1893).

Lord Elgin II (1894-99) : The Munda uprising (Birsa Munda) of 1899, Convention delimiting the frontier between China and India was ratified, Great famine of 1896-

97, Lyall Commission appointed after famine (1897), Assassination of two British officials–Rand and Amherst–by Chapekar Brothers in 1897.

Lord Curzon (1899-1905) : Appointed a Police Commission in 1902 under Andrew Frazer; Set up the Universities Commission and accordingly the Indian Universities Act of 1904 was passed; Set up the Department of Commerce and Industry; Calcutta Corporation Act (1899); Passed the Indian Coinage and Paper Currency Act (in 1899) and put India on a gold standard; Partition of Bengal took place in 1905 (It was cardinal blunder of Curzon); The idea to build Victoria Memorial (Calcutta) was conceived by Lord Curzon. The foundation stone of memorial was laid in 1906 and it was opened in 1921.

Lord Minto II (1905-10) : Swadeshi Movement (1905-08); Foundation of the Muslim League, 1906; Surat session and split in the Congress (1907), Newspapers Act, 1908; Morley-Minto Reforms, 1909.

Lord Hardinge (1910-16) : Annulment of the partition of Bengal (1911), Transfer of capital from Calcutta to Delhi (1911); Delhi Darbar and Coronation of King George V and Queen Mary (1911); Establishment of Hindu Mahasabha by Madan Mohan Malviya (1915).

Lord Chelmsford (1916-21) : Home Rule Movement launched by Tilak and Annie Besant (1916); Lucknow Pact between Congress and Muslim League (1916); Arrival of Gandhi in India (1915); Champaran Satyagraha (1917); Montague's August Declaration (1917); Kheda Satyagraha and Satyagraha at Ahmedabad (1918); Government of India Act (1919), Repressive Rowlatt Act (1919); Jalianwala Bagh Massacre (April 13, 1919), appointment of Hunter Commission to probe Jalianwala Bagh Massacre (Oct. 19, 1919), Khilafat Movement (1920-22); Non-Cooperation Movement (1920-22).

Lord Reading (1921-26) : Criminal Law Amendment Act and abolition of cotton excise; Repeal of Press Act of 1910 and Rowlatt Act of 1919; Violent Moplah rebellion in Kerala (1921); Foundation of CPI (1921); Chauri Chaura incident (1922); Foundation of Swaraj Party (1923); Kakori Train Dacoity (1925); Foundation of RSS (1925); Murder of Swami Shardhanand (1926).

Lord Irwin (1926-31) : Simon Commission announced in 1927; Butler Commission (1927); Nehru Report (1928); 14 points of Jinnah (1929); Lahore session of Cognress and 'Poorna Swaraj' declaration (1929); Civil Disobedience Movement (1930); Dandi March (1930); Ist Round Table Conference (1930); Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931).

Lord Willingdon (1931-36) : IInd Round Table Conference (1931); Civil Disobedience Movement (1932); Announcement of MacDonald's Communal Award (1932); IIIrd Round Table Conference; Foundation of Congress Socialist Party — CSP (1934); Government of India Act (1935); Burma separated from India (1935), All India Kisan Sabha (1936).

Lord Linlithgow (1936-43) : General Election (1936-37); Congress ministries in 1937 and Resignation of Congress ministries in 1939; 'Deliverance Day' by Muslim Legue in 1939; Foundation of forward Block by S.C. Bose (1939); Lahore Resolution (1940); August Offer (1940); Cripps Mission (1942); Quit India Movement (1942).

Lord Wavell (1943-1947) : C. R. Formula 1944; Wavell Plan and Shim Conference in 1945; End of IInd World War in 1945; INA Trials in 1945; Nav mutiny in 1946; Cabinet Mission, 1946 and acceptance of its proposals by Congre Direct Action Day by the Muslim League on 16th August, 1946.

Lord Mountbatten (Mar-Aug 1947) : Announced the 3 June, 1947 Pl Introduction of Indian Independence Bill in the house of Commons; Appointme of 2 boundary commissions under Sir Cryil Radicliffe.

Governor Generals of Free India (1947-50)

Lord Mountbatten (1947-48): The first Governor General of free India; Kashm acceded to India (Oct., 1947); Murder of Gandhi (Jan. 30, 1948).

C. Rajagopalachari (June 1948 – Jan. 25, 1950) : The last Governor General o free India; The only Indian Governor-General.

* * *

World History

2

Ancient World : Down to 500 AD

Bronze Age Civilizations

Sl.	Name of the Civilization	Modern Area	River Valley
1.	Mesopotamian Civilization (4000 BC - 6th Cen. BC)	Iraq	Tigris and Euphrates
2.	Egyptian Civilization (3400 BC—1000 BC)	Egypt	Nile
3.	Harappan Civilization (2500 BC—1750 BC)	India and Pakistan	Indus
4.	Chinese Civilization (1765 BC—250 BC)	China	Hwang-Ho

Mesopotamian Civilization : The Oldest Civilization of the World

- *Mesopotamia* means 'land between the rivers'. Mesopotamia is the land between the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* rivers.
- Mesopotamia comprises four regions: Sumer (Southernmost region), Babylonia and Akkad (middle region) and Assyria (Northernmost region).
- *Hammurabi* (C.2100 BC), the greatest Baylonian ruler, united the whole of what is now called Iraq into a single Kingdom. Hammurabi gave his people a code of laws. His code covered every aspect of life. His code was based on the law of 'eye for eye' and 'tooth for tooth' i.e., the law of 'tit for tat'.
- Hittites, who came from Asia Minor (now Turkey) and destroyed the Babylonian kingdom, were the first to make regular use of horses for war chariots and to make iron implements.
- The potter's wheel was perhaps first used in Mesopotamia.
- The Mesopotamians also seem to have been the first to make glass ware.
- The Sumerians were the first to evolve a proper system of writing. This system is called *cuneiform*. The cuneiform script was invented in C. 3400 BC. This script is found on clay tablets. The cuneiform script was deciphered by *Henry Rawlinson*.
- The Mesopotamian system of counting is known as *sexagesimal* because the Mesopotamian people counted by sixties as we count by tens (decimal system). Their sexagesimal system is no longer in use but we still use it as the basis of division of time into minutes and seconds and of a circle into 360 degrees.
- In geometry, the Mesopotamians had discovered what was later called the Pythagoras' theorem.
- In astronomy, the Mesopotamians made astonishing progress. They could calculate the length of the day and the night. They divided the whole day into 24 hours. They divided the sky into 12 parts, each assigned a name. This has come down to us as the 12 signs of *zodiac* or *rashis* as we call them in India. Another remarkable achievement of the Mesopotamians was the invention of a lunar calender, based on the moon.

Egyptian civilization

- Egypt is called the 'Gift of the Nile'.

- Historians divide the history of Egypt into three periods : the *Old Kingdom* the *Middle Kingdom* and the *New Kingdom.*
- The Old Kingdom is also called the 'Age of the Pyramids'.
- The Egyptian king was called the *pharaoh.*
- The Egyptians were the worshipper of the nature and the sun was their most important god.
- The Egyptians believed that after death both the body and the soul live while other people believed that only the soul lives and body perishes. So Egyptians took great care in preserving the body of the dead. The body was embalmed in spices and then wrapped in strips of fine linen. Such a preserved body is called a *mummy*. The mummy was put in a wooden box and buried.
- The *Pyramids* and the *Sphinx* are the two specimens of Egyptian architectural excellence.
- The *Pyramids* were the tombs of kings and they contained the mummies of these monarchs. The most imposing of all is *the Great Pyramid* at Gizeh in *cairo,* built by the king *Cheops (Khufu)* of the old kingdom. The Great Pyramid is one of seven wonders of the ancient world.
- The *Sphinx* is a mythological animal with the body of a lion and the head of a man. Each Sphinx was carved out of a single solid stone.
- The Egyptian script, known as hieroglyphic, was invented in C. 3100 BC. The script is found on papyrus sheets made of reeds. The Egyptian script - hieroglyphic script– was deciphered by *Champollion.*
- The Egyptians developed a decimal system of numeration.
- The crowning achievement of the Egyptians was the solar calender.

Harappan civilization

The Harappan Civilization extended over a bigger area than any of the contemporary civilization.

Note : For Details, See 'Indus Civilization'.

Chinese civilization

- The earliest Chinese civilization is the *Shang* civilization.
- The Shang dynasty was overthrown by the *Chou* dynasty.
- The Chinese script is a pictographic script. It is remarkable that the Chinese script has changed very little since the earliest times.
- The Chinese calender — Solar-lunar calender, was a combination of solar and lunar calender. The Chinese were the first to calculate the length of the year as 365 1/4 days.
- In 3rd century BC, the *Chin* dynasty became important. To keep out invaders from the north, he began construction of a wall known as the *Great Wall.*
- The *Han* dynasty followed the Chin dynasty in 202 BC and the Han emperors ruled China for almost 400 years.
- The political practices of the Han rulers were greatly influenced by the teachings of *Confucius.* During Han rule, to qualify for appointment, the youngmen had to pass through an elaborate system of examination before they were chosen. Such 'scholar-officials' came to be known as *mandarins.* The Chinese was the first civilization in history to have a system of selecting public officials on the basis of education and competitive examination.

- Under the Hans, silk was a principal item of export.
- Two main roads were built across the Great Wall to carry on trade with the West.
- The two major religions of ancient China are Taoism (based on the teachings of *Lao-tse*: b. 604 BC) and Confucianism (based on the teachings of *Confucius*: 551 BC—479 BC). Confucius was a contemporary of Mahavira and Buddha.
- Buddhism was brought into China by Indian during the Han rule.
- The Great Wall is a mightly monument to the building skill of ancient China. This wall, built of stone and earth to a height of 6 metres and extending over 2400 km.
- The Chinese script was standardized by the Chin ruler. The Chinese script spread to other countries also. It influenced the Japanese, Korean and Vietnamese scripts.
- In the 1st century AD, paper was invented in China. The invention of paper and its importance in spreading knowledge within the outside China makes it one of the great contribution of China to the world.
- Some of the first historical works in the world were written in China. Each dynasty compiled its own history. The pattern of these histories was set by *Ssuma Chien* (1st or 2nd cent. BC), and is commonly remembered as the 'Herodotus of China'.
- The water clock, abacus, umbrella were invented by Chinese.
- In the 2nd cent. AD, Chinese invented a seismograph.

Iranian civilization

- In the middle of the 6th century BC, a powerful empire — *Achaemenid empire* —arose in Iran (Persia). The founder of this empire was *Cyrus*with his capital at Pasaragadae.
- He was succeeded by *Darius I*(522 BC — 486 BC). The empire reached its greatest extent under him and covered entire Iran, Mesopotamia, Syria, Egypt, Asia minor and north-western India. He built a new capital at Persepolis.
- Darius I and his successors were involved in wars with the Greek states. They were defeated by Greeks. *Alexander*dealt the empire a final blow during the reign of *Darius III.*
- In the 3rd century AD, a new and powerful empire — Sassanid empire — arose in Iran. This empire which was founded by *Ardashir*in 226 AD held sway in Iran up to the middle of the 7th century AD.
- The Arabs, who emerged as a strong power after the rise of Islam, conquered Iran in 651 AD.
- The Achaemenids had introduced the use of money — coins of gold and silver — on a large scale throughout the empire.
- Iran in ancient times produced a number of famous sailors and explorers. One of them, *Scylax* undertook a voyage from the mouth of Indus to Egypt on orders of Darius.

- The main religion of the ancient Iranians was Zoroastrianism. This religion was founded by *Zarathustra* or *Zoroaster* (628 BC — 551 BC) as the Greeks called him in 7th century BC. The teachings of Zarathustra are recorded in the *Zend Avesta*, the holy book of Parsis. Zarathustra said that the world consists of two forces, good and evil. The god, *Ahura Mazda* represents the forces of good and *Ahirman*, the forces of evil. The sun and the fire came to be worshipped as visible symbols of Ahura Mazda, who represents light. Both Judaism and Christianity indebted to Zoroastrianism.
- During the Achaemenid empire the official language was *Aramaic*. The Sassanids revived old *Persian* and made it the official language of their empire. But then a new script called *Pahlavi* had also developed. The best known ancient literature of Iran is the Zend Avesta, which contains the work of Zarathustra.

Greek civilization

- The early Greeks (or Hellens), like the Aryans in India, lived in tribes, each composed of a number of families under a leader. A group of tribes had a king.
- The main occupations are agriculture and herding.
- The early Greeks had many gods whom they imagined to be like human beings though more powerful and immortal. *Zeus* was the god of the sky and hence caused thunder. *Poseidon*, god of the sea, raised stroms that sank ships.
- *Appollo*, the sun god, could reveal the future. *Athena*, was the goddess of victory and patroness of the arts. *Dionysus* was the god of wine and there were many others. The Greeks thought their gods lived on *Mount Olympus*.
- Around 800 BC, groups of Greek villages began joining into larger units to form city-states. At the highest point in a city-state, an *acropolis* or citadel was built for defence and city spread out around the acropolis. Such cities were Sparta, Athens, Macedonia, Corinth, Thebes and others. Sparta and Athens were two most important city-states.
- The Spartans' main concern was with militarism and war so much so that the word 'spartan' is often used to mean militaristic.
- Spartans were fine soldiers, but they contributed little else to Greek culture.
- The city-state of Athens developed along lines quite different from Sparta. The territories it ruled had been occupied gradually and peacefully and militarism had not developed. Athens had excellent harbours and mineral deposits. Athenians built a prosperous trade and culture. *Pericles* (469 BC — 429 BC) was the most important ruler of Athens.
- *The Battle of Marathon (490 BC)*: The Greek defeated the Iranian (Persian) king Darius I at Marathon near Athens.
- The *Peloponnesian war*, between Sparta and Athens from 431 BC to 404 BC, ended in tragedy for Athens.
- *Philip* of Macedonia conquered most of states in the years following Athens' defeat.
- Then his son, *Alexander*, set out at the age of 20 — to conquer the world.
- During the 13 years (336 BC — 323 BC), he compelled all Greece to accept his leadership and conquered the Achaemenid empire. This brought him to borders of India where he defeated king *Porus* on the Jhelum in 326 BC. He sailed down the Indus and then returned to Mesopotamia where he died of fever in 323 BC at the age of 32.

- Alexander's conquests brought many important changes to the world. Trade between Europe and Asia was developed. Many new cities were founded.
- In the 2nd century BC, the Roman empire started expanding eastward. As a result of Roman attacks, almost the entire territory of the Greeks and their empire became a part of the Roman empire.

Contributions of Greek Civilization

- The glory of Greece that the world has never forgotten was largely the glory of Athens at the time of Pericles.
- The *Olympic games* were first held in 776 BC by the Greeks in honour of God Zeus at Mouut Olympus (Olympia) in Greece, hence the name, and they continued till 394 AD. From 394 AD these games started degenerating and by 580 AD they altogether vanished. They were banned by the Roman Emperor *Theodosius* as Pagan manifestations.

  It was the French Baron, *Pierre de Coubertin,* who (nearly over 1500 years after the last ancient Olympics) revived these games in 1894 and the modern series of the Olympic games started in 1896 at Athens and since then they are being held every fourth year.
- *Homer's* 'Iliad' and 'Odyssey' are among the best epics of the world. The *Iliad* is the story of seize and destruction of the city of Troy, as the western coast of Asia Minor. The *Odyssey* describes the adventures and home coming, from Troy, of a Greek hero, Odysseus.
- The founder of Greek tragedy was *Aeschylus,* author of 'Promethus Bound'. *Sophocles* is considered the greatest of Greek tragedians. His famous plays are 'Oedipus Rex', 'Antigone' and 'Electra'.

  Aristophanes, is considered the master of Greek comedy.
- Greece produced some of the world's earliest great historians e.g. *Herodotus* (known as 'the father of History'), *Thucydides, Plutarch* etc.
- The most famous philosophers of Greece were *Socrates, Plato* (disciple of Socrates and author of 'Republic'), and *Aristotle* (disciple of Plato). Aristotle was both philosopher and scientist. He made important contribution to philosophy, medicine, biology and astronomy. He believed in the principle of the Golden Mean, that is, neither extreme luxary nor self-denial.
- The Greek made many contributions to mathematics, especially to geometry as is seen in the work of *Euclid* and *Pythagoras*
- In medicine, *Hippocrates* laid the foundation of modern medicine. He is the known as the 'father of medicine'.
- The most important astronomers were : *Aristarchus, Ptolemy, Hipparchus, Eratosthenes* etc. Ptolemy's belief that the earth was the centre of the universe was accepted as truth untill the 16th century. Eratosthenes prepared a fairly accurate map of the globe and was the first to suggest that one could reach India from Europe by sailing west.
- The temple of Athena, the Parthenon, is the best example of Greek architecture. Myron and Phidias are two best-known sculptors of ancient Greece. It was Phidias whom Pericles appointed to supervise the construction of the Acropolis in Athens.

Roman civilization

- The centre of the Roman civilization was Italy, the peninsula that projects the Mediterranean sea in the west of Greece. The river Tiber on which the of Rome is located runs through the central part of the peninsula.
- The city of Rome was founded about 1000 BC by *Romulus*, in the distric Latium. The language of the ancient Romans, *Latin*, gets its name from Latiu
- The early Romans had a king, an assembly and a senate.
- Towards the end of the 6th century BC the king was overthrown and a republ was established. Under the Republic the Romans conquered other parts of th peninsula, and by 265 BC controlled all of Italy. The political system of th Roman republic consisted of two consuls, the senate & the assembly.
- The Romans were involved in a series of wars with carthage, a city on the north coast of Africa. The danger of Carthaginian occupation of Sicily led the Romans to attack Carthage. The wars that followed, known as the *Punic Wars*, lasted from 264 BC to 146 BC. The Carthaginians were defeated in this war.
- By the beginning of the 1st century BC the Roman had conquered Greece and Asia Minor and established a protectorate over Egypt.
- Rivalry for power grew between two generals, *Pompey* & *Julius Caesar*. War between them followed and Pompey was murdered by his enemies in Egypt. Caesar remained in Egypt for some time, attracted by the captivating beauty of the Egyptian queen *Cleopatra*. On his return to Rome, in 46 BC, he made himself dictator. However, on the charge that Caesar intended to become king he was assassinated in 44 BC, in a senate meeting.
- After the assassination of Caesar, power passed into the hands of *Mark Antony* and *Lapidus*, Caesar's friends and *Octavian*, Caesar's grand-nephew. The leaders of the conspiracy, *Brutus* and *Cassius*, fled and organised a large army but they were captured and slain.
- In 37 BC, *Octavian* became the most powerful man in the Roman empire. He ruled for 44 years under the titles of *Augustus Imperator*, meaning 'holy victorious-general.' He also called himself *Princeps*, 'first citizen of the state'. The period of Roman history beginning with his rule up to 284 AD is called 'the Principate'. His rule and the period following it were peaceful and are known in history as *Pax Romana*, which means 'Roman Peace'.
- In 284 AD, *Diocletian* became ruler. From this time on, Roman civilization declined more rapidly. One of Dioclectian's successor, *Constantine*, built a new capital called Constantinopole, on the site of ancient Byzantium, in 330 AD. Not long after, the Roman empire was divided into two empires — Western & Eastern. The Western part soon broke into many pieces. But Eastern part, called as Byzantine empire, continued for a thousand years more.
- The final blow to the Roman empire at the hands of northern invaders they were German tribes. By 476 AD, the once powerful Roman empire was no more.
- The Roman worshipped as many gods & goddesses as the Greeks. *Jupiter* sent rain for the corps; *Mars* helped them in war; *Mercury* carried their messages; *Neptune*, the god of sea; *Vesta* guarded the home; *Juno* protected their women.

Contributions of Roman Civilization

- Roman law and principles of governance are Rome's greatest contribution to the world.
- So complete was Rome's system of road linking all parts of empire that people could say 'All roads lead to Rome'.
- The Roman developed their own alphabet and the *Latin* language became the language of all educated people in western Europe. Latin words are still widely used in science, and Latin is the basis of several European languages — esp. French, Spanish & Italian.
- *Lucretius*, *Cicero*, *Marcus Aurelius* & *Seneca* were the famous Roman philosophers.
- *Horace* ('Odes') & *Virgil* ('Aeneid') were the famous Roman poets.
- *Tacitus* ('Annals' & 'Histories') was the most famous Roman historian and *Pliny, the elder*, was the another famous Roman historian.
- The Romans were the inventors of concrete and could firmly cement bricks and stones together. They also introduced two architectural improvements — the arch and cupolas or domes.
- Fights between gladiators or between a gladiator and a wild animal, was a popular Roman amusement. Special arenas or amphitheatres were built for these contests. The ruins of the Colosseum, one of the greatest of arenas, can be seen in Rome.

Seven Wonders of Ancient World

1. Hanging garden of Babylon
2. Pyramids of Egypt
3. The Pharaoh at Alexandria
4. Statue of Zeus at Olympia
5. Colossus at Rhodes-912 ft. statue of Helos, the sun god, stands at one side of the harbour
6. Temple of Diana at Epheus (Rome)
7. Mausoleum of Mausolus (Ruler of Halicarnassus)

Medieval World : (500 AD–1500 AD)

Medieval Europe

- The Eastern Roman empire or Byzantine empire was a vast empire and its capital *Constantinople* was the largest city of that time.
- The Byzantines built beautiful churches. The most famous of these is the *church of St. Sophia* in Constantinople. This church was built during the reign of Byzantine emperor *Justinian* in the 6th century AD.
- The Ottoman Turks conquered the Byzantine territories in 1453.

Feudalism

- The word 'feudal' comes from *feud* which originally meant a fief or land held on condition or service. In a feudal society, land was the source of power.
- Feudalism originated in the 8th & 9th centuries.
- First of all in western Europe the feudal system developed
- The main division in feudal society was between '*feudal lords*', who either got a share of the peasants' produce or had peasants to work on their lands without any payment, and '*Peasants*', who worked on the land.

Feudal Hierarchy :

1. *Feudal Lords* : a. Kings b. Dukes & Earls c. Barons d. Knights.

2. *Peasants* : three categories of peasants — freeholders, villeins & serfs. In feudal hierarchy, the king stood at the top and peasant stood at the bottom.

- The economic life under the feudal system was predominantly rural. The unit of land, which was like a village-farm, was called '*manor*'.

Crusades : 1095 AD — 1291 AD

- Crusades means the military expeditions, under the banner of the cross, organised in western christendom primarily to recover the *Holy Places of Palestine* from Muslim occupation.
- Four Crusades were fought by the European Christian to liberate *Jerusalem* from Seljuq Turks (Muslims) who did not permit Christian pilgrims to enter the holy land.
- The *Ist Crusade (1095-99)* was launched after the provoking preachings of Pope Urban II. Jerusalem was captured and the Crusader states of the Kingdom of Jerusalem, the country of Edessa, Antioch and Tripoli were created.
- The fall of Edessa (1144) inspired the unsuccessful *IInd Crusade (1147-48)*.
- The capture of Jerusalem by Saladin in 1187 led the inconclusive *IIIrd Crusade (1189-92)*, led by Philip II Augustus of France, Frederich I Barbarossa of Germany, and Richard I (the 'Lion Heart') of England.
- The *IVth Crusade (1202-91)* was diverted from its original objective, Egypt and sacked Constantinople (1204). This Crusade failed to recover lost ground and Acre, the last foothold of West is Palestine, was lost in 1291.

Arab civilization

- In the 7th century, a new religion, Islam, arose in Arabia, which led to the establishment of a big empire.
- *Muhammad*, the Prophet of Islam, was born in Mecca in 571 AD.
- When he was 40, he had 'visions of truth' and became a prophet.
- Muhammad's visions completely convinced him that *Allah* was the only god.
- He forbade the worship of idols and made many enemies. Ultimately, he had to leave Mecca and take refuge in Medina. This event took place in 622 AD and is known as the year of *Hijira*, or migration, and from it Muslims date their era (*Hijira Samvat*).
- The *Quran*, the holy book of Islam, is divided into a number of suras, or chapters, and contains the teachings of Muhammad. Besides the Quran, the life of a Muslim is guided by the *Sunna*, the practices of Muhammad, and the *Hadees*, the sayings of the Muhammad.
- Muhammad was not only a religious leader but also a political leader.
- After his death (632 AD), his successors, were known as *Caliphs*, or *Khalifas* who held both religious and political authority.
- Nearly all Arabia had accepted the new religion and become a unified state before the death of Prophet Muhammad in 632 AD.
- From Arabia, Islam spread very fast to many other parts of the world. Within a hundred years, the Khalifas and their generals, had conquered Iran, Syria, Egypt, Central Asia, North Africa and Spain. The Arab empire was the largest that world had so far seen.

- The first three Khalifas ruled from the city of *Medina*. Then the capital was shifted *Kufah*.
- By 660 AD, when the *Omayyad* dynasty took over the reins of government, the principal city was *Damascus*.
- About 750, the Omayyad were overthrown by *Abbasids*, who made *Baghdad* their capital. *Harun Rashid*, famous in many legends, was an Abbasid ruler.
- The Abbasids ruled for about 300 years, till the *Seljuq Turks* took Baghdad and ended the Arab rule. During the next four centuries, the Turks dominated the Islamic world.
- In the 15th century, most of these territories came under the domination of the *Ottoman Turks*. It was the Ottoman Turks who took *Constantinople* and ended the Eastern Roman empire in 1453.

Contributions of Arab Civilization

- The establishment of a vast empire facilitated the coming together of intellectual and scientific traditions of various civilizations, particularly Greek, Iranian & Indian. The Arabs made all knowledge their own and developed in further.
- *Al Razi (Rhazes)*, an Arab scientist discovered the true nature of small pox, and *Ibn Sina (Avicenna)* discovered that tuberculosis is infectious.
- In Mathematics, the Arab learned the Indian numerals *(Hindsah)* and spread their use far and wide, so that in the West they are to this day called Arabic numerals.
- Some of the famous literary work of the Arab civilization are the 'Rubaiyat' by *Omar Khayyam*, 'Shahnama' by *Firdausi* and the 'Arabian Nights', a collection of 1001 stories.
- The Arabs developed their own decorative designs. Their buildings had bulblike domes, small minarets, horse-shoe arches and twisted columns.
- The Arabs also developed a decorative style of writing called *Calligraphy* and made book-illumination an art.
- Arab carpets, leather work, beautiful swords, silks, inlays, metal-work, and enamelled glassware were prized everywhere.

Medieval China

- From the early 7th century, China was ruled by the *Tang* dynasty.
- The rule of Tang dynasty (618 AD — 906 AD) was followed by the *Sung* dynasty for about 300 years.
- After this, for about 100 years China was ruled by the *Mongols*.
- The rule of the Mongols in China was followed by that of *Ming* dynasty which continued for about 300 years.
- In 1644, China was conquered by the *Manchus* who continued to rule until 1911 AD.

Contributions of Medieval China

- To prevent drain on the country's wealth the Sung rulers started the use of paper-money.
- The invention of gun-powder was made in China in the 10th century about 400 years before the knowledge reached the Western World.
- The Chinese made iron-chain suspension bridges as early as the 10th century.

- The Chinese devised the first method of printing in 10th century. The importance of this invention for the spread of knowledge was as great as the invention of paper.

Medieval Japan

- Japan consists of hundreds of small islands of which four are major islands — Hokkaido, Honshu, Kyushu & Shikoku.
- Almost the entire country was unified into a single state by around the 7th century AD.
- In the 8th century *Edo*(modern *Kyoto*) became the capital and continued to be the seat of the emperors of Japan for over 1000 years. The real power, however, was in the hands of an aristocratic family.
- Towards the end of the 12th century, a new political institution *Shogun* came into being. The Shogun or the 'General' became the commander of Japan's army and ruled Japan, while the emperor remained at his capital at Edo (Kyoto).
- Until 1867, the Shoguns were the real rulers of Japan. *Tokugawa Leyasu* was the founder of last Shogun dynasty.
- In 1867, the last Shogun of Tokugawa dynasty was overthrown and the power was restored to the emperor. Now Japan launched herself on the road of industrial development, modernization and expansion.
- *Samurai* or the warriors were similar to the Knights of Western Europe.
- The most unique contribution of medieval Japan to literature was a form of poetry called *Haiku*. Haiku poems are short poems of only 17 syllables.
- The important contribution of medieval Japan to art was *Ikebana* or the art of flower arrangement, which is being imitated throughout the world.
- *Buddhism* reached Japan early in the 6th century from China through Korea and during the course of centuries it became widespread. In certain periods it even eclipsed *Shintoism*, the old religion of Japan.

Seven Wonders of Medieval World

1. Collosseum of Rome
2. Great Wall of China
3. Porcelain Tower of Nanking
4. Stonehenge of England
5. Mosque at St. Sophia (Constantinople)
6. Catacombs of Alexandria
7. Leaning Tower of Pisa.

- Gradually, the Japanese developed their own distinct schools of Buddhism, the most famous of which is *Zen Buddhism*. The word *Zen* is derived from 'Dhyana'.

Modern World : (1500 AD Onwards)

Renaissance

- The 16th century is commonly designated as the 'Age of Renaissance', also called the 'Revival of learning'.
- It is said to have started from the capture of Constantinople (now Istanbul) by the Turks in 1453 and the dispersal of the scholars throughout Europe, who sought asylum in Italy.
- *Italy* practically became the home of the Renaissance-and fundamental to the Renaissance was the revival of classical learning, art and architecture and the concept of the dignity of the man, which characterized *Humanism*. It resulted in the emancipation of the mind of man from the shackles of effete dogmatism, and in the creation of fresh intellectual atmosphere and ideals of life.
- Great writers of the Italian Renaissance included *Dante, Petrarch, Boccaccio & Machiavelli*. Great painters of Italian Renaissance included *Leonardo da Vinci* (Famous Paintings:' The Last Supper'& 'Monalisa'), *Michelangelo*('The Last Judgement' & 'The Fall of Man') & *Raphel* ('Madona'). Great astronomers of Italian Renaissance included *Bruno & Galileo*.
- The movement spread to other countries of Europe also, especially to France & Germany; and at last it reached the shores of England, where it manifested itself in the poems of *Chaucer* & *Spenser*, the plays of *Shakespeare*, the essays of *Francis Bacon* & utopianism of *Thomas More*, and particularly in the courts of such rulers as Elizabeth I of England.
- The Renaissance movement was enormously, helped by the invention of the printing press (in 1454 by *Gutenberg* of Germany; 'Gutenberg Bible' 1456 – the first printed book); with the help of which old and classical books were multiplied leading to a great increase in knowledge and in the spirit of enquiry and experiment.

Great Litterateurs of Renaissance

Italian	*Dante* ('Divine Comedy'), *Petrarch* (founder of Humanism & known as the 'father of Humanism), *Boccacio* ('Decameron'), *Machiavelli* ('The prince').
English	*Chaucer* ('Canterbury Tales'), *Spenser* ('The Faerie Queen'), *Bacon* ('The Advancement of Learning'), *Shakespeare* ('Romeo & Juliet','The Merchant of Venice','As You Like It','Julieus Caesar', 'Hamlet', Macbeth), *Thomas More* ('Utopia').
French	*Rebelais* ('Pantagruel' & 'Gargantua'), *Montaigne* ('Essais').
Spanish	*Cervantes* ('Don Quixote').
Portuguese	*Cameos* ('The Lusiad').
Dutch	*Erasmus* ('In the praise of Folly').
German	*Thomas Kempis* ('The Imitation of Christ').

Reformation

- The Reformation was another movement that the 16th century witnessed.
- It was started by *Martin Luther* in *Wittenburg*, Germany in 1517 by publicly protesting against the sale of letters of *Indulgence*.

  (**Indulgence :** the letters which remitted punishments of the sinners who bought them and which began to be considered as passports to heaven.)
- It was a revolt against the control of conscience by the priests.
- Thanks to the inborn spirit of revolt against the Catholic Church, Henry VIII of England could take the bold step of breaking away from the papacy i.e., authority of the Pope on the issue of his first divorce in 1534. Henry VIII declared himself the head of the church when the Pope would not give him permission to divorce his wife, Catherine.
- With the breaking away from the Roman Catholic Church by such leaders as *Luther* of Germany and *Calvin* of Switzerland, Western Europe was split between Catholic & Protestant countries, a situation which developed enmities of the fiercest nature.

- The movement, which began within the Catholic Church to combat the effec of the Protestant Reformation, was known as *Counter-Reformation Movemen*

Geographical Discoveries

Discovery	year	Discoverer (Nationality)	Sponsered b
Cape of Good Hope	1487	Bartholomew Diaz (Portuguese)	Portugal
America	1492	Christopher Columbus (Geneo, Italian)	Spain
Newfoundland	1497	John Cabot (Italian)	England
Sea-route of India via Cape of Good Hope	1498	Vasco da Gama (Portuguese)	Portugal
Brazil	1500	PedroAlvarezCabral(Portuguese)	Portugal
Strait of Magellan	1520	Magellan (Portuguese)	Spain
Island of Tasmania & New Zealand	1642	Tasman (Dutch)	Holland
Sandwich Island/Hawaiian Island	1770	Captain James Cook (British)	England
North pole	1909	Robert Peary (American)	USA
South Pole	1911	Amundsen (Norwegian)	Norway

- A great development which marked the beginning of the modern age in Europe was a series of geographical discoveries.
- Helped by some remarkable inventions viz. the Compass and Astrolabe, daring sailors sailed from distant lands.
- They were financed by rulers and merchants.
- The main motivation behind these adventures was the lure of profits that trade with the East would bring.
- During 1288-93, *Marco Polo* (1256-1326), Venetian traveller, travelled from Venice to China and Japan. He was the 'first European to visit China'. From his travelogue the Europeans learned about the all round prosperity of the East.
- The first great steps in the exploration of the earth were taken by the sailors under the patronage of Portuguese and Spanish rulers.
- *Prince Henry* (1394-1460), the Navigator of Portugal, encouraged sailors by making maps based on trips to the African coast.
- In 1487, *Bartholomew Diaz*, reached the point which the Portuguese named *Cape of Good Hope* (the southern-most point of Africa).
- *Vasco da Gama* followed this route and sailed on round the cape and reached Calicut in India in 1498.
- Italian sailor *Columbus*' trip was financed by Spain from where he sailed in 1492. When he had reached land, he thought he had reached India; so he called the islands, the 'Indies'; but it was America.
- The land discovered by Columbus was soon to be called the 'Americas' after the name of a later Italian explorer, *Amerigo Vespucci*.
- *Magellan*, a Portuguese sailor, went beyond the lands that had stopped Columbus. He sailed went around the tip of South America, which is named after him—the straits of Magellan. He called the new ocean that he entered, 'The Pacific' because it seemed more quiet than the Atlantic. Magellan reached what is now called the Phillippine Island where he died. Magellan was the first to sail round the world.

Colonialism : *Colony* means the country or territory settled by migrants from another country. Thus, the policy of having colonies and keeping them dependent is called Colonialism.

Imperialism : The policy of extending a state's rule over other territories, and of incorporating such colonized into an empire is called Imperialism.

- Other countries—England, France & Holland—also sent out their ships to join the race for explorations. *Francis Drake* of England sailed round the world in 1577.
- These voyages laid the foundations for the almost complete geographical knowledge of the world.

Glorious Revolution : 1688, England

- *James II* was a Roman Catholic. His tactless attempt to secure freedom of worship for Catholics united the Whigs and Tories of the Anglican Church against him.
- People tolerated the rule of James II, because they thought that he would be succeeded by his daughter Mary who was a Protestant. But a son was born to James II. The knowledge that James' policies might be continued by a son to be brought up as a Catholic turned against him many Tories, hitherto loyal to him.
- So a few leading men—Whigs as well as Tories—dispatched an invitation to *William* of Orange, ruler of Holland, to succeed to the English throne and save England form Catholic tyranny.
- William accepted the invitation and came to England for his purpose.
- James II, throwing the great seal into the Thames, fled to France.
- This event is known as *Glorious* or *Bloodless Revolution* in England.
- **Effects** : (1) The despotic rule of the *Stuarts* ended; the supremacy of Parliament was established. (2) The system of requiring estimate and accounts for supplies and, of specific appropriations—which is nucleus of modern budgetary system—now became fixed. (3) *The Bill of Right (1689)* : It settled down the problem of succession; it also laid the provision that no Roman Catholic can wear the Crown. As *William III* and his wife *Mary II* (daughter of James II and a Protestant by faith), the joint monarchs accepted the Bill of Rights.

Magna Carta (or The Great Charter), 1215 : It was the Charter of liberties which king *John II* of England was forced to sign in 1215 at Runnymede. It meant to put a check upon the arbitrary powers of king. The most important principle that it laid down was that English man should be governed by definite laws and not by the whims or the will of a despotic ruler. Magna Carta was said to be the 'Foundation-stone of rights and liberties of the English people'.

Habeas Corpus Act, 1679 : This act during the reign of *Charles II* of England provided that no one was to be imprisoned without a writ or warrant stating the charge against him. It also gave facilities to a prisoner for obtaining either speedy trial or release on bail. The Act safeguarded the personal liberties of the people against arbitrary imprisonment by King's orders.

Industrial Revolution

- The process of change that transformed Britain first and then other countries from agricultural to industrial economics.
- The Industrial Revolution began about 1750 when the agricultural revolution was well under way. Inventions were made in the textile industry by such men

as *James Hargreaves* (Spinning Jenny, 1764), *Richard Arkwright* (Water Frame, 1769), *Samuel Crompton* (Mule, 1779), and *Emmund Cartwright* (Power Loom, 1785), which made the production of cloth much faster and the yarn produced of better quality.

- These new machines required factories to house them, at first near rivers for water power and then, when the steam engine was invented (by *James Watt* in 1769), near coalfields.
- England, an agriculutral country was now turned into a manufacturing country. The production increased manifold. Things were available at cheaper rates. Improved methods of communication followed.
- The economic progress and industrialisation of England influenced the social and cultural life of the people. It had far-reaching affects on the political history of England.
- By 1850 the Industrial Revolution had penetrated into Belgium, France, Germany, Switzerland and USA. By 1900 it had extended to Sweden, Italy, Russia, Japan & Argentina. Presently it is penetrating into China, India and Africa.

Capitalism : Economic system in which a country's trade and industry are organised and controlled by the owners of capital, the chief elements being competition, profit, supply and demand.

American Revolution or American War of Independence : 1775-83

- The American Revolution is the name given to the struggle by which 13 colonies of England in North America declared their independence from England and fought a war to make it a reality.
- By the middle of the 18th century, differences in thought and interests had developed between the colonies one the one hand and the mother country (England) on the other.
- Attempts to collect new taxes such as the *Stamps Act (1765)* and *Tax on tea (1767)* angered the colonists who maintained that the British government was imposing *'taxation without representation'* and that only the colonial representative assemblies could rightfully tax the Americans.
- *Boston Tea Party (1773)*: The tax on tea led to trouble. In 1773, several colonies refused to unload the tea coming in English ships. In Boston, when the governor ordered a ship to be unloaded, a group of citizens dressed as American Indians, boarded the ship and dumped the crates of tea into the water. This incident is known as the 'Boston Tea Party'.
- The American Revolution started in 1775 and lasted until 1781.
- On July 4, 1776, the *Declaration of Independence* was issued. Its author was *Thomas Jafferson*. The Declaration started that all men are created equal; that they have a natural and inalienable right to life, liberty and pursuit of happiness; and that they are justified in revolting when these rights are violated by any government.
- The colonies won the war against England. The American Revolution made possible the establishment of a new nation, the United States of America (U.S.A.).

- In 1783 England acknowledged American independence in the *treaty of Paris* and *George Washington* was elected the first President of USA.

French Revolution : 1789-93

- The French Revolution was a great event in the history not only of France & Europe but of mankind as a whole. It gave to humanity new ideas of *'Liberty, Equality & Fraternity'*.
- The French Revolution is the name given to the struggle which swept away the Old Regime in France and brought about fundamental changes in the socio-political set-up.
- This political upheaval began in 1789. King *Louis XIV* and his successors had brought divine-right absolutism to the peak. The French king, in the 18th century, had unlimited powers. Opponents were put in prison without trial.
- French society consisted of *three estates* or classes. The first (clergy) and second (nobility) estates were privileged in many ways. Members of third estate—commoners (middle class, workers & peasants) were the 'under dogs'. They made 90% of the population. Almost the entire tax burden fell on third estate. But the privileged classes were exempted from these taxes.
- These undemocratic features of French society were sharply criticised by able writers and thinkers like *Montesquieu (1689-1775), Voltaire (1694-1778)* and *Rousseau (1712-1778)*.
- The *immediate cause* of the French Revolution was the bankrupt condition of the French treasury brought about in part by the extravagant expenditure and inefficiency of *Louis XV & Louis XVI*.
- The French Revolution started with the *fall of Bastille Fort*. The mobs in Paris attacked the Bastille on July 14, 1789, killed its governor and freed the prisoners. This ancient fortress, where political prisoners were kept, was the symbol of tyranny in France. Its capture aroused the whole nation. Peasants in the provinces plundered and burnt several castles.
- *'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity'* became the watchword.
- Government in France broke down, as royal officials fled and the people stopped paying taxes. The National Assembly governed France from 1789-1791. It drafted a constitution which created a limited monarchy. Its preamble was the famous Declaration of the Rights of Man. All feudal rights were abolished. Local government was reorganised. The old provinces were replaced by 83 departments. Church lands were confiscated and sold to peasants. Special Church privileges were abolished. The first Republic was proclaimed on sep. 21, 1792. King *Louis XVI* and his queen *Marie Antoinette* were beheaded on the guillotine on Jan. 21, 1793 and oct. 16, 1793 respectively on charges of treason. Napolean, after some time, emerged as the strong man of France.
- The French Revolution was an event of fundamental importance not only for France but for whole of Europe and ultimately for the whole world. In France, the Revolution established the political supremacy of the middle class in the towns and transferred the bulk of landed property to the peasantry in the countryside. For Europe and the world, it represented an ideal of popular sovereignty and equality before the law.

Unification of Italy : 1848-70

- One of the major features of the history of Europe in 19th century was the struggle for the national unification and independence. Italy & Germany were the two important nations which emerged as united, independent states in the 19th century.
- In the early 19th century, Italy was divided into a number of states in which the Kingdom of *Sardinia* was the most powerful.
- The struggle for Italian independence and unification was organised by the two famous revolutionaries — *Mazzini* & *Garibaldi*. The movement led by them is known as the 'Young Italy' movement.
- After the revolution of 1848, *Count Cavour*, the Prime Minister of Sardinia, took the initiative of uniting Italy under the leadership of Sardinia.
- By the year of 1861, the entire states (except Rome) had been united and then *Victor Emmanuel II*, the king of Sardinia took the title of 'King of Italy'.
- Rome was still outside the kingdom of Italy. It was ruled by the Pope. Italian soldiers liberated the city of Rome in 1870, and in 1871, Rome became the capital of united Italy.

Unification of Germany : 1848-71

- Like Italy, Germany was also divided into a number of states. At the end of the Napoleonic wars (1792-1815) there were 38 independent states in Germany in which *Prussia* was the most powerful.
- In 1815, the German states along with Austria were organised into a Germanic confederation.
- In 1848 revolts occurred in every German state and the rulers were forced to grant democratic constitutions. To unite Germany and to frame a constitution for the united Germany, a constituent assembly met in Frankfurt.
- The *Frankfurt Assembly* proposed the unification of Germany as a constitutional monarchy under the king of Prussia who would become the emperor of Germany. However, the king of Prussia declined the offer. Repression soon followed.
- With the failure of the revolution of 1848 to unify Germany, one phase in the struggle for unification came to an end.
- Now Germany was to be unified not into a democratic country by the efforts of revolutionaries but by the rulers into militaristic empire. The leader of this policy was *Bismarck* who belonged to a Prussian aristocratic family. He wanted to achieve the unification of Germany under the leadership of the Prussian monarchy.
- Bismarck described his policy of unification as one of *'blood and iron'*. The policy of blood and iron meant a policy of war.
- He defeated Austria and dissolved the Germanic confederation. Thus Austria was separated from other German states. In place of old confederation, he united 22 states of Germany into *North German Confederation* in 1866.
- The unification of Germany was completed as a result of Prussia — France War (1870) in which the French emperor Louis Bonaparte was defeated and captured. This war enabled Bismarck to absorb the remaining German states into a united Germany.

- The formal ceremony at which William I, the king of Prussia, took the title of German Emperor was not held on the German soil. It took place at Versailles in France, in the palace of the French kings.
- After unification, Germany emerged as a very strong power in Europe.

First World War : July 28, 1914 — Nov. 11, 1918

Causes : The causes of First World War are as under—

1. **Militarism :** This means the dangerous and burdensome mechanism of great standing armies and large navies along with an espionage system.
2. **Narrow Nationalism or Competitive Patriotism :** The love of one's country demanded the hatred of the other. Love of Germany demanded the hatred of France and vice-versa.
3. **Economic Imperialism :** It led to international rivalries. Every country tried to capture markets in every nook and corner of the world. This led to bitterness and heart-burning.
4. **Anglo-German Rivalry & The charter of William II :** Anglo-German rivalry proved to be the main cause of World War I. Germany had become a great industrial country and wanted to have more markets for trade. Germany was jealous of the colonial and naval greatness of England. William II, emperor of Germany was very ambitious and wanted to gain influence in Turkey by linking Berlin with Baghdad by a railway line. This gave rise to a great rivalry between England and Germany.

   William II was arrogant, haughty and ambitious. He wanted Germany to be the strongest power in the world. He believed in the policy of 'world power or downfall'.
5. **Lack of International Organisation :** There was lack of International Organisation to control international relations.

Immediate Cause : The immediate cause of the war was the murder of Archduke *Ferdinand* who was the heir to the Austrian throne. He and his wife *Sophie* were killed at Serajevo, the capital of Bosnia, an annexed territory of Austria, by a Serbian. The Austrians held Government of Serbia responsible for the murder and ultimately attacked Serbia. There was strong rivalry already between Austria-Hungary and Serbia in the Balkans.

WWI : Central Powers Vs Allied Powers

Central Powers :

Germany, Austria-Hungary, Turkey *(entered Nov. 1914)*, Bulgaria *(entered Oct. 1915)* etc.

The Allies or Entente Powers :

Great Britain/England/United Kingdom (UK), France, Serbia, Belgium, Japan, Russia/USSR *(left Dec. 1917)*, Italy *(entered in April 26, 1915)*, Romania *(entered Aug. 1916)*, USA *(entered April 6, 1917)* etc.

Course of War : To begin with, Austria was in favour of local war but as time passed, the situation became more grave. Other countries jumped into the fray. Germany, Austria-Hungary Turkey & Bulgaria were on one side; they were called *Central Powers*. On the other side were England, France, Serbia, Belgium, Japan and Russia; they were called the *Allied Powers*. The Allied powers joined by Italy in 1915 and USA in 1917. The war started on July 28, 1914 and ended on Nov. 11, 1918.

Peace Settlement (1919-20) : The Central Powers were completely defeated by the Allied Powers and an Armistice was signed on Nov. 11, 1918, followed by a Peace

Conference at Paris. The defeated countries were not represented at the Peace Conference. Though the number of countries represented at the Peace Conference was 27, the terms of the peace treaties were really decided by three countries —USA, Britain and France. The three persons who played the determining role in framing the terms of the treaties were Woodrow Wilson (President of USA), Lloyed George (Prime Minister of Britain) and George Clemenceau (Prime Minister of France). After prolonged discussion, the *Treaty of Versailles* (Versailles — a city of France) was signed between the Allies and allies & Germany on June 28, 1919. This Treaty rearranged the boundaries of Europe, and many new states — Poland, Czechoslovakiya, Yugoslavia, Estonia, Lithuania, etc. were formed. William II, the German Emperor, abdicated and took asylum in the Netherland (Holland). The treaty also contained provisions for disarming Germany, the strength of her army was to be limited to 1,00,000 troops. Germany was to pay £ 6,50,00,000 as war-reparations for damage done to the Allies during the war. The Treaty of Versailles was followed by the *Treaty of St. Germaine (1919)*, the *Treaty of Neuilly (1919)*, the *Treaty of Trianon (1920)* and the *Treaty of Severes (1920)*.

Woodrow Wilson's 14 Points

In an address to the Congress in Jan., 1918, American President Woodrow Wilson outlined the basis of a peace settlement. His famous Fourteen Points for lasting peace in the world are : 1. There was to be no more secret diplomacy; 2. freedom of the seas; 3. removal of economic barriers of international trade; 4. reduction of armaments; 5. impartial adjustment of all colonial claims on the basis of the interests of the subject population; 6. national self-determination; 7. establishment of a league of Nations for the purpose of affording mutual guarantees of political independence and territorial integrity of great and small states alike.

The remaining points dealt with the formation of new boundaries and new states on the basis of nationality and demanded that Germany must evacuate all lands she had forcibly occupied.

The peace settlement of 1919-20 has been severely criticised. The terms of the Treaty of Versailles were harsh and humiliating for Germany. The peace settlement was based on the principle : 'To the victors belong the spoils and Allies are the victors'. Meanwhile the many suggestions were made from time to time for the creation of an international organisation which could check wars in the future. At the instance of *Woodrow Wilson*, the President of America, the *League of Nations* officially came into existence of Jan. 10, 1920. Its headquarter was fixed at Geneva in Switzerland.

Russian Revolution : 1917

- The Russian Revolution of 1917 was one of the most significant events of 20th century. It established the ideology of Marxism. It was a great revolution after French revolution which was not limited to Russia but affected several countries of the world.
- The great revolution in Russia took place in two stages. The first stage of Russian Revolution began in March 1917 with the overthrow of the *Czar Nicholas II*. The second stage in Nov. of the same year led to the establishment of the world's first communist state by Bolsheviks under Lenin.
- The basic causes of the revolution were deep-seated. The government was autocratic. The Czar was the source of all authority and his powers were vigorously exercised by corrupt and inefficient bureaucracy. The general standard of living of the people was tragically low. There was little social freedom. All Russians were forced to support the orthodox church.

- The immediate cause of the event was however the suffering and confusion caused by Russian disastrous defeats during world war I. Her armies lacked arms and ammunition. Prices soared high and the economy was in shambles.
- Russian Revolution began with *March Revolution (February Revolution*, according to old Russian Calender). Disorders broke out in Petrograd (now Leningrad), the Russian capital, in March 1917. *Czar Nicholas II* was forced to abdicate. (He and his family were later killed by the revolutionaries).
- A provisional government composed of liberal and democratic elements (Mensheviks group) under the successive premiership of *Prince Lvov* and then *Aleksandr Kerensky* lost ground to the radical wing (Bolsheviks group) of the Social Democratic Labour Party.

Socialism

Political and Economic Theory that land, transport, the chief industries, natural resources e.g. coal, water, power etc., should be owned and managed by the state, and wealth equally distributed.

In 1848, *Karl Marx* and *Engels* laid down the principles of scientific socialism in *'Communist Manifesto'*, and Marxism became the theoretical basis for most socialist thought.

Socialism was split in Russia between the reformist *Mensheviks* and revolutionary *Bolsheviks* that led to the term *Socialism* and *Communism* as they are now generally understood.

- The Bolsheviks, led by *Lenin*, seized Power in Petrograd on Nov. 7, 1917—*Novemeber Revolution (October Revolution*, according to the old Russian calender). The Kerensky Government was overthrown and authority was vested in a council of Commissars (Ministers) with Lenin as Premier.
- The new Government immediately decreed the abolition of private land ownership and set up a dictatorship of the Proletariat—actually of the communist Party, as the Bolsheviks came to called.
- The Bolsheviks extended their authority over a large part of European Russia, but elsewhere they faced the resistance of the anti-Bolshevik Parties. The resulting civil war lasted till 1920 and was complicated by foreign intervention. The communists were ultimately in undisputed control of the country.
- In the period between 1917 and 1920, the Communists took drastic action against internal enemies, or counter-revolutionaries, as they were called. Former landlords, capitalists, Czarist officers, etc. were arrested, exiled or executed, the Czar and his family were killed.
- In 1923, the *Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (U.S.S.R.)* came into being. Its constitution declared the establishment of a 'republic of workers and peasants'. Ownership of the means of production, including land, factories, mines, banks and railroads, was vested in the state. The state which is known officially as the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (U. S. S. R.), also commonly referred to as the Soviet Russia, or just Russia.
- Lenin died in 1924 and was succeeded by *Stalin (1924-53)*.

Note : *In 1991, Communist Party rule in Soviet Union collapsed following the failure of an anti-Gorbachov coup by Communist hardliners. The constituent republics asserted their independence and the Soviet Union was officially dissolved on Dec. 25, 1991. In the same month the Commonwealth of Independent States (C. I. S.), a looser organisation with responsibility for economic & military co-operation, was formed by Russia, Ukraine & Belarus.*

Nine other former Soviet republics joined later. Now CIS is a communi *of 12 independent states. Three former Soviet republics (Baltic States) — Estonia, Latvia & Lithuania — are fully independent states. It is notab that Soviet Union was a federal state consisting of 15 seperate republic*

Chinese Revolution :
1911 (Republican Revolution); 1949 (Communist Revolution)

- In Oct., 1911, a revolution under the leadership of *Sun Yat-sen* ousted th Manchu or Ch'ing Dynasty and a republic was set up.
- However, first President San Yat-sen resigned in 1912, in favour of strongma *Yuan Shik-Kai (1912-16).*
- The period 1916-18, known as the *Warlord Era,* was one of great chaos, as a number of generals seized control of different provinces.
- A party known as the *Kuomintang (KMT)* or Nationalists (formed by Sun Yat Sen in 1912) was trying to govern China and control the generals who were busy fighting each other. The KMT leaders were Sun Yat sen and after his death in 1925, General *Chiang Kai-shek.*
- The Chinese Communist Party (CCP) was founded in 1921, and at first it cooperated with the KMT in its struggle against the warlords.
- As the KMT gradually established control over more and more of China, it felt strong enough to do without the help of the communists, and it tried to destroy them.
- The communists, under their leader *Mao Tse-tunge (Mao Zedong),* reacted vigorously, and after escaping from surrounding KMT forces, embarked on the 6000 mile *Long March (Oct. 1934-Oct. 35)* to form a new power base in northern China.
- Civil war dragged on, complicated by Japanese interference with culminated in a full-scale invasion in 1937.
- When the Second World War ended with defeat for Japan and their withdrawal from China, the KMT and the CCP continued to fight it out.
- Chiang Kai-shek had help from the USA, but in 1949 it was Mao Tse-tunge and the communists who finally triumphed.
- Chiang Kai shek and his supporters fled to island of Taiwan (Formosa).
- Mao Tse-tunge quickly established control over the whole of China, and he remained leader until his death in 1976.

Turkish Revolution : 1923

- Turkey was called '*Sickman of Europe*'.
- The disintegration of Ottoman empire began in the 19th century and was completed after Turkey's defeat in the First World War.
- The Allies wanted to establish their domination over Turkey itself and to give away parts of Turkey to Greece and Italy.
- The treatment meted out to Turkey by the Allies had led to a mass upsurge in India directed against Britain. This upsurge is known as the *Khilafat Movement.*
- The nationalist movement in Turkey was organised to prevent the domination of the country by the Allied Powers and the annexation of parts of Turkey agreed to the terms dictated by the Allied Powers.

- However, even before the treaty was signed by the Sultan, a national government had been established under the leadership of *Mustafa Kemal Pasha* with its headquarter in Ankara.
- Following the treaty with the Sultan, Turkey had been invaded by Greece.
- The turks under Kemal's leadership were able to repel the invasion and the Allies were forced to repudiate the earlier treaty. The Allied troops were withdrawn from Turkish territory and the areas which were to be annexed by European countries remained in Turkey. Thus, Turkey was able to win her complete independence.
- The success of the Turks in winning the complete independence of their country was followed by a programme to modernize Turkey and to end the influence of backward-looking feudal elements.
- Turkey was proclaimed a republic in Oct. 29, 1923 and Kemal became the first President of Turkey. He ruled the new republic for 15 years (1923-38). The Turkish Sultan had carried the title of Caliph (Khalifa); the new government abolished the institution of Caliph (Khalifa) in 1924. Education was taken out of the hands of the religious leaders. Religion was separated from the State.
- Mustafa Kemal Pasha is known as the 'founder of modern Turkey' and 'Ataturk' (the father of the Turks).

Economic Depression of the World : 1929-34

- In Economic terms, a decline in trade and general prosperity is called *Depression.*
- The Great Depression of 1929-34 was worldwide, starting with an agricultural recession followed by financial panic and collapse, known as the *Wall Street Crash (Oct., 1929),* in the USA.
- The effects on the USA were catastrophic : by 1933 almost 14 million people were out of work and American President *Hoover's* efforts failed to make any impression on crisis.

  Nobody was surprised when the Republicans lost the presidential election of Nov., 1932. The new Democrat President, *Franklin D. Roosevelt,* introduced policies known as the *New Deal* to try and put the country on the road to recovery.
- The Great Depression is turn affected financial institutions and money markets in other parts of the world and caused a run on the pound in the UK. The result was a decline in internal consumption and exports in industrialized countries, factory closures and massive unemployment.

Fascism in Italy

- The unification of Italy was only completed in 1870, however, the new state suffered from economic and political weaknesses.
- The First World War (1914-18) was a great strain on her economy, and there was bitter disappointment at her treatment by the Versailles settlement.
- Between 1919 and 1922 there were five different governments, all of which were incapable of taking the decisive action that the situation demanded.
- In 1919 *Benito Mussolini* founded the Italian Fascist Party, which won 35 seats in the 1921 elections.

- At the same time there seemed to be a real danger of a left-wing revolution; in an atmosphere of strikes and riots, the fascists staged a 'March on Rome' which culminated in *King Victor Emmanuel* inviting Mussolini to form a government (Oct., 1922); he remained in power until July 1943.
- Gradually Mussolini took on the powers of a dictator and attempted to control the entire way of life of the Italian people.
- At first it seemed as though his authoritarian regime might bring lasting benefits to Italy, and he won popularity with his adventurous and successful foreign policy.

Fascism

The ideology and political system of Benito Mussolini which encouraged militarism and extreme nationalism, organizing Italy along right-wing hierarchical authoritarian lines fundamentally opposed to democracy and liberalism. The term is also applied to any ideology or movement inspired by such principles, e.g., German National Socialism.

Later he made the fatal mistake of entering the Second World War on the side of Germany (June, 1940) even though he knew Italy could not afford involvement in another war.

- After the Italians suffered defeats by the British, who captured her African possessions and occupied Sicily, they turned against Mussolini. He was deposed and arrested (July, 1943), but was rescued by the German (Sep., 1943) and set up as ruler in northern Italy, backed by German troops.
- In April, 1945, as British and American troops advanced northwards through Italy towards Milan. Mussolini tried to escape to Switzerland but was captured and shot dead by his Italian enemies (known as partisans).

Nazism in Germany

- As Germany moved towards defeat in 1918, public opinion turned against the government, and in Oct., the Kaiser, in a desperate bid to hang on to power, appointed *Prince Max* as Chancellor. He was known to be in favour of more democratic form of government in which parliament had more power.
- But it was too late; in Nov. revolution broke out, the Kaiser escaped to Holland and abdicated, and Prince Max resigned. *Friedrich Ebert*, leader of the left-wing Social Democrat Party, became head of the government.
- In Jan., 1919, a general election was held, the first complete democratic one ever to take place in Germany. The Social Democrats emerged as the largest single party and Ebert became first President of the Republic. They had some Marxist ideas but believed that the way to achieve socialism was through parliamentary democracy.
- The new government was by no means popular with all German : even before the elections the communist had attempted to seize power in the *Spartacist Rising (Jan., 1919)*.
- In 1920 right-wing enemies of the republic occupied Berlin (the *Kapp Putsch*). The government managed to survive these threats and several later ones, including *Hitler's Munich Beer Hall Putsch (1923)*.
- By the end of 1919 a new constitution had been agreed by the National Assembly (Parliament), which was meeting at Weimer because Berlin was still torn by political unrest. This Weimer constitution, gave its name to the *Weimar Republic* and lasted until 1933, when it was destroyed by Hitler. The Great Depression, beginning with the Wall Street Crash in Oct., 1929, had disastrous effects on Germany, producing massive 6·5 million unemployed. The Government was unable to cope with the situation and by the end of 1932 the Weimer Republic seemed on the verge of collapse.

- Meanwhile *Adolf Hitler* and his *National Socialists (Nazis)* had been carrying out a great propaganda compaign blaming the government for all the ills of Germany, and setting out Nazi solutions to the problems.
- In Jan., 1933, President *Hindenberg* appointed Hitler as Chancellor, and soon afterwards Hitler saw to it that democracy ceased to exist; the Weimar Republic was at an end, and from then until April 1945, Hitler was the dictator of Germany. Only defeat in the Second World War and the death of Hitler (April 30, 1945) freed the German people from the Nazi tyranny.

Militarism in Japan

- During the 20 years after Mussolini's March on Rome (1922), many other countries, faced with severe economic problems, followed the examples of Italy and Germany and turned to fascism or right-wing nationalism.
- In Japan the democratically elected government, increasingly embarrassed by economic, financial and political problems, fell under the influence of the army in the early 1930s.
- The military soon involved Japan in war with China, and later took the country into the Second World War with its attack on *Pearl Harbor (1941)*.
- After a brilliant start, the Japanese eventually suffered defeat and devastation when the two atomic bombs were dropped.
- After the Second World War, Japan returned to democracy and made a remarkable recovery, soon becoming one of the world's most powerful states economically.

SECOND WORLD WAR : Sep. 1, 1939 — Sep. 2, 1945

Causes : The causes of Second World War as under —

1. **The Treaty of Versailles (1919) :** The treaty of Versailles had in itself the germs of the Second World War. The Germany was very badly treated. She was forced to sign the treaty at the point of a bayonet, in a spirit of revenge. To tear away the treaty of Versailles, Hitler joined hands with Mussolini of Italy.
2. **Nationalist Movements of Germany & Italy :** The rise of the national movement in Germany & Italy added fuel to the fire. Although Hitler tried to assure the world that he meant peace, he could not conceal his ambition for long. He embarked on a career of aggression which ultimately led to war. The same was the case with Mussolini who had established his dictatorship in Italy in 1922.
3. **Conflict of Ideology between Dictatorship & Democracy :** Countries like Germany, Italy & Japan represented the ideology of dictatorship while Great Britain, France & USA represented the ideology of democracy. Mussolini described the conflict between the two ideology thus : 'The struggle between the two worlds can permit no compromise. Either we or they'.
4. **Inefficiency of League of Nations :** Unfortunately, when hostility was growing between the two camps there was no effective international organisation which could bring the leaders of the two camps on a common platform and bring about a reconciliation between them. The League of Nations was practically dead.

5. **Colonial & Commercial Rivalry :** The colonial and commercial rivalry between England and France on one side, and Germany and Italy on the other brought them in conflict with each other.

6. **Aggressiveness of Berlin-Rome-Tokyo Axis :** Hitler had became very aggressive. He annexed the Saar Valley, occupied Rhineland and Austria, captured Chechoslovakia etc. Mussolini attacked Abyssinia (Ethiopia) Japan attacked China. This aggressive mood of the Fascist Powers got its fullest expression when they formed an Axis providing for mutual aid in the international sphere.

➢ **Immediate Cause :** The immediate cause of the war was the refuse of Poland to surrender. Germany gave an ultimatum to Poland regarding : (i) surrender the port of Dazing, (ii) the right of establishing a rail link between Germany and East Prussia through the Polish corridor. These two demands were rejected by Poland. So Germany invaded Poland on Sep. 1, 1939. Britain and France as they were under treaty obligations to aid Poland, declared war against Germany on Sep. 3, 1939.

Course of War : On one side were Germany, Italy and Japan, called the *Axis Powers* (or *Central Powers),* and on the other were Great Britain, Francee, USSR, USA, China etc. called the *Allied Powers* (or *Allies*).

Germany had to face defeat once again. Hitler, Goebbels & Himmler committed suicide (April 30, 1945) and their successors surrendered unconditionally on May 7, 1945. After the fall of Germany, USA and UK concentrated their focus against Japan. On Aug. 6, 1945, an atom bomb, *'Little Boy'*, was dropped on the city of Hiroshima. Japan was asked to surrender and when she refused another atom bomb, *'Fat Man'*, was dropped on Aug. 9, 1945, on the city of Nagasaki. It is estimated that more than one lakh persons were killed and leaving thousands more slowly dying of radiation poisoning. On Aug. 14, 1945, Japan conveyed its acceptance of the Allied demand to surrender but the actual surrender took place on Sep. 2, 1945. With the Japanese surrender, the Second World War came to an end.

Effects of WW II : 1. After about 15 months of preparatory work, the peace treaties were given a final shape by the 21 participating countries and they were signed on Feb. 10, 1947, in Paris by the representatives of the five enemy states and the Allied Powers. As regards Germany she was occupied by the Big Four. After its fall in May, 1945, it was divided into four zones, each of which was administered separated by one of the occupying powers. Berlin came under joint occupation. Ultimately out of one Germany came two countries — West Germany and East Germany. Italy was also deprived of her colonies. As regards Japan, a peace treaty was signed with her at San Francisco in 1951. 2. The United Nation Organisation (UNO) was established in Oct. 24, 1945. 3. The USA and USSR emerged as the two most powerful nations in the world. 4. The emergence of Russia (USSR) gave rise to the desire for freedom in colonies under European control in Asia. 5. The British empire thus rapidly lost its leadership as more and more colonies won independence. 6. France also lost much of their past glory.

WW II : Axis Vs Allies

The Axis Powers or Central Powers :

Germany, Italy *(entered June 1940),* Japan *(entered Dec. 1941)* etc.

The Allies or Entente Powers :

Great Britain, France, USSR *(entered June 1941),* USA *(entered Dec. 8, 1941),* China *(entered Dec. 1941)* etc.

7. Nearly all the East European countries embraced communism and communist rule was established in the Chinese mainland also.

Important Axis Leaders of WW II : Adolf Hitler (Nazi dictator of Germany), Benito Mussolini (Prime Minister of Italy) and Hirohito (Emperor of Japan) & his Prime Ministers Hidehi Tojo & Fumimaro Konoe.

Important Allied Leaders of WW II : Franklin D. Roosevelt — upto April 12, 1945 & Harry Truman — after April 12, 1945 (Presidents of USA), Winston Churchill (Prime Minister of Britain), Joseph Stalin (Premier of USSR), Paul Reynaud & Charles De Gaulle (Prime Ministers of France) and Chiang Kai-shek (Head of the Nationalist Government of China).

Miscellaneous

Important Dates

B.C.	
776	First Olympiad in Greece.
753	Rome founded.
490	Battle of Marathon; the Greeks defeated the Iranians/Persians.
327-26	Invasion of India by *Alexander*, Battle of Hydaspes.
221	*Chin-Hung* Ti 'Univesral Emperor' in China, Great Wall of China completed.
55	Invasion of Britain by *Julius Caesar*, the Great Roman General.
44	Assassination of *Julius Caesar* by *Brutus*.
4	Birth of *Jesus Christ*.
A.D.	
29	Crucifixion of *Jesus Christ*.
43	Roman conquest of Britain.
570	Birth of Prophet *Muhammad* at Mecca.
622	Migration of *Muhammad* from Mecca to Medina (*'Hijira'*), Beginning of Hijira Era (Muhammadan calender) on July 15.
800	Charlemagne crowned Roman Emperor at St. Peter's.
871	Accession of *Alfred the Great* to the throne of Britain.
901	Death of king *Alfred the Great*.
1066	Battle of Hastings; Norman invasion of England. *William the Conqueror*, Duke of Normandy, defeated the English king *Harold II* at Hastings.
1215	Magna Carta or the Great Charter signed by king *John II* at Runnymede in England on June 15.
1280	Gunpowder invented by *Roger Bacon*.
1338	The Hundred Years War broke out; it lasted upto 1453.
1431	*Joan of Arc*, a brave French peasant girl, obtained victory over the English at Orleans. She was burnt alive at the stakes.
1443	The Black death i. e., plague broke out in England.
1453	The capture of Constantinople (the home of classical learning) by the Ottoman Turks compelled the Greek scholars to flee to Italy and other West European countries, where they spread the knowledge of Greek philosophy and literature. This was the beginning of Renaissance in Europe.

1486	*Bartholomew Diaz* rounded the Cape of Good Hope.
1492	*Columbus* sailed on his first expedition to the West Indies which later led to the discovery of America (the New World).
1498	*Vasco da Gama*, a Portuguese, discovered the seat-route to India via the Cape of Good Hope.
1517	Beginning of Reformation.
1529-36	Reformation in England under *Henry VIII*.
1564	Birth of *Shakespeare*.
1571	Battle of Lepanto; Turks defeated by the Christian League.
1577	*Drake*, the famous English Admiral, started his voyage round the world for the first time and plundered Spanish ships and ports in South America.
1588	Admiral *Drake* defeated the Spanish 'Armada'; England became the 'Mistress of the Seas'.
1600	Establishment of the British East India Company in India (31st Dec.)
1605	Gunpowder plot in England to blow up the English Parliament.
1616	*Shakespeare* passes away.
1649	Trial and execution of *Charles I*, beginning of Commonwealth.
1649-60	The Commonwealth and the Protectorate in England.
1660	Restoration of Monarchy in England.
1665	The Great Plague in London.
1679	Habeas Corpus Act.
1688	The Glorious or Bloodless Revolution in England. Despotic rule of the Stuarts ended, and the Parliamentary rule began. Establishment of parliamentary supremacy and abolition of the Divine Rights of Kings.
1704	Battle of Blenheim; Marlborough and Eugene inflicted a crushing defeat on the French army.
1707	Union of England and Scotland.
1763	Treaty of Paris; It ended the Seven Years' War (1756-63); weakened France, made England a great colonial power.
1776	Declaration of American Independence and formation of a Federal Republic of 13 states called the United States of America (July 4).
1783	Treaty of Versailles; England recognised the independence of the United States of America.
1789	*George Washington* elected First President of USA. Beginning of French Revolution : Fall of the Bastille Fort (July 14).
1798	Battle of the Nile; The English under Nelson gained victory over the French.
1805	Battle of Trafalgar; Death of Nelson.
	Battle of Austerliz — *Napolean Bonaparte* routed a combined army of the Russians and the Austrians.
1815	Battle of Waterloo — *Napolean* was defeated and exiled to St. Helena.
	Congress of Vienna, it aimed at rearranging the map of Europe; The Vienna settlement proved unsatisfactory, because it disregarded national claims.
1821	Death of *Napolean* at St. Helena (May 5).

1827	Battle of Navatino; the allied fleets of England, Russia and France destroyed the Turkish fleet; This victory practically secured the independence of Greece.
1832	Reforms Bill passed; French captured Antwerp.
1833	Emancipation Act of 1833; It abolished slavery in the British dominions.
1837	Accession of *Queen Victoria* to the throne of England.
1839	Introduction of Penny Postage system in England by Sir Rowland Hill; Aden annexed by England.
1854	The Crimean War began; Russia attacked Turkey; England and France came to the rescue of Turkey.
1861	American Civil War started. *Abraham Lincon* elected 16th President of USA.
1863	Slavery abolished in America.
1869	Suez Canal opened for traffic.
1885	General Gordon captured and slain at Khartoum.
1899	Beginning of the Boer War.
1904	Outbreak of the Russo-Japanese War.
1905	Battle of the sea of Japan; Japan inflicted a crushing naval defeat on Russia; a wave of nationalism spread in Asia.
1911	Chinese Republican Revolution; *Amundsen* reached South Pole (Dec. 14).
1914	Outbreak of World War I (July 28).
1916	Battle of Jutland (Naval Battle). The British Grand Fleet under Admiral Jellico defeated the German Fleet under Admiral Scheer.
1917	March / Feb. Revolution in Russia : the Czar abdicated and later assassinated; reformist Mensheviks came into power *(Prince Lvov, Kerensky)*
	Nov./Oct. Revolution in Russia : Revolutionary Bolsheviks came into power (*Lenin*).
1918	End of World War I (Nov. 11).
1919	The Paris Conference; the Treaty of Versailles.
1920	Foundation of the League of Nations (Jan. 10).
1921	The Irish Free State established with the status of a Dominion like Canada (Dec. 6).
1923	Turkish Republic proclaimed with *Kemal Ataturk* as its First President.
1924	*Lenin* died, and power passed into the hands of *Stalin* in Russia.
1925	Treaty of Locarno (between Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy and Belgium).
1928	Kellogg Pact (signed in Paris by the principal powers of the world for the prevention of war; it had no effect).
1933	*Hitler* became the Chancellor of Germany.
1935	War between Italy and Abyssinia (Ethiopia); Italy annexed Abyssinia (Ethiopia); Plebiscite in Saar.
1939	Germany invaded Poland : Outbreak of World War II (Sep. 1).
1940	Fall of France after German invasion (June 5); Italy entered World War II (June 11).
1941	*Hitler* invades Russia (June 22); Framing of the Atlantic Charter (Aug. 14); Japan attacked Pearl Harbour (Hawaii Islands) (Dec. 7); USA entered World War II (Dec. 8); China entered World War II (Dec. 10) Air raids by Japan on Rangoon (Dec. 22).
1942	Capture of Singapore by Japanese forces (Feb. 15); Battle of Coral Sea, Japanese fleet suffered heavy losses at the hands of the American fleet (May 3); Battle of Stalingrad (Sep. 19).

1943	Defeat of Germany at Stalingrad (Feb. 8); Battle of the Bismarck Sea, America defeated Japan in a naval battle (March 4); Invasion of Italy by the Allies, Armistice between Italy & the Allies (Sep. 3).
1944	Allied forces landed in Normandy under the supreme command of *General* (*Eisenhower*) (D—Day) (June 6); Liberation of Paris (Aug. 25).
1945	Execution of *Mussolini* (Apr. 22); Unconditional surrender of Germany to the Allies (May 7); USA dropped atom bomb on Hiroshima & Nagasaki of Japan (Aug. 6 & Aug. 9); Actual surrender of Japan (Sep. 2); World War II ended (Sep. 2); Foundation of UNO (Oct. 24).

Association of Places

Place	Associated with	Place	Associated with
Corsica	Napoleon Bonaparte	Medina	Prophet Muhammad
Hiroshima	Dropping of first atom bomb	PearlHarbour	Japan's attack during World War II
Jerusalem	Jesus Christ	St. Helena	Napolean Bonaparte
Macedonia	Alexander, the Great	Trafalgar	Nelson
Mecca	Prophet Muhammad	Waterloo	Napoleon Bonaparte

Abbreviated or Alternative Names

Abbreviated/ Alternative Name	Original Name	Abbreviated/ Alternative Name	Original Name
Apostle of Free Trade	Richard Cobden	Li-Kwan	Pearl Buck
Bangabandhu	Sheikh Mujibur Rahman	Little Corporal	Napoleon
Father of English Poetry	Geoffery Chaucer	Maid of Orleans	John of Arc
Man of Blood and Iron	Bismarck	Man of Destiny	Napoleon
G. B. S.	George Bernard Shaw	Mark Twain	Samuel Clemens
Grand Old Man of Britain	Gladstone	Scourge of God	Chengiz Khan
Great Commoner	Pitt, the Younger	Uncle Ho	Ho Chi Minh
Iron Duke, The	Duke of Wellington	Desert Fox	Gen. Rommel
King Maker	Earl of Warwick	Bard of Avon	Shakespeare
Lady of the Lamp	Florence Nightingle	Maiden Queen	Elizabeth I
Voltaire	Francois Marie Arouet de	Ike	D. Eisenhower
Wizard of the North	Sir Walter Scott	Fuehrer	Adolf Hitler

Important Battles

Name of the Battle	Year	Countries involved
Battle of Marathon	490 BC	Athenians and Persians. King *Darius* of Persia defeated.
Battle of Thermoplaye	480 BC	Spartans led by *Leonidas* and Persians led by *Xerexes*. Greeks defeated.
Battle of Salamis	480 BC	Athenian fleet and Persian fleet in Bay of Salamis; Persian fleet defeated.
Battle of Platae	479 BC	Greek and Persians forces; Persian forces defeated.
Battle of Mycale	479 BC	Greek and Persian fleets; Persian fleet defeated.

Name of the Battle	Year	Countries involved
Spartan War I (Peloponesian War)	459 BC	Sparta and Athens, lasted for 30 years.
Spartan War II	431 BC-421 BC	Sparta and Athens; Spartans victorious.
Battle of Arabia	331 BC	Greek and Persian forces; Greeks victorious.
Battle of Magnesia	190 BC	Syrian and Roman forces; Syrian forces defeated (north-west Lydia).
Battle of Pharasalus	48 AD	*Caesar* defeated *Pompey*.
Battle of Hastings	1066	*William*, the Duke of Normandy defeated *Harold*, the King of England. England came under the control of Normans.
Hundred-Year War	1338-1453	Fought between France and England. The cause of the war was the succession question to the throne of France which was claimed by *Edward III* of England. The war was resumed by *Henry V* and was brought to an end by the heroism of *Joan of Arc* — 'A country girl who overthrew the power of England'. Joan of Arc was burnt alive at the stakes in 1431.
War of the Roses	1455-1485	Civil War in England; The cause of the war was a struggle for the throne of England between the two royal houses of Lancaster and York.
Anglo-Spanish War (Spanish Armada War)	1588	Spanish and English fleets fought in the English Channel; The English fleet under *Lord Howard* defeated of the Spanish Armada.
Battle of Gibraltar Way	1607	The Dutch defeated the Spanish and Portuguese.
Thirty-Year War	1618-1648	Started as religious-cum-political war between the Lutherans and Catholics in Germany and developed into an international war.
Civil War in England	1642-1649	Between Cavaliers (King Charles I suppoters) and forces of Parliament led by *Oliver Cromwell*, King Charles I executed.
Battle of Blenheim	1704	England and Austria headed by *Marlborough* defeated france and Russia.
War of Austrian Succession	1740-1748	Queen of Austria, *Maria Theresa* (daughter of Charles VII) was challenged by *King Frederick II* of Prussia. England supported the queen and Frederick II was helped by France. Ended with a Treaty which recognised the Queen's right to the throne after the death of King Frederick.
Seven-Year War (Anglo-French War III)	1756-1763	Britain and France against Austria and Prussia; the British alliance won.
Battle of the Nile	1798	British and French fleets, Britain victorious.
Battle of Trafelgar	1805	British fleet defeated fleets of France and Spain. British fleets were commanded by Admiral *Nelson*, who was killed during the battle.
Battle of Austerliz	1805	Britain, Austria, Russia and Prussia on one side and France on the other. *Napoleon* (France) defeated Austria and Russia.

Name of the Battle	Year	Countries involved
Battle of Borodino	1812	Between France and Russia. Napolean invaded Russia at Borodino, and nearly defeated the Russians. However on reaching Moscow, his army suffered heavy losses and was forced to retreat. Napolean's ill-fated attack on Russia marked the beginning of the downfall of the French Empire
Battle of Leipzig	1813	Germany and combined forces of Austria, Prussia and Russia, defeated Napolean
Battle of Waterloo	1815	British forces led by Duke of Wellington *(Sir Arthur Wellesly)* defeated French forces led by Napolean. Napolean was captured and exiled to St. Helena where he died in 1821.
First Opium War	1840	China and Britain; Chinese yielded opium. It was a trade war.
Crimean War	1854-1856	The combined forces of the British, French and Turks defeated Russia.
American Civil War	1861-1865	Northern states of America under Abraham Lincon defeated the Southern states and established a Federal state and abolished the slavery.
Sino-Japanese War	1894-1895	Japan defeated China and occupied Formosa and Korea.
Battle of Omdurman	1898	The British and Egyptian forces defeated the forces of Khalifa (Mehdists).
Boer War	1899-1901	The revolt of Transvaal Boers was suppressed by the British forces. Boers belonged to Dutch Protestant stock who opposed Britishers because of abolition of slavery by Britain.
Russo-Japanese War (Battle of Port Arthur & Battle of Yalu)	1904-1905	Russia and Japan in the sea of Japan. Russia defeated; It led the wave of the idea of Asian Resurgence.
Balkan War I	1912	Turkey and Balkan countries (Montenegro, Serbia, Bulgaria and Greece), Turkey defeated.
Balkan War II	1913	Invasion of Serbia and Greece by Bulgaria.Bulgaria was defeated by combined forces of Serbia, Greece, Rumania, Montengro who stripped Turkey of most of its European territories.
World War I	1914-1918	Central Powers (Germany and its allies) against the Allied Powers (Britain and its allies); Central Power were defeated. Famous Battles : 1. First battle of Marne (1914) — France defeated Germany. 2. Battle of Jutland (1916)— Naval battle between England and Germany. England defeated Germany. 3. Battle of Verdun (1916) — Fought between France & Germany. 4. Second battle of Marne (1918) — France defeated Germany. *(See details on page 156)*
World War II	1939-1945	Axis Powers (Germany and its allies) against the Allied Powers (Britain and its allies); Axis Powers were defeated. Famous Battle : Battle of El Alamein (1942) — The Allies victory during the World War II and retreat of General Rommel's forces. *(See details on page 163)*

★★★

Geography

3

Universe

- The universe is commonly defined as the totality of everything that exists, including all physical matter and energy, the planets, stars, galaxies and the contents of intergalactic space.
- The study of universe is known as Cosmology.
- Cosmology = cosmos *(universe)* + logos *(science)*
- The universe has no limit.

Galaxy

- A galaxy is a vast system of billions of stars, which also contains a large number of gas clouds (mainly of hydrogen gas) and dust, isolated in space from similar systems.
- There are about 100 billion galaxies (10^{11} galaxies) in the universe, and each galaxy has, on an average, 100 billion stars (10^{11} stars). So, the total number of stars in the universe is 10^{22} stars.
- The Milky Way Galaxy is the home of the Earth and our Solar System. It is spiral in shape.
- Milky Way Galaxy was formed 5 billion years after the Big Bang.
- Latest known galaxy is the Dwarf Galaxy.
- According to the modern thought, universe can be classified into two parts namely—(a) Atmosphere and (b) Space.
- Origin of the universe is explained by the Big Bang Theory, formulated and proposed by the Belgiam astronomer and cosmologist Georges Lemaitre.
- Andromeda is our nearest galaxy.

The Big Bang Theory

- All the matter in the universe was originally a concentrated lump called primeval atom.
- Big Bang was an explosion that occurred 15 billion years ago, leading to the formation of galaxies of stars and other heavenly bodies.
- Since then, all the galaxies have been flying away from one another causing expansion of the universe.

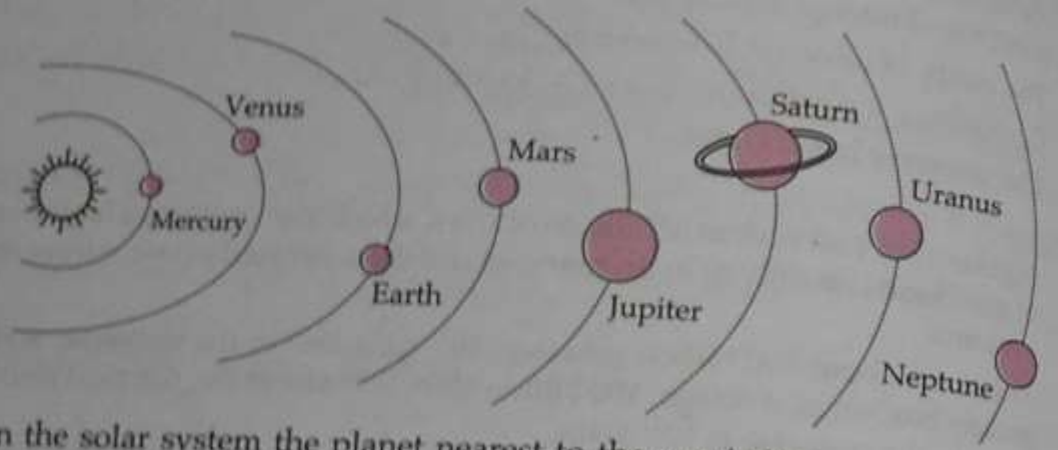
Star

- Clumps of dust and gas in a nebula come together due to gravity and form stars.
- Stars are made of hot burning gases.
- They emit light of their own and are very large and very hot.
- Light takes about 4.3 years to reach us from the next nearest star *proxima centauri.*

The Solar System

- The solar system consists of the sun, the eight planets and their satellites (or moons), and thousands of other smaller heavenly bodies such as asteroids, comets and meteors.

- The sun is at the centre of the solar system and all these bodies are revolving around it.
- The gravitational pull of the sun keeps all the planets and other objects revolving round it. Thus, the motion of all the members of the solar system is governed mainly by the gravitational force of the sun.
- Planets revolve around the sun in elliptical orbit.



- In the solar system the planet nearest to the sun is Mercury and the planet farthest from the sun is Neptune (not Pluto).
- The size of solar system has been estimated to at about 10^5 A.U.
- The solar system is dominated by the sun which accounts for almost 99.9% of the matter in the whole solar system.
- The sun is also the source of all the energy in the solar system.
- Pluto is a dwarf planet.
- Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars are called terrestrial planets and Jupiter Saturn, Uranus and Neptune are called gaseous planets.

Members of the Solar System

The Sun

- The Sun is at the centre of the Solar System.
- Its size is thirteen lakh times as that of the Earth.
- It is the nearest star to the Earth.
- It is an ultimate source of energy for life on Earth.
- Its diameter is 14 lakh kms.
- It is composed of 71% Hydrogen, 26.5% Helium and 2.5% other elements.
- Hydrogen and Helium are the main gases present in the Sun.
- Within the Sun, hydrogen is converted to Helium due to nuclear fusion releasing a tremendous amount of heat and light.
- It has a surface temperature of 5778 K or 5504.85°C.
- The temperature at the centre is around 1.571×10^7 K or 15,000,000°C.
- Shining surface of the sun is called photosphere, it appears like a disc, radiates energy and acts as a source of energy.
- The outer layer of sun's atmosphere made up of thin hot gases, is called Corona. Corona is visible only during a total eclipse of the sun (or with a special solar telescope called Coronagraph).

- The planet travels with the sun through millions of stars in our galaxy at a speed of about 70,000 km per hour.
- The Sun is about 150 million kms away from the Earth.
- Light (at the speed of 3,00,000 km per second) takes about 8.5 minutes to reach the Earth from the Sun.

The Planets

- These are opaque bodies which continuously revolve around and are lighted by the Sun.
- There are eight planets in the Solar system.
- A ninth planet has been recently discovered by NASA named as Carla.
- The sequence of planets according to their distance from the Sun is Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune.
- The sequence of planets according to their size (in descending order i.e. from big to small) is Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Earth, Venus, Mars, Mercury.
- Jupiter is the biggest and mercury is the smallest planets of our solar system.

Classification of Planets

- The eight planets have been divided into two groups. All the planets of a particular group have some common features. 'Terrestrial planets' or 'Rocky planets' and 'Jovian planets' or 'Gaseous planets' (Gas giants) are the two groups of planets.
- The four planets nearest to the Sun-Mercury, Venus, Earth and Mars are called terrestrial planets, because their structure is similar to the earth.
- Other four planets—Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune are called Jovian planets.
- Planets are classified into the following two groups inner and outer planets. These are separated by asteroid belt. :

Inner Planets	Outer Planets
They include Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars.	They include Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus Neptune etc.
They are nearer to the sun.	They are far away from the sun.
They are made up of dense metallic minerals.	They are made up of hot gases, mainly hydrogen and helium.
They move faster and have a shorter period of revolution.	They move rather slowly and have a longer period of revolution.
They have thin, rocky crust.	They are all gaseous bodies.
They have a mantle rich in iron and magnesium.	Made of gases.
They have a core of molten metals.	They have ring systems around them.
They have thin atmosphere.	
They have very few natural satellites (or moons) or no satellites.	They have a large number of natural satellites (or moons).

Some Notable Facts About Various Planets and Satellites

Mercury

- Mercury is the closest planet to the Sun.

- It is extremely hot planet.
- The planet has no water on it.
- Mercury planet has no gases like CO_2, N_2, H_2 and O_2 which can act as building blocks of life.
- Mercury planet has no protective blanket like Ozone around it to prevent us from harmful radiations.

Venus

- Venus is the second planet in distance from the Sun. This planet is nearest to the Earth and is also the brightest planet.
- Venus is known as the 'Evening Star' as well as 'Morning Star'.
- Venus is surrounded by a thick cloud cover, hence known as the 'Veiled Planet' ('veil' means unclear/cover).
- Venus is like the Earth in size and mass, and hence also known as the 'Earth's twin'. It also rotates clockwise like Uranus.
- Venus is the hottest planet (even hotter than Mercury) of our Solar System, due to its veil of cloud.
- Venus has no water on it. There is no sufficient oxygen on the Venus.

The Earth

- Earth is the largest of the inner planets.
- The Earth is 23½° tilted on its axis and thus makes 66½° angle.
- It takes 23 hours 56 minutes and 4.091 seconds to rotate on its axis.
- It takes 365 days, 5 hours and 48 minutes to revolve around the Sun.
- Earth is known as the 'watery planet' or the 'blue planet' due to the presence of huge amount of water on it.
- Earth is the only known planet which provides sustenance or life on it. It has a large quantity of oxygen which supports life.

The Moon

- The Moon is the only satellite of the earth.
- It has a diameter of 3,475 km and its circumference is 10,864/km while its orbit is elliptical.
- The maximum distance (apogee) of the moon from the earth is 4,06,000 km and the minimum distance (perigee) is 3,64,000 km.
- It takes 27 days, 7 hours and 43 minutes to rotate on its axis (this period of about 27½ days is called the *sideral month*) and approximately the same period of time it takes to revolve around the earth. The moon's period of revolution with reference to the sun is about 29.53 days (29 days, 12 hours, 44 minutes and 2.8 seconds). This period is called a *synodic month.*
- Only 59 per cent of the total surface of the moon is visible from the earth.
- The bright part of the moon is full of mountains whereas the dark patches are low lying plains.
- 'Sea of tranquility' made of the plain of dust particles, is on the rear side of the moon, which always remains dark.

- The highest mountain on the moon is *liebuity mountain* which is 10,660 meter high.
- The moon has no atmosphere, no twilight and no sound.
- The temperature during daytime is about 100°C and during night it drops down to about –180°C.
- The light from the moon takes 1.3 seconds to reach the Earth.
- The size of the Moon is one-fourth (1/4th) the size of the Earth.
- Gravitational pull of Moon is one-sixth (1/6th) that of the Earth.
- Mainly silicon, iron, magnesium etc elements are found on the Moon's surface.
- The study of the Moon is called 'Selenology'.
- Moon is also known as the fossil planet.

Mars

- Iron-rich red soil and pink sky of Mars give it the name, 'Red Planet'.
- Phobes and Demos are two satellites of Mars.

Jupiter

- Jupiter is the largest planet of the Solar System.
- Jupiter is also known as winter planet as its average temperature is very low (-148° C).
- Gannymeda, satellite of Jupiter is the largest satellite in the Solar System.

Saturn

- Saturn is the second largest planet in the Solar System.
- Saturn has bright concentric rings which are made up of ice and ice-covered dust particles which revolve around it.
- Titan is the largest satellite of Saturn.

Uranus

- Uranus is about four times the size of the Earth. This planet appears greenish in colour because of methane gas present in its atmosphere.
- Uranus was discovered in 1781 by Sir William Hersiel.
- Uranus is the 7th planet from the Sun.
- Uranus is the first planet to have been discovered by the use of a telescope. Uranus is the third biggest planet of the Solar System.
- Uranus is extremely cold, having surface temperature –190°C and is surrounded by 13 rings namely zeta (ζ)/R1986U2, 6, 5, 4, alpha (α), beta (β), eta (ε), gamma (γ), delta (δ), lambda (λ), epsilon (∈), nu (ν) and mu (μ).
- Uranus rotates from east to west on its axis, which is opposite to other planets except Venus.
- The axis of Uranus has large inclination so that it appears to be lying down, hence it bears the name 'A Planet on its Side'.

Neptune

- Neptune is the 8th planet of the Solar System.
- The temperature on the surface of Neptune remains low.
- Neptune is very similar to Uranus and can be considered as its twin.
- Neptune is surrounded by methane rings of sub zero temperature.

Pluto is not a Planet now

- On the basis of the new definition of planet given by the IAU (International Astronomical Union), the world's top institution on space science research, leading astronomers participating in IAU's meet at Prague (Czech Republic) on August 24, 2006, declared that Pluto would no logner remain a planet.
- Under the IAU's new guidelines, the number of planets in the Solar System has thus been reduced from nine to eight. Its merits mentioning here that, prior to this decision, Pluto had been holding the planetary status since its discovery in 1930 by Clyde Tombaugh.
- Now, with the omission of Pluto from the Solar System, its membership has been restricted tothe eight 'classical' planets, namely Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus andNeptune.

Pluto Gets a Numerical Denomination

Weeks after it was demoted to a sub-planetary status, Pluto was given a new name to reflect its new status as a dwarf planet in September, 2006. The former 9th planet was assigned the asteroid number 134340 by the Minor Planet Centre (MPC), the official organisation responsible for collecting data about asteroids and comets in our Solar System.

Pluto's companion satellites, Charon (Pluto's largest moon), Nix and Hydra are considered part of the same system and will not be assigned separate asteroid numbers. Instead, they will now be called 134340 I, II and III respectively.

- Before loosing its planetary status on 24th August, 2006 Pluto was the outermost planet of the Solar System.

Some Facts and Figures about the Planets

Name of planet	Distance from the Sun	Time taken for one revolution around Sun	Time taken to turn once on its axis	Diameter of planet	Mass of planet compared to earth taken as 1	No. of satellites (or moons)
Mercury	58×10^6 km	88 days	58.6 days	4,878 km	0.055	None
Venus	108×10^6 km	224.7 days	243 days	12,100 km	0.8	None
Earth	150×10^6 km	365.26 days	23.9 hours (23 hours 56 min 04 sec.)	12,760 km	1	1
Mars	228×10^6 km	687 days	24.6 hours	6,780 km	0.1	2
Jupiter	778×10^6 km	11.9 years	9.9 hours	1,42,800 km	318	67 (50+17)
Saturn	1427×10^6 km	29.5 years	10 hours	1,20,000 km	95	62 (53+9)
Uranus	2870×10^6 km	84 years	16.2 hours	50,800 km	15	15
Neptune	4504×10^6 km	164.8 years	18.5 hours	48,600 km	17	8

Asteroids (or Planetoids)

- Asteroids are also known as minor planets.
- They are objects that revolve around the Sun.
- They are mostly found between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. They are a belt of debris which failed to assemble into planets and keeps on revolving around the Sun. This has come to be called as 'asteroid belt'.

- More than 5000 asteroids have been identified.
- Asteroids may be spherical, elongated or irregular in shape.
- All asteroids rotate on their axis, every 5 to 20 hours. Certain asteroids may have satellites.
- Trojan asteroids are found in two clouds moving in the orbit of Jupiter, one moving ahead of it and the other moving behind it.
- Scientists believe that these asteroids occupy a place where a planet could have existed but was prevented from its formation by the disruptive gravitational force of the nearby giant planet, Jupiter.

Meteors and Meteorites

- Meteors and Meteorites are also called shooting stars.
- Meteors are fragments of rocks coming towards the earth, formed due to the collision of asteroids with one another.
- Meteors are usually small, and due to the heat produced by air resistance, burn up before they reach the Earth's surface.
- When meteors are large and do not burn up completely, they land on the Earth's surface and are known as Meteorites.
- All meteorites are believed to originate in the asteroid belt, where a sudden collision may send them towards the Earth and the Earth's gravity attracts them towards its surface.

Comets

- Visitors of the Solar System, Comets (the name derived from the Latin words *stella cometa* meaning 'hairy star') are among the most spectacular and unpredictable bodies in the Solar System.
- Comets move around the Sun in regular orbits, but their orbits are elongated ellipses that it takes them hundreds and, sometimes even thousands of years to complete one revolution around the Sun.
- Comets are made up of frozen gases which hold together rocky and metallic materials.
- A comet becomes visible only when it travels close to the Sun.
- Its ice melts and the gas and dust is swept back into a tail.
- The tail always points away from the Sun. So when it is travelling away from the Sun it is led by its tail.

Features of a Comet

- A comet is characterised by a long luminous tail, which emits light.
- But this is visible only when the comet's orbit passes close to the Sun.
- When the comet travels close to the Sun, the ice melts to a head of gas called a Coma.
- The Sun's radiation sweeps this into a gas tail.
- Dust particles are also swept back to form a dust tail.

Stars

- Stars are heavenly bodies made up of hot burning gases, thus shining by their own light.

- Stars seem to be fixed with respect to each other. In fact they are in rapid motio but they are at such great distance that relative changes in position becom noticeable only over the centuries.
- According to NASA Proxima Centauri is the closest star to the Earth after th Sun. It is about 4.24 light years away.
- Pole star (or Polaris), Sirius, Vega, Capella, Alpha centauri, Beta centaur Proxima centauri, Spica, Regulus, Pleiades, Aldebaran, Arcturus, Betelgeus and of course the Sun are some of the important examples of the stars.

Facts about Stars

- There are billions and billions of stars in the sky but only about 2000 stars ca be seen with the naked eye on a clear moonless night.
- There are 10^{22} stars in the Universe.
- About 8000 stars are visible from the Earth with naked eye. Out of this, 4000 stars are visible in the Northern Hemisphere and 4000 in the Southern Hemisphere
- In either hemisphere, only 2000 stars are visible at any given time.
- The other 2000 are located in the day-time sky and the brightness of the Su renders them invisible.

Constellations

- To enable astronomers to identify roughly the position of the stars, the sky ha been divided into units. These units are known as Constellations.
- These constellations were named in the honour of mythological characters.
- At present 88 constellations are recognized.

Some well known constellations

- Some well known constellations, with their Indian names are given below:

Constellations	Indian names	Constellations	Indian names
Ursa Major (Great Bear)	Saptarishi	Cancer*	Kark
Ursa Minor (Little Bear)	Dhruva Matsya	Leo*	Simha
Orion (Hunter)	Mriga	Virgo*	Kanya
Draco (Dragon)	Kaleya	Libra*	Tula
Scorpio*	Vrishchika	Sagittarius*	Dhanu
Aries*	Mesh	Capricorn*	Makar
Taurus*	Vrish	Aquarius*	Kumbh
Gemini*	Mithun	Pisces*	Meen

* 12 Zodiac signs

Galaxy

- A large group of stars, dust and light gases, bound together by their own gravity is called a galaxy.
- There are 10^{11} galaxies in the universe.
- We live on the outer edge of a spiral type of galaxy called the Milky Way, which is about 100,000 light years in diameter and is rotating slowly.

Earth's Galaxy : The Milky Way

- The Milky Way is a large spiral-shaped galaxy.

- It spans about 1,00,000 light-years across and is about 10,000 light-years thick at the centre.
- It is called the Milky Way because it appears as a soft glowing light of billions of stars. These stars are so far that they can be seen only in constellation, not separately.
- Galileo discovered that this band of light was produced by countless individual stars which a naked eye can not see.
- It takes about 250 million years to complete one revolution.

Andromeda : Earth's closest Galactic neighbour

- Andromeda is a spiral galaxy and also our closest neighbour.
- It appears as a fuzzy patch of light and contains millions of stars.
- It is the farthest object that can be seen with the naked eye.
- Along with the Milky Way, it belongs to a group of galaxies known as the Local Group, which in turn is a part of Virgo Cluster of groups.
- Like stars, galaxies are grouped into clusters. Some clusters contain thousands of galaxies.
- About 30 galaxies, along with the Milky Way and the Andromeda are grouped together in one cluster called the Local Group.
- Clusters may group together into upper clusters.
- Super clusters are also spread randomly throughout the universe.

Nebulae

- Nebulae are huge interstellar clouds of gas and dust that appear as faint, misty patches of light scattered all over the sky.
- They appear either as bright luminous clouds or as dark patches against a brighter background.
- A nebula depends for its luminosity upon the presence of stars that have either arisen from it or are contained in it.
- If the stars are extremely hot, the hydrogen in the nebula is ionized and emits a certain amount of light of its own.
- If a star is less hot, the nebula shines only by reflection.
- If there are no suitable stars, the nebula does not shine and remains dark and can be detected only because it blots out the light of the stars beyond.

The Earth : Shape and Size

Shape of the Earth

- Pythagoras (572-500 B.C.), a Greek philosopher and mathematician, was among the first to suggest that the Earth was shaped like a globe.

The Earth is not flat

- If the Earth were a flat disc, then the rising Sun would have been seen at all places at the same time. But this does not happen. Places in the east see the rising Sun earlier.
- When a ship approaches land, its funnel or mast is seen first and then the hull. If the Earth had been flat, the whole ship would have been seen at the same time.

The Earth is a sphere

- The Earth is rarely oriented in the same position during successive eclipses but it always casts a circular shadow, thus proving that the Earth is a sphere. A sphere is the only solid body that will always cast a circular shadow.
- At the North Pole, the Pole Star can always be observed at 90 degrees in the sky, since the star lies in the line with the axis of the Earth.
- As one travels southwards, the angle of Pole Star decreases.
- At the Equator the angle becomes zero degree.
- This observation proves that the path of travel is an arc of a circle.
- The Sun, Moon and all the heavenly bodies appear to be spherical when viewed from different positions. It seems logical to conclude that the Earth is no exception.
- The photographs of the Earth taken from the space prove beyond any doubt that the Earth is a sphere.

The Earth as an Oblate Spheroid

- Refined measurements of the Earth have proved that the true form of the Earth resembles a sphere that has been compressed at the poles and made to bulge at the Equator. This form is known as an oblate spheroid.

The various factors which make the earth suitable for life to evolve and survive are

Composition of Earth (%		
1.	Iron	35
2.	Oxygen	30
3.	Silicon	15
4.	Magnesium	13
5.	Nickel	2.4
6.	Sulphur	1.9
7.	Calcium	1.1
8.	Aluminium	1.1
9.	Others	0.5

- The earth has all the essential elements like carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen and oxygen, which act as building block for the origin of life.
- The earth is neither too hot nor too cold. It has the right temperature range for carrying out the life-sustaining chemical reactions.
- The earth has a lot of water in the form of lakes, rivers and oceans for the growth and survival of life.
- The earth has enough oxygen gas in its atmosphere for the survival of living beings through breathing.
- The earth has a protective blanket of ozone layer high up in its atmosphere to save life from harmful ultraviolet radiations coming from the sun.
- Biodiversity changes increase towards equator. Biodiversity is the degree of variation of life. It is a measure of variety of organisms present in different ecosystems. It is richest in the tropics.

Statistical Data of The Earth

The Earth, third planet from the Sun, is the fifth largest planet in the Solar System in terms of size and mass.

Age	4,550 million years
Mass	5.9726×10^{24} kg
Volume	108.321×10^{10} km^3
Mean Density	5514 kg/m^3

Total Surface area	51,00,66,000 sq.km
Total Land area	14,84,29,000 sq.km (29.1%)
Total Ocean area	36,16,37,000 sq.km (70.9%)
Total Water area	38,26,72,000 sq. km
Diameter	
Equatorial diameter	12,756 km
Equatorial radius	6,378.1 km
Polar diameter	12,713.6 km
Polar radius	6,356.8 km (IUGG)
Equatorial circumference	40,077 km
Polar circumference	40,009 km
Important Facts of Earth	
Highest land point (Mt. Everest, Nepal)	8,850 m
Lowest land point (Dead Sea, between Jordan and Israel)	400 m/1,300 ft (approx.)
Greatest ocean depth (Mariana Trench in Pacific Ocean, near Japan)	11,033 m. (36,201 ft)
Maximum distance from the Sun (At Aphelion)	152 million km (approx.)
Minimum distance from the Sun (At Perihelion)	147 million km (approx.)
The mean distance from the Sun	14,95,98,262 km (1.0 AU)

- 29.1% of the total surface area of Earth is covered by continents (land), while 70.9% is covered by oceans.
- The total water area of the earth including the oceans, lakes, rivers, ice sheets and the water in the atmosphere is called hydrosphere and it covers about 71% of the earth's surface.

Continents of The World

Asia, Africa, North America, South America, Europe, Australia and Antarctica are the seven continents.

Facts about Asia

Latitude : 10°S and 80° N
Longitude : 25° E and 170° W
Area : 44,579,000 sq. km (approx. 30% of the world)
Population : 4,351 million (mid–2014) [60.11% of world population]
Oceans and Seas : Arctic Ocean, Pacific Ocean, Indian Ocean, Red Sea, Gulf of Aden, Persian Gulf, Gulf of Oman, Arabian Sea, Bay of Bengal, China Sea, Yellow Sea of Okhotsk, Bering Sea.
Highest and Lowest Points : Everest (8,850 metres)* and Dead Sea (–396.8 m)* respectively.
(* World's highest and lowest point)
Straits : Strait of Malacca, Bering Strait.
Lakes : Caspian Sea, Aral Sea, Lake Baikal, Lake Balkhash.

Islands : Kurile, Sakhalin, Honshu, Hokkaido, Taiwan, Borneo, Sumatra, Java, Celebes, New Guinea, Philippines, Sri Lanka, Bahrain, Cyprus.

Mountains : Pamir Knot, Himalayas, Karakoram, Kunlun, Tien Shan, Altai, Hindu Kush, Elbruz, Pontic, Sulaiman, Zagros, Taurus, Urals, Yablonovoi, Stanovoi.

Plateaus : Anatolia Plateau, Plateau of Iran, Plateau of Arabia, Plateau of Tibet, Tarim Basin, Plateau of Mongolia, Plateau of Yunnan, Decan Plateau.

Peninsulas : Kamchatka Peninsula, Peninsula of Korea, Peninsula of Indo-China, Malay Peninsula, Indian Peninsula, Arabian Peninsula.

Deserts : Arabian Desert, Thar Desert, Gobi Desert.

Rivers : Eupharates, Tigris, Indus, Ganga, Brahmaputra, Hwang-Ho, Yang-Tse, Si-Kiang, Amur, Lena Yenisei, Ob, Irrawady, Salween, Mekong.

Important cities : Aden, Karachi, New Delhi, Mumbai, Kolkata, Colombo, Yangon (former Rangoon), Kuala Lumpur, Bangkok, Ho Chi Minh City (former Saigon), Singapore, Manila, Guangzhou (former Canton), Hong Kong, Shanghai, Tokyo.

Facts about Africa

Latitude : 35° S and 37° N

Longitude : 50° E and 17° W

Population : 1,136 million (mid-2014) [15.69% of world population]

Area : 30,065,000 sq km (approx. 20.3% of the world).

Oceans and Seas : Indian Ocean, Red Sea, Atlantic Ocean, Gulf of Guinea, Mediterranean Sea.

Highest and Lowest Points : Kilimanjaro (5,895 m.) and Lake Assai (–156.1 m) respectively.

Straits : Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb, Straits of Gibraltar.

Lakes : Victoria, Tanganyka, Malawi, Chad, Rudolf, Albert.

Islands : Madagascar, Cape Verde Islands, The Comoros, Mauritius, Seychelles.

Mountains : Atlas, Drakensberg, Kilimanjaro.

Plateaus : Plateau of Africa – the entire continent is a plateau.

Deserts : Sahara, Kalahari, Namib.

Facts about North America

North America, northern continent of Western Hemisphere, comprising U.S.A., Canada, Central America, lower range in east and central plains. Climate varies considerably owing to wide range of latitude and altitude.

Latitude : 7° N and 84° N

Longitude : 20° W and 180° W

Area : 24,235,280 sq. km (approx. 16.5% of the world)

Population : 353 million (mid-2014) [4.88% of world population]

Major Deserts : Chihuahuan, Colorado, Mujave, Sonoran.

Major Lakes : Lake Superior (largest sweet water lake in the world), Huron, Michigan, Great Slave, Great Bear, Erie, Ontario etc.

Major Rivers : Mississippi, Missourie, St. Lawrence, Mackenzie, Colorado, Hudson, Potomac, Ohio etc.

Oceans and Seas : Atlantic Ocean, Pacific Ocean, Arctic Ocean, Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean Sea, Gulf of California, Gulf of Alaska, Bering Sea, Hudson Bay.

Coastline : Canada has the largest coastline (2,02,080 km) in the world.

Highest and Lowest Points : Mckinley (6,194 m) and Death Valley (–85.9 m) respectively.

Straits : Bering Strait.

Islands : Greenland, Baffin, Victoria, Newfoundland, Cuba, Jamaica, Haiti.

Mountains : Rockies, Appalachain, Brooks, Kuskolkwim, Alaska Range, Cascade Range, Coastal Range, Sierra Nevada, Sierra Madre etc.

Plateaus : Columbia Plateau, Colorado Plateau, Mexican Plateau, Canadian Shield.

Agriculture : Temperate and tropical products, cereals, tobacco, sugarbeet, potatoes etc.

Minerals : Coal, petroleum, iron, manganese etc.

Industries : Ship building, occupied formerly by Red Indians; now mainly by Whites with many Blacks in the south.

Important cities : New York, Washington D.C., Boston, Chicago, Dallas, Detroit, San Francisco, Los Angeles, Seattle, Montreal, Toronto, Vancouver, Mexico City, Havana, Kingston, Ottawa etc.

Climate : Extending to within 10° of latitude of both the equator and the North Pole, North America has every climatic zone, from tropical rain forest and Savanna on the lowlands of Central America to areas of permanent ice cap, besides Sub-arctic and Tundra climates and arid as well as semi-arid zones.

Facts about Latin America, Caribbean

Latitude : 12° N and 55° N

Longitude : 35° W and 81° W

Area : 17,820,770 sq. km (approx. 12% of the world).

Population : 618 million (mid–2014) [8.54% of world population]

Ocean and Seas : Atlantic Ocean, Pacific Ocean, Caribbean Sea.

Highest and Lowest Points : Aconcagua (6,960 m) and Valdes Penin (–39.9 m) respectively.

Straits : Straits of Magellan

Lakes : Lake Maracaibo, Lake Titicaca

Islands : Galapagos, Falkland, Tierra del Fuego

Mountains : Andes

Plateaus : Plateau of Bolivia, Plateau of Equador.

Deserts : Atacama, Pantagonia

Rivers : Amazon, Orinoco, Paraguay, Parana, Uruguay

Important cities : Buenos Aires, Rio de Janeiro, Montivideo, Quito, Santiago, La Paz, Lima, Bogota, Valparaiso, Sao Paulo, Belem, Caracas, Manaus.

Facts about Europe

Latitude : 35° N and 73° N

Longitude : 25° W and 65° E

Area : 10,530,750 sq. km (approx.) (7.1%); greatest length north to south 3,860 km; breadth east to west 5,300 km.

Population : 741 million (mid–2014) [10.24% of world population]

Oceans and Seas : Atlantic Ocean, Arctic Ocean, Mediterranean Sea, Caspian Sea, Black Sea, White Sea, North Sea, Norwegian Sea, Baltic Sea, Gulf of Bothnia, Gulf of Finland, Bay of Biscay, Aegean Sea, Adriatic Sea.

Highest and Lowest Points : Mt. Elbrus (5,642 m) and Caspian Sea (–28.0 m) respectively.

Straits : Straits of Gibraltar

Lakes : Lake Ladoga, Onega, Peipus, Vanern, Vaitern.

Islands : British Isles, Iceland, Sardinia, Sicily, Crete.

Mountains : Alps, Pyrenes, Appenines, Dinaric Alps, Carpathians, Transylvanian Mts., Balkans, Caucasus, Urals.

Plateaus : Plateau of Bohemia, Plateau of Spain, Central Massif.

Rivers : Volga, Danube, Rhine, Po, Dnieper, Don, Vistula, Elbe, Oder, Seine, Loire, Garrone, Douro, Tagus Ural.

Important cities : London, Paris, Madrid, Antwerp, Amsterdam, Bonn, Moscow, Copenhagen, Oslo, Stockholm, Frankfurt, Berlin, Warsaw, Rome, Venice, Athens, Budapest, Belgrade, Munich, Prague, Vienna etc.

Facts about Australia

Australia is an island continent and a British Dominion.

Australia with New Zealand, Tasmania, New Guinea and the Pacific Islands (Micronesian, Melanesian and Polynesian Islands) is called Australasia by some geographers while some others call it 'Oceania', which includes proximate islands (Caribbean countries etc.). Oceania contains 39 million population which is 0.54% of total world population in 2014.

Latitude : 12° S and 38°S

Longitude : 114° E and 154°E

Area : 7,830,682 sq. km (approx. 5.3% of the world).

Population : Oceania—39 million (mid–2014)

Oceans : Pacific Ocean, Indian Ocean.

Seas : Tasman Sea, Timor Sea, Arafura Sea, Gulf of Carpentaria, Coral Sea, Great Australian Bight.

Highest Point : Puncak Jaya (4884 m) in island of New Guinea [Kosciuszko (2,228 m.) in Australian main land], Mt. Wilhelm (4509 m.) in Papua New Guinea.

Lowest Point : Lake Eyre (–15.8 m)

Straits : Bass Strait

Lakes : Lake Eyre

Islands : Tasmania

Mountains : Great Dividing Range

Plateaus : Western Plateau

Deserts : Gibson Desert, Great Sandy Desert, Great Victoria Desert, Simpson Desert.

Important Cities : Sydney, Melbourne, Adelaide, Brisbane, Darwin, Canberra, Hobart, Perth.

Oceans on The Earth

- There are four oceans. In order of their size, they are : Pacific Ocean, Atlantic Ocean, Indian Ocean and Arctic Ocean.

Pacific Ocean

- The explorer Ferdinand Magellan, who circumnavigated the Earth, named the ocean 'Pacific' meaning calm or peaceful.
- The Pacific Ocean (Area : 166,240,000 sq. km) is the largest ocean of the world.
- It is the deepest ocean with an average depth of 4,200 m.
- The Mariana Trench is the world's deepest trench with a depth of 11,033 metres (36,201 feet).
- Most of the islands of this ocean are of volcanic or coral origin.

Atlantic Ocean

- The Atlantic Ocean (Area : 8,65,60,000 sq. km) is the second largest ocean in the world.
- Its name is derived from Atlas, a Titan (giant) in Greek mythology.
- The Atlantic Ocean has the longest coastline.
- The Atlantic Ocean is the busiest ocean for trade and commerce since its shipping routes connect the two most industrialized regions, namely Western Europe and N.E. United States of America.
- The Atlantic Ocean was formed millions of years ago when a rift opened up in the Gondwanaland and the continents of South America and Africa separated. The separation continues even today and the Atlantic Ocean is still widening.
- The continental islands of Newfoundland and British Isles are the major ones.
- Volcanic islands are fewer and they include those of Cuba, Jamaica and Puerto Rico. Iceland is the largest island of volcanic origin.

Indian Ocean

- The Indian Ocean (Area : 73,430,000 sq. km) is the only ocean named after a country.

- The Indian Ocean is deeper than the Atlantic Ocean.
- It contains numerous continental islands, Madagascar and Sri Lanka are being the largest ones.
- Some of the islands of volcanic origin are those of Mauritius, Andaman and Nicobar, Seychelles, Maldives and Lakshadweep are of coral origin.

South Indian Ocean

- Warm currents : 1. South Equatorial 2. Mozambique 3. Madagascar 4. Agulhas.
- Cool Currents : 1. Antarctic drift 2. West Australian currents.

Arctic Ocean

- The Arctic Ocean (Area : 1,32,30,000 sq. km) is the smallest of all the oceans.
- It lies within the Arctic Circle, hence the name Arctic Ocean.
- The North Pole lies in the middle of the Arctic Ocean.
- Most of the parts of Arctic Ocean remains frozen with thick ice for most of the days every year.
- It is the shallowest of all oceans, with an average depth of 1,500 m.
- It has the least salinity of all the oceans. It has a salinity of 20 unit per thousand.

Ocean Currents

- The flow of a large amount of water in a definite direction with a great intensity is known as Ocean Current.
- Ocean Currents are of two types–Hot and Cold.

Hot Currents

- The currents flowing from tropical zones of lower latitudes to higher temperate and sub polar zones are known as hot water currents.

Cold Currents

- The currents flowing from higher latitudes to lower latitudes are known as cold water currents.
- The only exception to the conduction of ocean currents is found in the Indian Ocean. The flow of currents changes here with a change in the direction of the Monsoon Winds. The hot currents flow towards cooler oceans and the cold currents flow towards the warmer oceans.

Biosphere

- The part of the Earth where life exists is called the Biosphere ('bios' means 'life').
- The Earth is the only planet of the solar system that supports life. Life is possible because of its unique lithosphere, hydrosphere and atmosphere.

Lithosphere

- The uppermost layer of the Earth's crust which is capable of supporting life is called Lithosphere.
- The Lithosphere (or land) covers two-sevenths or 29.22% (14,90,41,182 sq. km) of the total surface area of the earth.

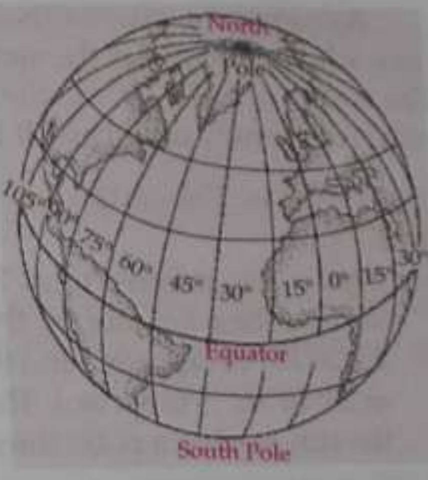
Hydrosphere

- Hydrosphere (or sea) covers five-sevenths or more accurately 70.78% (36,10,59,226 sq. km) of the total surface area of the earth.

- Water is freely available in the gaseous, liquid and solid state.
- It is necessary for carrying out chemical reactions within the bodies of the living organisms.
- Water also dissolves and transports nutrients from the soil to the plants.
- It is used by plants for making food.

Latitude and Longitude

Any location on Earth is described by two numbers—its *latitude* and its *longitude*.



Latitude

On a globe of the Earth, lines of latitude are circles of different size. The longest is the equator, whose latitude is zero, while at the poles—at latitudes 90° north and 90° south (or –90°) the circles shrink to a point.

Longitude

On the globe, lines of constant longitude ('meridians') extend from pole to pole.

Every meridian must cross the equator. Since the equator is a circle, we can divide it-like any circle–into 360 degrees, and the longitude of a point is then the marked value of that division where its meridian meets the equator.

For historical reasons, the longitude (meridian) passing the old Royal Astronomical Observatory in *Greenwich, England,* is the one chosen as *zero longitude.* Located at the eastern edge of London, the British capital, the observatory is now a public museum and a *brass band* stretching across its yard marks the *'prime meridian'*.

A line of longitude is also called a meridian, derived from the Latin, from meri, a variation of 'medius' which denotes 'middle', and diem, meaning 'day'. The word once meant "noon", and times of the day before noon were known as 'ante meridian', while times after it were 'post meridian'. Today's abbreviations a.m. and p.m. come from these terms, and the Sun at noon was said to be "passing meridian". All points on the same line of longitude experienced noon (and any other hour) at the same time and were therefore said to be on the same "meridian line".

Local Time (LT) and Time Zones

Two important concepts, related to latitude and (especially) longitude are Local Time (LT) and Universal Time (UT)

Longitudes are measured from zero to 180° east and 180° west (or –180°), and both 180-degree longitudes share the same line, in the middle of the Pacific Ocean.

As the Earth rotates around its axis, at any moment one line of longitude "the noon meridian" faces the Sun, and at that moment, it will be noon everywhere on it. After 24 hours the Earth has undergone a full rotation with respect to the Sun, and the same meridian again faces noon. Thus each hour the Earth rotates by 360/24 = 15 degrees.

The Date Line and Universal Time (UT)

Longitude determines only the hour of the day–not the date, which is determined separately. The international date line has been established–most of it following the 180th meridian–where by common agreement, whenever we cross it the date advances one day (going west) or goes back one day (going east).

That line passes the *Bering Strait* between Alaska and Siberia, which thus have different dates, but for most of its course it runs in mid-ocean and does not inconvenience any local time keeping.

Astronomers, astronauts and people dealing with satellite data may need a time schedule which is the same everywhere, not tied to a locality or time zone. The *Greenwich Mean Time*, the astronomical time at Greenwich (averaged over the year) is generally used here. It is sometimes called Universal Time (UT).

Heat Zones of The Earth

Torrid Zone

- This is also referred to as Tropical zone. The Tropics is a region on the Earth surrounding Equator by the Tropic of Cancer in the northern hemisphere at 23°26′16″ N (approx.) and the Tropic of Capricorn in the southern hemisphere at 23°26′16″ S (approx.). The Tropics include all the areas on the Earth where the sun reaches a point directly overhead at least once in a year.
- This area receives maximum heat and is called the Torrid (hot) Zone.

Frigid Zone

- Near the polar regions, the rays of the Sun are very slanting and so it is very cold.
- The region/area between the Arctic Circle and the North Pole in the Northern Hemisphere is called the Frigid zone.
- There are similar regions in the Southern Hemisphere between the Antarctic Circle and the South Pole, also called the Frigid Zone (frigid means cold).

Rotation of the Earth

- The Earth spins (rotates), west to east on its axis once in 24 hours approximately.
- The Earth's axis is not vertical. It makes an angle of 23°30′ with the vertical or 66°30′ with the plane of the Earth's orbit.
- The Earth's axis always remains pointed in the same direction (towards the Pole Star) as the Earth moves around the Sun. The tilt of the Earth's axis is known as the inclination of the Earth's axis.
- Movements of tides are mostly determined by rotation of the Earth.

Effect of the Tilted Axis on Day and Night

- Rotation of the Earth on its tilted axis causes days and nights to be of different length in different parts of the Earth.
- Since the Earth's axis is tilted in the same direction, the orientation of the Earth's axis to the Sun's rays is constantly changing as the Earth moves around the Sun. This results in a continuous change in the length of days and nights throughout the year.

Perihelion

- The position of the earth or any other planet in its orbit when it is at its nearest point to the sun.
- The earth reaches its perihelion about 3rd January at a distance of about 147 million kilometer near one extremity of the major axis of the earth's elliptical orbit, the axis being called Apsides line.

Aphelion

- The position of the earth or any other planet in its orbit when it is at its distant point from the sun.
- The earth reaches its aphelion on 4th July when the earth is at a distance of 152 million kilometer near the other extremity of the major axis.

Solstice

- Solstice is one of the two dates in the year on which the sun reaches greatest altitude north or south of the equator and is directly overhead along one of the lines of the tropics.

Summer Solstice

- On June 21, the earth is so located in its orbit that the sun is overhead on the Tropic of Cancer (23½°N).
- On this date the northern hemisphere is tipped towards the sun having the *longest day*, while the southern hemisphere is tipped away from the sun having the *shortest day*.

Winter Solstice

- On December 22, the earth is in an equivalent position on the opposite points in its orbit, so the southern hemisphere is tipped towards the sun and the northern hemisphere away from it.
- The sun is overhead on the Tropic of Capricorn (23½°S), resulting in the *shortest day* in the northern hemisphere.

Equinoxes

- Two days in a year when day and night are equal throughout the world are equinoxes.
- Falling midway between the dates of solstices, on these dates, the earth's axis lies at 90° to the line joining the centres of the earth and the sun and neither the northern nor the southern hemisphere is inclined towards the sun.
- The '*vernal equinox*' occurs on March 21 and it is also called the spring equinox in the northern hemisphere.
- The '*autumnal equinox*' occurs on September 23.

Midnight Sun

- This phenomenon is observed in the Arctic and Antarctic zones around mid-summer, when the sun does not sink below the horizon throughout 24 hours of the day and therefore, may be seen at midnight.
- This is the direct consequence of the inclination of the axis of the earth to the plane of the orbit.
- Norway is the place of midnight sun where the sun is continuously visible between May and July.
- In the southern hemisphere, the phenomenon is seen in the Antarctica continent.

Eclipses

- An Eclipse occurs when the sun, moon and earth are in a straight line.
- A '*solar eclipse*' occurs between sunrise and sunset on new moon when the moon passes directly in front of the sun so that its shadow lies on the earth. In other words, the moon lies between the sun and the earth.

- The *'lunar eclipse'* takes place when the earth comes in between the sun and the moon so that the shadow of the earth is cast on the moon.
- A lunar eclipse takes place on a full moon.
- Generally a total of seven eclipses, including solar and lunar eclipses, take place every year.

Atmosphere

- The envelope of air that completely surrounds the earth is known as atmosphere.
- The atmosphere extends to about 1000 km from the surface of the earth. But 99% of the total mass of the atmosphere is found within 32 km.
- This is because the atmosphere is held by the gravitational pull of the earth.

Composition of the Atmosphere

1. Nitrogen	78%	2. Oxygen	21%	3. Argon	0.93%
4. Carbondioxide	0.03%	5. Neon	0.0018%	6. Helium	0.0005%
7. Ozone	0.0006%	8. Hydrogen	0.00005%		

- Carbon dioxide is present in small quantity in the atmosphere.
- It is an important constituent of air because it has the ability to absorb heat and thus keep the atmosphere warm, thereby, balancing the heat of the earth.
- Water vapour is the most significant component of the atmosphere as far as its effect on weather is concerned although its quantity varies considerably from practically none (0) to up to about 4% by volume.
- Water vapour is the source of all clouds and precipitation (rain, hail storm etc). Water vapour, like carbon dioxide, has the ability to absorb heat energy. It also regulates the hydrological cycle.
- Dust intercepts and reflect incoming insolation.
- The polluted particles present in the air not only absorb larger amount of insolation but also greatly absorb the terrestrial radiation.
- Dust in the atmosphere contributes to the red and orange colour of sunrise and sunset.

Layers of the Atmosphere

There are five distinct layers of the atmosphere–(a) Troposphere, (b) Stratosphere, (c) Mesosphere, (d) Thermosphere and (e) Exosphere.

Troposphere

- This is the first layer of the atmosphere. It extends to a height of 18 km at the equator and 8 km at the poles.
- In this layer temperature decreases with height. This is due to the fact that the density of air decreases with height and so the heat absorbed is less. It contains more than 90% of gases in the atmosphere.
- Since most of the water vapour form clouds in this layer, all weather changes occur in the troposphere (*'tropo'* means 'change').
- The height at which the temperature stops decreasing is called tropopause. Here the temperature may be as low as –58° C.

Stratosphere

- This the second layer of the atmosphere. It extends from the tropopause to about 50 km.

- Temperature increases due to the absorption of the ultraviolet radiation of the Sun by ozone present in this layer. The temperature slowly increases to 4°C.
- This layer is free from clouds and associated weather phenomena. Hence, it provides ideal flying conditions for large jet planes.
- At about 50 km the temperature begins to fall again. This marks the end of the stratosphere. The end of the stratosphere is called the stratopause.

Mesosphere

- Above the stratosphere lies the mesosphere.
- The mesosphere extends to a height of 80 km.
- Here the temperature decreases again, falling as low as –90°C.
- The end of this layer is known as the mesopause.

Thermosphere

- The thermosphere lies above the mesosphere.
- This layer extends to a height of about 640 km.
- In this layer temperature rises dramatically, reaching upto 1480°C.
- This increase in temperature is due to the fact that the gas molecules in this layer absorb the X-rays and ultraviolet radiation of the Sun.
- This results in the break up of the gas molecules into positively and negatively charged particles or ions. Thus, this layer is also known as the ionosphere.
- The electrically charged gas molecules of the thermosphere reflect radio waves from the Earth back into space. Thus, this layer also helps in long distance communications.
- The thermosphere also protects us from meteors and obsolete satellites, because its high temperature burns up nearly all the debris coming towards the Earth.

Exosphere

- This layer lies above the thermosphere.
- The exosphere extends beyond the thermosphere upto 960 km.
- It gradually merges with interplanetary space.
- The temperatures in this layer range from about 300°C to 1650°C.
- This layer contains only traces of gases like oxygen, nitrogen, argon and helium because the lack of gravity allows the gas molecules to escape easily into space.

How the Sun Creates Energy

- Hydrogen and helium are the predominant gases that constitute the Sun. The proportion of hydrogen to helium is 3 : 1.
- The core of the Sun acts like a gigantic nuclear reactor and converts huge quantity of hydrogen into helium. In this process of nuclear fusion, the Sun releases tremendous amount of energy in all directions.
- The Sun radiates energy (both heat and light) in all directions.
- Because of its small size in relation to the Sun, the Earth intercepts only a small part of the Sun's radiant energy.
- Solar radiations are the primary source of heat and light to the Earth.

Insolation

- The incoming solar radiation (energy intercepted by the Earth) is known as insolation and it is received in the form of short waves.

Terrestrial Radiation

- The Sun's energy absorbed by the Earth's surface when radiated out into space is called terrestrial radiation.

Weather and Climate

- Weather is the description of the atmospheric conditions of a particular place at a particular time for a short period of time.
- Climate is the composite or integrated picture of the weather conditions over a long period of time.
- Climatic data is based on calculated averages of data recorded over a period of 35 years. The classical period is 30 years, as defined by WMO.

Atmospheric Pressure

- Atmospheric pressure is the pressure at any point on the surface of the Earth due to the weight of the column of air above that point.
- Standard sea level pressure is 76 cm or 29.92 inches on this scale.
- Another pressure unit used by meteorologists in drawing weather charts is milli bars (mb).
- One bar is divided into 1000 millibars. Millibars are now known as hectopascals.

Pressure Measuring Instruments
1. Mercurial Barometer (or Fortin's Barometer)
2. Aneroid Barometer
3. Altimeter or Altitude Barometer
4. Barograph (automatic recording Aneroid Barometer)
5. Microbarometer
6. Microbarovariograph

Winds

- Wind is the movement of air caused by the uneven heating of the Earth by the Sun.
- Sometimes wind blows gently, refreshing us. At other times, it blows strongly creating storms that cause widespread damages.
- We need measurements of two quantities : direction and speed, to give a description of the wind.

Wind Measurement Instruments
Windvane or Weather-cock measures the wind-direction.
Anemometer measures the wind velocity.

Trade Winds

- They blow from the Sub-tropical High Pressure Belt to the Equatorial Low Pressure Belt in the tropics between 30° North and 30° South latitudes.
- They blow as the N.E. Trades in the Northern Hemisphere and as the S.E. Trades in the Southern Hemisphere.
- The name 'Trade' is derived from a nautical expression 'to blow tread' meaning to blow along a regular path or 'tread'.

Westerlies

- They blow from the Sub-tropical high Pressure Belt to the Sub-polar low Pressure Belt in the temperate latitudes between 30° and 60°, on either side of the Equator.
- They are more constant and stronger in the Southern Hemisphere because there are no large landmasses to interrupt them.
- In places they become so strong that these winds are known as the Roaring Forties or the Brave West Winds and the Furious Fifties.
- The belts of the Westerlies move north and south following the Sun's movement. These are known as Westerlies because they blow out of the west.

Polar Winds

- They blow from the Polar High Pressure Belt to the Sub-polar Low Pressure Belt between latitudes 60° and the poles on both sides of the Equator.
- These winds blow from the east to form the Polar Easterlies.
- They are more regular in the Southern Hemisphere.
- Polar winds are extremely cold and dry.

Climatic Winds or Periodic Winds

- These winds change their direction along with change in time or change in climate. Land and sea breezes and the Monsoon winds are typical examples of periodic winds.

Monsoon Winds

- Monsoon winds are seasonal winds characterised by a complete reversal in their direction from one season to another.
- They blow from the sea to the land in summer.
- They blow from the land to the sea in winter.

Internal Structure of The Earth

The Earth's Crust

- The outermost solid cover or shell of the earth is known as the earth's crust.
- The thickness of the crust is about 30 km.
- It is thicker in the region of the continents and thinner in the region of the ocean floors.
- The density of the rocks in the earth's crust ranges from 2.7 to 3 g/c.c (grams per cubic centimeter).
- The upper part of the crust consists of silica and aluminium in greater proportions. That is why, it is called 'Sial'.
- Whereas the lower part of the crust is called 'Sima' because the proportion of silica and magnesium is higher in this part.

Mantle

- This layer lies below the crust.
- Its thickness is about 2900 km and the density of substances in the mantle ranges from 3.0 to 4.7.

Core

- The earth's core lies below the mantle. Its thickness may be about 3,471 km.
- Its radius is 6,371 km., according to IUGG.
- It is divided into two parts–the outer core and the inner core. The outer core is probably in a liquid state and the inner core in a solid state.
- The core mainly consists of iron with some amount of nickel and sulphur (NIFE).
- After the mantle, the earth's density goes on increasing rapidly towards its centre and finally is more than 13.
- The temperature of the central part of the earth may be about 5000°C.
- The study of the earth's interior helps us to understand the original rocks in the earth's crust and their later transformation.

Rocks

- The solid parts of the earth's crust are called rocks. Most of the rocks are made up of two or more minerals.
- In the same type of rocks, the proportions of minerals may be different in different areas.
- Rocks may not always necessarily be hard.
- Minerals are obtained from rocks.
- Rocks are classified in three main types depending on the process of their formation : (a) Igneous, (b) Sedimentary, (c) Metamorphic.

Igneous rocks

- Hot lava pours out at the time of volcanic eruptions and cools down later on, forming rocks.

Igneous rocks	Metamorphic rocks
Granite	Gneiss
Gabbro	Sarpentine

- The molten materials known as magma, sometimes cool down beneath the earth's crust, again forming rocks.
- Both these types of rocks are known as Igneous rocks.
- When the earth's surface first became solid after it cooled down from its hot liquid state, the original rocks of the earth's crust were formed. They are the Primary Igneous rocks, which are usually not found today.
- Igneous rocks are generally harder and granular.
- There are no layers in Igneous rocks.
- Fossils are not found in Igneous rocks.
- The formation of Igneous rocks takes place beneath and above the surface of the earth.
- Rocks formed by the cooling of molten matter beneath the earth's surface are called intrusive igneous rocks. 'Granite' and 'Gabbro' are the main examples of these rocks.
- The intrusive rocks are thus crystalline rocks.
- Sometimes, the molten matter oozes out through cracks in the earth's crust and spreads on the surface, forming extrusive igneous rocks.
- Gabbro, Obsidian, Basalt etc are examples of extrusive igneous rocks.
- A very large area of the Deccan Plateau consists of basalt rocks.
- These rocks contain silica from 40 to 80%, others are felspar, magnesium and iron etc.
- Other examples of Igneous rocks are–Granite, Pumic stone, Basalt and Gabbro.

Sedimentary rocks

- They are formed by the deposition, sedimentation and lethification of sediments over a long period of time.
- As layers over layers get deposited, over a period of time, unified sedimentary rocks are formed on account of the tremendous pressure exerted by the layers above.
- Sometimes the remains of plants, dead animals etc are found in the deposited material. Such fossil containing sedimentary rocks are useful for studying life on earth.

- Sandstone, limestone, shale are some examples of sedimentary rocks.
- Limestone is white as well as black.
- Sandstone is dull white, pink, bright red or sometimes black.

Metamorphic rocks

- The nature of igneous and sedimentary rocks changes due to the effects of tremendous heat or pressure, and new, transformed rocks, called metamorphic rocks, are formed.
- Minerals in the rocks get restructured on account of heat and pressure. This brings about a change in the original formation of the rocks.

Sedimentary rocks	Metamorphic rocks
Limestone	Marble
Sandstone	Quartzite*
Shale/clay	Slate, Phyllite, Schist
Coal	Diamond

* Quartzite is a hard, non foliated metamorphic rock which was originally pure quartz sandstone. Sandstone is converted into quartzite through heating and pressure usually related to tectonic compression within orogenic belts.

Some examples of metamorphic rocks formed from igneous and sedimentary rocks :

Type of rock	Original rock	Metamorphic rock	Type of rock	Original rock	Metamorphic rock
Igneous	granite	gneiss	Sedimentary	coal	graphite coal
Igneous	basalt	homblend	Sedimentary	sandstone	quartzite
Sedimentary	limestone	marble	Sedimentary	shale/clay	slate, mica schist

Earthquakes and Volcanoes

Earthquakes

- The sudden tremors or shaking of the earth's crust is called an earthquake. When a part of the earth's surface moves backward and forward or up and down, the earth's surface 'quakes', and these are called the 'earthquake'.
- The earth's crust is made up of different parts of various sizes. They are called plates.
- Most of the earthquakes in the world are caused by the movements of the plates.
- 'Seismology' the special branch of Geology, It deals with the study of earthquake.
- 'Richter scale' and 'Mercalli scale' are the instruments to measure/record the magnitude and the intensity of an earthquake respectively.

Seismic Waves

- The place where the seismic waves originate beneath the earth's surface is called the focus of the earthquake.
- The epicenter is that point on the ground surface which is closest to the focus.
- Seismic waves are recorded on the seismograph. Seismic waves are mainly of three types–1. Primary waves, 2. Secondary waves and 3. Surface or Long waves.

The earthquake zones in India

- The Indian plate is moving from south to north. That is why there are earthquakes in the Himalayan region.
- Earthquakes occur in Assam, Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Tripura, Manipur, Mizoram, Andaman and Nicobar Islands, Jammu and Kashmir, the north-western region of Uttar Pradesh, the northern region of Bihar etc.

- During the last few years, there have been several earthquakes of varying intensities in Maharashtra and Gujarat.

Volcanic Activity

- Magma or molten rock is formed beneath the ground surface due to various reasons.
- This molten rock ruptures the ground and pours out. Sometimes, it cools down beneath the ground surface instead of pouring out.
- All these activities are called volcanic activities.
- Volcanic activities have been taking place since times immemorial.
- There are three types of Volcanoes :

  1. Active Volcanoes 2. Dormant Volcanoes 3. Extinct Volcanoes.

Volcanic eruptions

- The pouring out of the magma or molten rock through ground surface is called a volcanic eruption.
- At the time of eruption, the magma, steam, fragments of rock, dust and gaseous substances are ejected with great force from under the ground surface through a pipe like passage.
- The opening of this pipe on the earth's surface is known as the vent which forms a crater.
- The lava which is thrown into the sky during an eruption, falls to the ground in the form of solid fragments. Dark clouds gather in the sky and it begins to rain heavily.
- The volcanic ash and dust mixes with the rainwater giving rise to hot mud flows.

Types of Volcanic Eruptions

- Volcanic eruptions are classified into two types depending on the manner of ejection of the magma : 1. Central eruption, 2. Fissure eruption.

Central eruption

- This type of eruption is sometimes very explosive, because lava, steam, gas, dust, smoke, stone fragments are ejected from a narrow pipe from under the ground with greater intensity. This type of eruption gives rise to conical or dome-shaped hills.

  Some examples of volcanic mountains formed due to central eruption are Mt. Kilimanjaro in Africa, the Fujiyama in Japan and the Vesuvius and Mount Etna in Italy.
- It is basically poured acidic lava.

Fissure eruption

- A very long fissure (cracks) develops in the ground surface and so, the molten rock, rock fragments, steam and gases within, pour out slowly.
- These eruptions take place at a very slow speed. Since this lava is more fluid, it spreads over longer distances.
- The lava cools down on the ground over a period of time, increasing the thickness of the surface in that area. Basalt plateaus are formed due to these eruptions.

- Basalt plateaus are also found in Brazil in South America and Saudi Arabia in West Asia and Deccan plateau in India.
- In Maharashtra, the fertile black regur soil has been formed from basalt rocks. It is also called black cotton soil.

Various Landforms

Mainly there are three types of landforms—Mountains, Plateaus, Plains.

Mountains

The height of mountains are over 600 m and have conical peaks. On the basis of origin there are four types of mountains : Block Mountains, Residual Mountains, Accumulated Mountains and Fold Mountains.

Block Mountains

- The middle part of such mountains is lower and the parts on both the sides are higher. The middle lower portion is called as Rift valley. The longest rift valley is the valley of the Jordan river.
- Black Forest (Germany), Vindhyachal and Satpura (India), Salt Range (Pakistan) are some examples of block mountains.

Residual Mountains

- Such mountains are formed as a result of weathering. Examples— Aravalli, Nilgiri, Parasnath, Hills of Rajmahal (India), Siera (Spain).

Accumulated Mountains

- These are formed due to accumulation of sand, soil, rocks, lava etc on the Earth's Crust., e.g. Sand Dunes.

Fold Mountains

- These are formed because of the folds in the rocks due to internal motions of the earth. These are wavelike mountains which have numerous peaks and lows, e.g. Himalayas, Ural, Alps, Rockies, Andes etc.

Plateaus

- Plateaus are extensive upland areas characterised by flat and rough top surface and steep walls which rise above the neighbouring ground surface at least for 300 m.
- Generally the height of plateau ranges from 300 to 500 feet.

Intermountainous Plateaus : Plateaus formed between mountain, Example– Tibetan Plateau.

Mountainstep Plateaus : The flat region between a plain and the base of a mountain.

Continental Plateaus : These are formed when the Lacolith inside the Earth comes to the surface due to weathering. e.g. the Southern Plateau

Bank Plateaus : These are the plateaus on the banks of the oceans.

Domelike Plateaus : These are formed due to the movement of man and animals on the surface. e.g. Ramgarh Plateau.

Some plateaus having more than average height	
Tibetan Plateau	16,000 ft
Bolivian Plateau	11,800 ft
Columbian Plateau	7,800 ft

Plains

Plains can be defined as flat areas with low height (below 500 ft.)

Weathered Plains : The plains formed due to weathering by rivers, glacier, winds etc.

Loess Plains : These are formed by the soil and sands brought by winds.

Karst Plains : Plains formed due to the weathering of limestone.

Erosional Plains : Plains near the river banks formed by river erosion.

Glacial Plains : Marshy plains formed due to the deposition of ice.

Desert Plains : These are formed as a result of the flow of rivers.

Deposition Plains : Large plains are formed due to the silt brought by the rivers. Such plains are plains of Ganga, Sutlej, Mississipi, Hwang-Ho.

Forests

They are of the following types :

(a) **Tropical Evergreen Rain Forests** : Such forests are found in the equatorial and the tropical regions with more than 200 cms annual rainfall. The leaves of trees in such forests are very wide. Ex–Red wood, palm etc.

(b) **Tropical Semi Deciduous Forests** : Such forests receive rainfall less than 15 cms. Saagwan, saal, bamboo etc are found in such forests.

(c) **Temperate mixed Forests** : Such forests are a mixture of trees and shrubs. Corks, Oak etc are the major trees of these forests.

(d) **Coniferous Forests or Taiga** : These are evergreen forests. The trees, in these forests, have straight trunk, conical shape with relatively short branches and small needlelike leaves. Example–Pine, Fir etc.

(e) **Tundra Forests** : Such forests are covered with snow. Only Mosses, a few sladges and Lichens grow here in the summers. This type of vegetation is chiefly confined to the northern hemisphere (e.g. in Eurasia, North America and Greenland Coast).

(f) **Mountainous Forests** : Vegetation varies according to altitude.

Pastures (or Grasslands)

- They can be divided into two types :

(i) Tropical Pastures and (ii) Temperate Pastures

Tropical Pastures : They have different names in different countries. Savanna in Africa, Campos in Brazil, Lanos in Venezuela and Columbia.

Temperate Pastures : They are known by the following names—Praries in USA and Canada, Pampas in Argentina, Veld in South Africa, Rangelands or Downs in Australia and New Zealand, Steppes in Eurasia (Ukraine, Russia).

Land forms created by the river system

V-shaped valley

- A river flows with a greater velocity in the mountainous region and big, pointed fragments of rock also flow with a great speed along with the water.
- The river bed is scoured and down cutting starts, ultimately giving rise to a deep valley with steep sides. This valley is called a v-shaped valley.
- These valleys are found in mountainous regions.
- A deep and narrow valley with steep sides is called a gorge.
- The gorge of the river Ulhas in Thane district in Maharashtra and the gorge of the river Narmada at Bhedaghat near Jabalpur in Madhya Pradesh are well known.
- There are many gorges in the Himalayas.

Waterfall

- If there are both hard (resistant) and soft (less resistant) rocks in the course of the river, the less resistant rock is eroded faster.
- The resistant rock does not erode so easily. That is why, the river falls with a great speed from a cliff-like part of hard rock. This is called a waterfall.
- The Niagara Falls on the Niagara river is in North America.

Potholes

- In areas where the river bed consists of hard rock, the stones carried along with the river water due to the whirling impact of water.
- That is why holes of various shapes are formed in the rocky river bed. Such holes are called potholes.
- Many potholes are observed in the river bed of the Kukadi, Krishna, Godavari etc. in Maharashtra.

Meanders and ox-bow lakes

- Meanders are formed by lateral erosion. As the erosion increases over a period of time, the meanders in the river again starts flowing in a straight line.
- The loop previously formed then separates from the main course of the river. Water accumulates in this separated part.
- As this loop resembles on ox-bow it is called ox-bow lake. It formed due to impounding of water in the abandoned meander loop.

Fan-shaped plains

- In the region near the source of a river the tributaries joining the main river deposit materials carried by them on the banks of the main river.
- This deposition creates fan-like plains. They are called fan-shaped plains or alluvial fans.

Flood plains

- When, during the floods, the river-water overflows its banks and spreads in the surrounding areas, the silt carried by the water gets deposited in those areas. This creates flat plains on both the banks of the river. Plains created by this depositional work done during floods are called flood plains.
- The Gangetic Plain is a flood plain.

Natural levees

- When a river is over flooded, its water crosses its banks. At that time, the speed of the water is reduced, and the pebbles and stones carried by the river get deposited near the banks.
- On account of frequent floods, the area where these sediments are deposited near the bank of the river rises higher than the flood plain.
- This high wall is called a natural levee or natural embankment.
- Such levees are found on the banks of the Mississippi, the Huang-Ho etc, Southern bank of river Ganga.

Delta

- Delta was coined by Herodotus (the 'Father of History') after the Greek letter delta (Δ) because of the deltoid shape at the mouth of the Nile.
- A delta is a land form that is formed at the mouth of a river where that river flows into an ocean, sea, estuary, lake, reservoir, flat arid area or another river.

- Deltas are formed from the deposition of the sediment carried by the river as the flow leaves the mouth of the river. Over long periods of lime, this deposition builds the characteristic geographic pattern of a river delta.

Delta region

- A river meets a sea or a lake. The silt carried by the river is deposited on the bed near its mouth.
- The area near the mouth of the river gets gradually filled up by this deposition and gets raised causing an obstruction for the river to flow in a single channel. It, therefore, splits into two branches and meets the sea.

Land forms created by the actions of river

Erosion	Erosion Deposition	Deposition
V-shapedvalley	Meanders	Fan-shaped plains
Gorge	Ox-bow	Flood Plains
Potholes	Lakes	Delta
Waterfall		Natural Levees

- Over a period of time, there is deposition also at the mouth of these branches. In this manner, the main course of the river gets split into a network of small channels. These sub-channels are called distributaries.
- A triangular region of innumerable such distributaries is formed near the mouth of the river. This region is called the delta region.
- There are delta regions near the vent (opening) of the rivers Godavari, Ganga, Nile, Mississippi etc. Deltas are very fertile.
- The largest delta of the world is 'Ganges Delta'/'Sunderbans Delta' (350 km).

Glacier

- A mass of ice sliding down the slope from a snow-clad region is called a glacier. On an average a glacier moves 1 to 15 metres a day.
- While a glacier is moving, the friction of the ice at the bottom slows down the movement of the bottom layers.
- There are two main types of glaciers : 1. Continental Glacier and 2. Alpine Glacier.

Continental Glacier

- An extensive sheet of ice spreading across a vast region sometimes begins to move due to the pressure of the ice.
- This moving sheet of ice is called a continental glacier.
- Such glaciers are seen in Antarctica and Greenland.

Alpine or mountain glacier

- There are snow-field in the mountainous regions of the Himalayas, the Alps, the Andes, the Rocky mountains etc.
- The ice accumulating in these areas starts sliding down the slopes.
- This mass of ice sliding down from the mountains is called a mountain glacier or an alpine glacier.

Iceberg

- Blocks of ice break off from the continental glaciers and float away into the sea.
- A block of ice floating in the sea is called an iceberg. These icebergs are huge in size.

- The density of ice being slightly less than that of water, a very little portion of an iceberg is seen above the water and the rest of it is submerged under water.

Land forms of glaciation

- Various land forms are created on account of the transportation, erosion and depositional work of a glacier. Let us consider the major land forms thus created.

Cirque

- When the snow from the mountain peaks slides, it gets deposited in a hollow, if there is one on any side of the peak.
- The accumulated snow starts sliding down the slope. This causes friction at the floor and at the sides of the hollow, thus enlarging it further. This is called a cirque.
- The back wall of a cirque is like a high cliff and the floor is concave and huge in size. The total shape resembles an armchair.
- When a glacier melts completely, water accumulates in the cirque and forms a lake which is known as tarn.

Fiord

- Where the lower end of the trough is drowned by the sea it forms a deep steep-side inlet called 'Fiord' as on the Norwegian and South Chilean Coasts.

U-shaped valley

- When a glacier is flowing through a valley in a mountainous region, the sides of the valley get eroded. Ice causes friction on the sides of the valley.
- As the erosion of the sides is greater than that of the floor, a valley is formed with vertical sides and a wide floor. This valley is called a U-shaped valley.

Hanging valley

- In the mountainous region, many tributaries join the main glacier.
- The quantity of ice in a tributary is comparatively smaller. Hence, it causes less friction.
- The valley of a tributary is at a higher level than a valley of the main glacier, the valley of the tributary appears to be hanging. That is why, such a valley is called a hanging valley.

Moraine

- The material transported and deposited by a glacier is known as moraine.
- Moraines are made up of pieces of rocks that are shattered by frost action and are brought down the valley.

  Moraines are of the following types : 1. lateral moraine, 2. medial moraine,
  3. terminal moraine and
  4. ground moraines.
- After a glacier has melted, different land forms of deposition are seen.
- The oval-shaped hills of lesser height are called drumlins.
- Zig-zag hills, with many steep slopes, made up of long stretches of sand and gravel are called eskers.

Land forms created by the action of wind

Mushroom rock

- The wind blowing in desert regions erodes the rock near the ground surface to a great extent. At the same time, the upper part of the rock gets eroded to a lesser extent.

- As this is a continuous process, the foot of the rock becomes narrow.
- The top portion of the rock then looks like an umbrella. This land form is called a mushroom rock.

Sand dunes

- Sand gets transported from one place to another along with the wind.
- At a spot where the wind meets an obstruction or where the speed of the wind reduces, dunes are formed out of the sand which gets deposited.
- The side of the dune facing the wind has a gentle slope and the opposite side has a steep slope.
- Because of the slow speed of the wind, the sand on the gentle slope gets carried to the top and comes down the steep slope on the other side. Sand dunes gradually move forward in this manner.

Barkhan

- The fine sand particles carried by the wind get deposited when the speed of the wind is reduced forming crescent shaped dunes. Such hills are called barkhans.

Loess

- Loess is a soil finer than sand.
- Loess is a silt transported by the wind from the desert regions and deposited much further way.
- Loess transported from the desert regions of Central Asia has been deposited in layers in China. The plain they form is known as the Loess plain.

Groundwater

- Some water from the rainfall received on the earth's surface seeps through the ground.
- This water trickles down until it reaches an impervious rock.
- Water accumulated under the ground surface in this manner, is called ground water.
- Some rocks on the earth's surface are porous and some have cracks or joints. Water seeps in through these pores or joints.
- Groundwater gushes out in the form of springs.

Land forms created by the actions of groundwater

Sink holes

- Water on the ground surface seeps through limestone. Some portion of the limestone dissolves in that water. If this process takes place continuously, it makes holes in these rocks.
- As this process continues over a number of years, these holes get enlarged. These holes are called sink holes.

Caves

- In limestone region, water goes very deep through sink holes.
- If there is a layer of impervious and hard rock underneath, water flows horizontally on the impervious rock instead of going deeper.
- Hence, soft rocks get eroded and a cave is formed.

Stalactites and stalagmites

- Inside the cave created by groundwater under the ground surface in a limestone region, water is always seeping through the roof. This water contains calcium carbonate.
- As the seeping water evaporates, some of the calcium carbonate, it contains, is deposited on the cave's roof. This deposition continues to grow very slowly. Hence a column is seen growing from the roof towards the floor. It is called a stalactite.
- The water dripping on the floor of the cave also evaporates leaving behind calcium carbonate which accumulates over a period of time.
- A column then starts growing from the floor to the roof. This column which grows upwards is called a stalagmite.
- Stalactites and stalagmites are observed in the Parner Taluka of Ahmadnagar district, in Bastar District in Chhattisgarh and also in the Karst region of former Yugoslavia now Serbia and Montenegro.

Land forms created by the actions of sea waves

Sea Cliff

- The base of the rocks on the coast get eroded because of the impact of the ocean waves and notches develop in these rocks.
- The crest of the rock overhangs the notch. These notches in the rocks gradually extend landwards over a period of time. Then the crest falls and a steep cliff, which has receded away from the sea is formed.

Sea cave

- Rocks on the coast have many cracks. They become wider and wider with the impact of the waves, creating small caves. They are called sea caves.
- Such sea cliffs and sea caves are observed at Shrivandhan, Ratnagiri, Malvan, Vengurle etc.

Beach

- The fine sand and other material that flows along with the waves get deposited in a direction parallel to the sea coast.
- This deposition of sand is called a beach.
- There are extensive beaches in the coastal regions of the states of Maharashtra, Goa, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Odisha and West Bengal in India and in other countries like Bangladesh and Canada.

Sand bar

- A deposition of sand which results in a long, narrow embankment in the sea near the coast is called a sand bar.

Lagoon

- A shallow lake is formed between the sand and the sea coast. It is called a lagoon. Such a lake is called Kayal in Kerala.

The Indian Subcontinent : Position, Extent and Physical Features

Location of the Sub Continent

- Mainland of the Indian subcontinent, comprising India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal and Bhutan extends between 8°4'N and 37°6'N latitudes and between 68°7'E and 97°25'E longitudes.

- If the sixth country of this subcontinent Sri Lanka, is included, then it from 6°N latitude.
- The Tropic of Cancer (23½°N) passes through the middle of India.

Size and Extent of Subcontinent

- Total area of the Indian subcontinent is 44.9 lakh sq. km i.e. India 32,87,263 sq. km, Pakistan 7,96,095 sq. km, Bangladesh 1,48,393 sq. km, Nepal 1,47,181 sq. km., Bhutan 46,500 sq. km and Sri Lanka 65,610 sq. km From North to South this subcontinent stretches over 3,200 km and from east to west it is 3,000 km 82°30'E meridian helps in calculating the Indian Standard Time (IST) which is 5 hours 30 minutes ahead of the Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
- This very meridian (82½° E) dictates time in Sri Lanka and Nepal also.

Political Divisions of India

- India is divided into 29 States and 7 Union Territories.

Position and Extent of India and its Locational Advantage

- India forms part of the large continental land mass of Eurasia.
- It is located on one of the peninsulas of Southern Asia. The country extends from Kashmir in north to Kanyakumari in the south.
- The Arabian sea and the Bay of Bengal are situated on western and eastern side of peninsular India respectively.
- The latitudinal extent of the country is from 8°4' North to 37°6' North.
- The Tropic of Cancer (23½° N) which passes through the middle of the country measures from 68° 7' E to 97°25'E. The location of the country is in the northern and the eastern hemispheres.
- The importance of location of India is that it is located on the world's major sea routes.
- Due to its location, India has maritime contacts with south-west Asia and Africa on the west and south-east Asia in the east. Its location has given India an advantage of the route of the Suez Canal for trade with North America and Europe.

Size of India (in terms of area and population)

- India is the seventh largest country (in terms of area) in the world.
- The area of India is about 3.28 million sq. km.
- The area of India is nearly equal to the area of the continent of Europe excluding Russia.
- India is eight times as large as Japan. India ranks as the second largest country in terms of population (next to China only).
- No continent of the world except Asia has a largest population than that of India.
- India contains about one-sixth of the total population of the world.

Physical Divisions of the Indian Subcontinent

- A chain of high mountains radiate out from the Pamir Knot which lies just in the north of India
- In these mountains the Hindukush, the Sulaiman and the Kirthar in the east and the Himalayas in the west separate the Indian subcontinent from rest of Asia.

- Indian subcontinent can be divided into following physical divisions :
  - The Great Mountain Wall of the North
  - The Great Northern Plains
  - The Great Peninsular Plateau
  - The Coastal Plains
  - The Great Indian Desert
  - The Island Groups

The Great Mountain wall of the North

- The Himalayas, the highest mountain wall of the world, are situated on the northern boundary of India like an arc.
- From west to east the Himalayas are 2500 km long. The average breadth of the Himalayas is between 250 to 400 km.
- Mount Everest, the highest peak in the world, lies in these mountains in Nepal.

Division of the Himalayas

- The Himalayas consist of three parallel mountain ranges : (i) The Greater Himalayas, (ii) The Lesser Himalayas and (iii) The Outer Himalayas.

The Greater Himalayas (or Himadri)

- This is the loftiest of the three ranges of Himalayas. Mount Everest lies in this range.
- These snow-covered mountains give birth to many glaciers.
- The Ganga originates from this glacier.

Location	Important Passes
Jammu & Kashmir	Burzi-La, Joji-La
Hemachal Pradesh	Bara-La, Cha-La, Shipki-La
Uttarakhand	Niti-La, Lipu-Lekh-La
Sikkim	Jelep-La, Nathu-La
Arunachal Pradesh	Bomdi-La

The Lesser Himalayas (or the Himachal Himalayas)

- South of the Greater Himalayas, the range also lies parallel to it from west to east. This ranges 60 to 80 km wide and its average height ranges between 3500 to 4500 metres.
- Tourist centres like Shimla, Mussorie and Nainital are situated in this range.

The Outer Himalayas (or Shiwaliks)

- This is the southernmost and the third parallel range of the Himalayas with an average height of 900 to 1200 metres.
- Its breadth is only 10 to 50 km. Shivalik range is broader in the west.

Heights of Major Mountain Peaks in India

Peaks	Elevation● (in mts.)	Peaks	Elevation● (in mts.)
Godwin Austin (K-2)	8,611*	Masher Brum[1] (East)	7,821*
Kanchenjunga	8,586	Nanda Devi	7,817
Nanga Parvat	8,126*	Masher Brum (West)	7,806*
Gasher Brum	8,068*	Rakaposhi	7,788*
Broad Peak	8,051*	Kamet	7,756
Dasteghil Sar	7,885*	Saser Kangri	7,672

● Height in metres above mean sea level *Situated in Pak occupied Kashmir (PoK)

[1] Masher Brum is also known as K-1

The Great Northern plains

- The northern plains are divided into three sub-divisions. These are the Punjab and Haryana plains. The Ganga plains and the Brahamaputra valley.
- The Ganga plains form the largest lowland drained by the Ganga and its tributaries.
- The Yamuna is the most important tributary of the Ganga.
- The Ghaghara, the Gandak, the Kosi and the Tista are other tributaries of the Ganga.
- The Sone and the Damodar are tributaries of the Ganga while the Chambal and the Betwa are tributaries of the Yamuna from the peninsular plateau.
- The Ganga plain has an extremely gentle slope. Parts of the plain are subject to floods in the rainy season. In the lower course, the Ganga divides itself into tributaries to form a large delta along with the Brahmaputra.
- The Punjab and Haryana plains represent a part of the Indus basin.
- A low watershed separates these plains from the Ganga plains.

The Great Pensinsular Plateau

- Anamudi or Anaimudi (2,695 m) situated in Sahyadri range is the highest peak of the peninsula.
- The Deccan plateau includes the area to the south of the Vindhyas.
- The western edge of the plateau rises steeply from the Arabian Sea to form the Western Ghats (which includes the Sahyadri).
- The Deccan plateau slopes gently towards the east. The surface of the plateau is dissected into a rolling upland by a number of rivers.
- The elevation ranges from 300 to 900 metres.
- The eastern edge of the plateau is known as the Eastern Ghats.
- The north-western region of the Deccan plateau is covered by nearly horizontal sheets of lava. This region is called 'Deccan trap region.' The Deccan plateau is drained by many long east flowing rivers. These rivers originate in the Western Ghats, flow towards the east and enter the Bay of Bengal.
- The Godavari, the Mahanadi, the Krishna and the Cauvery are the major rivers that have built deltas along the coast.
- The Narmada and the Tapti rivers are west flowing.
- Both the rivers enter the Arabian Sea along the Gujarat coast.
- These rivers do not have deltas.

Major Plateaus : Marwar Upland, Central Highland, Bundelkhand, Malwa Plateau, Baghelkhand, Chhotanagpur Plateau (Hazaribagh Plateau, Ranchi Plateau and Raj Mahal Hills), Meghalaya Plateau, Deccan Plateau, Maharashtra Plateau, Karnataka Plateau, Telangana Plateau, Chhattisgarh Plain.

The Coastal Plains

- Narrow strips of flat land on eastern and western coasts are known as the East Coastal Plain and the West Coastal Plain respectively.

The West Coastal Plain

- This plain which lies between the Arabian Sea and the Western Ghats spreads from Gujarat in the north to Kanyakumari in the south.

- It is broader in the north and narrower in the south. This uneven plain has been dissected by many fast flowing rivers.
- Its northen part from Gujarat to Goa is called Konkan, while southern part from Goa to Kanyakumari is known as Malabar. Several lagoons (salt water lakes separated from the main sea by sand bars and spits) are found on the coastal plain.
- Important ports developed on its coast from north to south are : Kandla, Mumbai, New Jawahar Port Mumbai, Marmagao, Mangalore and Cochin.

The East Coastal Plain

- This broader coastal plain spreads along the Bay of Bengal from Odisha in the north to Kaynakumari in the south.
- Its northern part is known as Northern Circar plains and the southern part is called Coromandal Coast. Rivers like Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Cauvery form deltas on this plain.
- This coast is famous for rice cultivation.
- A large number of lagoons are also found here.
- Chilka and Pulicat lakes are fine examples of lagoons on our east coast.

The Great Indian Desert

- It lies to the west of the Aravali range.
- It extends over major part of Rajasthan and Sindh in Pakistan.
- This desert does not get much rain as the Aravali range run parallel to the south-western monsoon winds.
- It is in the rain shadow area of the Bay of Bengal current.
- Lake Sambhar is found here.

The Island Groups

- Lakshadweep is a group of 36 coral islands in the Arabian Sea.
- It is located 300 km to the west of the coast of Kerala.
- Andaman and Nicobar islands are a group of about 324 islands.
- Most of these islands are uninhabited.
- Andaman and Nicobar islands are separated by the Ten Degree Channel because 10°N latitude passes through this place.

Climatic Diversity in the Indian Subcontinent

- Due to the vastness of the country and a variety of relief features there are regional variations in the climate of India.
- The interior of the country, specially in the north, has a continental type of climate.
- The coastal areas have a more equable climate. In mountainous areas, altitude determines the climate. There is a great deal of variation in the amount of annual rainfall.
- In June, the highest temperature in Rajasthan may go up to 55°C. But, in Drass and Kargil the night temperature in January may go down to –45°C to –50°C.
- Mawsynram and Cherrapunji in Meghalaya have an annual rainfall of 11,873 mm (467 in) and 11,430 mm (450 in) respectively. But, in the Thar Desert the annual rainfall is less than 500 mm (20 in)

- Along the Malabar Coast (Kerala) the annual range of temperature is about 3°C. But, it is 20°C in Hissar, Ambala and other parts of the interior.

Soil Resources of the Indian Sub-continent

Soil

- Soil forms the upper layer of the earth's crust capable of supporting life.
- It is made up of loose rock materials and humus.
- The soil forming processes are mainly influenced by the parent rock, climate, vegetation and animal life.

Importance of Soil Resources

- Soil is an extremely important resource, especially in agricultural countries like India, Pakistan and Bangladesh.
- Most food items, like rice, wheat, pulses, fruits and vegetables and much of our clothing are derived from the soil directly or indirectly.
- Soil also gives us firewood, timber, rubber, fibres, etc. Food like milk, meat and eggs are obtained indirectly from the soil. Flowers, grass, plants and trees are also grown out of soil.

Soil Erosion and its types

- Removal of top layer of soil when it is exposed to wind and rain, is easily blown or washed away. This condition is known as soil erosion.
- Basically, soil cover is removed by two powerful agents :
  1. Running water and 2. Wind.

Types of Soil found in India

- Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) divides Indian soils into eight groups : (a) Alluvial soil (b) Black soil (c) Red soil (d) Laterites and Lateritic soil (e) Arid and Desert soil (f) Saline and Alkaline soil (g) Forest soil (h) Peaty and other organic soil. However, Indian soils are generally divided into four broad types : 1. Alluvial soils 2. Regur soils 3. Red soils and 4. Laterite soils.

Alluvial Soils

- This is the most important and widespread category. It covers 40% of the land area. In fact the entire Northern Plains are made up of these soils.
- They have been brought down and deposited by three great Himalayan rivers- Sutlej, Ganga and Brahmaputra and their tributaries.
- Through a narrow corridor in Rajasthan they extend to the plains of Gujarat.
- They are common in Eastern coastal plains and in the deltas of Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Cauveri.
- Crops Grown : Suitable for Kharif & Rabi Crops like cereals, Cottons, Oilseeds and Sugarcane. The lower Ganga-Brahmaputra Valley is useful for jute cultivation.

Regur or Black Soils

- These soils are of volcanic origin. These soils are black in colour and are also known as black soils.
- Since, they are ideal for growing cotton, they are also called black cotton soils, in addition to their normal nomenclature of Regur soils.
- These soils are most typical of the Deccan trap (Basalt) region spread over north-west Deccan plateau and are made up of lava flows.

- They cover the plateaus of Maharashtra, Saurashtra, Malwa and southern Madhya Pradesh and extend eastward in the south along the Godavari and Krishna Valleys.
- Crops Grown : Cotton, Jowar, Wheat, Sugarcane, Linseed, Gram, Fruit & Vegetable.

Red Soils

- Formed by weathering of crystalline and metamorphic mixture of clay and sand.
- These soils are developed on old crystalline Igneous rocks under moderate to heavy rainfall conditions.
- They are red in colour because of their high Iron-oxide (FeO) content.
- They are deficient in phosphoric acid, organic matter and nitrogenous material.
- Red soils cover the eastern part of the peninsular region comprising Chhotanagpur plateau, Odisha (Orissa), eastern Chhattisgarh, Telangana, the Nilgiris and Tamil Nadu plateau.
- They extend northwards in the west along the Konkan coast of Maharashtra.
- Crops Grown : Wheat, Rice, Millets, Pulses.

Laterite Soils

- The Laterite soils are formed due to weathering of lateritic rocks in high temperatures and heavy rainfall with alternate dry and wet period.
- They are found along the edge of plateau in the east covering small parts of Tamil Nadu, Odisha and a small part of Chhotanagpur in the north and Meghalaya in the north-east.
- Laterite soils are red in colour with a high content of iron-oxides; poor in Nitrogen and Lime.
- Crops Grown : Unsuitable for agriculture due to high content of acidity and inability to retain moisture.

Arid & Desert Soil

- Region : NW India. Covers entire area of the west Aravalis in Rajasthan and parts of Haryana, Punjab & Gujarat.
- Characteristics : Rich in Phosphates and Calcium but deficient in Nitrogen and humus.
- Corps Grown : Fertile if irrigated e.g. Ganganagar area of Rajasthan (Wheat basket of Rajasthan).

Agriculture in India

- About 65-70% of the total population of the country is dependent on agriculture.
- Approximately 48.9% of our population derives its livelihood from agriculture.
- It provides food to the second biggest population and the biggest population of cattle in the world.
- Our agro-based industries are fully dependent on raw material provided by agriculture.
- Agriculture with its allied activities accounts for 45% of our national income.

Types of Agriculture in India :

Subsistence Farming

- In this type of agriculture, farmers work hard to grow enough food to surv only.
- In this type of farming the produce is consumed mainly by farmer and h family.
- There remains no surplus to sell in the market.

Mixed Farming

- The combination of agriculture and pastoral farming is called mixed farming
- In this type of farming, cultivation of crops and rearing of animals are done together on the same farm.

Jhum/Shifting Cultivation

- This is a primitive form of agriculture, in which a plot of land is cultivated for a few years and then is deserted.
- This slash and burn method of farming is carried on in jungles of north-eastern part of India e.g. in Assam, Meghalaya, Mizoram etc.
- A plot of land is cleared for cultivation. As the yield decreases after two or three years, the plot is abandoned and a fresh clearing is made.

Extensive Farming

- This is a system of farming in which the cultivator uses a limited amount of labour and capital on relatively large area.
- This type of agriculture is practised in countries where population size is small and land is enough.
- Here, per acre yield is low but overall production is in surplus due to less population.
- Agriculture is done with the help of machines.

Intensive Farming

- This is a system of farming in which the cultivator uses large amount of labour and capital on a relatively small area.
- In countries where the size of population is big but land is less, this type of farming is done.
- Annually two or three crops are grown due to the demand of food for the large size of population.
- Agriculture is done with the help of manual labour.

Plantation Agriculture

- In this type of agriculture, trees or bushes are planted on huge estates.
- A single crop like rubber, sugarcane, coffee, tea or banana is grown.
- These crops are major items of export.

Problems of Indian Agriculture

- The low productivity of our agriculture is mainly due to the difficulties faced by our peasants.
- Indian agriculture is chiefly of subsistence type where a large manual labour is employed to work on farms to grow just enough food for the needs of the family and very little is left for marketing.

- A major part of the Indian soil has been impoverished because it has been under plough for the last 4000 or 5000 years.
- Deforestation, overgrazing and heavy rainfall have led to soil erosion.
- Divisions of land have led to fragmentation.
- The size of land holding is very small and uneconomic.
- The farmers are poor, illiterate and ignorant.
- They use primitive tools and out dated method.
- They lack financial credit and investment.
- Good seeds, fertilizers and improved technology are not available to them.
- They lack irrigation facilities and are still on the mercy of nature.
- Most of the farmers have no security against crop failure or loss caused by nature.
- Generally farmers are uneducated and have no scientific approaches.

Three Crop Seasons in India :

1. Rabi

- This season starts after the rainy season. Sowing begins in September-October and harvesting takes place in February-March.
- Wheat, barley, pulses and some oil seeds are grown in the Rabi season.

2. Kharif

- The Kharif season begins with the onset of the monsoons in June-July.
- The crop grows in the rainy season and harvesting takes place after the retreat of monsoon in September-October.
- Rice, maize, millets, groundnuts, cotton and jute are grown in the Kharif season.

3. Zayad

- This is the summer season for growing crops which remain till April, May and June.
- Products are mainly vegetables and fruits.

Green Revolution

- The increase in agriculture productivity of cereals that has taken place since the 1960s mainly as a result of introduction of high yielding varieties of wheat and rice and use of fertilizers, machines and irrigation etc., is known as green revolution.
- Green revolution has made us self-sufficient in food production.
- This has not only saved our much precious foreign exchange but has also made us self-reliant.
- But green revolution has proved more beneficial to rich farmers only, because it involves a lot of investment.

Land use Pattern of India

Uses of land	Percentage (%)	Uses of land	Percentage (%)
Cultivated land	43.41	Wasteland (arid, rocky and sandy areas)	6.29
Forested area	22.57	Area under non-agricultural use	6.29
Fallow land	10.85	Cultivable waste	4.41
		Pastures and meadows	3.45

- The total geographical area of India is 32.88 crore hectares.
- Of this, data is available for only 92.5% land area. Though land is put to different uses, but cultivation of land is its most important use.

Water Resources and Their Utilization in India

- India has 4% of water resources of the world, while it has to support 16% of the world population and 15% of livestock.
- The annual precipitation including snowfall, which is the main source of water in the country, is estimated to be of the order of 4,000 Billion Cubic Metres (BCM).
- The estimated precipitation during the monsoon season (June to September) is of the order of 3,000 BCM.
- The resources potential of the country, which occurs as natural run off in the rivers is about 1869 BCM, considering both surface and ground water as one system.
- Water resources of India can be divided into two parts :
  1. Surface Water Resources and 2. Underground Water Resources.

Surface Water Resources

- According to the estimate, India receives an average of 109 cm of rainfall annually.
- This rainfall amounts to 37,000 million cubic metre. Out of this, 12,500 million cubic metres evaporates and another 7,900 million cubic metres is absorbed by land. Only 16,600 million cubic metres water is available in our rivers.
- Out of this, only 6,600 million cubic metres of water can be used for irrigation.

Underground Water Resources

- Out of total rainfall, only 7,900 million cubic metres of water percolates inside/beneath the earth.
- Out of this, only 4,300 million cubic metres of water is able to reach the upper layer of the soil.
- This water is more important for agricultural production.
- Rest 3600 million cubic metres reaches the impervious rocks which can be used by digging wells or tubewells. Out of this only 2250 million cubic metres of water is economically viable.

Sources of Irrigation in india

There are various sources of irrigation which are :

(a)	Wells & Tubewells	46% of total irrigation
(b)	Canals	39% of total irrigation
(c)	Tanks	8% of total irrigation
(d)	Other Sources	7% of total irrigation (Dongs, Kuhls, Springs etc.)

Power Resources of India

India uses a large amount of fossil fuels as a source of energy along with a number of renewable sources of energy, viz., hydroelectric power, thermal power, petroleum, nuclear or atomic power, solar energy, wind energy, tidal energy, bio-gas etc.

Multipurpose Projects of India

Multipurpose river valley projects, once referred by Jawahar Lal Nehru as 'Temples of Modern India', present an integrating system of controlling floods, generation of hydroelectricity, irrigation, development of fishery and tourists spots, boating, navigation and draining away extra water. These projects aim at all round development of river valleys.

Multipurpose River Valley Projects

Project/River	Purposes	Name of Power Houses
Bhakhra-Nangal Project On river Sutlej 518 m long, 226 m high	1. Irrigation, 2. Hydroelectricity generation, 3. Soil conservation	1. Bhakhra, 2. Ganguwal, 3. Nangal, 4. Kotla
Damodar Valley Project On river Damodar, located in West Bengal and Jharkhand	1. Irrigation, 2. Generation of Hydro and Thermal power, 3. Navigation, 4. Flood control (Damodar has turned from a 'Valley of Sorrow' 'Valley of Plenty')	1. Maithon, 2. Tilaia, 3. Panchet Hill, 4. Bokaro, 5. Durgapur, 6. Chandrapura
Hirakud Project On Mahanadi river in Odisha; 4800 m long.	1. Irrigation, 2. Production of Hydel power, 3. Navigation for over 480 km.	1. Hirakud, 2. Chiplima
Tungabhadra Project At Malappuram on the river Tungabhadra, it is 2441 m long and 49.3 m high; in Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka.	1. Irrigation, 2. Generation of Hydro electricity	1. At Malappuram, 2. At Hampi, 3. On left side of Malappuram
Rihand Project On river Rihand	Hydroelectricity production.	Pimpri

Transport in India

- The present transport system of the country comprises several modes of transport including rail, road, coastal shipping, air transport etc.

Road Transport

- The total road length of the country increased from 3.99 lakh kms on 31st March, 1951 to 48.65 lakh kms as on 31st March, 2012, growing at a Compound Annual Growth Rate (CAGR) of 4.2%. About 60% freight traffic and 87.4% passenger traffic is carried by the roads.
- At present Indian road network of 48.85 lakh km. is the one of the largest in the world and consists of—

Expressways/ National Highways	92,851 km	Major District Roads, Rural and other roads	46,49,462 km
State Highways	1,42,687 km	Total length 48.85 lakh km (approx.)	

(Source : INDIA 2015)

National Highways

- They are constructed and maintained by the central government.
- The National Highways has 79,116 km. length comprising only 2% of the total length of roads, carries about 40% of the total traffic of India.
- The development and maintenance of the National Highways system is carried out through three agencies—1. National Highways Authority of India (NHAI),

2. State Public Works Departments (PWDs) and 3. Border Roads Organisation (BRO).

- In order to give boost to the economic development of the country, the government has embarked upon a massive National Highways Development Project (NHDP) in the country.
- The NHDP is the largest highway project ever undertaken in the country.
- The NHDP is being implemented mainly by National Highways Authority of India (NHAI).
- As on 31st March, 2012 around 99.1% of SHs (State Highways) was surfaced.
- The State/UT-wise break-up SHs shows that Maharashtra accounted for the largest share (19.8%) as on 31st March, 2012, followed by Karnataka (12.6%), Gujarat (11.2%), Tamil Nadu (6.6%) and Andhra Pradesh (6.5%). These five states accounted for about 56.7% of the total length of SHs.

Some Important National Highways (As on 23 June, 2012)

N.H. 1	Delhi – Ambala – Amritsar – Indo-Pak Border (456 km)
N.H. 2	Delhi – Agra – Kanpur – Varanasi - Kolkata (1,465 km)
N.H. 3	Agra – Gwalior – Indore – Nasik – Mumbai (1,161 km)
N.H. 4	Junction with N.H. 3 near Thane – Belgaum – Bangaluru – Ranipet – Chennai (1,235 km)
N.H. 7	Varanasi – Jabalpur – Nagpur – Hyderabad – Bangaluru – Madurai – Kanyakumari (2,369 km).
N.H. 8	Delhi- Jaipur – Ahmedabad– Vadodara – Mumbai (1,375 km)
N.H. 9	Pune - Solapur – Hyderabad – Vijayawada–Machhilipatnam (841 km)
N.H. 15	Pathankot – Amritsar – Bhatinda – Ganganagar – Bikaner – Jaisalmer – Barmer–Samakhiali (1,526 km).
N.H. 22	Ambala – Kalka – Shimla – Rampur – Indo-Tibet (China) Border near Shipki-La (459 km)
N.H. 24	Delhi – Bareilly – Lucknow (438 km)
N.H. 39	Numaligarh- Imphal – Palel – Indo – Myanmar Border (436 km)
N.H. 44	Nongstoin and connecting Shillong – Passi Badarpur – Agartala–Sabroom (723 km)
N.H. 47	Salem - Coimbatore - Trichur–Ernakulam–Thiruvananthapuram - Cape Commorin-Kanyakumari (640 km)
N.H. 48	Bangaluru – Hassan – Mangaluru (328 km)
N.H. 49	Kochi – Madurai – Dhanushkodi (440 km)
N.H. 55	Siliguri – Darjeeling (77 km)
N.H. 80	Mokamah – Raj Mahal–Farakka (310 km)
N.H. 102	Chhapra – Rewaghat–Muzaffarpur (80 km)
N.H. 205	Ananthpur – Renugunta–Chennai (442 km.)
N.H. 217	Raipur (Chhattisgarh)–Gopalpur (Odisha)–(508 km)
NH 229	Tawang–Bomdila–Ziro–Aalong–Pasighat (Arunachal Pradesh) (1,090 km)
N.H. 327 Ext.	Bangaon (Bariyahi Bazar) on NH 107–Supaul–Pipra (106)–Tribeniganj–Bhargama–Araria–Bahadurganj–Raniganj–Thakurganj–Galgalia (225 km)
N.H. 947	Sarkhej–Virumgaon–Jamnagar–Dwarka–Okha (461 km)
N.H. 953	Vyara (NH-6)–Netang–Rajpipla–Bodali (190 km)

- The longest National Highway in India is NH-7 (from Varanasi to Kanyakumari); which has a length of 128 kms in Uttar Pradesh, 504 kms in Madhya Pradesh, 232 kms in Maharashtra, 753 kms in Andhra Pradesh (including Telangana), 125 kms in Karnataka, 627 kms in Tamil Nadu i.e. total 2,369 kms.

State Highways and other Roads

- They are constructed and maintained by the state government.
- As on 31st March, 2012—
  - ★ Average road density of India—148 km per 100 sq. kms.
  - ★ Average road length per lakh population (census 2011)—402.03 kms.
  - ★ The length of NHs per 100 sq. kms of area—2.34 kms and the length of NHs per lakh population—6.35 kms.
  - ★ U.P. has the largest share (10.2%) of the total length of NHs, followed by Rajasthan (9.3%), M.P. (6.6%), Tamil Nadu (6.4%) and Rajasthan (5.9%). These five states accounted for about 38.4% of the total road length of NHs.
- Roads on the borders are constructed and maintained by the Border Roads Organisation (BRO).
- BRO was established in May 1960.
- BRO is a premier construction agency roads airfields, bridges, buildings, hospitals and schools.
- The BRO, through 'Project Dantak' is constructing and maintaining a large road infrastructure and executing other prestigious projects in Bhutan.
- The BRO is doing highly commendable jobs of construction and maintenance in Myanmar and Afghanistan too.

Rail Transport

- The Indian Railways have been a great integrating force for more than 160 years.
- From a very modest beginning in 1853, Indian Railways have grown into a vast network of 7,030 stations spread over a route-length of 64,015 km. with a fleet of 8,592 (43 steam, 4,963 diesel and 3,586 electric) locomotives, 49,110 passenger service vehicles, 5,985 other coaching vehicles and 2,11,763 wagons as on 31 March, 2009.
- Indian Railway network is the largest in Asia and world's second largest under one management.
- The first rail in India started in 1853 between Mumbai and Thane (34 kms).
- Indian Railway Board was established in March, 1905.
- Indian Railway was nationalised in 1950.
- There are three types of rail lines in India : 1. Broad Gauge, 2. Meter Gauge and 3. Narrow Gauge.
- The network runs multigauge operations extending over 1,08,706 (BG–86,526, MG–18,529 and NG–3,651) Track kilometres.

Gauge	Route	Contribution
Broad Gauge (1.676 mts)	54,257 km	84.81 %
Meter Gauge (1.000 mts)	7,180 km	11.22 %
Narrow Gauge (0.762 and 0.610 mts)	2,537 km	3.97 %
Total (as on 31st March, 2010)	63,974 km	100.00 %

- ➢ The management and governance of the Indian railways is in the hands of the Railway Board.
- ➢ Railways have been divided into 17 zones.
- ➢ Kolkata Metro Zone (17th zone) has been established on 29 December, 2010.

Divisions and Headquarters of the Zonal Railways

Zone	Headquarter	Divisions
Zones that started functioning on 1st April, 2003		
East Coast Railway	Bhubaneshwar	Khurda Road, Waltair and Sambalpur divisions of SER
South Western Railway	Hubli	Bangalore and Mysore divisions of, SR reorganized Hubli division of SCR, including Hospet-Toraagal (Earlier constituted to have Gutakal division of SCR as well.)
West Central Railway	Jabalpur	Jabalpur and Bhopal divisions of CR, reorganized Kota division of WR
North Central Railway	Allahabad	Reorganized divisions : Allahabad of NR, Jhansi of CR, and new Agra division
South East Central Railway	Bilaspur	Nagpur division and reorganized Bilaspur division of SER, new Raipur division
Zones that were created on 10th October, 2002		
North Western Railway	Jaipur	Jodhpur division and reorganized Bikaner division of NR, reorganized Jaipur and Ajmer division of WR
East Central Railway	Hajipur	Sonepur and Smastipur divisions of NER, Danapur, Mughalsarai and Dhanbad divisions of ER (was earlier constituted to have Katihar division of NFR as well).
Old Zones as they are after April, 2003		
Western Railway	Mumbai	Bhavnagar and Mumbai divisions, reorganized Ratlam, Rajkot and Vadodara divisions, new Ahmedabad division
Eastern Railway	Kolkata	Howrah, Malda, Sealdah and Asansol divisions
Central Railway	Mumbai	Bhusawal and Nagpur divisions, reorganized Mumbai CST and Solapur divisions, new Pune divisions (including Pune Kolhapur)
Southern Railway	Chennai	Chennai, Palghat, Thiruvananthapuram, Tiruchirapalli and Madurai divisions
Northern Railway	New Delhi	Ferozpur, Ambala, Lucknow and Moradabad divisions, reorganized Delhi division
North Eastern Railway	Gorakhpur	Lucknow and Varanasi divisions, reorganized Izzatnagar division
South Central Railway	Secunderabad	Reorganized Secunderabad, Hyderabad, Guntakal (including Bellary-Guntakal (MG) and Bellary-Rayadurg) and Vijayawada divisions, new Guntur and Nanded divisions.
South Eastern Railway	Kolkata	Kharagpur division, reorganized Adra and Chakradharpur divisions, new Ranchi division
North-East Frontier Railway	Guwahati	Katihar, Lumding, Tinsukia divisions, reorganized Alipurduar division, new Rangiya division

Air Transport

- ➢ Airways in India started in 1911.
- ➢ Indian National Airways Company was started in 1933.
- ➢ All the airway companies were nationalised in 1953 and were put under two corporations namely — Indian Airlines and Air India.
- ➢ Indian Airlines provides its services to the internal parts of India along with neighbouring countries of Nepal, Bangladesh, Pakistan, Afghanistan, Sri Lanka, Myanmar and Maldives.
- ➢ Air India provides its services to the foreign locations.
- ➢ Vayudoot was established in 1981 for domestic services, but was later merged in Indian Airlines.

Merger of Air India and Indian Airlines

Indian Airlines operates to 54 domestic stations along with its subsidiary Airlines 'Alliance Air'. Besides it also operates to 18 international stations.

The Indian Airlines has a fleet of 75 aircraft. 41 aircraft were expected to be added in its fleet by April 2010.

On the 1st March, 2007 the Union Cabinet approved the proposal to merge Indian Airlines and Air India. Accordingly, a new company, viz. National Aviation Company of India Limited (NACL) has been incorporated on 30th March, 2007 with its Headquarters at Mumbai.

The brand name of the new airlines is Air India (or Indian) and its logo is Maharaja.

GAGAN

GPS Aided Augmented Navigation (GAGAN) system is a prestigious satellite based augmentation system of India, jointly developed by Airports Authority of India (AAI) and Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO) for enhanced Air Navigation Services across the country.

Major International Airports of India

Name of Airport	Place
Chhatrapati Shivaji Int. Airport (Santa Cruz Airport)	Mumbai
Subhash Chandra Bose Airport (DumDum Airport)	Kolkata
Indira Gandhi International Airport	Delhi
Anna (Meenambkkam) International Airport	Chennai
Trivendram International Airport	Thiruvananthapuram
Guru Ramdasji (Rajasansi) International Airport	Amritsar
B. R. Ambedkar International Airport	Nagpur
Kampagowada (Bangaluru) International Airport	Bangaluru
Devi Ahilyabai Holkar International Airport	Indore (M.P.)
Calicut International Airport	Kozhikode (Kerala)
Veer Savarkar International Airport	Port Blair
Rajeev Gandhi International Airport	Hyderabad
Lokpriya Gopinath Bordoloi International Airport	Guwahati
Loknayak Jai Prakash Narayan International Airport	Patna
Goa International Airport	Goa
Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel International Airport	Ahmedabad
Mangalore International Airport	Mangalore
Aranmula International Airport	Pathanamthitta
Raja Bhoj International Airport	Bhopal
Lal Bahadur Shastri International Airport	Varanasi
Choudhary Charan Singh International Airport	Lucknow

Water Transport

- The Central Water Tribunal was established in 1887.
- Its headquarter is in Kolkata.
- The waterways of the country have been divided into Internal waterways and Oceanic waterways.

Internal Waterway

- This transport is through rivers, canals and lakes.
- India has got about 14,544 km of navigable waterways which comprise rivers, canals, backwaters, creeks etc.
- About 55 million tonnes of Cargo is being moved annually by Inland Water Transport (IWT).
- The waterway from Haldia to Allahabad was made a National Water way in 1986.
- The Inland Waterways Authority of India (IWAI) came into existence on 27 October, 1986 for development and regulation of inland waterways in the country.

IWAI
(Inland Waterways Authority of India)

The IWAI came into existence on 27 October, 1986 for development and regulation of inland waterways for shipping and navigation. The Authority primarily undertakes projects for development and maintenance of IWT infrastructure on national water ways through grant received from Ministry of Shipping. The Head Office of the IWAI is at NOIDA. The authority also has its regional offices at Patna, Kolkata, Guwahati and Kochi and sub-offices at Allahabad, Varanasi, Bhagalpur, Farakka, Hemnagar, Dibrugarh, Kollam, Chennai and Vijaywada.

Oceanic Waterway

- The peninsular bank is very important for this purpose.
- There are 13 large and 200 small ports on the major bank of 5600 kms.
- Large ports are maintained by the central government whereas small ports are included in the concurrent list and are managed by the state government.
- As on 31st March, 2014 the capacity of major ports was about 800.52 MMT against cargo traffic of 555.54 MMT handled in 2013-14. Thus the capacity utilization is 70%.
- Largest port of India is Jawahar Lal Nehru Port in Mumbai.
- The largest natural port is in Vishakhapatnam.
- Kandla in Gujarat is a tidal port. It has been made into a free trade zone.
- Haldia Port (WB) is said to be developed as the first Green Port of India.

Major Ports of India

Name	State/UT	River/Strait/Ocean
Kolkata	West Bengal	Hoogly River
Mumbai	Maharashtra	Arabian Sea
Chennai	Tamil Nadu	Bay of Bengal
Kochhi	Kerala	Arabian Sea
Vishakhapatnam	Andhra Pradesh	Bay of Bengal
Paradip	Odisha (Orissa)	Bay of Bengal
New Tuticorin	Tamil Nadu	Bay of Bengal
Marmagao	Goa	Arabian Sea
Kandla	Gujarat	Arabian Sea
New Mangaluru	Karnataka	Arabian Sea
Nhavasheva (Jawahar Lal Nehru Port)	Maharasthra	Arabian Sea
Ennore	Tamil Nadu	Bay of Bengal
Port Blair	Andman and Nicobar	Bay of Bengal

India Facts and Figures

- The state and union territory capitals are sorted according to the administrative, legislative and judicial capitals.
- The administrative capital is where the executive government offices are located. The legislative capital is where the state assembly convenes.
- The judicial capital is the location of the state or territorial High Courts of India.
- The date mentioned in the table refers to when the city became the capital of the state or territory.
- In the following table *S* and *W* refers to the summer and winter sessions respectively. *B* refers to the budget session of the legislature.
- The administrative capital is considered to be the *main* capital of the state.
- The former capital refers to a city which was the capital from admission into the Indian Union. An absence of a legislative capital means that it is administered by the Central government.

States and Their Capitals

State / UT	Administrative Capital	Legislative Capital	Judicial Capital	Since
Andaman and Nicobar Islands	Port Blair	—	Kolkata	1956
Arunachal Pradesh	Itanagar	Itanagar	Guwahati	1972
Andhra Pradesh	Hyderabad*	Hyderabad	Hyderabad	1956
Assam	Dispur	Dispur	Guwahati	1972
Former Capital : Shillong (1874-1972)				
Bihar	Patna	Patna	Patna	1936
Chhattisgarh	Raipur	Raipur	Bilaspur	2000
Chandigarh	Chandigarh	—	Chandigarh	1966
Dadra and Nagar Haveli	Silvasa	—	Mumbai	1961
Daman and Diu	Daman	—	Mumbai	1987
NCT-Delhi	Delhi	Delhi	Delhi	1956
Goa	Panaji	Porvorim	Mumbai	1961
Gujarat	Gandhinagar	Gandhinagar	Ahmedabad	1970
Former Capital : Ahmedabad (1960-1970)				
Haryana	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	1966
Himachal Pradesh	Shimla	Shimla	Shimla	1948
Jammu and Kashmir	* Srinagar (S) * Jammu (W)	* Srinagar (S) * Jammu (W)	Srinagar	1948

State / UT	Administrative Capital	Legislative Capital	Judicial Capital	Since
Jharkhand	Ranchi	Ranchi	Ranchi	2000
Karnataka	Bengaluru	Bengaluru	Bengaluru	1956
Kerala	Thiruvananthapuram	T'puram	Ernakulam	1956
Former Capital : Kochhi (1949-1956)				
Lakshadweep	Kavaratti	—	Ernakulam	1956
Madhya Pradesh	Bhopal	Bhopal	Jabalpur	1956
Maharashtra	Mumbai	*Mumbai (S+B) *Nagpur (W)	Mumbai	1818 1960
Manipur	Imphal	Imphal	Imphal	2013
Meghalaya	Shillong	Shillong	Shillong	2013
Mizoram	Aizawl	Aizawl	Guwahati	1972
Nagaland	Kohima	Kohima	Guwahati	1963
Odisha (Orissa)	Bhubaneshwar	Bhubaneshwar	Cuttack	1948
Former Capital : Cuttack (1936-1948)				
Puducherry	Pondicherry	Pondicherry	Chennai	1954
Punjab	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	Chandigarh	1966
Former Capital : Lahore (1936-1947) & Shimla (1947-1966)				
Rajasthan	Jaipur	Jaipur	Jodhpur	1948
Sikkim	Gangtok	Gangtok	Gangtok	1975
Tamil Nadu	Chennai	Chennai	Chennai	1956
Telangana	Hyderabad	Hyderabad	Hyderabad	2014
Tripura	Agartala	Agartala	Agartala	2013
Uttarakhand	Dehradun	Dehradun	Nainital	2000
Uttar Pradesh	Lucknow	Lucknow	Allahabad	1937
West Bengal	Kolkata	Kolkata	Kolkata	1905

★ According to the 'Andhra Pradesh Reorganisation Act 2014' Hyderabad is the joint capital of Telangana and Andhra Pradesh states for maximum 10 years period. The ancient town of 'Amaravati', place between Guntur and Vijayawada in central A.P. will be developed as the new Headquarter of Andhra Pradesh.

Population of India, States and UTs (Census 2011)

India			1,210,854,977
Uttar Pradesh	199,812,341	Jammu and Kashmir	12,541,302
Maharashtra	112,374,333	Uttarakhand	10,086,292
Bihar	104,099,452	Himachal Pradesh	6,864,602
West Bengal	91,276,115	Tripura	3,673,917
Meghalaya	2,966,889	Andhra Pradesh (including Telangana)	84,580,777
Madhya Pradesh	72,626,809		
Tamil Nadu	72,147,030	Manipur	2,721,756
Rajasthan	68,548,437	Nagaland	1,978,502
Karnataka	61,095,297	Goa	1,458,545
Gujarat	60,439,692	Arunachal Pradesh	1,383,727
Odisha	41,974,218	Puducherry	1,247,953
Kerala	33,406,061	Mizoram	1,097,206
Jharkhand	32,988,134	Chandigarh	1,055,450
Assam	31,205,576	Sikkim	610,577
Punjab	27,743,338	Andaman & Nicobar Islands	380,581
Chhattisgarh	25,545,198	Dadra and Nagar Haveli	343,709
Haryana	25,351,462	Daman and Diu	243,247
Delhi*	16,787,941	Lakshadweep	64,473

Note : After Telangana's birth as the 29th state of India
Population of Andhra Pradesh — 4,96,65,533
Population of Telangana — 3,52,86,757

Union Territories : Facts and Figures (Census 2011)

UT	Capital	Area in sq km	Population
Puducherry	Pondicherry	490	12,47,953
Chandigarh	Chandigarh	114	10,55,450
Andaman & Nicobar	Port Blair	8,249	3,80,581
Dadra & Nagar Haveli	Silvassa	491	3,43,709
Daman & Diu	Daman	111	2,43,247
Lakshadweep	Kavaratti	30	64,473

*National Capital Territory / Region (Census 2011)

State	Capital	Area	Population
Delhi	Delhi	1,483 sq km	1,67,87,941

Top 10 Most Populous Countries (Projected as of June 1, 2015)

Sl.	Country	Population	Sl.	Country	Population
1.	China	1,36,15,12,535	6.	Pakistan	19,90,85,847
2.	India	1,25,16,95,584	7.	Nigeria	18,15,62,056
3.	U.S.A.	32,13,62,789	8.	Bangladesh	16,89,57,745
4.	Indonesia	25,59,93,674	9.	Russia	14,24,23,773
5.	Brazil	20,42,59,812	10.	Japan	12,89,19,659

Source : *U.S. Census Bureau, International Data Base*

Wildlife Sanctuaries and National Parks in India

	Name	Location	Important Species
1.	Bandipur National Park	Mysore, Karnataka	Elepahant, Tiger, Bear, Sambhar, Panther
2.	Balphakram Sanctuary	Garo Hills, Meghalaya	Tiger, Elephant, Bison, Marbled Cat, Red Panda, Wild Water Buffalo.
3.	Chandraprabha Sanctuary	Varanasi, UP	Asiatic Lion, Tiger, Panther, Indian Gazelle, Sloth bear

Name	Location	Important Species
4. Corbett National Park	Nainital, Uttarakhand	Elephant, Tiger, Sloth bear, Nilgai, Panther, Sambhar
5. Dachigam Sanctuary	Jammu and Kashmir	Kashmir Stag (Hangul)
6. Dudhwa National Park	Lakhimpur Khiri, UP	Tiger, Panther, Sambhar, Nilgai
7. Ghana Bird Sanctuary	Bharatpur, Rajasthan	Siberian Crane, Spoonbill, Heron teal, Stork
8. Gir National Park	Junagarh, Gujarat	Asiatic Lion, Panther, Sambhar, Nilgai, Crocodile, Rhinoceros
9. Hazaribagh National Park	Hazaribagh, Jharkhand	Tiger, Leopard, Sambhar, Chital
10. Jaldapara Sanctuary	West Bengal	Tiger, Leopard, Sambhar, Chital
11. Kanha National Park	Mandla and Balaghat, MP	Tiger, Panther, Antelope, Barking Deer, Nilgai
12. Kaziranga National Park	Assam	Tiger, Great Indian one horned Rhinoceros, Wild Buffalo, Sambhar
13. Manas	Barpeta, Assam	Tiger, Elephant, Panther, Wild Buffalo, One horned Rhinoceros
14. Mudumalai Sanctuary	Nilgiri Hills, Tamil Nadu	Elephant, Dear, Pigs
15. Namdapha National Park	Tirap district, Arunachal Pradesh	Tiger and Elephant
16. Palamau	Daltonganj, Jharkhand	Tiger, Elephant, Panther, Leopard
17. Pakhal	Warangal, Telangana	Tiger, Panther, Chital, Nilgai
18. Periyar	Idukki, Kerala	Elephant,Tiger, Panther, Wild boar, Gaur, Sambhar
19. Ranganthitoo Bird Sanctuary	Karnataka	Birds
20. Shivpuri National Park	Shivpuri, MP	Tiger, Birds
21. Sunderbans	West Bengal	Tiger, Wild boar, Crocodile, Deer
22. Vedanthangal Bird Sanctury	Tamil Nadu	Birds
23. Wild Ass Sanctuary	Little Rann of Kutch, Gujarat	Wild Ass, Wolf, Nilgai, Chinkara

Important Irrigation and Power Projects

Name of the Project	Location	State	Purpose
Nagarjuna Sagar Multipurpose Project	River Krishna	Andhra Pradesh	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Pochampad Project	River Godawari	Andhra Pradesh	Irrigation
Lower Sileru Project	River Sileru (Godawari)	Andhra Pradesh	Hydro-electricity
Kakarpara Project	River Tapi	Gujarat	Irrigation
Kothagudam Project	Singareni Coalfields	Telangana	Thermal Power
Kosi Project	River Kosi	Bihar	Flood Control, Irrigation

Name of the Project	Location	State	Purpose
Gandak Project	River Gandak	Uttar Pradesh, Bihar	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Dhuvaran Power Station	Kheda District	Gujarat	Thermal Power
Sabarigiri (Pamba-Kakki) Project	River Pamba-Kakki	Kerala	Hydro-electricity
Idduki Projact	Rivers Periyar Cherutheni Idukki	Kerala	Hydro-electricity
Tawa Project	River Tawa (Narmada)	Madhya Pradesh	Irrigation
Chambal Project	River Chambal	Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Korba Project	Near Korba Coalfields	Chhattisgarh	Thermal Power
Satpura Power	Patharkada Station	MP Coalfield	Thermal Power
Koyna Project	River Koyna	Maharashtra	Hydro-electricity
Nagpur Power Station	Koradi, Near Nagpur City	Maharashtra	Thermal Power
Tungabhadra	River Tungabhadra Multipurpose Project	Karnataka and Telangana	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Upper Krishna Project	River Krishna	Karnataka	Irrigation
Sharavati Project	River Sharavati	Karnataka (near Jog Falls)	Hydro-electricity
Hirakud Multipurpose Project	River Mahanadi	Odisha	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Mahanadi Delta Project	River Mahanadi	Odisha	Irrigation
Talcher Power Station	Near Talcher	Odisha	Thermal Power
Bhakra-Nangal Multipurpose Project	River Sutlej	HP, Punjab, Haryana	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Rajasthan Canal Project	River Sutlej in Punjab	Rajasthan Headworks in Punjab	Irrigation
Kundah Project	River Kundah	Tamil Nadu	Hydro-electricity
Neyveli Power Station	Neyveli	Tamil Nadu	Hydro-electricity
Ramganga Multipurpose Project	Chuisot stream (near Kalagarh)	Uttarakhand	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Matatilla Multipurpose Project	River Betwa	Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Rihand Scheme	River Rihand	Uttar Pradesh	Hydro-electricity
Obra Power Station	Obra	Uttar Pradesh	Thermal Power
Damodar Valley Project	River Damodar	Jharkhand shared with West Bengal	Flood Control Hydro-electricity
Ukai Project	River Tapi	Gujarat	Irrigation
Mahi Project	River Mahi	Gujarat	Irrigation
Ghataprabha Project	River Ghataprabha	Karnataka	Irrigation

Name of the Project	Location	State	Purpose
Bhima Project	River Bhima	Maharashtra	Irrigation
Sardar Sarowar Project	River Narmada	Gujarat and Madhya Pradesh	Irrigation and Hydro-electricity
Bana Sagar Project	River Sone	Chhattisgarh, MP, UP and Jharkhand	Irrigation
Dul Hasti Project	River Chenab	Jammu and Kashmir	Hydro-electricity
Salal Project	River Chenab	Jammu and Kashmir	Hydro-electricity
Thein Dam Project	River Ravi	Punjab	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Malaprabha Project	River Malaprabha	Karnataka	Irrigation
Jaykwadi Project	River Godawari	Maharasthra	Irrigation
Beas Project	River Beas	Punjab and Haryana	Hydro-electricity
Sharda Shayak	River Ghaghra	Uttar Pradesh	Irrigation
Mayurakshi Project	River Mayurakshi	West Bengal	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Rana Pratap Sagar	River Chambal	Rajasthan	Hydro-electricity
Suratgarh Super Thermal Project	Suratgarh	Rajasthan	Thermal Power
Mettur	River Cauvery	Tamil Nadu	Hydro-electricity
Pallivasal	River Mundirapujha	Kerala	Hydro-electricity
Papanasam Project	River Tambiraparani	Tamil Nadu	Hydro-electricity
Loktak Project	Lake Loktak	Manipur	Hydro-electricity
Tehri Project	River Bhagirathi (Ganga)	Uttarakhand	Irrigation, Hydro-electricity
Farakka Project	Ganga	West Bengal	Irrigation

Indian Satellites : At a Glance

Satellite	Launch Date	Wt (Kg.)	Launching Station	Launch Vehicle	Purpose
Aryabhatta	19Apr, 1975	360	R.R.L.S., USSR	ICR	Scientific (S)
Bhaskar-1	07 June, 1979	442	R.R.L.S., USSR	ICR	Earth Scanning (S)
Rohini RS-1	10 Aug, 1979	35	R.L.C., Sriharikota	SLV-3	Earth Scanning
Rohini RS-2	18 July, 1980	35	R.L.C., Sriharikota	SLV-3	Earth Scanning
Rohini RSD-1	31 May, 1981	38	R.L.C., Sriharikota	SLV-3	Scientific
Apple	19 June, 1981	670	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-1	Commun.(S)
Bhaskar-2	20 Nov, 1981	436	R.R.L.S., USSR	ICR	Earth Scanning (S)
INSAT-1A	10 Apr, 1982	1160	A.R.L.S., USA	Delta 3910	Multipurpose(S)
Rohini RSD-2	17 Apr, 1983	41.5	R.L.C., Sriharikota	SLV-3	Scientific (S)
INSAT-1B	30 Aug, 1983	1193	K.S.C., USA	Shuttle (PAM-D)	Multipurpose (S)
SROSS-1	24 Mar, 1987	150	R.L.C., Sriharikota	ASLV-D1	R. Sensing
IRS-1A	17 Mar, 1988	980	R.S.S., Baikanour	Vostok	R. Sensing (S)
SROSS-2	13 July, 1988	150	R.L.C., Sriharikota	ASLV-D2	R. Sensing
INSAT-1C	21 July, 1988	–	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-3	Multipurpose
INSAT-1D	12 June, 1990	650	K.S.C., USA	Delta 4925	Multipurpose
IRS-1B	29 Aug, 1991	985	R.S.S., Baikanour	Vostok	R. Sensing (S)
SROSS C-1	20 May, 1992	106	R.L.C., Sriharikota	ASLV-D3	R. Sensing (S)
INSAT-2A	10 July, 1992	1416	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane	R. Sensing(S)
INSAT-2B	23 July, 1993	1906	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane	Multipurpose (S)
IRS-1E	20 Sep, 1993	850	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-D1	R. Sensing
SROSS C-2	04 May, 1994	113	R.L.C., Sriharikota	ASLV-D4	R. Sensing(S)
IRS-P2	15 Oct, 1994	870	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-D2	R. Sensing(S)
INSAT-2C	7 Dec, 1995	2050	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane	Multipurpose (S)
IRS-1C	29 Dec, 1995	1250	B.L.S., Kazakhstan	Molniya	R. Sensing(S)
IRS-P3	21 Mar, 1996	930	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-D3	R. Sensing(S)
INSAT-2D	04 June, 1997	2070	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-4	Multipurpose(S)
IRS-1D	29 Sep, 1997	1200	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-C1	R. Sensing (S)
INSAT-2E	03 Apr, 1999	2550	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane 42P	Multipurpose (S)
IRS-P4	26 May, 1999	—	R.L.C., Sriharikota	PSLV-C2	R. Sensing(S)
INSAT-3B	22 Mar, 2000	2070	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-5G	—
GSAT-1	18 Apr, 2001	1540	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-D1	C C
TES	22 Oct, 2001	1109	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV - C3	Techno. Ex(S)
INSAT-3C	24 Jan, 2002	—	E.R.L.S., Kourou	Ariane-4	Comm.(S)
METSAT*	12 Sep, 2002	1060	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV - C4	Mete. (S)
INSAT-3A	10 Apr, 2003	2958	A.L.S.C., Kourou	Ariane-5G	Comm.. Met. and Tele. (S)
GSAT-2	08 May, 2003	1800	Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-2	Comm. (S)
INSAT-3E	28 Sep, 2003	2795	Kourou	Ariane-5G	Comm. (S)
RESOURCE SAT-1	17 Oct, 2003	1360	Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C5	R. Sensing (S)
EDUSAT	20 Sep, 2004	1950	Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-F01	Education (S)
CARTO SAT-1	05 May, 2005	1560	S. S.C.,Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C6	Mapping Satellite (S)

Satellite	Launch Date	Wt (Kg.)	Launching Station	Launch Vehicle	Purpose
HAMSAT	05 May, 2005	—	S.S.C., Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C6	Radio Comm. (S)
INSAT-4A	22 Dec, 2005	3080	Kourou	Ariane	Comm.(S)
INSAT-4C	10 July, 2006	2168	S.S.C., Sriharikota	GSLV-F02	Comm.
INSAT-4B	12 Mar, 2007	3025	Arianespace's Ariane	5-ECA	DTH and Comm. (S)
INSAT-4CR	02 Sep, 2007	2130	S.S.C., Sriharikota, Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-F04	Comm.(S)
CARTOSAT-2A	28 April, 2008	690	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C9	R. Sensing (S)
IMS-1 (TWsat)[1]	28 April, 2008	83	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C9	Micro Satellite Imaging
Chandrayaan-1[2]	22 Oct., 2008	1380	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R.	PSLV-C11	R. Sensing (S)
RISAT-2[3]	20 April, 2009	300	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R.	PSLV-C12	R. I. Satellite
ANUSAT	20 April, 2009	40	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R.	PSLV-C12	Research Microsatellite
Oceansat-2[4]	23 Sep., 2009	960	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C14	R. Sensing (S)
GSAT-4	15 April, 2010	2180	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-D3	Commun.(S)
CARTOSAT-2B	12 July, 2010	694	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C15	R. Sensing (S)
GSAT-5P[5]	25 Dec., 2010	2310	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-F06	C-band Comm.
RESOURCESAT-2[6]	20 April, 2011	1206	S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C16	R. Sensing (S)
GSAT-8/INSAT-4G	21 May, 2011	3093	Kourou	Ariane-5	Comm.(S)
GSAT-12	15 July, 2011	1410	S.H.A.R., A. P.	PSLV-C17	Comm.(S)
Megha-Tropiques[7]	12 Oct., 2011	1000	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C18	Tracking Weather
RISAT-1[8]	26 April, 2012	1858	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C19	R. Sensing (S)
GSAT-10[9]	29 Sep., 2012	3400	Kourou	Ariane-5	Comm.(S)
SARAL[10]	25 Feb. 2013	407	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C20	Earth Observation (S)
INSAT-3D[11]	26 July, 2013	2026	Kourou	Ariane-5	Mete. (S)
GSAT-7	30 Aug., 2013	—	Kourou	Ariane-5	Geost. (S)
Mangalyaan[12]	05 Nov., 2013	1350	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R., Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C25	Mars mission (S)
GSAT-14[13]	05 Jan., 2014	1982	Shriharikota Andhra Pradesh	GSLV-D5	Comm.(S)
IRNSS-1B	04 April, 2014	1432	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C24	Navigation Satellite (S)

Satellite	Launch Date	Wt (Kg.)	Launching Station	Launch Vehicle	Purpose
5 Foreign Satellites[14]	30 June, 2014	—	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C23	(S)
IRNSS-1C[15]	16 Oct., 2014	1425.4	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C26	Navigation Satellite (S)
GSAT-16	07 Dec., 2014	3181.6	Kourou, French Guiana	Ariane-5	Comm.(S)
IRNSS-1D[16]	28 March, 2015	1425	S.D.S.C., S.H.A.R. Andhra Pradesh	PSLV-C27	Navigation Satellite (S)

Abbreviations used in the above table :

R.R.L.S. : *Russian Rocket Launching Station, Cosmodrome*
R.I.S. : *Radar Imaging Satellite*
R.L.C. : *Rocket Launching Centre, Sriharikota Range, A.P.*
E.R.L.S. : *European Rocket Launching Station, Kourou, French Guiana*
A.R.L.S. : *American Rocket Launching Station, Cape Canaveral, USA*
K.S.C. : *Kennedy Space Centre, Cape Canaveral, USA*
R.S.S. : *Russian Space Station, Baikanour, USSR*
S.H.A.R. : *Sriharikota High Altitude Range, Andhra Pradesh (A.P.)*
S.S.C. : *Satish Dhawan Space Centre, Sriharikota, A.P.*
A.L.S.C. : *Ariane Launching Space Centre, South America*

★ *(named after Kalpana Chawla)*

Note : (CC) — *Commercial Communication;* (S) — *Successful;* (Comm.) — *Communication;* (Techno. Ex.) — *Technology Experiments;* (Mete.) — *Meteorological*

1. Third World Satellite (TWSAT) : Launched as co-passenger with CARTOSAT-2A for low cost micro satellite imaging.
2. Unmanned lunar probe, that carried 11 scientific instruments built in India, USA, UK, Germany, Sweden and Bulgaria.
3. Co-passenger with ANUSAT
4. IRS-P4 : Gathers data for oceanographic, coastal and atmospheric applications. Continues mission of Oceansat-1.
5. INSAT-4D : Indian communication satellite, failed to reach orbit due to GSLV-F06 failure.
6. PSLV-C16 placed three satellites with a total payload mass of 1404 kg - RESOURCESAT-2 weighing 1206 kg, the Indo-Russian YOUTHSAT weighing 92 kg and Singapore's X-SAT weighing 106 kg – into an 822 km polar Sun Synchronous Orbit (SSO).
7. PSLV-C18 is configured to carry four satellites in which, one satellite, developed by India and France will track the weather, two were developed by educational institutions, and the fourth is from Luxembourg.
8. First indigenous all-weather Radar Imaging Satellite.
9. India's advanced communication satellite.
10. The Satellite with ARGOS and ALTIKA (SARAL)
11. Advanced meteorological satellite, enhancing India's capability in Weather Forcasting and Disaster warning areas.
12. Manglayaan reached in to Mars Orbit and Captured first image of Mars on Sept. 24, 2014. Total journey–680 million km.

13. The successful use of indigenous cryogenic engine in the GSLV-D5 puts India among a league, five other nations—the US, Russia, France, Japan and China, that possess the technology that is considered the ultimate frontier in rocket science.

14. The five satellites—a 714 kg French Earth Observation Satellite 'SPOT-7', a 14 kg German satellite 'AISAT' two 15 kg satellites from Canada CAN-X4 & CAN-X5 and a 7 kg satellite of Singapore VELOX-1. These satellites were launched under commercial arrangement of ANTRIX (ISRO's commercial arm) with foreign agencies.

15. IRNSS-1C is the 3rd navigation satellite of the 7 satellites constituting the IRNSS space segment. Its predecessors, IRNSS-1A and IRNSS-1B were launched by PSLV-C22 and PSLV-C24 in July 2013 and April 2014 respectively. The configuration of IRNSS-1C is similar to that of IRNSS-1A and IRNSS-1B.

16. IRNSS-1D is the fourth navigational satellite and one of the seven of the IRNSS constellation of satellites slated to be launched to provide navigational services to the region.

Note : IRNSS (Indian Regional Navigation Satellite System) is an independent regional navigation satellite system being developed by India. It is designed to provided accurate position information service to users in India as well as the region extending up to 1500 km from its boundary, which is its primary service area. The IRNSS space segment consists of seven satellites, with three satellites in geostationary orbit and four satellites in inclined geosynchronous orbit.

General Introduction to Asia

- The word 'Asia' is derived from the word 'Asu' (of Hibru language), which literally means 'the rising sun'.
- Asia is the largest of all the seven continents of the world.
- With 44.6 million sq km area, it covers 30% (about one-third) of the land surface of the world.
- With 4,299 million people, it contains about 60% of the world population and emerges as the most populous continent of the world.
- This vast continent comprises the greatest diversity in terms of physical features, climate, vegetation, wildlife and people.
- It has the highest mountain peak on the Earth, Mount Everest (8850 m) and the lowest point, the Dead Sea (396.8 m below sea level).
- It has the coldest place. Vostok, Antarctica has winter temperature of –89.2°C. Jacobabad in Sindh is the hottest place on the Earth.
- Mawsynram, near Cherrapunji (India) has the world's highest average rainfall of 11,873 mm. Simultaneously, it has desert areas of central Asia.
- Asia has the world's deepest fresh water lake, i.e. Baikal Lake (Russia) which is 1741 meters deep.
- It has the largest delta 'Sunderbans', the most fertile river valleys (Ganga, Indus, Brahmaputra, Yangtse kiang and Huang-Ho etc) and the extensive barren lands of Baluchistan.
- It has rich and varied wildlife which is peculiar to this continent.
- Asia has been the cradle of ancient civilizations like the Mesopotamian Civilization, the Indus Civilization and the Chinese Civilization which sustained in the fertile river valleys of Asia.

- Asia has the privilege of being the birthplace of major religions of the world Judaism, Hinduism, Christianity, Islam, Taoism, Shintoism, Jainism, Sikhism, Buddhism and Zoroastrianism etc.
- Asia wholly lies in the Northern Hemisphere.

Latitude : It lies between 10°S to 80°N latitudes, i.e. it spans over 90° of latitudes.

Longitude : It lies almost entirely in the Eastern Hemisphere.

- It extends from 25°E to 170°E. This large longitudinal extent brings about a difference of 11 hours between the local times of the easternmost part and the westernmost part of Asia.

Boundaries : The continent is bounded by oceans on three sides–Arctic Ocean in the north, Pacific in the east and the Indian Ocean in the south.

- In the west, Asia is separated from Europe by the low Yural Mountains, the Yural river and the Caspian Sea. The Red Sea and Suez Canal separate it from Africa.
- In the north-east, the Bering strait separates it from North America.

Geography of the Indian Subcontinent

Introduction : India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal, Bhutan, Myanmar and Sri Lanka, collectively constitute the Indian subcontinent.

These six countries are India's closest and nearest neighbours and share a common heritage of history and geography.

Pakistan

Location : Pakistan is our western neighbour.

It is bordered by Iran in the west, India in the east the Arabian Sea in the south and Afghanistan in the North.

Latitude : Pakistan lies between 24°N and 37°N latitudes.

Longitude : It lies between longitudes 61°E and 75°E.

Area and composition : Pakistan has an area of about 3,12,685 sq km.

It comprises of West Punjab, Sind, Baluchistan, N.W.F.P. and a few tribal areas.

Physical Divisions of Pakistan : Pakistan may be divided into following four physical divisions :

The Northern and Western Highlands : The Hindukush mountains which extend from the Pamir Knot form a mountain wall in the north of Pakistan. Tirich Mir (7690 m) is the highest peak of the Hindukush.

- The famous Khyber Pass lies in this region.
- Other important mountain ranges are Sulaiman range and Kirthar range.
- These ranges spread in north-south direction.

The Baluchistan Plateau : Situated in the south-west of Pakistan.

- It is a dry and rocky plateau with little vegetation.

The Indus Plain : Without the Indus, Pakistan would have been a complete desert.

- It is a 2700 km long fertile plain in the eastern Pakistan made by rich alluvial soil brought down by Indus and its five tributaries.

The Thar Desert : It is located in south-eastern part of Pakistan and continues into India.

Climate of Pakistan : The climate of Pakistan is one of the extremes.

- It is very hot in summer and very cold in winter.
- It gets little rainfall in summer.
- The average rainfall in Pakistan is less than 25 cm in a year.
- There is some rainfall in winter brought by the Western disturbances coming from the Mediterranean Sea.

Natural Vegetation

- In plateaus, plains and desert mostly bushes, shrubs and coarse grasses are found.
- In mountainous area in the north and west temperate deciduous trees coniferous trees and alpine vegetation is found.

Language–Urdu, Currency–Rupee, Religion–Islam.

Economic Development

Agriculture : Rainfall in this agricultural country is very low and unreliable.

- Rivers and a developed network of canals make irrigation possible.
- Pakistan is known as the 'Land of Canals'. Mangla Dam and Tarbila Dam in Pakistan are very famous.
- Wheat, millets, cotton, rice, sugarcane and oil seeds are cultivated.

Animal Rearing : People of Pakistan rear milch cattle.

- Drought animals are also reared. Sheep and goats are reared in dry Baluchistan Plateau and the mountainous areas.

Mining : Mineral position of Pakistan is not satisfactory.

- It has some deposits of petroleum, coal, iron and copper.
- The gas fields of Sui is important.
- Salt deposits near Khewra are well known.

Industrial Development : Industrialy Pakistan is now well developed. Cotton textile, woolen textile, chemicals, cement, sugar, paper, etc are important industries of Pakistan. Carpets, embroidered goods, pottery and handicrafts are also manufactured here.

Population : Pakistan has a population of 182,142,594 (2013) excluding 4 million residents of Pakistan ruled Jammu and Kashmir and 01 million Afghan refugees.

- The density of population is 236 persons per sq km. (in 2013).
- 90% people are Muslims, who follow Islam. Urdu is the state language.

Bangladesh

Bangladesh is our eastern neighbouring country.

Location : It is bordered on the north, west and east by India and on the south by the Bay of Bengal.

Latitude : Bangladesh lies between latitudes 21°N and 26°30′N. The Tropic of Cancer passes through the middle of it.

Longitude : It lies between longitudes 88°E and 92°30′E.

Physical Division of Bangladesh : Nearly whole of Bangladesh lies in the largest delta of the world.

- It is a vast flat alluvial plain. It is a land of big rivers, lakes, swamps and marshes.
- A large part of Bangladesh is flooded every year during rainy season.
- It has an area of 1,47,570 sq km.
- The Jamuna (Brahmaputra), Padma (Ganga) and Meghna are the important rivers.
- A small hilly area in the south-east forms the Chittagong Hill tract.

Climate

- It has hot and humid climate.
- Rainfall varies from 250 to 40 cm. It has distinct dry and rainy season.
- In early summer, Bangladesh experiences cyclone storms.

Natural Vegetation

- In the fringes of delta Mangrove forests are found.
- Sundari and bamboo trees are found in these Sunderbans.

Agriculture

- Because of fertile alluvial soil and abundant water supply, rice is the main crop of Bangladesh as it covers 85% of the cultivated area.
- Jute the main cash crop.
- Tea plantations are found in some areas in the north.
- Sugarcane, cotton and tobacco are also grown.

Animal Rearing

- Most of the animals reared in Bangladesh work as beasts of burden.
- Bangladesh has become a leading supplier of animal hides and skins.

Fishing

- Large number of rivers and nearness to the sea make fishing an important activity in Bangladesh.

Language–Bangla, Currency–Taka, Religion–Islam

Minerals

- Bangladesh is not rich in mineral resources.
- Coal, natural gas and oil are mined in a small quantity.

Industries

- The important industries of Bangladesh include jute and cotton textiles, cement, fertilizers, sugar, paper, glass etc.

Population, Language and Religion

- The population of Bangladesh is about 156,594,962 (2013).
- The density of population here is 1,203 persons per sq km. (in 2013)
- Bengali is the official language of Bangladesh.
- Most of the people follow Islam.
- Dhaka, Chittagong, Khulna and Narayanganj are some of the important cities of Bangladesh.

Countries with Their Capital & Currency

Country	Capital	Currency
Afghanistan	Kabul	Afghani
Algeria	Algiers	Dinar
Angola	Luanda	Kwanza
Argentina	Buenos Aires	Argentino Sentavos
Australia	Canberra	Australian Dollar
Austria	Vienna	Shilling
Azerbijan	Baku	Manat
Bahrain	Manama	Bahrain Dinar
Bangladesh	Dhaka	Taka
Belgium	Brussels	Euro
Belarus	Minsk	Belaros Rubbe
Bhutan	Thimphu	Nugultram
Brazil	Brasilia	Real (BRC)
Brunei	Bander Seri Begawan	Brunei Dollar or Ringhit
Bulgaria	Sofia	Lev
Cambodia	Phnom Penh	Rial
Chanada	Ottawa	Dollar
China, Peoples Republic	Beijing	Yuan
Cuba	Havana	Peso
Cyprus	Nicosia	Cyprus Pound
Denmark	Copenhagen	Danish Krone
Egypt	Cairo	Pound
Ethiopia	Adis Ababa	Birr
Fiji	Suva	Dollar
Finland	Helsinki	Euro
France	Paris	Euro
Germany	Berlin	Euro
Ghana	Accra	Cedi
Greece	Athens	Euro
Guatemala	Guatemala City	Quetzal
Hong Kong	Victoria	Dollar
Hungary	Budapest	Florint
Iceland	Reykjavik	Krona
India	New Delhi	Rupee
Indonesia	Jakarta	Rupiah
Iran	Teheran	Rial
Iraq	Baghdad	Iraqi Dinar
Ireland	Dublin	Euro

Country	Capital	Currency
Israel	Jerusalem	New Shekel
Italy	Rome	Euro
Jamaica	Kingston	Dollar
Japan	Tokyo	Yen
Jordan	Amman	Dinar
Kazakhistan	Almati	Ruble
Kirghizistan	Bishkek	Ruble
Korea (North)	Pyongyang	Won
Korea (South)	Seoul	Won
Kuwait	Kuwait	Dinar
Laos	Vientiane	New Kiplao
Lebanon	Beirut	Pound
Libya	Tripoli	Dinar
Luxembourg	Luxembourg Ville	Euro
Macau	Macau	Pataka
Malaysia	Kuala Lumpur	Ringrit
Maldives, Republic of	Male	Rufia
Mauritius	Port Luis	Rupee
Mexico	Mexico City	New Peso
Mongolia	Ulan Bator	Tugrik
Myanmar	Naypyidaw	Kyat
Mozambique	Maputo	Metical
Nauru	Yaren	Dollar
Nepal	Kathmandu	Rupee
Netherlands	Amsterdam	Euro
New Zealand	Wellington	Dollar
Nigeria	Abuja	Naira
Norway	Oslo	Kroner
Oman	Muscat	Rial
Pakistan	Islamabad	Rupee
Panama	Panama City	Balboa
Philippines	Manila	Peso
Poland	Warsao	Zloty
Portugal	Lisbon	Euro
Qatar	Doha	Riyal
Romania	Bucharest	Lau
Russia	Moscow	Rouble
Saudi Arabia	Riyadh	Riyal
Senegal	Dakar	CFA Franc

Country	Capital	Currency
Serbia and Montenegro	Belgrade	Dinar
South Africa	Cape Town	Rand
Spain	Madrid	Euro
Singapore	Singapore	Dollar
Sri Lanka	Colombo	Rupee
Syria	Damascus	Pound
Syprus	Nicosia	Pound
Taiwan	Taipei	New Taiwan Dollar
Thailand	Bangkok	Baht
Trinidad & Tobago	Port of Spain	Dollar
Tunisia	Tunis	Dinar
Turkey	Ankara	Lira
United Arab Emirates	Abu Dhabi	Dirham
Uganda	Kampala	Shilling
Ukraine	Kiev	Karbovanets
U.K.	London	Pound Sterling
U.S.A.	Washington D.C.	U.S. Dollar
Venezuela	Caracas	Bolivar
Vietnam	Ho Chi Minh City (Hanoi)	Dong
Yemen	Sena'a	Riyal
Zaire	Kinshasa	Zaire
Zambia	Lusaka	Kwacha
Zimbabwe	Harare	Dollar

River Side Cities

Town	River	Town	River
Kabul	Kabul	Canton	Si-Kiang
Allahabad	Confluence of Ganga, Jamuna, Saraswati	Basra (Iraq)	Tigris and Euphrates
Nasik	Godawari	Cairo (Egypt)	Nile
Kolkata	Hooghly	Ankara (Turkey)	Kizil
Cuttack	Mahanadi	Baghdad (Iraq)	Tigris
Patna	Ganga	Berlin (Germany)	Spree
Chittagong	Maiyani	Khartoum (Sudan)	Nile
Lucknow	Gomati	Belgrade	Dunube
Jamshedpur	Subarnarekha	Cologne (Germany)	Rhine
Haridwar	Ganga	Lisbon (Portugal)	Tangus
Delhi	Jamuna	Glasgow (Scotland)	Clyde
Kanpur	Ganga	Paris (France)	Seine
Surat	Tapti	Hamburg (Germany)	Elbe

Town	River	Town	River
Srinagar	Jhelum	Budapest (Hungary)	Danube
Ferozepur	Sutlej	Rome (Italy)	Tiber
Ludhiana	Sutlej	Warsaw (Poland)	Vistula
Karachi (Pak)	Indus	Bristol (U.K.)	Avon
Lahore (Pak)	Ravi	London (U.K.)	Thames
Vijayawada	Krishna	New Castle (U.K.)	Tyre
Varanasi	Ganga	New York	Hudson
Yangon (Myanmar)	Irawady	Philadelphia	Delaware
Akyab (Myanmar)	Irawady	New Orleans	Mississippi
Shanghai	Yang-tse-Kiang	Montreal (Canada)	Ottawa
Nanking	Yang-tse-Kiang	Quebec (Canada)	St. Lawrence
Chungking	Yang-tse-Kiang		

Wonders of The World

Seven Wonders of the Ancient World

1. Hanging Garden of Babylon
2. Temple of Diana at Ephesus *(Rome)*
3. Statue of Jupiter at Olympia
4. Pyramids of Egypt
5. Mausoleum of Mausolus *(Ruler of Halicarnasus)*
6. Light house of Alexandria
7. Colossus at Rhodes *(912 ft. high Statue of Helos, the Sun God)*

Seven Wonders of the Medieval World

1. Great Wall of China
2. Porcelain Tower of Nanking *(China)*
3. Colosseum of Rome *(Italy)*
4. Stone henge of England
5. Leaning Tower of Pisa *(Italy)*
6. Catacombs of Alexandria
7. Mosque at St. Sophia *(Constantinople)*

New Seven Wonders of the World

As declared on July 7, 2007 by New Seven Wonders Foundation of Switzerland, at a grand ceremony organised in 'Stadia da Lutz, Benefica stadium in Lisbon (Portugal).

1. The Taj Mahal *(Agra, India)*
2. The Great Wall of China *(China)*
3. The Pink Ruins of Petra *(Jordan)*
4. The Statue of Christ the Redeemer in Rio de Janerio *(Brazil)*
5. Incan Ruins of Machu Pichu *(Peru)*
6. The ancient Mayan City of Chichen Itza *(Mexico)*
7. The Colosseum of Rome *(Italy)*

Other Wonders of the World

1. The Sphinx, near Gizeh *(Ghiza)* in Egypt
2. The Catacombs at Rome
3. The Circus Maximus at Rome
4. Angkor Vat temple in Combodia
5. The Alhambra at Granada in S. Spain
6. Shew Dragon Pagoda or the Golden Pagoda at Yangon in Myanmar
7. Mosque at St. Sophia *(Constantinople)*

Countries and their main Produces/ Industries

Afghanistan	Dry and fresh fruits, carpets, wool
Australia	Wood, dairy products, wheat, meat, lead, zinc

Austria	Machinery, textiles, leather goods
Brazil	Coffee
Belgium	Glass, textiles
Chile	Copper Nitrate
Canada	Wheat, newsprint, machinery
China	Silk, tea, rice
Congo	Copper, uranium, cobalt, ivory
Cuba	Sugar, tobacco, cigar
Denmark	Textiles, paper
France	Textile, wine, silk
Germany	Machinery, chemical, iron and steel equipments
Ghana	Coco, gold, coffee
India	Jute, textiles, sugar, spices, tobacco, tea, cement, mica
Indonesia	Sugar, spices, rubber, rice, cinchona, petroleum
Iran	Petroleum, carpets, dry fruits
Iraq	Dates, petroleum
Italy	Mercury, textiles
Japan	Machinery, textiles, toys, silk, automobiles
Kenya	Coffee, tea, meat, sisal, hides and skins, cement, soda ash
Kuwait	Petroleum
Malaysia	Rubber, tin
Netherlands	Machinery, aircraft, electricals
Saudi Arabia	Oil, date
Spain	Lead
Sweden	Matches, timber
Switzerland	Watches, chemicals, electricals
Taiwan	Camphor, rice
UK	Textiles, medicines, machinery, cars
USA	Petroleum, wheat, machinery, coal, automobiles, iron
Russia	Petroleum, wheat, chemicals, heavy machinery
Vietnam	Tin, rice, rubber, teak

Towns Associated with some important industries

Town	Industry
Ahmedabad (Gujarat)	Cotton Textiles
Agra (U.P.)	Leather, marble
Baku (Russia)	Petroleum
Bangaluru (Karnataka)	Aircraft and telephones
Bhilai (Chhattisgarh)	Steel Plant
Bangkok (Thailand)	Ship-building, teak and wood
Bhagalpur (Bihar)	Silk
Mumbai (Maharashtra)	Film industries
Buenos Aires (Argentina)	Dairy products, meat
Cadiz (Portugal)	Cork
Kolkata (W. Bengal)	Jute, paper, leather works
Chittaranjan (W. Bengal)	Locomotives
Cochin (Kerala)	Ship-building
Chicago (USA)	Agricultural equipments, automobiles
Dhaka (Bangladesh)	Jute
Dalmianagar (Bihar)	Cement
Darjeeling (W. Bengal)	Tea
Delhi (India)	Textiles, chemicals, Small Scale Industries
Detroit (USA)	Motorcar
Dhariwal (Punjab)	Woolen goods
Digboi (Assam)	Oil refinery
Ferozabad (U.P.)	Bangles, Glass refinery
Guntur (Andhra Pradesh)	Tobacco
Havana (Cuba)	Sugar, tobacco, cigars
Jamshedpur (Jharkhand)	Steel
Jharia ((Jharkhand)	Coal mines
Khetri (Rajasthan)	Copper mines
Johannesberg (South Africa)	Gold mines
Kolar (Karnataka)	Gold fields
Los Angeles (USA)	Film Production
Ludhiana (Punjab)	Hosiery
Lyons (France)	Silk Industry
Chennai (Tamil Nadu)	Leather, Integral Coach Factory
Moradabad (U.P.)	Brassware, cutlery
Nagpur (Maharashtra)	Oranges, Cotton mills
Nepanagar (M.P.)	Newsprint
Pittsburgh (USA)	Iron and steel, coal, petroleum
Perambur (Tamil Nadu)	Integral Coach Factory
Raniganj (W.B.)	Coal mines
Sialkot (Pakistan)	Sports goods
Sindri (Jharkhand)	Fertilizers and chemicals
Sheffield (UK)	Cutlery
Titagarh (W. Bengal)	Paper and Jute
Venice (Italy)	Ship-building
Varanasi (U.P.)	Silk, Brocade Industry

Famous Sites (India)

Site	Location
Ajanta	Maharashtra
Akabar's Tomb	Agra (U.P.)
Amarnath Cave	Kashmir
Ambar Palace	Jaipur (Rajasthan)
Anand Bhawan	Allahabad (UP)
Bhakra Dam	Bilaspur (Himachal Pradesh)
Birla Planetorium	Kolkata (West Bengal)
Island Palace	Udaipur (Rajasthan)
Jagannath Temple	Puri (Odisha)
Jai Stambh (Tower of Victory)	Chittorgarh (Rajasthan)
Jama Masjid	Delhi
Black Pagoda	Konark (Odisha)
Brihadeeshwara Temple	Tanjavur
Brindaban Gardens	Mysore (Karnataka)
Buland Darwaza	Fatehpur Sikri (U.P.)
Char Minar	Hyderabad (Telangana)
Chilka Lake	Near Bhubaneswar (Odisha)
Dal Lake	Srinagar (J & K)
Dilwara Temples	Mt. Abu (Rajasthan)
Elephanta Caves	Mumbai (Maharashtra)
Ellora Caves	Aurangabad (Maharashtra)
Gateway of India	Mumbai (Maharashtra)
Golden Temple	Amritsar (Punjab)
Gol Gumbaz	Bizapur (Karnataka)
Hanging Gardens	Mumbai
Hawa Mahal	Jaipur (Rajasthan)
Howrah Bridge	Kolkata (W. Bengal)
Mt. Girnar (Jain Temple)	Junagadh (Gujarat)
Nataraja Temple	Chennai (Tamil Nadu)
Nishat Bagh	Srinagar (J & K)
Padmanabha Temple	Thiruvananthapuram (Kerala)
Palitana	Junagadh (Gujarat)
Panch Mahal	Fatehpur Sikri (U.P.)
Pichola Lake	Udaipur (Rajasthan)
Prince of Wales Museum	Mumbai (Maharashtra)
Qutub Minar	Delhi
Raj Ghat	Delhi
Rashtrapati Bhawan	Delhi
Red Fort	Delhi
Jantar Mantar	New Delhi
Kailash Temple	Ellora (Maharashtra)
Kanya Kumari	Tamil Nadu
Kirti Stambha (Tower of fame)	Chittorgarh (Rajasthan)
Lal Bagh Garden	Bengaluru (Karnataka)
Lingaraj Temple	Bhubaneshwar (Odisha)
Mahakaleshwar	Ujjain (M.P.)
Maheshmukh (Trimurti) Temple	Elephanta Cave (Maharashtra)
Malabar Hills	Mumbai (Maharashtra)
Man Mandir Palace	Gwalior Fort (M.P.)
Marble Rocks	Jabalpur (M.P.)
Marina Beach	Chennai (T.N.)
Minakshi Temple	Madurai (T.N.)
Sidi Sayyid Masjid	Ahmedabad (Gujarat)
Shalimar Bagh	Srinagar (J & K)
Shahi Chashma	Srinagar (J & K)
Shanti Van	Delhi
Statue of Gomateshwara	Shravanabelagola, Hasan (Karnataka)
Sun Temple (Black Pagoda)	Konark (Odisha)
Taj Mahal	Agra (Uttar Pradesh)
Tower of Silence	Mumbai (Maharashtra)
Victoria Memorial	Kolkata (W. Bengal)
Victoria Garden	Mumbai (Maharashtra)
Vijay Ghat	Delhi

Famous Sites (World)

Site	Location	Site	Location
Al-Aqusa Mosque	Jerusalem (Israel)	Pentagon	Washington (U.S.A.)
Big Ben	London (U.K.)	Potala	Nanking (China)
Bradenberg Gate	Berlin (Germany)	Pyramid	Egypt
Broadway	New York (U.S.A.)	Red Square	Moscow (Russia)
Brown House	Berlin (Germany)	Scotland Yard	London (U.K.)
Buckingham Palace	London (U.K.)	Shwe Dragon Pagoda	Yangon (Myanmar)
Colossium	Rome (Italy)	Sphinx	Egypt
Downing Street	London (U.K.)	Statue of Liberty	New York (U.S.A.)
Eiffel Tower	Paris (France)	Vatican	Rome (Italy)
Fleet Street	London (U.K.)	Wailing Wall	Jerusalem (Israel)
Harley Street	London (U.K.)	Wall Street	New York (U.S.A.)

Site	Location	Site	Location
Hyde Park	London (U.K.)	Westminster Abbey	London (U.K.)
India House	London (U.K.)	White Hall	London (U.K.)
Kaaba	Mecca (Saudi Arabia)	White House	Washington (U.S.A.)
Kremlin	Moscow (Russia)	Merdeka Palace	Jakarta (Indonesia)
Leaning Tower	Pisa (Rome)	Oval	London (U.K.)
Louvre	Paris (France)		

Changed Names of Cities, States and Countries

Old Name	New Name	Old Name	New Name
Abyssinia	Ethiopia	Ceylon	Sri Lanka
Angora	Ankara	Christina	Oslo
Aurangabad	Sambhaji Nagar	Cochin	Kochi
Banaras	Varanasi	Constantinople	Istambul
Bangalore	Bangaluru	Dacca	Dhaka
Baroda	Vadodara	Dahomey	Benin
Batavia	Djakarta	Dutch East Indies	Indonesia
Basutoland	Lesotho	Dutch Guiana	Surinam
Bechuanaland	Botswana	Ellice Islands	Tuvalu
Bhatinda	Bathinda	Formosa	Taiwan
Bombay	Mumbai	Gauhati	Guwahati
British Guiana	Guyana	Gold Coast	Ghana
Burma	Myanmar	Holland	The Netherlands
Calcutta	Kolkata	Ivory Coast	Cote D'Ivoire
Calicut	Kozhikode	Jubbulpore	Jabalpur
Cape Canaveral	Cape Kennedy	Jullundur	Jalandhar
Cawnpore	Kanpur	Leopoldville	Kinshasa
Central Provinces	Madhya Pradesh	Madagascar	Malagasy
Madras	Chennai	Malaya	Malaysia
Manchukuo	Manchuria	Mesopotamia	Iraq
New Hebrides	Vanuatu	Nippon	Japan
Northern Rhodesia	Zambia	Nyasaland	Malawi
Ooty	Udhagamandalam	Orissa	Odisha
Panjim	Panaji	Peking	Beijing
Petrograd	Leningrad	Persia	Iran
Palghat	Palakkad	Pondicherry	Puducherry
Poona	Pune	Pretoria	Tshwane
Quilon	Kollam	Rangoon	Yangon
Rhodesia	Zimbabwe	Saigon	Ho Chi Minh City
Salisbury	Harare	Sandwich Islands	Hawaiian Islands

Old Name	New Name	Old Name	New Name
Siam	Thailand	Simla	Shimla
South West Africa	Namibia	Spanish Guinea	Equatorial Guinea
Stalingrad	Volgograd	Tanganyika and Zanzibar	Tanzania
Trichur	Thrissur	Trivandrum	Thiruvananthapuram
United Provinces	Uttar Pradesh	Upper Volta	Burkina Faso
Uttaranchal	Uttarakhand	Vizagapattam	Visakhapatnam
Zaire	Republic of Congo	Tanjore	Thanjavur

Highest Mountain Peaks (World)

Name	Height (in metres)	Range
1. Mount Everest	8850	Himalayas
2. K-2 (Godwin Austen)	8611	Karakoram
3. Kanchenjunga	8598	Himalayas
4. Lhotse	8511	Himalayas
5. Makalu I	8481	Himalayas
6. Dhaulagiri I	8167	Himalayas
7. Manaslu I	8156	Himalayas
8. Cho Uyo	8153	Himalayas
9. Nanga Parvat	8126	Himalayas
10. AnnapuranaI	8091	Himalayas

Three Deepest Oceans

Name	Greatest depth (in metres)	Greatest depth location
1. Pacific Ocean	11,033	Mariana Trench
2. Atlantic Ocean	9,460	Puerto Rico Trench
3. Indian Ocean	7,542	Java Trench

Geographical Epithets (Sobriquets)

Blue Mountains	Nilgiri Hills, India
City of Sky Scrapers	New York, USA
City of Seven Hills	Rome, Italy
City of Dreaming Spires	Oxford, England
City of Golden Gate	San Francisco, USA
Cockpit of Europe	Belgium
China's Sorrow	Hwang-Ho
Dark Continent	Africa
Eternal City	Rome
Forbidden City	Lhasa, Tibet
Gate of Tears	Bab-el-Mandeb, Jerusalem

Metal	Ores	Chemical Formula
Magnese (Mn)	Pyrolusite Magnite	MnO_2 $Mn_2O_3 \cdot 2H_2O$
Uranium (U)	Carnetite Pitch blende	$K(UO)_2 \cdot VO_4 \cdot 3H_2O$ U_3O_8

Alloys : An alloy is a metallic intimately mixed solid mixture of two or more different elements, at least one of which is metal.

Alloys are homogeneous in molten state but they may be homogeneous or heterogeneous in solid state.

Important alloys & their uses

Alloys	Compositions	Uses
Brass	Cu (70%) + Zn (30%)	In making utensils
Bronze	Cu (90%) + Sn (10%)	In making coins, bell and utensils
German Silver	Cu + Zn + Ni (60% + 20% + 20%)	In making utensils
Rolled gold	Cu (90%) + Al (10%)	In making cheap ornaments
Gun metal	Cu + Sn + Zn + Pb (88% 10% 1% 1%)	In making gun, barrels, gears & bearings
Delta metal	Cu + Zn + Fe (60% 38% 2%)	In making blades of aeroplane
Munz metal	Cu (60%) + Zn (40%)	In making coins
Dutch metal	Cu (80%) + Zn (20%)	In making Artificial ornaments
Monel metal	Cu (70%) + Ni (30%)	For base containing container
Rose metal	Bi + Pb + Sn (50% 28% 22%)	For making automatic fuse
Solder	Pb (50%) + Sn (50%)	For soldering
Magnalium	Al (95%) + Mg (5%)	For frame of Aeroplane
Duralumin	Al + Cu + Mg + Mn (94% 3% 2% 1%)	For making utensils
Type metal	Sn + Pb + Sb (5% 80% 15%)	In printing industry
Bell metal	Cu (80%) + Sn (20%)	For casting bells, statues
Stainless steel	Fe + Cr + Ni + C (75%,15%,10%,.05%)	For making utensils and surgical cutlery
Nickel steel	Fe (95%) + Ni (5%)	For making electrical wire, automobile parts

Amalgum : An alloy in which one of the component metals is mercury, is called amalgam.

In alloys, the chemical properties of the component elements are retained but certain physical properties are improved.

Compounds of metal and non-metal and their uses :

1. Ferrous oxide (FeO) : In green glass, Ferrous salt.
2. Ferric oxide (Fe_3O_4) : In electroplating of ornaments and formation of ferric slat
3. Ferrous sulphate ($FeSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$) : In dye industry, and Mohr's salt

4. Ferric hydroxide [($Fe(OH)_3$)] : In laboratory reagent and in making medicines.
5. Iodine (I_2) : (a) As antiseptic, (b) In making tincture of iodine.
6. Bromine (Br_2) : (a) In dye industry (b) As laboratory reagent
7. Chlorine (Cl_2) : In the formation of (a) Mustard gas (b) Bleaching powder
8. Hydrochloric acid (HCl) : In the formation of aquaregia (3 HCl : 1 HNO_3) and dyes
9. Sulphuric acid (H_2SO_4) : (a) As a reagent (b) In purification of petroleum (c) In lead storage battery.
10. Sulphur dioxide (SO_2) : (a) As oxidants & reductants (b) As bleaching agent
11. Hydrogen Sulphides (H_2S) : In qualitative analysis of basic radical (group separation)
12. Sulphur (S) : Antiseptics, vulcanization of rubber, gun powder, medicine.
13. Ammonia (NH_3) : As reagent in ice factory.
14. Phosphorous : (a) Red (P_4) refrigerent, in match industry etc. (b) White (P_4) – Rat killing Medicine.
15. Producer gas ($CO + N_2$) : (a) In heating furnace (b) Cheap fuel (c) In Extraction of metal
16. Water gas ($CO + H_2$) : (a) As fuel (b) Welding work
17. Coal gas : (a) As fuel (b) Inert atmosphere
18. Nitrous oxide (N_2O) : Laughing gas, Surgery.
19. Carbondioxide (CO_2) : Sodawater, Fire extinguisher.
20. Carbon monoxide (CO) : In phosgene gas ($COCl_2$).
21. Graphite : As electrodes.
22. Diamond : Ornaments, Glass cutting, Rock drilling.
23. Alum [$K_2SO_4 Al_2(SO_4)_3 \cdot 24H_2O$] : (a) Purification of water (b) Leather industry.
24. Aluminium sulphate [$Al_2(SO_4)_3 \cdot 18H_2O$] : In paper industry / fire extinguisher.
25. Anhydrous aluminium chloride ($AlCl_3$) : Cracking of petroleum.
26. Mercuric Chloride ($HgCl_2$) : Calomel, Insecticides (Corrosive sublimate)
27. Mercuric oxide (HgO) : Oientment, poison.
28. Mercury (Hg) : Thermometer vermillion, amalgum.
29. Zinc Sulphide (ZnS) : White pigment.
30. Zinc Sulphate (White vitriol) ($ZnSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$) : Lithopone, Eye ointment.
31. Zinc Chloride ($ZnCl_2$) : Textile industry.
32. Zinc oxide (ZnO) : Ointment.
33. Zinc (Zn) : In battery.
34. Calcium carbide (CaC_2) : Calcium cyanide & acetylene gas.
35. Bleaching powder [Ca(OCl) Cl] : Insecticides, Bleaching actions.
36. Common salt : The chemical name of common salt is sodium chloride.
37. Calcium sulphate ($CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$) : Cement industry.
38. Calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) : Lime & toothpaste.

39. **Copper sulphate** ($CuSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$) : Insecticides, Electric cells.
40. **Cupric oxide** (CuO) : Blue & green glass, purification of petroleum
41. **Cuprous Oxide** (Cu_2O) : Red glass, pesticides.
42. **Copper** (Cu) : Electrical wire.
43. **Sodium nitrate** ($NaNO_3$) : Fertilizer.
44. **Sodium Sulphate (Glauber salt)** ($Na_2SO_4 \cdot 10H_2O$) : Medicine, cheap glass
45. **Sodium bicarbonate (Baking soda)** ($NaHCO_3$) : Fire extinguisher, bakery reagent.
46. **Sodium Carbonate (Washing soda)** : (a) Glass industry (b) Paper industry (c) Removal of permanent hardness of water (d) washing (e) The chemical formula of is $Na_2CO_3 \cdot 10H_2O$
47. **Hydrogen peroxide** (H_2O_2) : Oxidants & reductants, Insecticides.
48. **Heavy water** (D_2O) : Nuclear reactor.
49. **Liquid hydrogen** : Rocket fuel.
50. **Plaster of paris** [$(CaSO_4)_2 \cdot 2H_2O / CaSO_4\ ½H_2O)$] : Statue, Surgery.
    Plaster of paris is obtained by heating gypsum at 120°C.

$$\underset{\text{Gypsum}}{2[CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O]} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \underset{\text{Plaster of Paris}}{2CaSO_4 \cdot H_2O} + 3H_2O$$

13. Important Facts About Some Metals

- Zinc phosphide is used for killing rats.
- Wood furnitures are coated with zinc chloride to prevent termites.
- Excess of copper in human beings causes disease called Wilson.
- Galvanised iron is coated with zinc.
- Rusting of iron is a chemical change which increases the weight of iron.
- Calcium hydride is called hydrolith.
- Calcium hydride is used to prepare fire proof and waterproof clothes.
- In flash-bulb, magnesium wire is kept in atmosphere of nitrogen gas.
- Titanium is called strategic metal because it is lighter than iron.
- Group 1st element are called alkali metals because its hydroxides are alkaline whereas group 2nd elements are called alkaline earth metals.
- Babbitt metal contains 89% Sn (Tin), 9% Sb (Antimony) and 2% Cu (Copper).
- Gun powder contains 75% Potassium nitrate, 10% sulphur and 15% charcoal.
- Chromium trioxide is known as chromic acid.
- Nichrome wire is used in electrical heater [(Ni, Cr, Fe)]
- Potassium carbonate (K_2CO_3) is known as pearl ash.
- Generally transition metals and their compounds are coloured.
- Zeolite is used to remove hardness of water.
- In cytochrome iron (Fe) is present.
- Selenium metal is used in photo electric cell.
- Galium metal is liquid at room temperature.
- Palladium metal is used in aeroplane.

- Radium is extracted from pitchblende.
- World famous Eiffel Tower has steel and cement base.
- Actinides are radio-active elements.
- Cadmium rod is used in nuclear reactor to slow down the speed of neutron.
- Sodium peroxide is used in submarine and also to purify closed air in hospital.
- Co (60) is used in cancer treatment.
- Onion and garlic have odour due to potassium.
- Oxides of metals are alkaline.
- Silver and copper are the best conductor of electricity.
- Gold and Silver are the most malleable metal.
- Mercury and iron produces more resistance in comparison to the other during the flow of electricity.
- Lithium is the lightest and the most reductant element.
- In fireworks, crimson red colour is due to presence of strontium (Sr).
- Green colour is due to the presence of Barium in fireworks.
- Barium sulphate is used in X-ray of abdomen as barium meal.
- Barium hydroxide is known as Baryta water.
- Osmium is the heaviest metal and the Platinum is the hardest.
- Zinc oxide is known as flower of zinc. It is also known as chinese white and used as white paint.
- Silver chloride is used in photochromatic glass.
- Silver iodide is used in artificial rain.
- Silver nitrate is used as marker during election. It is kept in coloured bottle to avoid decomposition.
- Silver spoon is not used in egg food because it forms black silver sulphide.
- To harden the gold, copper is mixed. Pure gold is 24 carrat.
- Iron Pyrites (FeS_2) is known as fool's gold.
- Mercury is kept in iron pot because it doesn't form amalgum with iron.
- In tubelight there is the vapour of mercury and argon.
- Tetra-Ethyl lead is used as anti knocking compound.
- Lead-pipe is not used for drinking water because it forms poisonous lead hydroxide.
- Fuse wire is made up of lead and tin.
- Wrought iron is the purest from of Iron.
- Percentage of carbon in cast iron = 2.5 – 5%, wrought iron = 0.1 – 0.2%
- The melting point of Tungsten (W) is 3500°C. In India, Tungsten is produced in Degana mine situated in Rajasthan.
- To prevent oxidation of tungsten, air is removed from the electric bulb.
- Zirconium (Zr) metal burns in oxygen as wall as in nitrogen.
- Baddeleyite or Zircona (ZrO_2) is an ore of Zirconium.
- Zirconium (Zr), Cadmium (Cd) and Boron (B) have the capability to absorb neutrons. So, they are used in nuclear reactor.
- Beryl ($3BeO \cdot Al_2O_3 \cdot 6SiO_2$) is an ore of Beryllium.

- Stannous Sulphide (SnS_2) is also called Mosaic gold. It is used as paint. Tin shows the allotropy.
- Barium Sulphate ($BaSO_4$) is used as barium meal in X-ray of Stomach.
- The green light produced while burning crackers is due to presence of Barium.
- The Crimson red light produced while burning crackers is due to Strontium (Sr).
- Silver (Ag), Gold (Au), Copper (Cu), Platinum (Pt) and Bismuth (Bi) are found in independent state because they are very less reactive.
- Gold, platinum, silver and mercury are noble metals.
- Gold and silver are the most malleable among metals.
- Mercury and Iron provide much resistance in the flow of electric current.
- Aluminium was first extracted in 1827 A.D. is potassium urangly ortho vanedate.
- Greenocite (CdS) is the ore of Cadmium.
- Britannia metal is an alloy of Antimony (Sb), Copper (Cu) and Tin (Sn).
- Thulium has symbol Tm.
- Group I elements are called alkali metals and its hydroxides are alkaline while group II elements are called Alkaline earth metal.
- Flash bulb contain magnesium wire in medium of nitrogen.
- Aluminium hydroxide is used to make water proof and Stainless Clothes.
- Calcium Carbide (CaS_2) reacts with water to produce acetylene gas.
- The reaction of Ferric Oxide (Fe_2O_3) with aluminium is used to fill up the cracks of railway tracks and machine parts. This reaction is called Thermite reaction.
- Anaemia is caused due to deficiency of Iron in the body while excess of Iron in the body may cause siderosis. Bantu tribes of Africa suffer from siderosis because they drink beer in iron utensils.
- Auric Chloride ($AuCl_3$) is used to make antivenom needles.
- Mercury is also known as quick silver. Mercury is kept in iron vessels because it does not make amalgams with Iron.
- Lead is a stable element. So, it is used to write on paper.
- Lead arsenic is an alloy used to make bullets. Carbon lead is used to make artificial parts of body.
- Lead Oxide is also called Litharge. It is an amphoteric oxide. It is used in rubber industries in manufacturing of storage batteries and flint glass.
- Uranium is a heavy radioactive metal. It belongs to actinide group. It is used in manufacture atom bomb. The bombs dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki were made of Uranium.

14. Non metal

In modern periodic table there are 24 non metals, 11 are gases, 1 is liquid (Br_2) and 12 are solid.

Electronegative elements are non metals.

Non metals are bad conductor of heat and electricity except graphite, Si & Ge are semi conductor.

Hydrogen (H_2)

The lightest gas having three isotopes

$_1H^1$,	$_1H^2$,	$_1H^3$.
Protium	Deuterium	Tritium (Radioactive)

Protium is only one isotope in Periodic Table having zero neutron.

Deuterium oxide is known as heavy water and used in nuclear reactor as moderator.

Liquid hydrogen is used as rocket fuel.

Hydrogen is known as range element because it may kept in group I & group VII A.

Water (H_2O)

Hard water – Less froth with soap

Soft water – more froth with soap.

Hard water – Due to the presence of soluble impurities of bicarbonates, chlorides & sulphates of Ca & Mg.

Temporary hardness – Due to the presence of bicarbonate of calcium and magnesium.

Permanent hardness – Due to the presence of chlorides and sulphates of calcium and magnesium.

Temporary hardness is removed by boiling and by Clark's method while permanent hardness is removed by Soda ash (Na_2CO_3) process.

Permanent hardness is also removed by permutit process.

In ice every molecule of H_2O is associated with four other H_2O molecules by hydrogen bonding in a tetrahedral fashion. Thus, ice has an open structure with large empty space due to existence of hydrogen bonding. Thus ice has less density than water.

As ice melts at 0°C, a number of hydrogen bonds are broken down and space between water molecules decreases so that water molecules move closer together. Therefore, the density of water increases and maximum at 0° to 4°C. Above 4°C the increase in Kinetic Energy of the molecules is sufficient to cause the molecule to disperse and the result is that the density steadily decreases with increases in temperature.

Oxygen

Important constituent of air, exists in three different isotopes.

$_8O^{16}$, $_8O^{17}$, $_8O^{18}$

Ozone (O_3) is the allotrope of Oxygen.

Ozone reduces the effect of ultraviolet rays in the atmosphere.

Nitrogen

78% by volume in atmosphere, liquid nitrogen is used for refrigeration.

Nitrogen gas is essential for protein synthesis.

Ammonia is an important compound of N_2 which is prepared by Haber's process.

Ammonia

As refrigerent, In the manufacture of HNO_3.

In fertilizer like urea, ammonium sulphate etc.

In the manufacture of Na_2CO_3 & $NaHCO_3$.

In preparation of ammonium salt.

In preparation of explosive.

In preparation of Artificial silk.

Nitrogen fixation in leguminous plants

Phosphorous

An important constituent of animals and plants. It is present in bones & DNA. Phosphorous is an essential constituent of nucleic acid.

Phosphorous shows allotropy – White or yellow phosphorous, Red phosphorous, Black phosphorous etc.

White phosphorous is more reactive than red phosphorous.

Sulphur Dioxide (SO_2)

Sulphur dioxide (SO_2) acts as bleaching agent due to its reducing nature and bleaches in presence of moisture.

$$SO_2 + 2H_2O \longrightarrow H_2SO_4 + 2(H)$$

$$\text{Coloured matter} + H \longrightarrow \underset{\text{(Bleached)}}{\text{Colourless matter}}$$

The bleaching by SO_2 is temporary. When the bleached article is exposed to air, it regains its original colour.

Halogens

17th group elements

Uses of fluorine : In the preparation of UF_6 and SF_6 for energy production and as dielectric constant respectively.

By using HF, chloro fluoro carbon compound and polytetra fluoro ethylene can be synthesised.

Chlorofluoro carbon is known as Freon used as refrigerent and aerosol.

Non-stick utensil is made up of teflon.

Chlorine is used to prepare PVC, insecticides herbicides etc.

Chlorine also acts as a bleaching agent and its bleaching action is due to oxidation

$$Cl_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow 2HCl + (O)$$

$$\text{Coloured substance} + (O) \longrightarrow \underset{\text{(Bleached)}}{\text{Colourless product}}$$

The bleaching action of chlorine is permanent. The colour of bleached articles can not be a restored. It acts as bleaching agent for vegetable and organic matter.

Bromine is used in ethylene bromide synthesis which is mixed with leaded pertrol. In the preparation of AgBr which is used in photography.

Inert gases

It belongs to 18th group of P.T.

He, Ne, Ar, Kr, Xe, Rn

Except Rn, all inert gases are present in atmosphere.

Argon is used in Arc. welding & electric bulb.

Helium is light & non-inflammable so, used in balloon, weather indicator etc.

Neon is used in discharge tube glow light.

15. Common Facts

	Catalyst	Process
1.	Fe + Mo	Synthesis of NH_3 by Haber's process.
2.	Ni	Synthesis of vanaspati Ghee (hydrogenation)
3.	Pt	Synthesis of H_2SO_4 by Contact process.
4.	NO	In the manufacture of H_2SO_4 by the Lead chamber process.
5.	Hot Al_2O_3	In the preparation of Ether from Alcohol.
6.	$CuCl_2$	Preparation of chlorine gas by Deacon process.

Some Important Explosive

- Dynamite : It was discovered Alfred Nobel in 1863. It is prepared by absorption of raw dust with Nitro-glycerine. In modern dynamite Sodium Nitrate is used in place of Nitro-glycerine.
- Tri Nitro Toluene (TNT)
- Tri Nitro Benzene (TNB)
- Tri Nitro Phenol (TNP) : It is also known as picric acid.
- R.D.X is highly explosive known as plastisizer in which Aluminium powder is mixed to increase the temperature and the speed of fire.

Some Important Facts

- Age of fossils and archeological excavation is determined by radioactive carbon (C^{14}).
- Diamond has maximum refractive index and due to total internal reflection. It has lustre.
- Chloroform in sunlight forms poisonous gas 'Phosgene' ($COCL_2$).
- To decrease the basicity of soil gypsum is used.
- In the preparation of Talcom powder theophestal mineral is used.
- Potassium chloride is most suitable for the removal of permanent hardness of water.
- To avoid melting of ice gelatine is used.
- When dry ice is heated it is directly converted into gas.
- Saccharine is prepared from toluene.
- Cream is a type of milk in which amount of fat is increased while amount of water decrease.
- From one kilogram of honeybee 3500 calorie energy is produced.
- N_2O is known as laughing gas.
- Bones contain about 58% calcium phosphate.
- Phosphine gas is used in voyage as Holmes signal.

- Chlorine gas bleaches the colour of flower due to oxidation.
- Red phosphorus is used in match industry.
- Urea contains 46% nitrogen.
- In the electroplating of vessel NH_4Cl is used.
- Power alcohol is prepared from mixing pure alcohol in benzene which is used as rocket fuel.
- Artificial perfumes are prepared from Ethyl acetate.
- Urea was the first organic compound synthesised in Laboratory.
- Vinegar contains 10% acetic acid.
- Acetylene is used for light production.
- Ferric chloride is used to stop bleeding.
- Barium is responsible for green colour in fireworks.
- Cesium is used in solar cells.
- Yellow phosphorus is kept in water.
- Sea weeds contains iodine.
- During cooking maximum vitamin is lost.
- For the preparation of silver mirror, glucose is used.
- When cream is separated from milk, it's density increases.
- For artificial respiration mixture of oxygen and helium gas cylinder is used.
- In cold places, to decrease the freezing point ethylene glycol is used.
- Hydrogen peroxide is used for oil paintings.
- Sodium is kept in kerosene oil.
- The heaviest element is Osmium (Os).
- The lightest element, least dense and most reductant is lithium (Li).
- Flourine is the most oxidising agent.
- Silver is the best conductor of electricity.
- Radon is the heaviest gas.
- Polonium has the maximum number of isotopes.
- Sulphuric acid is known as oil of vitriol.
- Noble metals — Ag, Au, Pt, Ir, Hg, Pd, Rh, Ru, and Os.
- When methyl alcohol (methanol) is taken even in minute quantities, it acts as poison and serves as a cause for blindness.
- Glass makes a soluble silicate in hydrofloric acid (HF). This is the reason why hydrofluoric acid is not stored in glass containers.
- The density of gold is higher than the density of mercury. So, gold drowns in mercury.
- Bisphenol A is a chemical used for progress in food packaging matenal.
- Xenon is also called stranger gas.
- If soluble substance is added to a liquid, the surface tension of that liquid is increased.
- Conversion of force nitrogen in atmosphere into nitrates is known as Nitrogen fixation.

- Picric acid is an organic compound which is used as a reagent in Laboratory.
- Bones are composed of 8% phosphorous.
- Safety matches are made by using red phosphorous.
- Ammonium chloride is used to electroplate utensils.
- Benzene or Ether is dissolved in pure alcohol to form power alcohol, which is used as a fuel for aeroplanes.
- Milk is an emulsion.
- Platinum is also called 'White Gold'.

16. Man made substances

1. **Fertilizers** : The substances added to the soil to make up the deficiency of essential elements are known as fertilizers, these are either natural or synthetic (chemical). For a chemical fertilizer, the following requirements should be met :

(a) It must be sufficiently soluble in water

(b) It should be stable so that the element in it may be available for a longer time.

(c) It should contain nothing injurious to plants.

Phosphatic Fertilizers : The minerals of phosphorous such as phosphorite $[Ca_3(PO_4)_2]$ and apatite $[3Ca_3(PO_4)_2 \cdot CaF_2]$ are sparingly soluble in water and thus do not serve as source of phosphosrous for plants. Therefore, these are converted into soluble materials which can act as good fertilizers. Important phosphatic fertilizers are—

1. Calcium superphosphate
2. Nitrophosphate
3. Triple phosphate
4. Phosphatic slag

Nitrogenous Fertilizers : Plants need nitrogen for rapid growth and increase in their protein content. For this reason, nitrogenous fertilizers become more important. The chief nitrogeneous fertilizers are ammonium sulphate, calcium cyanamide, ammonium nitrate, urea, calcium ammonium nitrate. Urea contains 46.6% nitrogen.

Potash Fertilizers : Potassium gives the structural length to plants. Potassium nitrate, potassium choride and potassium sulphates etc are important potash fertilizers.

NPK Fertilizers: Fertilizers containing N, P are K in suitable adjusted proportions are known as NPK fertilizers. These are obtained by mixing nitrogeneous, phosphatic and potash fertilizers in suitable proportions. Expression like 4–8–2 used for a mixed fertilizer indicates that it contains 4% N_2, 8% P_2O_5 and 2% K_2O

2. **Dyes** : Coloured substances used for colouring textiles, foodstuffs, silk, wool, etc. are called dyes.

Different classes of dyes are given below.

(a) **Nitro dyes** : These are polynitro derivatives of phenol where nitro group acts as a chromophore and hydroxyl group as auxochrome.

(b) **Azo dyes** : These are an important class of dyes and are characterised by the presence of azo group ($-N{=}N-$) as the chromophore. The groups like NH_2, NR_2 or $-OH$, etc., present in the molecule containing one or more azo gruops act as the auxochromes.

(c) Triphenylmethane dyes : These dyes contain the paraquinoid moiety as a chromophore and —OH, —NH_2 or —NR_2 as auxochrome. These dyes are not fast to light and washing and hence are mainly used for colouring paper or typewriter ribbons, e.g. malachite green which is used for dyeing wool and silk directly and cotton after mordanting with tannin.

(d) Mordant dyes : Those dyes which are fixed on the fibre with the help of a mordant are known as mordant dyes. For acidic dyes, basic mordants (such as hydroxides of iron, aluminium and chromium) are used, while for basic dyes, acidic mordants (like tannic acid) are used. Here the fabric is first dipped into a solution of mordant and then into the dye solution. The colour produced depends on the nature of the mordant used.

(e) Vat dyes : These are water insoluble dyes and are introduced into the fibre in its (soluble) reduced form, also known as *leuco*form (colourless). These are called vat dyes because reducing operation (using sodium hydrosulphite) was formerly carried out in wooden vats. Indigo is a vat dye and is used for dyeing cotton.

Composition of Cement

Compound	Percentage
CaO	60-70%
SiO_2	20-25%
Al_2O_3	5-10%
Fe_2O_3	2-3%
MgO	2%
Na_2O	1.5%
K_2O	1.5%
SO_2	1%

Cement : It is a complex material containing the silicates of calcium and aluminium. A paste of it in water sets into a hard rocky mass-called the setting of cement. A paste of sand, cement and water called mortar, is very conveniently used for joining bricks and plastering walls.

A mixture of stone chips (gravel) sand cement and water known as concrete, sets harder than ordinary mortar. It is used for flooring and making roads. Concrete with steel bars and wires called reinforced concrete (RC) forms a very strong material. It is used for constructing roofs, bridges and pillars.

In 1824, by an English Mason, Joseph Aspdin who observed that when strongly heated mixture of limestone and clay was mixed with water and allow to stand, it hardened to a stone-like mass which resembled portland rock—a famous building stone of England. Since then the name portland cement has been given to a mixture containing high percentage of lime with silica, iron oxide, alumina etc.

Glass : Supercooled liquid is called glass. SiO_2 is its common constituent.

(a) Soda glass or soda lime glass : It is Sodium calcium silicate ($Na_2O\ CaO\ 5\ SiO_2$). It is the cheapest of all glasses and used for making window panes and bottles and easily attacked by chemicals.

(b) Potash glass : It contains potassium in place of sodium. it has higher softening temperature as also a greater resistance to chemicals. So it is used for chemical apparatus; beakers, flasks, funnels etc.

(c) Optical glass: It is used for making lenses, prisms and optical instruments like telescopes and microscopes. It contains boric oxide (B_2O_3) and silica (SiO_2)

Types : 1. Crown glass : Contains K_2O & BaO as the basic oxide

2. Flint glass : Contains PbO as the basic oxide.

(d) Crooks glass : for spectacles : Absorbs ultraviolet rays which are harmful for the eyes.

(e) Lead crystal and crystal glass : Lead glass sparkles used for making decorative items. It contains 24% or more of PbO called lead crystal. If it contains term than 24% lead oxide called crystal glass.

(f) Borosilicate glass : It contains less alkali (K_2O or CaO) and more SiO_2 than potash glass and some B_2O_3

(g) Coloured glass :

Colour	Substance added to the glass melt
Red	Selenium (Se) or copper (I) oxide (Cu_2O)
Green	Chromium III oxide (Cr_2O_3)
Violed	Maganese IV oxide (MnO_2)
Blue	Copper II oxide (CuO) or cobalt II oxide (CoO)
Brown	Iron on III oxide (Fe_2O_3)

It is used for making artificial jewellery, crockery and stained glass windows.

(h) Milky glass : Milky glass is prepared by adding tin oxide (SnO_2). Calcium phosphate ($Ca_3(PO_4)_2$) or cryolite ($AlF_3 3NaF$) to the melt glass. All these substances are white so look milky.

(i) Glass laminates : It is made by fixing polymer sheets between layers of glass. It is used to make windows & Screens of cars, trains and aircraft specially manufactured glass laminates are used bulletproof material.

Polymerisation : The simple molecules which combine to form a macro molecule is called polymer. The process by which the simple molecules (monomers) are converted polymer is called polymerisation.

$$\underset{\text{ethene}}{n\,CH_2{=}CH_2} \xrightarrow{\text{polymerisation}} \underset{\text{Polyethene}}{(-CH_2-CH_2-)_n}$$

Some common man-made polymers and their uses.

Polymer	Use
Polythene	Packaging material, carry bags, bottles.
Polypropene	Bottles, Crates.
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	Pipes insulation
Nylon (Polyester)	Fibres, ropes
Teflon	Nonstick kitchen ware
Vinyl rubber	Rubber erasers
Polystyrene	Foam Thermocole
Poly (Styrene butadiene)	Rubber bubble gum
Bakelite	Electrical insulation buttons
Lexan	Bullet proof glass
Melamine	Crockery

Paints : Paints can be applied on a surface to protect it from corrosion and weathering or to give it an attractive look.

A paint contains a pigment, a vehicle and a thinner. Zinc oxide, white lead and titanium oxide are the commonly used white pigments. The pigments is mixed with oil like linseed or soya bean oil or a polymer. A thinner is a solvent such as *turpentine oil* or *kerosene*. It makes the paint more fluid so that it may be applied easily.

Luminous paints : Glow when exposed to light, paints are applied on a surface to protect it from corrosion and weathering or to give it an attractive look.

Soaps and Detergents : Soaps are the sodium or Potassium salts of fatty acids. They are made by the saponification of fats. Detergents are made from some petroleum products.

Antibiotic : Medicinal compounds produced by moulds and bacteria, capable of destroying or preventing the growth of bacteria in animal systems.

Antibody : Kinds of substances formed in the blood, tending to inhibit or destroy harmful bacteria, etc.

Antidote : Medicine used against a poison, or to prevent a disease from having effect.

Antigen : Substance capable of stimulating formation of antibodies.

Antimony : A brittle, crystalline, silvery white metal.

Antipyretie : A substance used to lower body temperature.

Pesticides : Many living organisms destroy crops or eat away grains. They are collectively known as pests. To kill them chemicals used are called pesticides.

Insecticides : D.D.T. aluminium phosphate, gammexine.

Fungicide : Thiram, Bordeanx mixture $CaSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O + Ca(OH)_2$

Rodenticides : Aluminium phosphide.

Herbicides : Benzipram, benzadox.

Medicines : To cure diseases by biological changes in the body.

Analgesics : Painkillers are called analgesics eg, Aspirin, Paracetamol and morphine.

Antimalarial drugs : Used to treat malaria quinine derivatives eg, chlovoquine.

Destroy microorganism : Penicillin, Aminogly considers, oftoxaim, Homophonic.

Sulphadrugs : Alternatives of antibiotics, sulphanilamide, sulphadiazine, Sulpha gunamidine.

Antaoxide : Substances which remove the excess acid and raise the pH to appropriate level in stomach are called antacids. It is caused by excess of HCl in the gastric juice magnesium hydrate, magazines carbonate, magnesium truistical, aluminium phosphene are common antacids.

Epsom salt : Hydrated magnesium sulphate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$), used in medicines to empty bowels.

Chloroform : A sweetish, colourless liquid. It is used as a solvent and anaesthetic.

Saccharin : A white crystalline solid which is 550 times sweeter than sugar, but does not have any food value. It is used by diabetic patients.

DDT : Dichloro diphenyl tricholoro ethane, a white powder used as an insecticide.

★★★

8

BIOLOGY

1. Introduction

Biology – Branch of science in which living beings are studied. *Bios* = Life & *Logos* = Study. Therefore study of life is called *Biology*. The term *biology* was first coined by *Lamarck* and *Treviranus* in the year 1801. Biology has two main branch—

1. **Botany** : Study of different aspects of plants. *Theophrastus* is known as father of Botany.
2. **Zoology** : Study of various aspects of animals. *Aristotle* is called father of Zoology as well as Biology.

Important Terms of Biology :

- **Anatomy** : Study of internal structure of organism.
- **Agrology** : Soil science dealing specially with production of crop.
- **Agronomy** : Science of soil management and production of crop.
- **Agrostology** : Study of grass.
- **Arthrology** : Study of joints.
- **Apiculture** : Rearing of honey bee for honey.
- **Anthropology** : Study of origin, development and relationship between the culture of past and present human.
- **Anthology** : Study of flower and flowering plant.
- **Angiology** : Study of blood vascular system including arteries and veins.
- **Andrology** : Study of male reproductive organ.
- **Bryology** : Study of Bryophytes.
- **Biometrics** : Statical study of Biological problem.
- **Biomedical engineering** : Production and designing of spare part for overcoming various defects in man. e.g. Artificial limbs, Iron lung, Pacemaker etc.
- **Biotechnology** : Technology concerned with living beings for wilful manipulation on molecular level.
- **Bacteriology** : Study of bacteria.
- **Cytology** : Study of cell.
- **Cryobiology** : It is the study of effect of low temperature on organisms and their preservation.
- **Clone** : Clones are genetically identical individual in a population.
- **Cardiology** : Study of heart.
- **Demography** : Study of population.
- **Diffusion** : Random movement of molecule/ ion or gases from a region of higher concentration to lower concentration.
- **Dermatology** : Study of skin.
- **Dendrochronology** : Counting and analysing annual growth rings of tree to know its age.

- **Ecology** : Study of inter-relationship between living and their environment.
- **Evolution** : Study of origin of life, variation and formation of new species.
- **Embryology** : Study of fertilization of egg, formation of zygote and development of embryo.
- **Eugenics** : Study of factors connected with the improvement of human race.
- **Euthenics** : Study of environmental condition that contribute to the improvement of human beings.
- **Euphenics** : Treatment of defective in heredity through genetics engineering.
- **Ethnology** : Study of science dealing with different races of human.
- **Ethology** : Study of animal behaviour in their natured habitats.
- **Etiology** : Study of causative agent of disease.
- **Entomology** : Study of insects.
- **Exobiology** : Study of possibility of life in space.
- **Floriculture** : Cultivation of plant for flower.
- **Food technology** : Scientific processing, preservation, storage and transportation of food.
- **Forensic science** : Application of science for analysis of various fact and evidence to identify the cause or the person involve in criminal act.
- **Fishery** : Catching, breeding, rearing and marketing of fishes.
- **Forestry** : Development and management of forest.
- **Fermentation**: Process of incomplete oxidation that occur in microbes and other cells in absence of oxygen, leading to the formation of ethyl alcohol.
- **Genetics** : Study of variation and transmission of heredity character from parents to their young ones.
- **Growth** : Permanent increase in weight, volume and size of an organism.
- **Genetic Engineering** : Manipulation of gene in order to improve the organism.
- **Gynecology** : Study of female reproductive organ.
- **Gerontology** : Study of ageing.
- **Gastroenterology** : Study of alimentary canal or stomach and intestine related disorders.
- **Hypertonic** : When two solution have different solute concentration. The solution which have higher concentration is called hypertonic.
- **Hypotonic** : In two solutions which have lower solute concentration is called hypotonic
- **Homeothermic** : Animals who have constant body temperature are called homeothermic or warmblooded animal.
- **Histology** : Study of tissue organisation and their internal structure with the help of microscope.
- **Hygiene** : Science taking care of health.
- **Hydroponics** : Study of growing plant without soil in water which contain nutrient.
- **Haematology** : Study of blood.
- **Hepatology** : Study of liver.

- **Ichthyology** : Study of fishes.
- **Immunology** : Study of immune system or resistance of body to disease.
- **Kalology** : Study of human beauty.
- **Metazoans** : All multicellular animals are called metazoans.
- **Monoecious** : Plants which have both male and female flower
- **Morphology** : Study of external structure.
- **Microbiology** : Study of micro-organism like virus, bacteria, algae, fungi and protozoa.
- **Molecular biology** : Study of molecule found in the body of living organism.
- **Medicine** : Study of treating disease by drug.
- **Mammography** : Branch of science which deal test for breast cancer.
- **Mycology** : Study of fungi.
- **Myrmecology** : Study of ant is called myrmecology.
- **Mixed farming** : Farming along with animal husbandry.
- **Nutrients** : Chemical substances taken as food which are necessary for various function, growth and health of living.
- **Nanotechnology** : The study 'Science of small' is known as nanotechnology.
- **Neurology** : Study of nervous system.
- **Neonatology** : Study of new born.
- **Nephrology** : Study of kidneys.
- **Osmosis** : Movement of water molecule across semipermeable membrane from the region of its higher concentration to the region of lower concentration.
- **Odontology** : Study of teeth and gum.
- **Osteology** : Study of bones.
- **Oncology** : Study of cancer and tumours.
- **Obstetrics** : Science related with care of pregnant women before, during and after child birth.
- **Ornithology** : Study of birds.
- **Ophthalmology** : Study of eyes.
- **Orthopaedics** : Diagnosis and repair of disorder of locomotery system.
- **Phytoplankton** : Microscopic organism which passively float on the surface of water.
- **Parasite** : Organism which depend on other living organism for their food and shelter.
- **Poikilothermic** : Organism which change their body temperature according to surrounding. These are also called cold blooded animal.
- **Pigment** : A substance which absorb light of certain wavelength like chlorophyll found in green leaves.
- **Paleontology** : Study of fossils.
- **Physiology** : Study of function of various system of organism.
- **Pathology** : Study of diseases, effects, causable agents and transmission of pathogens.

- **Pomology** : Study of fruit and fruit yielding plant.
- **Psychiatry** : Treatment of mental disorders.
- **Psychology** : Study of human mind and behaviour.
- **Pisciculture** : Rearing of fishes.
- **Phycology** : Study of algae.
- **Paediatrics** : Branch of medicine dealing with children.
- **Parasitology** : Study of parasites.
- **Pharmacology** : The science which deal with drugs.
- **Photobiology** : Effect of light on various biological processes.
- **Phylogeny** : Evolutionary history of organism.
- **Physiotherapy** : Treatment of body defects through massage and exercise.
- **Radiology** : Science dealing with the effect of radiation on living beings.
- **Rhinology** : Study of nose and olfactory organs.
- **Sonography** : Study of ultrasound imaging.
- **Saurology** : Study of lizards.
- **Serology** : Study of serum, interaction of antigen and antibodies in the blood.
- **Sphygmology** : Study of pulse and arterial pressure.
- **Taxonomy** : Study of classification, nomenclature and identification of organism.
- **Telepathy** : Communication of thoughts or ideas from one mind to another without normal use of senses. In other word this is the process of mental contact.
- **Veterinary Science** : Science of health care and treatment of domestic animals.

2. What is living ?

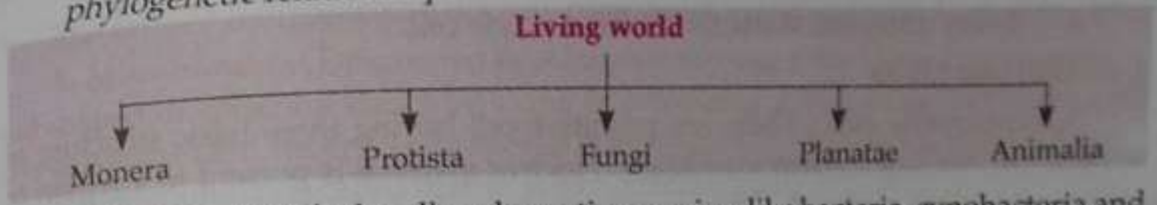
- The word living cannot be defined.
- Living organism mostly uses of solar energy.
- There are certain characters by which living can be distinguished from non living.
  1. **Growth** : Increase in the number of cell or mass is called growth
  2. **Reproduction** : Living organism produce young ones of their same kind.
  3. **Metabolism** : Chemical reaction occurring inside a living cell.
  4. **Response of stimuli** : Living have the ability to sense the condition of their surrounding and respond to these stimuli
- When we touch leaves of "Touch me not" plant they close, these movement are called sesmonastic movement.

3. Classification of Organism

- There are millions of organisms. It is impossible to study each individual separately. Classification means to categories organism into different groups. Study of an individual of a group gives us the idea of rest of the member of that group.
- *Linnaeus* divide all organism into two kingdoms— *Planate* and *Animalia* in his book *"Systema Nature"*. The foundation of modern classification system was laid in the line of classification system started by *Linnaeus*. Therefore *Linnaeus* is called *'Father of Taxonomy'*. Due to disputed position of organism like bacteria, virus, fungi and euglena, there is a need of reconsideration of system of classification.
- The book 'Genera plantarium' was written by **Benthem** and **Hooker**.

Five Kingdom Classification

- Five Kingdom Classification was proposed in 1969 by *R.H. Whittaker*. The criteria of classifying organism into five kingdoms are *complexity of cell structure, complexity of body of organism, mode of nutrition, life style and phylogenetic relationship.*



1. Monera : It includes all prokaryotic organism like bacteria, cynobacteria and archiobacteria. Filamentous bacteria also come under this kingdom. All organism of this kingdom are microscopic.

2. Protista : This kingdom includes unicellular form usually found in aquatic habitats. On the basis of mode of nutrition they are autotrophic, parasitic, and saprophytic. Diatoms flagellates and protozoa come under this kingdom. *Euglena* have both heterotrophic and autotrophic mode of nutrition. So, it is placed between plant and animal.

3. Fungi : This kingdom includes nongreen plants. It has saprophytic nutrition and growing on dead and decaying organic matter. The cell wall is composed of chitin. **Example** : *Mushroom, Mucor, Albugo* etc.

4. Planatae : This kingdom includes all plants except algae, diatoms, fungi and member of monera and protista.

5. Animalia : Almost all animal comes under this kingdom except protozoan.

- **Binomial nomenclature :** There was the need of uniform international naming of organism. In biology every organism is given two proper names. The first name is *genus* name always started with capital letter and the second name is *species* started with small letter. For example scientific name of human is *Homo sapiens*. Homo is the name of genus, whose one species is sapiens.
- Basic unit of classification is species.
- **Carlos Linnus** is the father of taxonomy.

Scientific Names of Some Organisms

Man	*Homo sapiens*	Frog	*Rana tigrina*	Mustard	*Brassica campestris*
Cat	*Felis domestica*	Dog	*Canis familaris*	Housefly	*Musca domestica*
Mango	*Mangifera indica*	Rice	*Oryza sativa*	Wheat	*Triticum aestivum*
Gram	*Cicer arietinum*	Cow	*Bos indicus*	Pea	*Pisum sativum*

4. Study of Cell

- Study of cell is called cytology.
- **Cell** : Cell is the basic structural and functional unit of life.
- The word *'cell'* was first coined by British scientist *Robert Hook* in the year 1665.

- The smallest cell is *Mycoplasma gallisepticum.*
- The longest cell in human body is *Neuron.*
- The biggest cell is *egg of Ostrich.*
- Schilden and Schwan established cell theory in the year 1838-39.

Main features of the cell theory :

1. All organism are composed of cell.
2. Body of every organism is made of cell.
3. Each cell arises from pre-existing cell.
4. Every organism starts its life from single cell.

Cell is of two kinds

1. Prokaryotic cell : These are primitive cell having three basic structure of typical cell but lack nuclear membrane. Nuclear material is present in a region of cytoplasm called nucleoid. Other membrane bound organelles are absent such as mitochondria, lysosome, golgi bodies etc. Ex.-Virus, bacteria and cynobacteria are Prokaryotes.

- Number of Mitochondria in bacterial cell is zero.
- The smallest known prokaryotic organism is Mycoplasma.

2. Eukaryotic cell : These are complete cell which contain membrane bound organelles and nucleus. Unicellular and multicellular plant and animal have Eukaryotic cell.

- The biggest single called organism is Acetabularia.
- Nucleus contain chromatin made up of DNA and histone protein.
- Nucleolus is present inside nucleus.

Difference between Prokaryotes and Eukaryotes

Prokaryotes	Eukaryotes
1. Size of cell is generally small.	1. Size of cell is generally large.
2. Nucleus absent.	2. Nucleus present.
3. It contain single chromosome which is circular in shape.	3. It contains more than one chromosome
4. Membrane bound cell organelles are absent.	4. Cell organelles present.
5. Cell division takes place by fission or budding.	5. Cell division takes place by mitosis and meiosis.

- **Structure of typical cell :** A cell have following structure.

1. Cell wall : In plant cell there is a rigid cell wall which is non living and freely permeable. It is made up of cellulose or chitin. It provide shape and rigidity to the cell.

- Cell wall of bacteria is made up of peptidoglycan.

2. Cell membrane : It is also known as *plasma membrane* which form the outer covering of animal cell. In plant cell it is found within cell wall. It is thin, elastic, living, double layer, permeable membrane. It is made up of phospholipid molecules.

Function : It regulates movement of molecules inside and outside of the cell.

3. Protoplasm : The whole fluid present inside plasma membrane is protoplasm. The name protoplasm is given by *Purkenje* in 1839. Protoplasm is made up of various chemical substances like water, ions, salt and organic molecule. It is the living part of cell.

Protoplasm is divided into two parts.

A. Cytoplasm : The fluid found outside the nuclear membrane.

B. Nucleoplasm : The fluid found inside the nuclear membrane.

- 99% of protoplasm is made up of oxygen (76%), carbon (10.5%) hydrogen (10%) and nitrogen (2.5%).
- 80% of protoplasm is water.
- The ratio of inorganic and organic compound found in protoplasm is 81 : 19.

4. Mitochondria : Discovered by *Altman* in the year 1886. These are cylindrical, rod shaped or spherical structure found in cytoplasm. It is surrounded by double layered membrane. Inner membrane has many fold called *cristae.* The fluid presents inside mitochondria is called *matrix,* which contains many enzyme and co-enzyme.

- Mitochondria is considered as prokaryotic cell inside eukaryotic.

Function : Mitochondria is the respiratory site of cellular respiration. Mitochondria synthesize energy rich compound ATP. It is also known as 'Power House' of the cell.

5. Golgi bodies : Discovered by scientist *Camilo Golgi.* Golgi bodies are made up of group of tubes, vesicles and vacuoles. In plant it is more in number and here it is known as dictyosomes.

Function : It work as storage, processing and packaging of material. It also involved in the synthesis of cell wall, plasma membrane and lysosomes.

- It help in the synthesis of carbohydrate from simple sugar which combine with protein made by ribosome forming glycoprotein.

6. Endoplasmic reticulum : Membranous network of tubules like structure found in cytoplasm is called *endoplasmic reticulum.* It is attached with the nucleus on one side and on other side it is joined with plasma membrane.

Function : Endoplasmic reticulum helps in the distribution of material. It forms supporting framework of cell.

7. Ribosome : Discovered by *Palade.* Small granules like structure found attached to the endoplasmic reticulum or in free state. It is made up of ribonucleic acid (RNA).

Function : Take part in protein synthesis.

8. Lysosome : Discovered by *De Duve.* These are sac like structure bounded by single membrane and contain hydrolytic enzyme.

Function : It helps in intracellular digestion. The enzyme found in lysosome may digest the entire cell. So it is also known as suicidal bag.

- Lysosome is not found in Red blood corpuscles of mammal.

9. Centrosome : Discovered by *Boveri.* It is only found in animal cell taking part in cell division. It is not bounded by membrane consist of two centriole.

Function : Help in the formation of spindle fibre between pole during cell division.

10. Plastid : Only found in plant cell. It is of three type : (a) Chloroplast (b) Chromoplast (c) Leucoplast.

(a) **Chloroplasts** : These are green pigment found in green plant involve in photosynthesis. So, it is known as *'Kitchen of the cell'*. Chloroplast is bounded by two unit membrane having grana and stroma. Grana are membrane bounded sac like structure found in stacks containing chlorophyll molecule. Stroma is the matrix present inside the chloroplast which contain photosynthetic enzymes and starch grain. Granum is the site of light reaction during photosynthesis while stroma is the site of dark reaction.

Function : Chloroplast provides green colour to plant & take part in photosynthesis.

(b) **Chromoplast** provides various colours to the plant like flower, fruit etc.

- Chromoplasts are of different kind.

Lycopene : In tomato it provide red colour.

Carotine : Provide yellow or orange colour in plant. Example—Carrot.

Betanin : Found in sugar beet.

(c) **Leucoplast** is colourless. It stores the food in the form of starch, fat & protein.

- Leucoplast is found in root and underground stem.

11. Vacuole : It is fluid filled single membrane bounded, dead organelles of cell. In plant cell it is larger in size but in animal it is smaller in size.

Function : It helps in osmoregulation. It stores toxic metabolic waste.

12. Nucleus : The nucleus is a spherical, centrally located is a major structure found in the cell. In plant cell it is shifted towards periphery. It is bounded by double layered nuclear membrane having pore. Within nucleoplasm nucleolus and chromatin material is present. Nucleolus is rich in protein and RNA. Chromatin material is thin thread like structure forming network. This is made up of genetic substance DNA (deoxyribo nucleic acid) and histone protein. During cell division chromatin breaks into pieces and form chromosome.

Function : It controls all the activity of cells. So it is also known as 'control room' of cell. Chromatin transmits hereditary characters from parents to their offspring.

- Other than nucleus DNA is also found in mitochondria and chloroplast.

Difference between Plant and Animal cells

Plant cell	Animal Cell
1. Plant cells are larger in size.	1. Animal cells are generally smaller in size.
2. Cell wall present, made up of cellulose and chitin.	2. Cell wall absent.
3. Plastid present.	3. Plastid absent.
4. Centrosome absent.	4. Centrosome present.
5. Vacuoles are larger in size	5. Vacuoles are smaller in size.

- Cell becomes turgid because of endosmosis
- The process of imbibition involves both diffusion and capillary action.
- A cell increases in volume when it is placed in hypotonic solution.

Chromosome

- Chromosome is thread like structure found in the nucleus. It becomes visible during cell division. Each chromosome is made up of two chromatids joined together at a point centromere. Bead like structure found on chromosome is called *gene*. Genes are made up of DNA (deoxyribo nucleic acid) which is the carrier of genetic information from generation to generation. In some viruses RNA is the genetic material called *retrovirus*. In prokaryotes there is only one chromosome, like bacteria and virus.
- Chromosome was named by **Waldeyer** in 1888 capable of self replication, which transmit coded information from one generation to other.
- Eukaryotic cell possess many chromosome. A particular kind of species have definite number of chromosome in their cell, which are in pair known as *diploid*. The set of unpaired chromosome is called *haploid*. Gametes have haploid set of chromosome.

Number of chromosome in different organism

Pegion	40 pairs	Dog	39 pairs	Horse	32 pairs
Chimpanzee	24 pairs	Human	23 pairs	Wheat	21 pairs
Cat	19 pairs	Frog	13 pairs	Tomato	12 pairs
Onion	8 pairs	Pea	7 pairs	Ascaris	1 pairs

- **Nucleic Acid :** Nucleic acid is complex organic compound found in cell. It contains special genetic instruction in coded form. Nucleic acids are of two kinds—

A. **Deoxyribo Nucleic Acid (DNA)** : *Frederic Meischer* was the first who isolated DNA from the nucleus of pus cells. DNA is a macro molecule in which large number of nucleotides are present. Chemically a nucleotide has three components. 1. Nitrogen base 2. Sugar 3. Phosphate group.

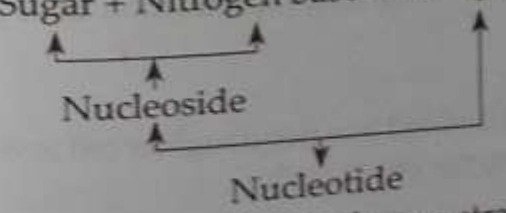
- Nitrogen base are of two types—*Purines* & *Pyrimidines*. Purines contain two types of nitrogen base—*Adinine* and *Guanine*. Pyrimidine nitrogen base are *Thymine* and *Cytosine*.

Thus there are four kinds of nucleotides present in DNA.

Watson and *Crick* give the structural model of DNA —

1. DNA molecule is consist of two polynucleotide strand, forming a *double helix*. Each strand has a backbone of sugar and phosphate. Nitrogen base is attached to the sugar.

- Sugar + Nitrogen base = Neucleoside.
- Sugar + Nitrogen base + Phosphate = Nucleotide



2. Nitrogenous base of the two strands of a double helix form a pair with the help of hydrogen bonds. Adenine pairs with thymine where as guanine pairs with cytosine. Adenine and thymine are complementary to each other and cytosine is

Dihybrid cross : Mendal made a cross between two pure plant having in two pair of contransting character i.e. colour and shape of seed called dihybrid cross.

He made a cross between plant having round seed with yellow colour and wrinkled seed with green colour.

RRYY
(Round & yellow seed)
↓
Gametes — RY

rryy
(Wrinkled & green)
↓
ry

×
Cross Pollination
↓
F_1 generation : Rr Yy (All are round and yellow seed)
↓
F_2 generation : Self pollination

♀ ╲ ♂	RY	Ry	rY	ry
RY	RRYY round yellow	RRYy round yellow	RrYY round yellow	RrYy round yellow
Ry	RRYy round yellow	RRyy round green	RrYy round yellow	Rryy round green
rY	RrYY round yellow	RrYy round yellow	rrYY wrinkled yellow	rrYy wrinkled yellow
ry	RrYy round yellow	Rryy round green	rrYy wrinkled yellow	rryy wrinkled green

Phenotypic ratio of F_2 generation— 9 : 3 : 3 : 1
Genotypic ratio : 1 : 2 : 1 : 2 : 4 : 2 : 1 : 2 : 1

On the basis of mono and dihybrid cross Mendal proposed law of heredity

1. **Law of paired unit** : Mendal proposed that when two dissimilar unit factors are present in an individual only one is able to express. One that expresses itself is *dominant unit factor* while other which fail to express is *recessive unit factor.* For example tallness is dominant over dwarfness.

2. **Law of dominance** : Offspring of cross breed parent only show dominant characters in F_1 generation.

3. **Law of segregation** : In F_2 generation both the character which is governed by gene is separated.

4. **Law of independent assortment** : During dihybrid and tribhybrid cross two or three pair of characters are taken. These characters segregate separately without depending on other in F_2 generation.

Term related to genetics :

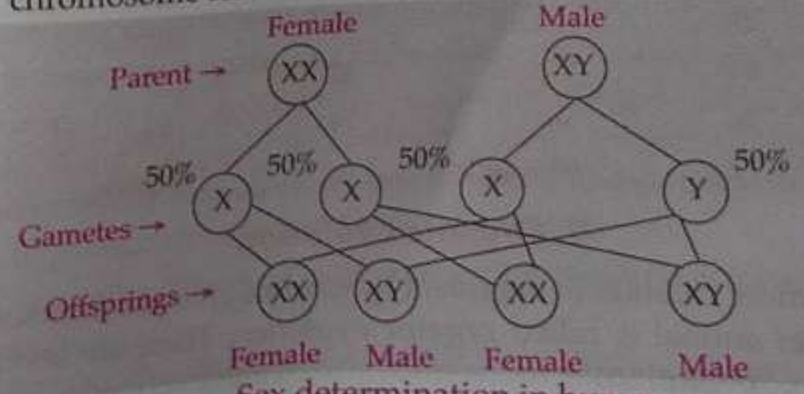
- **Linkage** : Linkage is an exception of Mendel law. When two different gene are present on the same chromosome they express themself together instead of independently. This phenomenon is known as *Linkage.* The word linkage first coined by *Morgan (1910).*
- **Mutation** : A sudden change in the gene which is heritable from one generation to other. The term Mutation was first coined by *Hugo De Vries.*

- **Variation** : When characters are transmitted from one generation to next generation there is some change. Change in characters by recombination of gene in offspring takes place they looks different from their parents. This phenomenon is known as *Variation.*
- **Chromosomal aberrations** : Any change in chromosomal structure is known as *Chromosomal aberrations.*
- **Cloning** : It is a process of producing many identical organism from a single cell having same genetic character as his mother. Ex : *Sheep Dolly* was produced from single cell.
- **Totipotency** : It is the potential ability of a plant cell to grow in a complete plant.
- **Pluriopotency** : It is the potential ability of a cell to develop into any kinds of the cell of animal body.
- **Genetically modified organism (GMO)** : Manipulation of gene by cutting or joining the segment of DNA to get desired varieties of organism is called *genetically modified organism.* This is also known as *genetic engineering.*
- **Autosomes** : Chromosomes found in cell which are responsible for characters other than sex are called *autosomes.*
- **Sex chromosome** : The pair of chromosome which determine the sex of organism is called *sex chromosome.*

  Human have 23 pair of chromosomes in which 22 pair are autosomes and one pair is sex chromosome.
- **Genome** : All gene present in a haploid cell is called *genome.*
- **Plasmagen** : Gene are found in organelles found in cytoplasm called plasmagen.
- **Cistron** : Functional unit of gene is called cistron.
- **Muton** : Unit of gene responsible for mutation.
- **Recon** : Unit of gene take part in recombination.
- S.Benzer (1962) had given the modern definition of gene.

6. Sex Determination in Human

In human male sex chromosome is 'XY', where as in female sex chromosome is XX. During gamete formation in male half of the sperm contain 'X' chromosome while other half contain 'Y' Chromosome. In female all gametes contain only one type of chromosome that is 'X'. Thus when a male gamete i.e. sperm carrying 'X' chromosome fertilize an ova, the zygote develop into female. When a sperm carrying 'Y' chromosome fertilizes an egg, zygote develops into male.



Sex determination in human

- Barr body is found in female somatic cells.
- Fertilization is done in test tube but further development takes place inside mother womb in test tube baby.
- Sometime sex determination is regulated by environmental factor. In some reptiles temperature determine the sex at which the fertilized egg is incubated.
- In human each cell contains 46 chromosomes. Any addition or removal in the number of sex chromosome or autosome cause genetic disorder.

1. Klinefelter Syndrome : When a male have an extra X or Y chromosome in sex chromosome then the condition will be XXY or XYY instead of XY. The male individual with this syndrome have masculine development but feminine development is not completely suppressed and the individual became sterile.

In female when extra X chromosome is present instead of XX they show normal development but limited fertility. Mental retardness is also seen in this type of syndrome. Number of chromosome became 47 instead of 46.

2. Turner's Syndrome : When female has single sex chromosome (X0) their ovaries are rudimentary, lack of secondary sexual character.

3. Down's Syndrome : When an extra chromosome is added to 21st autosomal chromosomes this lead to develop Down's syndrome. In this syndrome person became Mangolism. The person is mentally retarded, eyes protruded an irregular physical structure is present.

4. Patau's Syndrome : This type of syndrome is develop by an addition of autosomal chromosome in 13th chromosome. There is a cut mark in the lip and person is mentally retarded.

5. Sickle Cell Anaemia : In this disorder erythrocytes destroyed more rapidly than normal leading to anaemia. These occur due to change in 11th autosomal chromosome.

6. Phenylketonuria : It is an in born error of metabolism which result in mental retardation cause due to change in 12th autosomal chromosomes.

7. Haemophilia : Gene responsible for this disorder is linked with sex chromosomes. This disease lead to failure of blood clotting.

8. Colour blindness : This disorder lead to failure to distinguished red & green colour. The gene responsible for this disease is situated on sex chromosomes.

Number of Chromosomes in Different Organisms :

Pigeon	80	Dog	78	Horse	64
Chimpanzee	48	Potato	48	Human	46
Rabbit	44	Wheat	42	Cat	38
Frog	26	Tomato	24	Pea	14
House fly	12	Mosquito	6	Ascaris	2

7. Organic Evolution

More and more creation of organism by gradual changes from low categories animal to higher animal is called *organic evolution*. There are several evidence regarding organic evolution.

- Homologous organ : Organ which are seen different due to use in its function but internal structure and embryonic development are similar. Ex - *Flipper of whale, feather of bat, forelimb of horse, Paw of cat, and hands of human.*
- Analogous organ : Organ which looks similar due to be used in similar function but their internal structure and embryonic development are different. Ex - *Feather of butterfly, bats* and *birds* all looks similar but their internal structure and origin are different.
- Vestigial organ : These are organs which appear functionless in an organism but functional in their ancestor. For example *vermiform appendix of large intestine* and *nictitating membrane of human.* Vermiform appendix is functional in herbivorous mammal even now.
- Fossils – Fossils are the remains of ancient plant or animal which provide evidences for evolution. Example-Archaeopteryx.
- Archaeopteryx : It is a fossils look like bird but bear a number of features found in reptiles. So, it is a connecting link between aves and reptile.

Theories of evolution

1. **Carolus Linnaeus** (1707–1778) contribution to classification provide an evolutionary relationship among the organism. He was also supported an idea that no species is new. Each and every species originates from some pre-existing species.

- He wrote 'species plantarum' and proposed binomial system of nomenclature.

2. **Jean Baptist Lamarck** (1744–1829) tried to explain the evolutionary process in his book *Philosophic zoologique.* The theory proposed by Lamark is known as *theory of inheritance of acquired characters.* According to this theory use and disuse of an organ lead to acquiring change in the features of that organ. These changes are also inherited to offspring. The favourable changes after long period of time result in evolution of new species. But Lamarckism was very strongly criticised by *August Weismann.*

3. **Charles Robert Darwin** (1809–1882) explain the evolutionary principle in his book '*The origin of species*'. The theory proposed by him is popularly known as '*Theory of natural selection*' or *Darwinism.* Darwin explained that despite having the enormous potential of fertility, the population of organism remains within a limit. It is due to struggle between members of same species and different species for food, space and mate. Struggle eliminates the unfit individual. The fit organism possess some variations which are favourable and they can leave the progeny to continue the favourable variation. The variation when accumulated for long time give rise to origin of new species with progress in genetics, the sources of variation were explained and Darwin's theory was modified. Now the most excepted theory of evolution is *Modern synthetic theory,* in which origin of species is based on the interaction of genetic variation and natural selection.

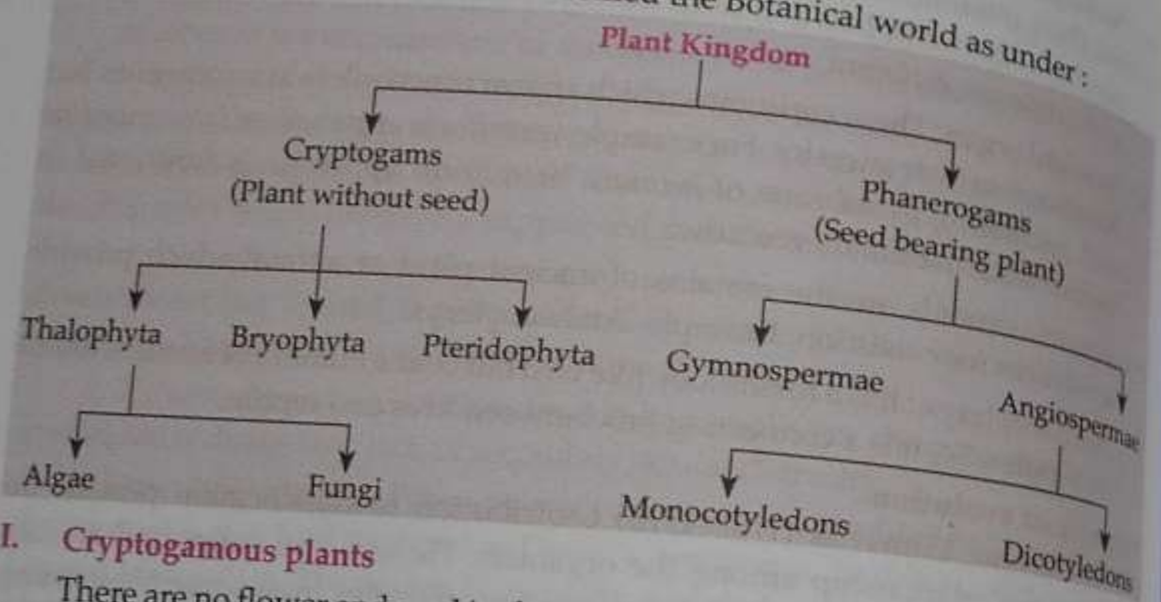
- Among permian, Triassic, Cretaceous and Jurassic geological era cretaceous is the newest one.
- The book which contains information about plant is called red data book.

BOTANY

The study of different types of Trees, plants is called Botany. *Theophrastus* is called the *father of Botany.*

1. Classification of Plantae

In the year 1883, **Eichler** has classified the Botanical world as under :



I. Cryptogamous plants

There are no flower and seed in these types of plants. These are classified into the following groups :

Thalophyta :

1. This is the largest group of the plant kingdom.
2. The body of the plants in this group is thalus like i.e., plant are not differentiated into root, stem and leaves.
3. There is no conducting tissue. It is divided into two groups.
   (a) Algae and (b) Fungi

(a) Algae

1. The study of algae is called *Phycology.*
2. The algae normally have *chlorophyll* and *autotrophic* mode of nutrition.
3. Its body is thalus like. It may be *unicellular, colonial* or *filamentous.*

Useful Algae :

1. As a food : *Porphyra, Ulva, Surgassum, Laeminaria, Nostoc* etc.
2. In making Iodine : *Laeminaria, Fucus, Echlonia* etc.
3. As a manure : *Nostoc, Anabana, kelp* etc.
4. In making medicines : *Chloreloline* from *Chlorella* and *Tincher iodine* is made from *Laminaria.*
5. In research works : *Chlorella Acetabularia, Belonia* etc.

Note : *An astronaut can get protein food, water and oxygen by sowing the chlorella algae in the tank of the aircraft so chlorella is known as space algae.*

➢ Agar-agar is prepared from algae.

(b) Fungi

1. Study of fungi is called *Mycology.*

---

2. Fungi is chlorophyll less, central carrier tissue less, Thalophyta.
3. Accumulated food in fungi remains as *Glycogen.*
4. Its cell wall is made up of *chitin.* Ex. Albugo, Phytophthora Mucor etc.

Fungi may creates serious diseases in plants. Most damage is caused by rust and smut. Main Fungal diseases in plants are as :

White rust of crucifer, Loose smut of wheat, Rust of wheat, early Blight of potato, Red rot of sugarcane, Tikka diseases of groundnut, Wart disease of potato, Brown leaf spot of rice, Late blight of potato, Damping off of seedlings etc.

➢ Rhizopus is a fungi commonly known as 'bread mould'

Bryophyta

This is the first group of land plants. In this division approximately 25000 species are included.

1. In bryophyta there is lack of Xylem and phloem tissue.
2. Plant body may be of thallus like and leafy erect structure as in moss.
3. They lack true roots, Stem and leaves.
4. This community is also called *Amphibian category of the plant kingdom.*

➢ Water conduction takes place in mosses through parenchyma.

The moss namely Sphagnum is capable of soaking water 18 times of its own weight. Therefore, gardeners use it to protect from drying while taking the plants from one place to another.

➢ The Sphagnum moss is used as fuel.

➢ The Sphagnum moss is also used as antiseptic.

Pteridophyta

The plants of this group is mostly found in wet shady places, forests and mountains.

1. The body of plants is differentiated into root, stem, and leaves. Stem remains as normal rhizome.
2. Reproduction occurs by spores produced inside the sporangia.

➢ Sporangia bearing leaf of a fern is called 'Sorus'.

3. Gametophytic phase is short lived. The diploid zygote develops into an embryo.

➢ Gametophyte is called prothallus in pteridophytes.

4. Plants of this community have conducting tissues. But Xylem does not contain Vessels and Phloem does not contain companion cells.
   Examples : *Ferns, Azolla, Pteridium, Lycopodium* etc.

➢ In the neack cell of archegonium of fern one binucleated cell is present.

II. Phanerogamous or Floral plant

Plants of this group is well developed. All the plants in this group bears flowers, fruits and seeds. Plants in this group can be classified into two sub-groups – *Gymnosperm* and *Angiosperm.*

(A) Gymnosperm

1. These plants are in the forms of trees and bushes. Plant body are differentiated into root, stem & leaves.

2. Plants are woody, perennial and tall. Plant bear naked seed.
3. Its tap roots are well developed.
4. Pollination takes place through air.

The longest plant of the Plant kingdom, *Sequoia gigentia* comes under it. It height is 120 meters. This is also called *Red Wood of California*.

- The smallest plant is *Zaimia Pygmia*.
- Living fossils are *Cycas, Ginkgo biloba* and *Metasequoia*.
- *Ginkgo biloba* is also called *Maiden hair tree*.
- Ovule and Antherozoids of *Cycas* is the largest in Plant kingdom.
- Corolloid roof of cycas help in absorption of water and fixation of nitrogen.
- The pollen grains of Pinus are so much in number that later it turns into Sulphur showers.

Importance of Gymnosperm

1. *As a food* – Sago is made by extracting the juice from the stems of Cycas. Therefore, Cycas is called *Sago-palm*.
2. *Wood* – The wood of Pine, Sequoia, Deodar, Spruce etc is used for making furniture.
3. *Vapour oil* – We get Tarpin oil from the trees of Pine, Cedrus oil from Deodar tree and Cedcast oil from Juniperous wood.
4. *Tannin* - It is useful in tanning and making ink.
5. *Resin* – Resin is extracted from some conical plants which are used in making varnish, polish, paint etc.

- Resin is the product of coniferous tree.
- Best example of polyembryony is citrus.

(B) Angiosperm

1. In the plants of this sub-group seeds are found inside the fruits.
2. In these plants root leaves, flowers, fruits and seeds are fully developed.

In the plants of this sub-group there is seed-coat in seeds. On the basis of number of cotyledons plants are divided into two categories –

1. *Monocotyledon* and 2. *Dicotyledon*

Monocotyledon plants : Those plants which have only one cotyledon in seed. *Example :*

	Name of category	Name of main plants
1.	*Liliaceae*	Garlic, Onion etc.
2.	*Palmae*	Nut, Palm, Coconut, Date etc.
3.	*Graminaeceae*	Wheat, Maize, Bamboo, Sugarcane, Rice, Bajra Oat etc.

Dicotyledon plants : Those plants which have two cotyledon in its seed are called dicotyledons. Example :

	Name of category	Name of main plants
1.	*Cruciferae*	Radish, Turnip, Mustard etc.
2.	*Malvaceae*	Jute, Lady's finger

	Name of category	Name of main plants
3.	*Leguminaceae*	Babool, Lajwanti, Ashok, Tamarind and all Pulse crops.
4.	*Composite*	Sunflower, Marigold, Lily etc.
5.	*Rutaceae*	Lemon, Orange etc.
6.	*Cucurbitaceae*	Melon, Water melon, Guard bitter etc.
7.	*Solanaceae*	Potato, Chilly, Brinjal, Belladonna, Tomato etc.
8.	*Rosaceae*	Strawberry, Apple, Almond etc.

- Leaves are the lung of plant.
- Plant from which coca and chocolate are obtained is a shurb.
- Banana is a shurb.
- Trochodendron is a vesselless angiosperm.

Virus

- Study of virus is called virology.
- Virus was discovered by Russian scientist *Ivanovsky* in the year 1892. (During the tests of Mosaic disease in tobacco).
- In nature, there are ultra microscopic particle known as viruses.
- It has both the characters of living and non living, so it is a connecting link between living & non living.
- Dr. Stanley first isolated the virus causing mosaic disease in tobacco in the form of crystals.

Characters of virus

1. They became active inside a living cells.
2. Nucleic acids replicate themselves and they reproduce rapidly.
3. They cause disease like bacteria & fungi.

According to parasitic nature, virus is of three types –

1. *Plant virus* – RNA is present as its nucleic acid.
2. *Animal virus* – DNA or sometimes RNA is found in it.
3. *Bacteriophage*– They depend only on bacteria. They kill the bacteria. DNA is found in them. *Example* – T-2 phage.

- In man virus cause disease like mumps, chicken pox, hepatitis, polio, AIDs and Herpes.
- HIV often change its shape due to the presence of an enzyme reverse transcriptase.
- **Bacteriophages :** Bacteriophages are those virus which infect the bacteria. Example —Tobacco mosaic virus.

Note : *Those viruses in which RNA is found as genetic material are called Retrovirus.*

Bacteria

It was discovered by Antony Von Leeuwenhook of Holland in the year 1683.

- *Leeuwenhook* is called the *father of Bacteriology*.

In the year 1829 *Ehrenberg* called it bacteria.

- The year 1843-1892 – Robert Koch discovered the bacteria of Tuberculosis diseases.

- The year 1812-1892 – *Louis Pasteur* discovered the vaccine of Rabies and pasteurization of milk.

On the basis of shape, bacteria is of different types :

1. Bacillus : This is rod-like or cylindrical.
2. Round or Cocus : These are round and the smallest bacteria.
3. Comma shaped or Vibrio : Like the English sign (,) example – *Vibrio cholerae* etc.
4. Spirillum : Spring or screw shaped.

- Some species of *Azotobacter, Azospirillum* and *Clostridium* bacteria live freely in the soil and fix atmospheric nitrogen into the nitrogenous compound.
- The Bacteria capable of converting nitrite to nitrate is nitrosomonas.

Anabaena and *Nostoc cynobacteria* fix atmospheric nitrogen into soil.

- The species of *Rhizobium* and *Bradyrhizobium* etc. bacteria live in the roots of the Leguminous plants capable of converting atmospheric nitrogen into its compound.
- Rhizobium are called symbiotic bacteria.
- The harmful substances produced by the microbes are known as Toxins.

Note : *To preserve the milk for many days pasteurization is done. There are two methods of pasteurization –*

(a) Low temperature holding method (LTH) : Milk is boiled at 62.8 degree celsius for 30 minutes.

(b) High temperature short time method (HTSt) : Milk is boiled at 71.7 degree Celsius for 15 seconds.

- In leather industry separation of hair and fat from leather is done by bacteria. This is called *tanning of leather.*
- Pickles, syrup is kept in salt or in dense liquid of sugar so that in case of bacterial attack bacteria are plasmolysed and destroyed. Therefore, pickles etc do not get spoiled soon and can be preserved for long time.
- The citrus fruit and pickels are not stored in iron container because it contain organic acid.
- In the cold storage objects are kept at low temperature (-10 degree celsius to -18 degree celsius).
- **Mycoplasma :** Smallest known prokaryotic cell causing pleuropneumonia. It is also known as PPLO

2. Plant Morphology

- **Morphology :** The study of forms and features of different parts of plants like roots, stems, leaves, flowers, fruits etc is called *Morphology.*

Root

Root is the descending part of the plant which develops from *radicle.*

Root generally grows in the soil away from light.

Roots are of two types—

- Root hairs arises from epidermis.

1. *Tap root* and 2. *Adventitious root.*

Modification of Tap roots are :

1. *Conical* – like Carrot
2. *Napiform* – like Turnip, beet etc.
3. *Fusiform* – like Radish.

- Rootless plant is lemna.

Stem

This is the part of a plant which grows towards light.

- So, they are usually positively phototrophic.

It develops from *plumule.*

The modification of stems are as under –

Underground stem

1. *Tuber* – like Potato.
2. *Corm* – like Colocasia, Saffron etc.
3. *Bulb* – like Onion, Garlic etc.
4. *Rhizome* – like Turmeric, Ginger etc.

Leaf

- It is green. Its main function is synthesis of food through photosynthesis.
- In cactus leaves are modified into spines.
- Cactus is referred as xerophyte.

Flower

This is the reproductive part of the plant.

In the flower *Calyx, Corolla, Androecium* and *Gynoecium* are found. Out of these androecium is male sex organ and the Gynoecium is female sex organ.

- Androecium : Unit of androecium is stamen there is one or more stamens in the androecium. Pollen grains are found in anther.
- Gynoecium : Unit of gynoecium is *carpel.* There are three parts of carpel –

    1. *Ovary,* 2. *Style* and 3. *Stigma.*

- Pollination : After maturation of Anther, the process of transfer of pollen grains to stigma is called *pollination.* Pollination is of two types –

    1. *Self-pollination* 2. *Cross-pollination*

- Fertilization : Pollen tube reaches the egg cell after entering into the ovule through a pore called *micropyle.* After that a male nucleus fuse with egg-cell. This is called *fertilization.* Fertilized egg is called *zygote.*

In angiosperm, the fertilization is triple fusion where as in other category of plants it is double fusion.

- Parthenocarpy : In some plants fruits are developed from ovary without fertilization. This type of fruit is called *parthenocarpy.* Normally these types of fruits are seedless. Example – Banana, Papaya, Orange, Grapes, Pine-apple etc.
- Bulbil take part in vegetative reproduction.
- The inflorescence of wheat is spike.

Formation of fruits

- Fruit is a matured or ripened ovary developed after fertilization.

- Formation of fruit takes place from ovary.

Fruits are divided into three types –

1. *Simple fruits* – like Banana, Guava etc.
2. *Aggregate fruit* – Strawberry, Custard apple etc.
3. *Composite fruit* – Jackfruit, Mulbery etc.

In the development of some fruits, Calyx, Corolla and thalmus takes part. These types of fruits are called *False fruits*. Example – Apple, Jackfruit, pear etc.

Some fruits and their edible parts

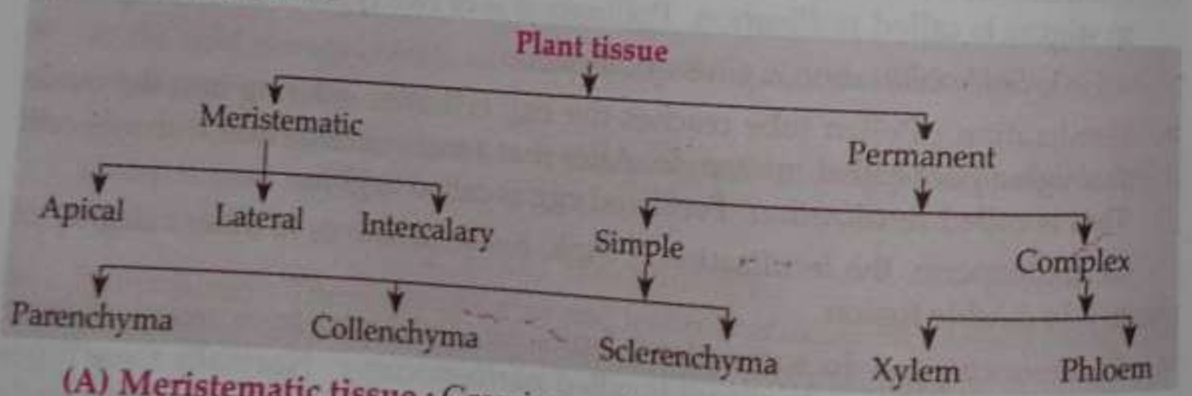
Fruit	Edible part	Fruit	Edible part
Apple	Fleshy thalamus	Wheat	starchy endosperm
Pear	Fleshy thalamus	Cashew nut	Peduncle & cotyledons
Mango	Mesocarp	Lichi	Aril
Guava	Entire fruit	Gram	cotyledons & embryo
Grapes	Pericarp and Placenta	Groundnut	Cotyledons
Papaya	Mesocarp	Mulberry	entire fruit
Coconut	Endosperm	Jackfruit	Bract, Perianth and seed
Tomato	Pericarp and Placenta	Pine apple	Bract and Perianth
Banana	Mesocarp & Endocarp	Orange	Juicy hair.

- Water of coconut is liquid nucellus.
- The medicinal plant used in the preparation of skin care is aloevera.
- In the seed of neem major pesticidal properties are present.
- The alkaloid naturally found in Coffee, Cocoa, and Cola nut is Caffeine.
- Hot peppers are hot due to presence of capsaicin.

3. Plant Tissue

Tissue : The group of cells of similar origin, structure and functions is called tissue.

Types of Plant Tissue



(A) Meristematic tissue : Growing regions of the plants are called *Meristem*. Meristematic tissue have capability of cell division. Daughter cells formed out. It grow and constitute the different parts of the plant. This process continues till the life-span of the plant.

- Specific features of the Meristematic tissues are as follows –

1. It is round, oval or multisided.
2. Its wall is thin and cytoplasm is homogeneous.

3. Cell contains dense cytoplasm and a single large nucleus.
4. There is lack of inter-cellular spaces between the cells.

- **Apical Meristems :** These tissues are found in the root and stem apex and the initial growth (specially length) of the plants take place due to these tissue.
- **Lateral Meristems :** Due to the division in these tissue growth in the girth of roots and stems takes place. Hence, it increases the width of the root and stem.
- **Intercalary Meristems :** They are located at the base of internode. In fact, this is the remains of the Apical Meristems, which is divided by the incoming of permanent tissues in the centre. Plants increase its length by the activity of this. Its importance is for those plants whose apical parts are eaten by vegetarian animals. After being eaten the apex part the plants grow with the help of intercalary meristems only. Like – grass.

(B) Permanent tissue : Permanent tissues are made of those mature tissues that have lost their capacity of division and attain a definite forms for various works. These cells can be alive or dead.

- **Simple tissue :** If permanent tissue is made up of similar types of cells, it is called *simple tissue.*
- **Complex tissue :** If permanent tissue is made up of one or more types of cells, it is called *Complex tissue.*
- **Xylem :** This is usually called *wood.* This is conducting tissue. Its two main functions are –
  1. Conduction of water and minerals and
  2. To provide mechanical consistency.

The determination of age of the plant is done by counting annual rings of the xylem tissue. The method of determining the age of plant is called *Dendrochronology.*

- **Phloem :** This is a conducting tissue. Its main function is to conduct foods prepared by the leaves to different parts of the plant.
- Companion cells of phloem are found in angiosperm.
- Transpiration in plant is a process of water loss from its aerial part
- The cells which are closely associated and interacting with guard cells are subsidiary cells.

4. Photosynthesis

In the presence of water, light, chlorophyll and carbon dioxide, the formation of carbohydrates in plant is called *photosynthesis.*

$$6CO_2 + 12H_2O \xrightarrow[\text{Chlorophyll}]{\text{Light}} \underset{\text{Glucose}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + \underset{\text{Water}}{6H_2O} + \underset{\text{Oxygen}}{6O_2}$$

Carbondioxide, water, chlorophyll and sunlight are necessary for photosynthesis

- Terrestrial plants takes CO_2 from atmosphere whereas aquatic plants use carbon dioxide disolve in water.
- Water enters into the cells of the leaves through osmosis and CO_2 through diffusion from atmosphere or release during respiration.
- Water necessary for photosynthesis is absorbed by the roots. Oxygen produced during photosynthesis is due to photolysis of water.

- The green colour of the plants is due to the presence of chlorophyll. Chlorophyll are photoreceptor molecule, which trap the solar energy. There are different type of chlorophyll molecule like 'a', 'b', 'c', 'd' & 'e'. Chlorophyll 'a' & 'b' are most common and are found in plant.
- There is an atom of magnesium in the centre of chlorophyll.
- Chlorophyll absorbs the violet, blue and red colours of light.

The rate of photosynthesis is maximum in red light and is minimum in violet light.

- The process of photosynthesis is a reaction of oxidation and reduction. Oxidation of water takes place forming oxygen and reduction of carbon dioxide takes place forming glucose.

The stages of process of photosynthesis

1. Photochemical reaction or light reaction and
2. Dark chemical reaction

1. **Photochemical reaction** : This reaction is completed in the grana of the chlorophyll. This is also called *Hill reaction.* In this process breaking down of water takes place releasing hydrogen ion and electron. For photolysis of water, energy is received from the light. At the end of this process, ATP is formed from ADP & P.

2. **Dark chemical reaction** : This reaction takes place in the stroma of chlorophyll. In this reaction reduction of carbon dioxide takes place and sugar or starch are formed. It is also known as *Calvin Benson cycle.*

- Root pressure is measured by auxanometer.
- The cell which are closely associated and interacting with guard cells are subsidiary cells.
- Conversion of starch to sugar is essential for stomatal opening.

5. Plant Hormones

Following five hormones are found in plants –

1. **Auxins** : Auxins was discovered by Darwin in the year 1880.

This is the hormone which controls the growth of plants.

Its formation takes place in the apical parts of the plants.

Its main functions are –

1. It prevents the separation of the leaves.
2. It destroys the straws.
3. It saves the crops from falling.

2. **Gibberellins** : It was discovered by a Japanese scientist *Kurosava* in the year 1926.

- The growth harmone gibberellins was first extracted from fungus in 1938 by Yabuta and Sumiki.

Functions :

1. It turns the dwarf plants into long plants. It helps in creating flowering.
2. It help in breaking the dormancy of plant.
3. It motivates the seeds to be sprout.
4. It increases the activity of cambium in the wooden plants.
5. Large sized fruits and flowers can be produced by its scattering.

3. **Cytokinins** : It was discovered by Miller in the year 1955 but it was named by Lethem.

Functions :

1. It naturally works in coordination with auxins.
2. It help in cell division and development in the presence of auxins.
3. It help in breaking the dormancy of seed.
3. It is helpful in making RNA and protein.

4. **Abscisic Acid or ABA** : This hormone was initially discovered by Carnes and Adicote and later on by *Waring.*

Functions :

1. This hormone is against to the growth.
2. It keeps the seeds & bud in dormant condition.
3. It plays main role in separation of leaves.
4. It delays in flowering of long day plant.

5. **Ethylene** : This is the only hormone found in gaseous form. In 1962 Burg proven it as harmone.

Functions :

1. It helps in the ripening the fruits.
2. It increases the number of female flowers.
3. It motivates the separation of leaves, flowers and fruits.

- Gas used for artificial ripening of fruit is ethane or ethylene.

6. **Florigens** : It is formed in leaves but helps in blooming of the flowers. Therefore, it is also called *flowering hormones.*

7. **Traumatin** : This is a type of dicarboxylic acid. It is formed in injured cells by which the injury of plants is healed.

- The concept of tissue culture was introduced by Haberlandt.

6. Plant Diseases

1. Viral Diseases : (a) *Mosaic disease of tobacco* : In this disease leaves get shrinked and become small. The chlorophyll of leaves get destroyed. The factor of this disease is *Tobacco Mosaic Virus* (TMV).

Control – Affected plants should be burnt.

(b) *Bunchy top of banana* – This diseases is caused by *banana virus.* In this disease plants become dwarf and all the leaves get accumulated like a rose on the branch.

2. Bacterial Disease : (a) *Wilt of Potato* : It is also known as *ring disease* because brown ring is formed on the xylem. The factor of this disease is *Pseudomonas solonacearum* bacteria. In this disease the conduction system of the plant is affected.

(b) *Black Arm of cotton* : The factor of this disease is *Xanthomonas Bacteria.* In this disease a water body (brown) is formed on the leaves.

(c) *Bacterial blight of Rice* : This disease is caused by *Xanthomonas oryzae bacteria.* Yellow-greenish spot is seen on both side of leaves. Vascular bundles get blocked due to bacterial growth.

(d) *Citrus Canker*: The factor of this disease is *Xanthomonas citri* bacteria. It has originated in China. Leaves, branches, fruits all are affected by this disease.

(e) *Tundu disease of wheat*: The factors of this disease are *Corinobacterium titrici* bacteria and Enzuina Titriki Nematode. In this disease lower parts of the leaves are faded and turned.

3. Fungal Diseases : The diseases included in this group are caused by fungi.

- Rust of wheat is a disease caused by fungi Puccinia.

Disease caused due to deficiency of element

Disease	Deficiency of Element
Little leaf of mango and brinjal	Zinc (Zn)
Dieback of lemon	Copper
Little leaf of lemon	Copper (Cu)
Marsh disease of pea	Manganese (Mn)
Black hut disease of potato	O_2
Microsis of amla	Boron
Burning of leaf of litchi	Potassium (K)
White bud in maize	Zinc (Zn)
Koter spot of Turnip	Calcium (Ca)

Some Important Facts Regarding Botany

Facts	Example and details
Largest angiosperm tree	*Eucalyptus.*
Longest tree in the world	*Sequoia* giganteum. This is a gymnosperm. Its height is 120 meter. This is also called *Coast Red Wood of California.*
Smallest (in shape) angiosperm plant	Lemna. This is aquatic angiosperm which is found in India too.
Plant with largest leaf	Victoria Regia. This is an aquatic plant which is found in West Bengal in India.
Largest seed	*Lodoicea.* This is also called double coconut. This is found in Kerala in India.
Smallest Pteridophyta	*Azolla.* This is an aquatic plant.
Smallest seed	*Orchid.*
Smallest flower	*Wolfia.* Its diameter is 0.1 millimeter.
Largest flower	*Reflesia arnoldii.* Its diameter is 1 meter and its weight can be 8 kilograms.
Smallest angiosperm parasite	*Arceuthobium* is a parasite on the stems of gymnosperms.
Largest male couplet	*Cycas.* This is a gymnosperm plant.
Largest seed-egg	*Cycas.*
Alive fossil	*Cycas.*
Smallest chromosomes	*In algae.*
Longest chromosomes	*In Trillium.*
The plant with the largest	Ophioglossum (*Fern*). There are 1266

Facts	Example and details
Number of Chromosomes	Chromosomes in its Diploid cell.
The plant with the least number of chromosomes	Heplapapopus *gracilis.*
The smallest gymnosperm plant	*Zamia pygmea.*
The heaviest wooden plant	*Hardwichia binata.*
The lightest wooden plant	*Ochroma lagopus-balsa.*
The smallest cell	*Mycoplasma gallisepticum.*
Fruit like a tennis ball	*Kenth*
Fire of the forest	*Dhak*
Coffee giving plant	*Coffea arabica.* Caffin contains in it.
Coco giving plant	*Theobroma cococa.* Theobromin and caffeine contain in it.
Morphine	*Pepaver somniferum (opium plant)* morphine is obtain from fruit coat (pod).
Green manure	Decomposing green legume.
Clove	Bud of flower
Saffron	Stigma of flower

7. Ecology

- Study of inter relationship between living organisms and their environment.
- Environment include both biotic and abiotic factors.
- Various population of living in a definite geographical region is called *Biotic Community.*
- Ecosystem or Ecological system word was first coined by the scientist namely *Tansley.*

Every ecosystem is made up of two components –

(a) Biotic component – Living part

(b) Abiotic component – Non living part

(a) **Biotic components :** It is divided into three parts –

1. Producer 2. Consumer 3. Decomposers

(1) **Producer :** Those components that make their own food. Like – green plants.

(2) **Consumer :** Those components that consumes the food made by plant. Consumers are of three types –

(a) *Primary consumers :* In this category those organisms are included that lives on green plants or some parts of them.

(b) *Secondary consumers :* In this category those organisms are included that depends on the primary consumers as their food. Like – fox, wolf, peacock etc.

(c) *Tertiary consumers :* In this category those organisms are included that depends on the secondary consumers. Like – Tiger, lion, cheetah etc.

(3) **Decomposers :** Mainly fungi and bacteria are included in this category. These decomposes dead producers and consumers and changes them into physical elements.

(b) **Abiotic components :** Abiotic components are as follows –

1. Carbonic substance, 2. Non-carbonic substance, 3. Climatic factor

Example : Water, light, temperature, air, humidity, minerals etc.

- **Food Chain** : Transfer of energy from the producer through a series of organisms.
- The term steppe is associated with bio-region grass-lands.
- About 2% of the world's land area is tropical rainforest.
- Beef is the world growing appetite for food product which is the leading cause of tropical deforestation.

8. Nitrogen cycle

- Nitrogen fixation is a process in which free atmospheric nitrogen is converted by living organism into nitrogenous compound that can be used by plant
- **Ammonification** : Formation of ammonia from organic compound like proteins and nucleic acid by micro organism.
- **Nitrification** : A process in which ammonia is converted into nitrates and nitrates by Nitrobacteria.
- **Denitrification** : It is the process of converting fix nitrogen like nitrates, nitrites and ammonia into free nitrogen by denitrifying bacteria eg Pseudomonas.

9. Pollution

Unwanted changes in the chemical and physical features of air, water and land (environment) that are dangerous to human and other organisms, their life conditions, industrial process and cultural achievements are called *pollution.*

The types of pollution are mainly –1. Air pollution, 2. Water pollution, 3. Sound pollution, 4. Soil pollution, 5. Nuclear pollution.

1. **Air pollution** : When the pollution is in the atmosphere and the sufficient quantity of atmosphere reduces then it is called *Air pollution.*

Main air pollutants – *Carbon monoxide* (CO), Sulphur dioxide (SO_2), Hydrogen sulphide (H_2S), Hydrogen fluoride (HF), Nitrogen oxide (NO and NO_2), Hydrocarbon, Ammonia (NH_3), Smoke of tobacco, Fluorides smoke and particles of smoke, Aerosols etc.

Sulphur dioxide (SO_2), Sulphur trioxide (SO_3), Nitrogen oxide (NO) react with environmental water and form Sulphuric acid and Nitric acid. These acids reach to the earth with rain water called *acid rain.*

- On 3rd December, 1984 an incidence of leakage of Methyl Isocyanide gas took place in the fertilizer making Union Carbide Factory (Bhopal).

2. **Water pollution** : Mixing of unwanted substances with water is called *water pollution.*

- Only 2.5 to 3% water present on the earth is usable.

Sources of water pollution : The water pollution takes place mainly due to mixing up of Carbonate, sulphates of Magnesium and Potassium, Ammonia, Carbon monoxide, Carbon dioxide and Industrial remains in water. Sea-water pollution is due to mixing up of heavy metals, hydro carbon, petroleum etc in water.

- Oil spill from the tanker spread soon on the surface of sea water.

- Contaminated water in which mercury is present cause Minimata disease.
- Pollution of river water is measured by oxygen dissolve in it.

3. **Sound pollution** : The unwanted and undesirable sounds scattered in atmosphere are called *sound pollution.*

Sources of sound pollution : The source of sound pollution is loud sound or noise, in whatever ways it has produced.

4. **Soil pollution** : Distorted form of soil which change its chemical nature is called *Soil pollution.*

Sources of Soil pollution : acid rain, water from mines, excessive use of fertilizers and germicide chemicals, garbage, industrial remaining, excretion in open field etc are the main sources of soil pollution.

5. **Nuclear pollution** : This pollution is created by radioactive rays.

Following can be the sources of radioactive pollution –

(a) Pollution from the rays which are used in treatment.

(b) Pollution created from fuels used in Atomic reactors.

(c) Pollution created from the use of nuclear weapons.

(d) Pollution created remaining substances coming out of Atomic power-houses.

- Pollutant responsible for ozone hole is CFC.
- One of the best solutions to get rid of non-biodegradable wastes is recycling.
- Vermi composting is done by worms.
- Soil erosion can be prevented by afforestation.
- Natural sources of air pollution are volcanic eruptions.

Population, Biotic Community

- **Population** : Population is a group of individuals of same species occupying the same area at a given time.
- **Population density** : Total number of individual present in per unit area.
- **Natality** : Increase in the number of individuals in a given population by birth is called natality.
- **Mortality** : Number of individuals removed from a population due to death under given environmental condition at a given time is called mortality
- **Biotic potential** : It refers the maximum capacity of inherent of an organism to reproduce.
- **Environmental resistance** : Environmental factors, which put a check on the growth of population.
- **Mutalism** : It is a functional association between two different species in which both the species are benefited.
- **Commensalism** : It is an association between individuals of two different species in which one species is benefited and other one is neither benefited nor affected.
- **Population Explosion** : The dramatic increase in population size over a relatively short period is called population explosion.
- **Demographic transition** : If the birth rate is equal to the death rate, it results in zero population growth, which is called demographic transition.

- **Psychosis** : It is a mild form of mental illness where the patient show prolonged emotional reaction.
- **Drug abuse** : When drugs are taken for a purpose other than their normal clinical use in an amount that impairs ones physical, physiological and psychological function of body is called drug abuse.
- **Biosphere** : The space retaining life in any form is called biosphere.

ZOOLOGY

Zoology : Scientific study of the structure, form and distribution of animals.

1. Classification of Animal Kingdom

Animals kingdom of the world is divided into two sub-kingdoms :

1. Unicellular animal 2. Multi-cellular animal or Metazoans.

Unicellular animals are kept in a single phylum Protozoa whereas multi-cellular animals are divided into 9 phylums.

Classification of animals according to *Storer* and *Usinger* –

A. Phylum Protozoa : Main features – Unicellular

1. It's body is made of only one cell.
2. There is one or more nuclei in its cytoplasm.
3. It is parasitic and free living.
4. All the metabolic activity (eating, digestion, respiration, excretion, reproduction) takes place in unicellular body.
5. Respiration and excretion take place by diffusion.

Example–*Amoeba, Euglena, Trypanosoma* etc.

B. Phylum Porifera : All animal of this group are found in marine water & bear pores in body.

1. These are multicellular animals but cells do not make regular tissues.
2. Numerous pores known as *ostia* found on body wall.
3. Skeleton is made up of minute calcareous or silicon spicules.

Example–*Sycon, Sponge* etc.

- Sponges are also used as sound absorber.

C. Phylum Coelenterate : Main features – Coelenteron is present inside body.

1. Animals are aquatic and diploblastic.
2. Around the mouth some thread-like structure are found known as tentacles, which help in holding the food.
3. Body radial symmetry.
4. Specialized cnidoblast cell are found help in catching the food.

Example–*Hydra, Jelly fish, Sea Anemone* etc.

D. Phylum Platyhelminthes : Main features – Flat worm

1. Triploblastic and nobody cavity.
2. Dorso-ventraly flattened animal.
3. Alimentary canal with single opening, anus absent.

4. Excretion takes place by flame cells.
5. There is no skeleton, respiratory organ, circulatory system etc.
6. These are hermaphrodite animal.

Example–*Planaria, Liver fluke, Tape worm* etc.

E. Phylum Aschelminthes : Main features – Round worm

1. Long, cylindrical, unsegmented worm.
2. Bilaterally symmetrical and triploblastic.
3. Alimentary canal is complete in which mouth and anus both are present.
4. There is no circulatory and respiratory systems but nervous system is developed.
5. Excretion takes place through *Protonephridia.*
6. They are unisexual.
7. Most form are parasitic but some are free living in soil and water.

Example–Round worm, like – *Ascaris, Thread worm, Wuchereia* etc.

Note : *1. Enterobius (pin worm/thread worm) – It is found mainly in the anus of child. Children feel itching and often vomits. Some children urinate on the bed at night.*

2. Filarial disease is caused by Wuchereia bancrofti.

F. Phylum Annelida : Main features – Annulus body Bearing ring

1. Body is long, thin, soft and metamerically segmented.
2. Locomotion takes place through *Setae* made up of Chitin.
3. Alimentary canal is well developed.
4. Normally respiration through skin, in some animals it takes place through *gills.*
5. Nervous system is normal and blood is red.
6. Excretion by *nephridia.*
7. True coelom is present.
8. Both unisexual and bisexual.

Example–*Earthworm, Nereis, Leech* etc.

Note : *There are four pairs of heart in earthworm.*

G. Phylum Arthropoda : Main features – Jointed leg

1. Body is divided into three parts – Head, Thorax and Abdomen.
2. Body is covered with a thick chitinous exoskeleton.
3. Jointed leg.
4. Circulatory system is open type.
5. Its body cavities are called *haemocoel.*
6. *Trachea, book lungs, body surface* are respiratory organ.
7. These are mainly unisexual and fertilization takes place inside the body.

Example–*Cockroach, prawn, crab, bug, fly, mosquito, bees* etc.

Note : *1. There are six feet and four wings in insects. 2. There are 13 chamber in the Cockroach's heart. 3. Ant is a social animal which reflects labour division. 4. Termite is also a social animal which lives in colony.*

- The main excretory organ of insects are malpighian tubules.

H. Phylum Mollusca : Main features – Soft bodies animal

1. Body is soft divided into head and muscular foot.
2. Mantle is always present in it, which secretes a hard calcareous shell.
3. Alimentary canal is well developed.
4. Respiration takes place through *gills* or *ctenidia.*
5. Blood is colourless.
6. Excretion takes place through kidneys.

Example–*Pila, Octopus, Loligo, Squid* etc.

Note :

Mollusca	Other name in vogue
Aplysia	Sea rabbit
Doris	Sea lemon
Octopus	Devil-fish
Sepia	Cuttle-fish

I. Phylum Echinodermata : Main features – Spiny skin

1. All the animals in this group are marine.
2. Water vascular system is present.
3. There is Tube feet for locomotion, taking food which works as sensation organ.
4. Brain is not developed in nervous system.
5. There is a special capacity of regeneration.

Example–*Star fish, Sea urchin, Sea cucumber, Brittle stars* etc.

Note : *The function of the Aristotle lantern is to chew the food. It is found in sea urchin.*

J. Phylum Chordata : Main features

1. Notochord is present in it.
2. All the chordates are triploblastic, coelomate and bilaterally symmetrical.
3. A dorsal hollow tubular nerve cord and paired pharyngeal gill slits are other features of chordates.

According to classification there are two subphyla in Chordata.

(a) Protochordates and (b) Vertebrata

Some main groups of phylum Chordata :

1. **Pisces : Main features** – Aquatic life
   - (a) All these are cold blooded animals.
   - (b) Its heart pumps only impure blood and have two chamber.
   - (c) Respiration takes place through *gills.*

   Example–*Hippopotamus, Scoliodon, Torpedo* etc.
2. **Amphibia : Main features** – Found both on land & water
   - (a) All these creatures are amphibian.
   - (b) All these are cold-blooded.
   - (c) Respiration takes place through gill, skin and lungs. Heart have three chamber two auricles and one ventricle.

   Example–Frog, Necturus, Toad etc. *Icthyophis, Salamander.*

Note : *In fact the croaking of frogs is the call for sex.*

3. **Reptilia : Main features** – Crawlling animal
   - (a) Land vertebrate, cold-booded, terrestrial or aquatic vertebrates.
   - (b) It contains two pair of limbs.
   - (c) The skeleton is completely flexible.
   - (d) Respiration takes place through lungs.
   - (e) Its eggs are covered with shell made up of Calcium carbonate.

   Example–*Lizard, snake, tortoise, crocodile, turtle, sphenodon* etc.

Note : *Mesozoic era is called the era of reptiles.*

- ➢ *Cobra is the only snake which makes nests.*
- ➢ Cobra emits their venom through fangs.
- ➢ *Heloderma is the only poisonous lizard.*
- ➢ *Sea snake which is called Hydrophis is the world's most poisonous snake.*

4. **Aves : Main features** – Warm blooded tetrapod vertebrates with flight adaptation.
   - (a) Its fore-feet modified into wings to fly.
   - (b) Boat shaped body is divisible into head , neck, trunk and tail.
   - (c) Its respiratory organ is lungs.
   - (d) Birds have no teeth. Beak help in feeding.

- ➢ Beak is formed by jaw.

Example–*crow, peacock, parrot* etc.

Note : *1. Flightless Birds – Kiwi and Emus. 2. Largest alive bird is Ostrich. 3. Smallest bird is Humming-bird. 4. Largest zoo in India is Alipur (Kolkata) and the largest zoo of the world is Cruiser National Park in South Africa.*

5. **Mammalia : Main features**
   - (a) Sweat glands and oil glands are found on skin.
   - (b) All these animals are warm blooded.
   - (c) Its hearts are divided into four chamber.
   - (d) Tooth comes twice in these animals. (Diphyodont)
   - (e) There is no nucleus in its red blood cells (except in camel and lama).
   - (f) Skin of mammal have hair.
   - (g) External ear (Pinna) is present in mammal.

- ➢ Pinna is present in mammal.

Mammals are divided into three sub-classes :

1. *Prototheria* – It lays eggs. Example – *Echidna*
2. *Metatheria* – It bears the immature child. Example – *Kangaroo*
3. *Eutheria* – It bears the well developed child. Example – *Human*

Note : *1. In mammal the highest body temperature is of goat. (Average 39 degree Celsius).*
2. Echidna and Duck billed Platypus are the egg laying mammal.

2. Animal Tissue

The animal tissues can be divided into following categories–1. Epithelial Tissue, 2. Connective Tissue, 3. Muscular Tissue, 4. Nervous Tissue.

1. Epithelial Tissue : Epithelial tissue cover the external surface of the body and internal free surface of many organs. Epithelial cell arranged very close to each other. There is no blood vessels supplying nourishment to epithelial cells. They receive nourishment from underlaying connective tissue. The principle functions of epithelial tissues are covering and lining of free surface.

Example : skin, intestine, gland, hollow organ like fallopian tube, nasal passage bronchioles, trachea etc.

2. Connective Tissue : These tissue connect and bind different tissues or organs. It provides the structural frame work and mechanical support to body. It play role in body as defense tissue, repair fat storage etc.

Example : Adipose tissue found beneath the skin. Ligament made up of fibrous connective tissue. Cartilage, bone and blood.

Note : *Blood is only tissue which is found in the form of fluid.*

3. Muscular Tissue : This is also known as contractile tissue. All the muscles of the body are made up of this tissue. Muscle tissue is of three types – (a) Unstriped, (b) Striped and (c) Cardiac.

(a) Unstriped : This muscle tissue is found on the walls of those parts which do not controlled by will. These are called involuntary muscle, like – Alimentary canal, Rectum, Ureter, Blood vessels. Unstriped muscles control the motions of all those organs that move on their own.

(b) Striped : These muscles are found in the parts of the body that move voluntary. Normally one or both the end of these muscles turn and connect with bones as tendon.

(c) Cardiac : These muscles are found only on the walls of the heart. The contraction and expansion of the heart is due to these muscles that move throughout the life without fail.

- There are 639 muscles in the human body.
- The largest muscle of the human body is *Gluteus Maximus* (muscle of the hip).
- The smallest muscle of the human body is *Stapedius.*

4. Nervous Tissue : This tissue is also called sensitive tissue. The nervous systems of the organisms is made up of these tissues. This is made up of two specific cells – (a) Nerve cell or Neurons and (b) Neuroglia.

Nervous tissue controls all the voluntary and involuntary activities of the body.

3. Human Blood

- Blood is a fluid connective tissue.
- The quantity of blood in the human's body is 7% of the total weight.
- This is a dissolution of base whose pH value is 7.4.
- There is an average of 5-6 litres of blood in human body.
- Female contains half litre of blood less in comparison to male.

Blood is consist of two part :

(A) Plasma and (B) Blood corpuscles.

(A) Plasma : This is the liquid part of blood. 60% of the blood is plasma. Its 90% parts is water, 7% protein, 0.9% salt and 0.1% is glucose. Remaining substances are in a very low quantity.

Function of plasma : Transportation of digested food, hormones, exeretory product etc from one part of the body to another part.

- Serum : When Fibrinogen and protein is extracted out of plasma, the remaining plasma is called *serum.*

(B) Blood corpuscles : This is the remaining 40% part of the blood. This is divided into three parts —

1. *Red Blood Corpuscles* (RBCs)
2. *White Blood Corpuscles* (WBCs) and 3. *Blood Platelets.*

1. Red Blood Corpuscles (RBC) : Red Blood Corpuscles (RBC) of a mammal is biconcave.

- There is no nucleus in it. Exception – Camel and Lama

  RBC is formed in Bone marrow.

  (At the embroynic stage its formation takes place in liver).
- Its life span is from 20 days to 120 days.
- Its destruction takes place in liver and spleen. Therefore, liver is called grave of RBC.
- It contains haemoglobin, in which *haeme is* iron containing compound and due to this the colour of blood is red.
- *Globin* is a proteinous compound. With haeme it is extremely capable of combining with oxygen and carbon dioxide.
- The iron compound found in haemoglobin, as *haematin.*
- The main function of RBC is to carry oxygen from the lung to all cells of the body and bring back the carbon dioxide.
- *Anaemia* disease is caused due the deficiency of haemoglobin.
- At the time of sleeping RBC reduced by 5% and people who are at the height of 4200 meters RBC increases by 30% in them.
- Number of RBC is measured by an instrument called hemocytometer.

2. White Blood Corpuscles (WBC) or Leucocytes : In shape is similar to Amoeba.

- Its formation takes place in Bone marrow, lymph node and sometimes in liver and spleen.
- Its life span is from 2 to 4 days.
- Nucleus is present in the White Blood Corpuscles.
- Its main function is to protect the body from the disease.

  The ratio of RBC and WBC is 600 : 1.
- About 60 to 70% part of WBC is made up of neutrophile corpuscles which help in engulfing disease causing microorganism and bacteria.

3. Blood Platelets or Thrombocytes : It is found only in the blood of human and other mammals.

- There is no nucleus in it.
- Its formation takes place in Bone marrow.
- Its life span is from 3 to 5 days.
- It dies in the spleen.
- Its main function is to help in clotting of blood.
- In dengue fever number of platelets reduced.

Functions of blood :

1. To control the temperature of the body and to protect the body from diseases.
2. Clotting of blood.
3. Transportation of O_2, CO_2, digested food, conduction of hormones etc.
4. To help in establishing coordination among different parts.

Clotting of Blood : Three important reactions during clotting of blood.

1. Thromboplastin + Prothrombin + Calcium = Thrombin.
2. Thrombin + Fibrinogen = Fibrin.
3. Fibrin + Blood Corpuscles = Clot.

The formation of Prothrombin and Fibrinogen of the blood plasma takes place with the help of Vitamin K. Vitamin K is helpful in making clots of blood. Normally clotting takes the time from 2 to 5 minutes.

The compulsory protein in making clots of blood is *Fibrinogen.*

Blood Group of human : Blood Group was discovered by Landsteiner in 1900. For this, he was awarded with Nobel Prize in the year 1930.

- ➢ The main reason behind the difference in blood of human is the glyco protein which is found in Red Blood Corpuscles called *antigen.*
  Antigen are of two types – Antigen A and Antigen B.
- ➢ On the basis of presence of Antigen or Glyco Protein, there are four group of blood in human :
  (a) That contains Antigen A – Blood Group A.
  (b) That contains Antigen B – Blood Group B.
  (c) That contains both the Antigens A and B - Blood Group AB.
  (d) That contains neither of the Antigens - Blood Group O.

An opposite type of protein, is found in blood plasma. This is called *antibody.* This is also of two types – Antibody 'a' and Antibody 'b'.

Therefore, with the four groups of blood division of antibody is as under–

	Blood Group	Antigen (In Red Blood Corpuscles)	Antibody (In plasma)
1.	A	Only 'A'	Only 'b'
2.	B	Only 'B'	Only 'a'
3.	AB	Both 'A' and 'B'	Absent
4.	O	Absent	Both 'a' and 'b'

Blood Transfusion : Antigen 'A' and antibody 'a', Antigen 'B' and antibody 'b' cannot live together. In case of so happened these get most sticky, which spoils the blood. This is called *agglutination of blood.* Therefore, in blood transfusion adjustment of Antigen and Antibody should be done carefully so that agglutination of blood do not takes place.

Blood Group O is called Universal Donor because it does not contain any antigen.

Blood Group AB is called Universal Receptor because it does not contain any antibody.

Rh factor : In the year 1940, Landsteiner and Wiener discovered a different type of antigen in the blood. They discovered it in the *Rhesus monkey;* therefore, it is called *Rh-factor.* In the blood of that person it is found, their blood is called Rh-positive and in the blood of that person it is not found, is called *Rh-negative.*

At the time of blood transfusion Rh-factor is also tested. Rh+ is given to Rh^+ and Rh^- is given Rh-blood only.

If the blood of Rh+ blood group is transferred to a person with Rh-blood group, then due to the less quantity for the first time there does not seem any bad effect but if this process is repeated then due to agglutination the person with Rh-blood group dies.

Erythroblastosis Foetalis : If the father's blood is Rh+ and the mother's blood is Rh- then the child to be born dies at the pregnancy or short span of time after the birth. (This happens in the case of second issue).

The possible blood group of the child on the basis of blood group of mother and father.

Blood group of Mother and father	Expected blood group of the child	Unexpected blood of the child
O × O	O	A, B, AB
O × A	O, A	B, AB
O × B	O, B	A, AB
O × AB	A, B	O, AB
A × A	A, O	B, AB
A × B	O, A, B, AB	None
A × AB	A, B, AB	O
B × B	B, O	A, AB
B × AB	A, B, AB	O
AB × AB	A, B, AB	O

Haemolymph : Body fluid of arthropoda is colourless made of plasma and haemocytes. It donot contain any respiratory pigment Ex–Cockroach.

4. System of the Human Body

(a) Digestive System

The complete process of nutritioin is divided into five stages :

1. Ingestion
2. Digestion
3. Absorption
4. Assimilation
5. Defecation

1. **Ingestion :** Taking the food into the mouth is called *Ingestion.*

2. **Digestion :** Conversion of nonabsorbable food into absorbable form. The digestion of the food is started from the mouth.

- ➢ Saliva is secreted by salivary gland in mouth in which enzyme amylase is present. They convert starch into simple sugar and make it digestible.
- ➢ In human secretion of saliva is approximately 1.5 litre per day.
- ➢ The nature of saliva is acidic (pH 6.8).
- ➢ From the mouth food reach into stomach through food pipe.
- ➢ No digestion takes place in food pipe.
- ➢ The teeth used for grinding of food is molar.

Digestion in Stomach

- The foods lies approximately for four hours in stomach.
- After reaching the food in stomach gastric glands secretes the gastric juice. This is a light yellow acidic liquid.
- Hydrochloric acid secreted from the Oxyntic cells of the stomach kills all the bacteria coming with food and accelerates the reaction of enzymes. Hydrochloric acid makes the food acidic by which amylase reaction of the saliva end.
- The enzymes in the gastric juice of stomach are – Pepsin and Renin.
- Pepsin breaks down the protein into peptones.
- Renin breaks down the Caseinogen into Casein found in milk.

Digestion in Duodenum

- As soon as the food reaches the duodenum bile juice from liver combines with it. Bile juice is an alkaline and it turns the acidic medium of food into alkaline.
- Here, pancreatic juice from pancreas combines with food. It contains three types of enzymes :

(a) Trypsin : It converts the protein and peptone into polypeptides and amino acid.

(b) Amylase : It converts the starch into soluble sugar.

(c) Lipase : It converts the emulsified fats into glycerol and fatty acids.

Small Intestine

- Here, the process of digestion completed and absorption of digested foods start.
- From the wall of small intestine, intestinal juices secretes. The following enzymes contain :

(a) *Erepsin* : It converts the remaining protein and peptone into amino acids.

(b) *Maltase* : It converts the maltose into glucose.

(c) *Sucrase* : It converts the sucrose into glucose and fructose.

(d) *Lactase* : It converts the lactose into glucose and galactose.

(e) *Lipase* : It converts the emulsified fats into glycerol and fatty acids.

Intestinal juice is alkaline in nature.

In a healthy people approximately 2 litres of intestinal juice secretes every day.

3. Absorption : Digested food get mixed into blood is called absorption.

- The absorption of digested foods takes place through villi found in the wall of small intestinal.

4. Assimilation : Use of absorbed food in the body is called assimilation.

5. Defecation : Undigested food reaches into large intestine where bacteria turns it into *faeces,* which is excreted through anus.

Summary of Digestion

Gland juice		Enzyme	Edible substance	After reaction
1. Saliva	(i)	Amylase	Starch	Maltose
2. Gastric Juice	(i)	Pepsin	Protein	Peptones
	(ii)	Rennin	Casein	Calcium paracasein
3. Pancreatic Juice	(i)	Trypsin	Protein	Polypeptides
	(ii)	Amylase	Starch	Sugar
	(iii)	Lipase	Fat	Fatty acid and glycerol
4. Intestinal Juice	(i)	Erepsin	Protein	Amino acid
	(ii)	Maltase	Maltose	Glucose
	(iii)	Lactase	Lactose	Glucose and fructose
	(iv)	Sucrase	Sucrose	Glucose and glactose
	(v)	Lipase	Fat	Fatty acid and glycerol

The main organs participating in digestion :

Liver : This is the largest gland of the human body. Its weight is approximately 1.5-2 kilogram.

- Bile is secreted through liver only. This bile accelerate the reaction of enzymes present in the intestine.
- Liver convert excess of amino acid into ammonia by deamination. These ammonia are further converted into urea by ornithine cycle. Urea comes out from body through kidney.
- Liver converts some quantity of protein into glucose during deficiency of carbohydrate.
- In carbohydrates metabolism liver converts the excess of glucose found in blood into glycogen and stores it into hepatic Cell as reserve nutrients. If the necessity of glucose arises the liver convert reserve glycogen into glucose. Thus, it regulates the quantity of glucose in the blood.
- In case of decrease of fat in food liver converts some of the parts of the carbohydrates into fat.
- The production of fibrinogen protein takes place by liver which helps in clotting of blood.
- The production of Heparin protein takes place in liver which prohibit the clotting of blood inside the body.
- The dead RBC is destroyed by the liver only.
- The liver reserve some quantity of iron, copper and vitamin.
- It helps in regulating the body temperature.
- Liver is an important clue in investigating a person's death that has been due to poison in food.

Gall Bladder : Gall bladder is a pear shaped sac, in which the bile coming out of liver is stored.

- Bile comes into the duodenum from gall bladder through the bile duct.
- Secretion of bile into the duodenum takes place by reflex action.
- Bile is a yellowish-green coloured alkaline liquid. Its pH value is 7.7.
- The quantity of water is 85% and the quantity of bile pigment is 12%.

The Main functions of bile are as under :

1. It makes the medium of food alkaline so that pancreatic juice can worked.

2. It kills the harmful bacteria coming with food.
3. It emulsifies the fats.
4. It accelerates the bowel movement of intestine by which digestive juices in the food mix well.
5. It is helpful in the absorption of vitamin K and other vitamins mixed in fats.

In case of obstruction in bile duct, liver cells stop taking bilirubin from blood. As a result, bilirubin spreads throughout the body. This is called *jaundice*.

Pancreas : This is the second largest gland of the human body. It acts as simultaneously endocrine and exocrine type of gland.

- Pancreatic juice secretes out of it in which 9.8% water and the remaining parts contain salt and enzymes. It is alkaline liquid, whose pH value is 7.5 – 8.3. It contains the enzymes which can digest all the three types of food materials (like carbohydrates, fat and protein), therefore it is called complete digestive juice.

Islets of Langerhans : This is a part of the Pancreas.

- It was discovered by the medical scientist Langerhans.
- From its β cell- insulin, from α cell-glucagons and from δ cell- somatostaintin hormones are secreted :

Insulin : It is secreted by β-cell of islets of Langerhans.

- Glucagon is secreted by α-cell and somatostatin harmone is secreted by γ-cell of islets of langerhans.
- It was discovered by Banting and Best in the year 1921.
- It controls the process of making glycogen from glucose.
- Diabetes is caused due to the deficiency of insulin.
- Excessive flow of insulin causes Hypoglycemia in which one loses the reproducing capacity and vision deterioration.

Glucagon : It re-converts the glycogen into glucose.

Somatostatin : This is a polypeptide hormone which increases the duration of assimilation of food.

(b) Circulatory System

The discovery of blood circulation was done by *William Harvey* in the year 1628.

There are four parts under it –

(a) Heart (b) Arteries (c) Veins (d) Blood.

Heart : It remains safe in the *pericardial membrane*. Its weight is approximately 300 grams.

Heart of the human is made up of four chambers. In the anterior side there is a *right auricle* and a *left auricle*. In the posterior side of the heart there is a *right ventricle* and a *left ventricle* persist.

- Between the right auricle and the right ventricle there is a *tricuspid valve*.
- Between the left auricle and left ventricle there is a *bicuspid valve*.

- The blood vessels carrying the blood from the body towards the heart is called *vein*.
- In the vein there is impure blood i.e. carbon dioxide mixed blood. Its exception is pulmonary vein, which always carry pure blood.
- Pulmonary vein carries the blood from lungs to left auricle. It has pure blood.
- The blood vessels carrying the blood from the heart towards the body is called *artery*.
- In artery there is pure blood i.e. oxygen mixed blood. Its exception is pulmonary artery.
- Pulmonary artery carries the blood from right ventricle to lungs. It contains impure blood.
- In the right part of the heart, there remains impure blood i.e. carbon dioxide mixed blood and in the left part of the heart there remains pure blood i.e. oxygen mixed blood.
- The artery carrying blood to the muscles of the heart are called *coronary arteries*. Any type of hindrance in it causes heart attack.

Course of circulation : Mammals have double circulation. It mean blood have to cross two times from heart before circulating throughout the body.

- Right auricle receive impure blood from the body which goes into right ventricle. From here the blood went into pulmonary artery which send it to the lung for purification. After purification it is collected by pulmonary vein which bring it back to heart in left auricle. From auricle it went into left ventricle. Now this purified blood is went into aorta for different organ of body.

  This circulation is done is a cardiac cycle.

- **Cardiac cycle** : Rhythmic systole (Contraction) and diastole (relaxation) of auricle and ventricle constitutes a cardiac cycle.
- **Heart beat** : Heart keeps beating rhythmically throughout the life. There is a node from which originate contraction of heart.

1. **Sino auricular node (SA node)** : It is a specialised area of cardiac muscle fibre in right auricle. SA node is also known as *pacemaker* as it generates each wave of cardiac impulse.

2. **Auriculo Ventricular node (AV node)** : AV node is present close to the interatrial septum near the right AV aperture. Wave of contraction is picked up by AV node which spread through.

- Wave of excitation is picked up by AV node which spread through AV bundle of muscles fibres present on inter artrial septum as well as inter-ventricular septum.
- **Artificial pacemaker** : When SA node becomes defective or damaged, the cardiac impulses do not generate. This can be cured by surgical grafting of an artificial pacemaker an electric device in the chest of the patient. It stimulate the heart electrically at regular intervals.
- Systole and diastole of the heart are collectively called *heart beat*. In the normal condition the heart of the human beats 72 times and in a single beat it pumps approximately 70 ml blood.

- The blood pressure of a normal human is 120/80. (Systolic – 120 and Diastolic – 80).
- Blood pressure is measured by *sphygmomanometer.*
- *Thyroxin* and *adrenaline* are the hormones which independently controls the heart beat.
- The CO_2 present in the blood accelerates the heart beat by reducing the pH.

(c) Lymph Circulatory System

- The light yellow fluid found in the inter-cellular intervals between different tissues and cells is called *lymph.*
- Lymph is a fluid whose composition is like blood plasma, in which nutrient, oxygen and various other substances are present.
- The corpuscles found in lymph are called *lymphocytes.* In fact, these are White Blood Corpuscles (WBC).
- Lymph flows only in one direction from tissue towards heart.

Functions of lymph :

1. The lymphocytes present in lymph helps to prevents the body from diseases by killing the harmful bacteria or other substances.
2. Lymph form the lymphocytes.
3. The node found in lymph vessels are called *lymph node* works as a filter in the human body.
4. Lymph helps in healing the wounds.
5. Lymph circulates different material from tissues to veins.

(d) Excretory System

Excretion : Removal of nitrogenous substances formed during metabolism from the body of human is called *excretion.* Normally excretion means the release of nitrogenous excretory substances like urea, ammonia, uric acid etc.

The main excretory organs of human are as follows—

1. Kidneys, 2. Skin, 3. Liver and 4. Lungs.

1. Kidneys : The main excretory organ in human and other mammals is a pair of kidneys. Its weight is 140 grams. There are two parts of it. Outer part is called *cortex* and the inner part is called *medulla.* Each kidney is made up of approximately 1,30,00000 kidney ducts which are called *nephrons.* Nephron is the structural and functional unit of the kidney. There is a cup like structure in the every nephron called *Bowman's capsule.* Glomerulus is made up of thin blood vessels found in the Bowman's capsule which is made up of two types of arterioles.

(a) Afferent arteriole : Which carries the blood to the glomerulus.

(b) Efferent arteriole : By which the blood is taken out of the glomerulus.

- The process of filtration of liquids into the cavity of Bowman's capsule, is called *ultra filtration.*
- The main function of the kidneys is purification of blood plasma i.e. to excrete the unwanted nitrogenous waste substances through urination.
- The supply of blood to kidneys takes place in large quantity in comparison to other organs.

- In the kidneys average 125 ml per minute blood is filtrated i.e. 180 litres per day. Out of it 1.45 litres urine is formed daily and the remaining is absorbed back by the cells of nephron and mix into the blood.
- In the normal urine there is 95% water, 2% salt, 2.7% urea and 0.3% uric acid.
- The colour of the urine is light yellow due to the presence of *urochromes* in it. Urochrome is formed by the dissociation of haemoglobin.
- Urine is acidic. Its pH value is 6.
- The stone formed in the kidneys is made up of calcium oxalate.

2. Skin : Oil gland and sweat glands found in the skin respectively secretes *sebum* and *sweat.*

3. Liver : Liver cells play the main role in excretion by converting more and more amino acids and ammonia of blood into urea.

4. Lungs : The lungs excretes two types of gaseous substances carbon dioxide and water vapour. The excretion of some substances like garlic, onion and some spices in which vapour component is present excreted by the lungs.

Different Animals and Excretory parts

	Animal	Excretory parts
1.	Unicellular animal	By diffusion through general body surface and contractile vacoule
2.	Animals of Porifera Phylum	By general body surface
3.	Coelenterates	Directly by cells
4.	Flat worm	By flame cells
5.	Animals of Annelida Phylum	By nephridia
6.	Arthropods	By Malpighian tubules
7.	Curstaceans	Antennal gland
8.	Mollusca	By urinary organ
9.	Vertebrate	Mainly by kidneys

Hemodialysis : Process of removal of excess urea from the blood of patient using artificial kidney.

(e) Nervous System

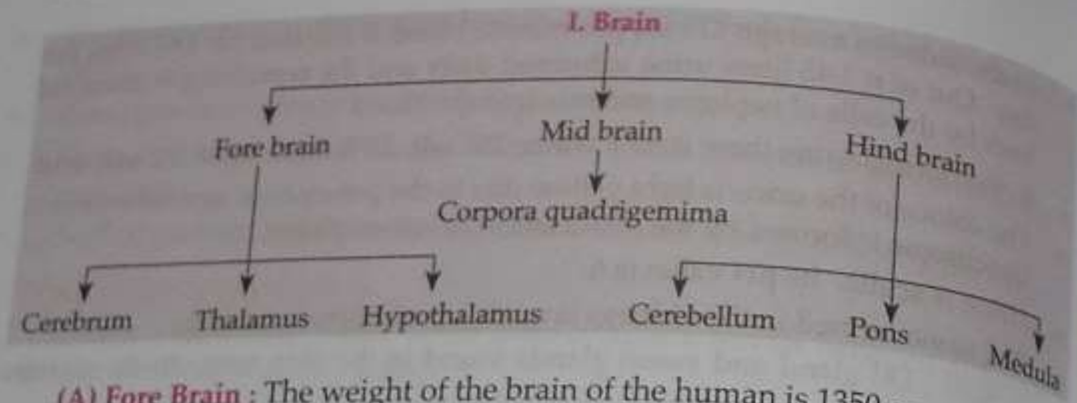
Under this system thin thread like nerves are spread throughout the body. After receiving the information of environmental changes from the sensitive organs, it spreads them speedly like electrical impulses and establishes working and coordination among different organs.

Nervous System of human is divided into three parts :

1. Central Nervous System
2. Peripheral Nervous System
3. Autonomic Nervous System

1. Central Nervous System–Part of the nervous system which keeps control on the whole body and on nervous system itself is called *Central Nervous System.* The Central Nervous System of human is made up of two parts - *Brain* and *Spinal Cord.*

Brain is covered by membrane called *meninges.* It is situated in a bony box called *craninum* which protect it from external injury.



(A) Fore Brain : The weight of the brain of the human is 1350 grams.

(i) The function of the Cerebrum : This is the most developed part of the brain. This is the centre of wisdom, memory, will power, movements, knowledge and thinking. The analysis and coordination of muscular movement received from sense organs.

(ii) The function of thalamus : It is the centre of the pain, cold and heat.

(iii) The function of hypothalamus : It controls the hormonal secretion of endocrine glands. Hormones secreted from posterior pituitary gland secrete through it. This is the centre of hunger, thirst, temperature control, love, hate etc. Blood pressure, metabolism of water, sweat, anger, joy etc are controlled by it.

(B) Mid brain

The function of Corpora quadrigemina : This is the centre of control on vision and hearing power.

(C) Hind Brain

(i) Function of cerebellum : It is some what at the back of head and consist of two cerebellar hemisphere like cerebrum. It is large reflex centre for coordination of muscular body movements and maintenance of posture.

(ii) Pons : It act as bridge carrying ascending and descending tracts between brain and spinal cord.

(iii) Medulla : It is posterior most part of brain and continuous into the spinal cord. It connect and communicate the brain with spinal cord. It contains the cardiac respiratory and vasomotor centres that control complex activity like heart action, respiration, coughing, sneezing etc.

➤ The brain of the human is covered in the cranium which protects it from external injury. Brain is covered by membrane called *meanings*.

Note : *EEG (Electro encephlo graph) is done to known the function of brain.*

➤ **Spinal cord :** The posterior region of the medulla oblongata forms the spinal cord. Its main functions are :

(a) Coordination and control of reflex actions i.e. it works as the centre of the reflex actions.

(b) It carries the impulses coming out of brain.

Note : *Reflex action was first discovered by the scientist, Marshall Hall.*

2. Peripheral Nervous System : Peripheral Nervous System is made up of the nerves arising from brain and spinal cord. These are called cranial and spinal nerves respectively. There are sensory, motor and mixed nerve.

➤ There are 12 pairs of cranial nerves and 31 pairs of spinal nerve found in a human.

➤ The unit of nervous tissues is called *Neuron* or *nerve cell.*

3. Autonomic Nervous System : Autonomic Nervous System is made up of some brain nerves and some spinal cord nerves. It supplies nerves to all the internal organs and blood vessel of the body. *Langley,* first presented the concept of Autonomic Nervous System in the year 1921. There are two parts of Autonomic Nervous System :

(a) Sympathetic Nervous System

(b) Parasympathetic Nervous System.

Functions of Sympathetic Nervous System

1. It narrows the blood vessels in the skin.
2. By its action hair gets erected.
3. It reduces the secretion of salivary glands.
4. It increases the heart beat.
5. It increase the secretion of sweat glands.
6. It stretches the pupil of eye ball.
7. It relax the muscles of urinary bladder.
8. It reduces the speed of contraction & relaxation of intestine.
9. The rate of respiration increase.
10. It increases the blood pressure.
11. It increases the sugar level in the blood.
12. It increases the number of Red Blood Corpuscles in the blood.
13. It helps in clotting of blood.
14. Collective impact of this affects fear, pain and anger.

Functions of Parasympathetic Nervous System :

The functions of this system is normally the opposite of Sympathetic Nervous System. For example :

1. It widens the lumen of blood vessels except the coronary blood vessels.
2. It increases the secretion of saliva and other digestive juices.
3. The contraction of pupil is caused by this.
4. It creates contraction in the other muscles of the urinary bladder.
5. It creates contraction and motion in intestinal walls.
6. The effect of this nervous system collectively creates the occasion of rest and joy.

(f) Skeletal System

The skeletal system of human is made up of two parts :

(a) Axial skeleton

(b) Appendicular skeleton.

(a) Axial skeleton : The skeleton, which makes the main axis of the body is called *axial skeleton.* Skull, vertebral column and bones of chest comes under it. There are 80 bones in axial skeleton.

(i) **Skull** : There are 29 bones in it. Out of these, 8 bones jointly protect the brain of the human. The structure made up of these bones is called *forehead*. All the bones of the forehead remain joined strongly by the sutures. There are 14 bones in addition to this which form the face. Six ear ossicles and one hyoid bone.

(ii) **Vertebral Column** : The vertebral column of the human is made up of 33 vertebra. All the vertebra are joined by intervertebral disc. Vertebra is made flexible by these intervertebral disc. We divide the whole vertebral column into the following parts –

1.	Cervical region	7 vertebras
2.	Thoracic region	12 vertebras
3.	Lumber region	5 vertebras
4.	Sacral region	(1) 5 vertebras
5.	Caudal region	(1) 4 vertebras
		Total – 33

- ➢ Its first vertebra which is called *atlas* holds the skull.

Functions of vertebral column :

1. Holds the head.
2. It provides the base to the neck and body.
3. It helps the human in standing, walking etc.
4. It provides flexibility to the neck and body by which a human can move its neck and body in any direction.
5. It provides protection to spinal cord.

(b) Appendicular skeleton : The following are the parts of it –

(i) Foot bones— Both hands and feet have 118 bones.

(ii) To hold the forelimb and hind limb on the axial skeleton in human there are two girdles.

- ➢ The girdle of forelimb is called *pectoral girdle* and girdle of hindlimb is called *pelvic girdle*.
- ➢ Pectoral girdle joined with forelimb is called *humerus* and the bone from pelvic girdle join to hindlimb is called *femur*.

Functions of the skeletal system :

1. To provide a definite shape to the body.
2. To provide protection to soft parts of the body.
3. To provide a base to the muscles for joining.
4. To help in respiration and nutrition.
5. To form Red Blood Corpuscles.

- ➢ The total number of bones in a human's body — 206
- ➢ The total number of bones during childhood — 300
- ➢ The total number of bones of head (forehead-8, facial-14, ear-6 ,hyoid -1) — 29
- ➢ The total number of bones in vertebral column, initially-33
  After development – 26 (5 sacral fuse into 1 and 4 caudal fuse into 1)
- ➢ The total number of bones of ribs 24
- ➢ The largest bone of the body *Femur* (bone of thigh)
- ➢ The smallest bone of the body *Stapes* (bone of ear)
- ➢ Foramen Magnum is an aperture found in the skull.

The name and number of bones of some specific regions –

Ear bones	*Maleus*	(2)	Upper arm	*Humerus*	(2)
	Incus	(2)	Fore arm	*Radio ulna*	(2)
	Stapes	(2)	Wrist	*Carpals*	(16)
Palm	*Meta carpals*	(10)	Fingers	*Phalanges*	(28)
Thigh	*Femur*	(2)	Hindlimb	*Tibia fibula*	(4)
Knee	*Patella*	(2)	Ankle	*Tarsal*	(14)
Sole	*Meta tarsal*	(10)			

- ➢ External ear of man is mainly made up of Cartilage.

Note : 1. *The muscles and bones are join together by tendon.*

2. *The muscle which join bone to bone is called ligaments.*

- ➢ Ligaments of human body are made up of yellow fibre.

(g) Endocrine System

(a) Exocrine glands : Gland which have duct are called *exocrine gland*. Secretion of enzymes pass through it. Example – *Digestive gland, Sweat gland, Mucous gland, Salivary gland* etc.

(b) Endocrine gland : These are *ductless gland*. Hormones are secreted by these gland. Hormones are sent to the different parts of the body through blood plasma. Example – *Pituitary gland, Thyroid gland, Parathyroid gland* etc.

Functions and effect of the main endocrine system of the human body and hormone secreted by them –

1. Pituitary gland : It is situated in a depression of the sphenoid bone of the fore head. This is called *sella – tunica*.

- ➢ Its weight is approximately 0.6 grams.
- ➢ This is also known as *master gland*. Pitutary gland is controlled by hypothalmus.

The functions of the hormones secreted by Pituitary gland :

1. STH Hormone (Somatotropic hormone) : It controls the growth of the body especially the growth of bones. By the excessiveness of STH *gigantism* and *acromegaly* are caused, in which height of the human grows abnormally. Lack of STH causes *dwarfism* in human.

2. TSH Hormone (Thyroid Stimulating Hormone) : It stimulates the thyroid gland to secrete hormone.

3. ACTH Hormone (Adrenocorticotropic Hormone) : It controls the secretion of adrenal cortex.

4. GTH Hormone (Growth Hormone) : It controls the functions of gonads. This is of two types :

(a) FSH Hormone (Follicle - Stimulating Hormone) : In male it stimulates spermatogenesis in the seminiferous tubules of the testis. In female, it stimulates the Graffian follicles of the ovary to secret the hormone *Oestrogen*.

(b) LH Hormone (Luteiniging Hormone) : Interstitial cell stimulating hormone –, secretion of *testosterone* hormone takes place in male and in case of female *estrogen* hormone secreted.

5. LTH Hormone (Lactogenic Hormone) : Its main function is to stimulate secretion of milk in breasts for infants.

6. ADH Hormone (Antidiuretic Hormone) : It causes increase in blood pressure. It is helpful in maintaining the water balance in the body and reduce the volume of urine.

2. Thyroid gland : This is situated below the larynx on both side of respiratory trachea in throat of human.

- The hormones secreted by it are Thyroxine and Triiodothyronine.

Functions of Thyroxin :

1. It increases the speed of cellular respiration.
2. It is necessary for the normal growth of the body particularly for the development of bones, hair etc.
3. The normal functions of reproductive organs depend on the activeness of thyroid gland.
4. It controls the water balance of the body in coordination with the hormones of pituitary gland.

Diseases Caused by the Deficiency of Thyroxin :

1. Cretinism : This disease affects the children. The mental and physical retardness of the child.

2. Myxedema : In this disease which normally attack during youth the metabolism does not take place properly which causes reduction in heart beat and blood pressure.

3. Hypothyroidism : This disease is caused due to a chronic deficiency of thyroxin hormone. Due to this diseases the normal reproduction is not possible. Sometimes due to its deficiency, human becomes dumb and deaf.

4. Goitre : This disease is caused by the deficiency of iodine in food. In this disease the shape of the thyroid gland enlarges abnormally.

Diseases caused by the Excessiveness of Thyroxin :

Exothalmic Goitre : In this disease eyes get bulging out of the eye socket with increased metabolic rate.

3. Parathyroid gland : This is situated in the right back of the thyroid gland of the throat. Two hormones are secreted by it :

(a) Parathyroid hormone : This hormone is secreted when there is a deficiency of calcium in the blood.

(b) Calcitonin : This hormone is released when there is excess of calcium in the blood is present.

Hence, hormone secreted by parathyroid gland controls the quantity of calcium in blood.

4. Adrenal gland : There are two parts of this gland – (a) outer part is cortex and (b) inner part is medulla.

Hormones secreted by cortex and their function :

(i) Glucocorticoids : This controls the metabolism of carbohydrate, protein and fat.

(ii) Mineralocorticoids : Its main function is reabsorption of ion by kidney ducts and to control the quantity of other on in the body.

(iii) Sex hormone : It controls the sexual behaviour and secondary sexual characters.

Note : 1. Cortex is essential for life. If this is extracted completely from the body, human will remain alive only for a week or two.

2. In case of deformation of cortex, the process of metabolism gets disturbed; this disease is called Addison's disease.

Hormones secreted by Medulla and their function :

(a) *Epinephrine* – This is an amino acid.

(b) *Nor epinephrine* – This is also an amino acid.

- The work of both the hormones is similar. These equally increase the relaxation and contraction of heart muscles. As a result, blood pressure increases and decreases.
- In case of sudden stop of heart beat, epinephrine is helpful in re-starting the heart beat.
- The hormone secreted by Adrenal gland is called fight flight, fright fight hormone.

5. Gonads :

(1) **Ovary :** The following hormones are secreted by this :

(a) Estrogen : It completes the development of reproductive organs.

(b) Progesterone : It stimulates the thickening of uterus lining during ovarien cycle.

(c) Relaxin : During pregnancy it is found in uterus and placenta. This hormone smoothens the pubic symphysis and it widens the uterine cervix so that a child is delivered easily.

(2) **Testes :** The hormone secreted by it is called *testosterone*. It motivates the sexual behaviour and growth of secondary sexual characters.

(h) Respiratory System

- The most important organ of the respiratory system of human is lungs where the exchange of gases takes place.
- All those organs comes under respiratory system which help in exchange of gases are – Nasal passage, Pharynx, Larynx or Voice box, Trachea, Bronchi, Bronchioles, Lungs etc.
- **Nasal passage :** Its main function is related to sniffing. Its inner cavity is lined with mucous membrane. This secretes approximately ½ litre of mucous everyday. This prevents the particles of dust, bacteria or other small organisms from entering into the body. It makes the air wet entering into the body and equalises it with the temperature of the body.
- **Pharynx :** It is situated behind the nasal cavity a common passage for both respiratory and digestive system.
- **Larynx :** Pharynx open into anterior wider part of trachea called larynx. The opening is called glottis. A cartilaginous flop like structure cover the glottis called epiglottis which prevent the entry of food during swallowing. A pair of vocal cord is present inside the larynx help in producing sound.

- **Trachea :** From the base of larynx a tube is arises, passes through the neck and reaches upto middle of thorax is called trachea. It is supported by 'C' shaped cartilaginous ring. Internally trachea is lined by ciliated and mucus secreting epithelium.
- **Bronchi :** In the thorocic region trachea divides into two branches called bronchi. Each bronchus enters into the lung of its own side. After entering into the lung bronchous of each side divide and redevide into very fine tube called bronchioles. Finally bronchioles give rise alveoli or alveolar sac. Alveoli are the site of gaseous exchange.
- **Lungs :** There is a pair of lungs in the thoracic cavity. Its colour is pink, red and looks like sponge. Right lung is larger in comparison to left lung. Each lung is surrounded by a membrane which is called *pleural membrane*. There is a network of blood capillaries. Here Oxygen enters into the blood and CO_2 release out from blood.

The process of respiration can be divided into four parts :

1. External respiration.
2. Transportation of gases.
3. Internal respiration.
4. Cellular respiration.

1. **External respiration :** This is divided into two parts –
   (a) Breathing (b) Exchange of gases.

(a) **Breathing :** In lungs air is taken and given out at a certain rate which is called *breathing*.

Mechanism of Breathing :

(i) **Inspiration :** At this stage, air from the environment enters into the lungs through the nasal passage, due to increases in the dimension of thoracic cavity a low pressure is formed in the lungs and air enters into the lungs from environment. This air continues to enter until the pressure of air inside and outside the body became equal.

(ii) **Expiration :** In this process air comes out of the lungs.

Constitution of air in Breathing

	Nitrogen	Oxygen	Carbon dioxide
The air inhaled	79%	21%	0.03%
The air exhaled	79%	17%	4%

Everyday approximately 400 ml water is excreted out through breathing.

(b) **Exchange of gases :** The exchange of gases takes place inside the lungs. This gaseous exchange takes place on the basis of concentration gradient through normal diffusion.

The exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide gases takes place due to their difference in partial pressures. The direction of diffusion is both side.

2. **Transportation of gases :** The process of reaching of gases (oxygen and carbon dioxide) from lungs to the cells of body and coming back again to the lungs is called the *transportation of gases.*

- Transportation of oxygen takes place by haemoglobin present in blood.
- Transportation of carbon dioxide from cells to lung takes place by haemoglobin only to the extent of 10 to 20%.

- Transportation of carbon dioxide takes place through circulation of blood :

(a) By mixing with plasma : Carbon dioxide forms carbonic acid after mixing in plasma. Transportation of 7% carbon dioxide takes place in this form.

(b) In the form of bicarbonates : 70% part of carbon dioxide in the form of bicarbonates is transported. It mixes with potassium and sodium of blood and forms potassium bicarbonate and sodium bicarbonate.

3. **Internal respiration :** Inside the body, gaseous exchange takes place between blood and tissue fluid which is called *internal respiration.*

Note : *The gaseous exchange in lungs is called external respiration.*

4. **Cellular respiration :** Glucose is oxidised by oxygen reached into the cell. This process is called *cellular respiration.*

Types of cellular respiration :

There are two types of Respiration

(a) Anaerobic respiration : If the oxidation of food takes place in absence of oxygen. During this only 2 ATP molecules are produced from one molecule of glucose. Final product of anaerobic respiration in animal tissue like skeletal muscle cell is lactic acid.

In yeast and certain bacteria ethyl alcohol or ethanol is produced.

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 \rightarrow 2C_3H_6O_3 + \text{Energy (in animal)}$$

(Lactic acid)

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 \rightarrow 2C_2H_5OH + 2CO_2 + \text{Energy (in plant)}$$

(Ethyl alcohol)

(b) Aerobic respiration : It takes place in the presence of oxygen. The complete oxidation of glucose takes place. As a result CO_2 and H_2O is formed and energy is released in huge amount.

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O + 2870 \text{ KJ energy. (38 ATP)}$$

The complex process in cellular respiration is divided into two parts–

1. Glycolysis (cytoplasm) 2. Kreb's cycle (Mitochondria)

1. Glycolysis : Its study was first done by *Embden Meyorh pathway*. Therefore, it is also called *EMP path*

- Glycolysis is present in both types of respiration, Aerobic and Anaerobic. This process takes place in cytoplasm.
- As a result of decomposition of one glucose atom in glycolysis two atoms of pyruvic acid is formed.
- To start this process 2 atoms of ATP (Adenosine Triphosphate) takes part but at the end of the process 4 atoms ATP are obtained. Therefore, as a result of glycolysis 2 atom ATP are obtained i.e. 16000 calorie (2 × 8000) energy is obtained.
- There is no need of oxygen in glycolysis. Hence, this process is similar in both anaerobic and aerobic respiration.
- In this, four molecules of hydrogen formed which is used in converting NAD to $2NADH_2$.
- The enzyme which take part in glycolysis during respiration are found in cell cytoplasm.

2. Kreb's Cycle : It was described by *Hens Krebs* in 1937.

- This is also called *Citric Acid Cycle* or *Tricarboxylic Cycle.*
- This process is completed inside the Mitochondria in the presence of specific enzymes.
- Two atoms of each ADP and ATP are formed.
- In this cycle 4 pair of hydrogen atom are released.
- In complete cycle two molecule of pyruvic acid produce 12 molecule of carbondioxide.
- In our system maximum number of ATP molecule are formed during Kreb's Cycle.

Production of energy : By the oxidation of pyruvic acid one atom of ATP, five atoms of NADH and one atom of $NADH_2$ are formed. From one atom of NADH three atoms of ATP and from one atom of $NADH_2$ two atoms of ATP are obtained. Hence, from one atom of pyruvic acid $1 + (3 \times 5) + (2 \times 1) = 18$ atoms of ATP are formed. From one atom of glucose two atoms of pyruvic acid are formed, by which 36 atoms of ATP are released. During the glycolysis, two atoms of ATP are obtained. Hence, during oxidation of one atom of glucose total $2 + 36 = 38$ ATP atoms are obtained.

Respiratory substances : Carbohydrate, fat and protein are the main respiratory substances. At first, oxidation of glucose takes place, then fat. After the consumption of carbohydrate and fat oxidation of protein start.

Note : *Respiration is a Catabolic Process. It also reduces the weight of the body.*

5. Nutrients

To maintain life organisms performs some basic function is called *nutrition.* Nutrition is one of the basic function of life in which intake of food, digestion, absorption, assimilation and egestion of undigested foods are included.

Nutrient : Nutrient are the substance by which an organism get energy or it is used for biosynthesis of its body.

For example carbohydrate and fat are the source of energy. Whereas proteins and minerals are the nutrient used for biosynthesis.

1. Carbohydrate : Carbohydrates are organic compounds in which the ratio of Carbon, Hydrogen and Oxygen is 1 : 2 : 1. Carbohydrate in the form of sugar and starch are major intake in animals and human. 50 to 75% energy is obtained by oxidation of carbohydrate. Carbohydrate containing aldehyde group is called *aldose* and with ketone group is called *ketose.* Carbohydrates are derivatives of polyhydroxy alcohols.

Classification of carbohydrate : Carbohydrates are classified into three major group.

(a) Monosaccharides : These are the simple sugar made up of single polyhydroxy or ketone unit. Most abundant monosaccharides found in nature is glucose containing six carbon atom. *Triose, tetrose, pentoses, heptoses* are the type of monosaccharides.

- Glucose is a type of hexose sugar.

(b Oligosaccharides : When 2 to 10 monosaccharides join together they form oligosaccharides. They are usually crystalline in nature and sweet in test. *Maltose, sucrose, lactose* are disaccharides made up of two monosaccharides.

(c) Polysaccharides : These are the compound of sugar which are formed due to joining large number of monosaccharide. There are insoluble and tasteless. Some example of polysaccharides are *starch, glycogen, cellulose, chitin* etc.

Function of Carbohydrate

1. Carbohydrate works as fuel. During the process of respiration, glucose break into CO_2 and H_2O with the release of energy. One gram of glucose gives 4.2 kilo calories energy.
2. Glucose is the source of immediate energy production in the cell.
3. Nucleic acids are polymers of nucleosides and nucleotides and contain pentose sugar.
4. Lactose of milk is formed from glucose and glactose.
5. Glucose is used for the formation of fat and amino acid.
6. Carbon skeleton of monosaccharides is used in the formation of fatty acid, chitin, cellulose etc.

Source of Carbohydrate : Wheat, rice, maize, sweet potato, potato and other plant and animals are the sources of carbohydrate.

2. Protein : Protein word was first used by *J. Berzelius.* This is a complex organic compound made up of 20 type of amino acids. Approximately 15% of the human body is made up of protein. Nitrogen is present in protein in addition to C, H & O.

- N_2 gas is essential for protein synthesis.

Twenty types of amino acid are necessary for human body, out of which 12 are synthesized by body itself and remaining 8 are obtained by food are called essential amino acid.

Types of proteins :

On the basis of chemical composition

It is divided into three types.

(1) Simple Protein : It consists of only amino acid.

Example–*Albumins, Globulins, Histones* etc.

(2) Conjugated Protein : Having some another chemical compounds in addition to amino acid.

Example–*Chromo protein, Glyco protein* etc.

(3) Derived Protein : It is derived from the partial digestion of natural proteins or its hydrolysis.

Example–*Peptone, Peptide, Proteinase* etc.

Function of Protein :

1. It takes part in the formation of cells, protoplasm and tissues.
2. These are important for physical growth. Physical growth hampers by its deficiency. Lack of proteins causes *Kwashiorkor* and *Marasmus* diseases in children.
3. In case of necessity these provide energy to the body.
4. Control the development of genetic characters.
5. Helpful in conduction also.

Kwashiorkor : In this disease hands and legs of children get slimmed and the stomach comes out.

Marasmus : In this disease muscles of children are loosened.

3. Fats : Fat is an ester of glycerol and fatty acid.

In these carbon, hydrogen and oxygen are present in different quantities, but proportionally less oxygen than carbohydrate.

Normally *fat* remains as solid at 20°C temperature, but if it is in liquid form at this temperature, this is called *oil.*

Fatty acids are of two types – Saturated and unsaturated. Unsaturated fatty acids are found in fish oil and vegetable oil. Only coconut oil and palm oil are the examples of saturated oil.

9.3 kilo calorie energy is liberated from 1 gram fat.

Normally an adult person should get 20-30% of energy from fat.

Main functions of fat :

1. It provides energy to the body.
2. It remains under the skin and prevents the loss of heat from the body.
3. It make the food material testy.
4. It protects different parts of the body from Injury.

Due to the lack of fat skin gets dried, weight of the body decreases and the development of the body checked.

Due to the excessiveness of fat the body gets fatty, heart disease takes place and blood pressure increases.

4. Vitamins : Vitamin was invented by Sir F. G. Hopkins. The term vitamin was coined by Funk.

Vitamins are organic compound required in minute quantities. No calorie is obtained from it, but it is very important in regulating chemical reactions in the metabolism of the body.

On the basis of solubility, vitamins are of two types :

(a) Vitamin soluble in water : Vitamin-B and Vitamin-C.

(b) Vitamin soluble in fat : Vitamin-A, Vitamin-D, Vitamin-E and Vitamin-K.

The diseases caused by the deficiency of vitamins and their sources

Vitamin	Chemical name	Deficiency diseases	Sources
Vitamin-A	Retinol	Colour blindness, Xerophthalmia	Milk, Egg, Cheese, Green vegetable fish liver oil
Vitamin-B_1	Thymine	Beriberi	Groundnut, Rapseed, Dried Chilli, Pulses, Liver, Egg, Vegetables etc.
Vitamin-B_2	Riboflavin	Cracking of skin, red-dish eye, cracking of tongue	Meat, Green vegetables, Milk etc.
Vitamin-B_3	Nicotinamide or Niacin	Whitening of hair, mentally retardness	Meat, Milk, Nut, Tomato, Sugarcane etc.
Vitamin-B_5	Pantothenic acid	Pellagra or 4-D Syndrome	Meat, Ground Potato, Tomato, nut, Leafy vegetables etc.
Vitamin-B_6	Pyridoxine	Anaemia, skin disease	Liver, Meat, Grains etc.

Vitamin	Chemical name	Deficiency diseases	Sources
Vitamin-B_7	Biotin	Paralysis, body pain, hair falling	Meat, Egg, Liver, Milk etc.
Vitamin-B_{11}	Folic acid	Anaemia, dysentry	Pulse, Liver, Egg
Vitamin-B_{12}	Cynocobalamin	Anaemia, jaundice Teroile Glutemic	Meat, Milk etc.
Folic acid	–	Anaemia, diarrhoea	Pulses, Liver, Vegetables, Eggs etc.
Vitamin-C	Ascorbic acid	Scurvy, Swelling of gums	Lemon, Orange, Tomato, Sour substances, Chilly, Sprouted grain
Vitamin-D	Calciferol	Rickets (in children), Osteomalasia (in adults)	Fish liver oil, Milk, Eggs etc.
Vitamin-E	Tocopherol	Less fertility	Leafy vegetables, Milk, Butter, Sprouted wheat, Vegetable oil etc.
Vitamin-K	Phylloquinone	Non-clotting of blood	Tomato, Soybean oil Green vegetables etc.

- Cobalt is found in Vitamin-B_{12}.
- Synthesis of vitamins cannot be done by the cells and it is fulfilled by the vitamin containing foods.
- However, synthesis of Vitamin-D and K takes place in our body.
- Synthesis of Vitamin-D takes place by the ultra violet rays present in the sunlight through cholesterol (Irgesterol) of skin.
- Vitamin-K is synthesized in our colon by the bacteria and from there it is absorbed.

6. Minerals : Mineral is a homogenous inorganic material needed for body. These control the metabolism of body.

Important Minerals and their functions

Minerals	Daily quantity	Main sources	Functions
Sodium (as sodium chloride)	2–5 gram	Normal salt, fish, meat, eggs, milk etc.	It normally found in external fluid of cell and is related to following functions Contractions of muscles, In the transmission of nerve impulses in nerve fiber. Control of positive electrolyte balance in body etc.
Potassium	1 gram	Approximately all edibles	It is normally found in protoplasm. It is important for following different chemical reactions in cells : Muscular contraction, nerve conduction, maintenance of positive electrolyte in body etc.
Calcium	Approx 1.2 gram	Milk, cheese, eggs, grains, gram, fish etc.	This provides strength to bones and teeth with vitamin, Important role in blood formation, Related with muscular contraction. Help in clotting the blood etc.

Minerals	Daily quantity	Main sources	Functions
Phosphorus	1.2 gram	Milk, cheese, Bajra, green leaf vegetables etc.	This provides strength to bones and teeth, in coordination with calcium.
Iron	25 mg (boy) 35 mg (girl)	Albumen of egg, bread, Bajra, Banana, Spinach apple	Iron is important in formation of Red Blood Corpuscles and haemoglobin.
Iodine	20 mg	Sea fish, sea food, green leaf vegetables, Iodized salt	This is important for synthesis of thyroxin hormone secreted by Thyroid gland.
Magnesium	Very small quantity	Vegetables	For functioning of muscular system and nervous system.
Zinc	Very small quantity	Liver and fishes	For insulin functioning.
Copper	Very small quantity	Meat, fish, liver and grains	Formation of haemoglobin and bones and as a conductor of electron.
Cobalt	Very small quantity	Meat, fish and water	For synthesis of RBC and Vitamin B_{12}.

- Deficiency of calcium and iron is generally found in pregnant women.

7. Water: Human gets it by drinking. Water is the important component of our body. 65-75% weight of the body is water.

Main functions of water :

1. Water controls the temperature of our body by sweating and vaporizing.
2. It is the important way of excretion of the excretory substances from the body.
3. Maximum chemical reactions in the body perform through hydrolysis.

Balance Diet: That nutrition, in which all the important nutrients for organism are available in sufficient quantity, is called *Balance Diet.*

Balance nutrition is obtained from Balance Diet, which is given in the chart below :

Edibles	Adult male			Adult female			Children		Boy	Girl
	N	M	Hard	N	M	Hard	1-3 yrs.	4-6 yrs.	10-18 yrs.	10-16 yrs.
Grain (wheat, rice)	400 g	520 g	670 g	410 g	440 g	575 g	175 g	270 g	420 g	380 g
Pulses	40 g	50 g	60 g	40 g	45 g	50 g	35 g	35 g	45 g	45 g
Leafy vegetables	40 g	40 g	40 g	100 g	100 g	50 g	40 g	50 g	50 g	50 g
Vegetables (other)	60 g	70 g	80 g	40 g	40 g	100 g	20 g	30 g	50 g	50 g
Milk	150 g	200 g	250 g	100 g	150 g	200 g	300 g	250 g	250 g	250 g
Tuber root	50 g	60 g	80 g	50 g	50 g	60 g	10 g	20 g	30 g	30 g
Sugar	30 g	35 g	55	20 g	20 g	40 g	30 g	40 g	45 g	45 g
Fat and oil	40 g	45 g	65 g	20 g	25 g	40 g	15 g	25 g	40 g	35 g

- Brinjal is a genetically modified vegetable recently being made available in Indian market.

Necessary calorie for a human being :

	Nature of work	Male	Female
1.	Light worker	2000 calorie	2100 calorie
2.	Eight hours worker	3000 calorie	2500 calorie
3.	Hard worker	3600 calorie	3000 calorie

- Sodium Benzoate is used as preservative to preserve food item.
- Milk is not considered as complete food due to lack of vitamin C and iron.

6. Human Diseases

Diseases caused by Protozoa :

	Disease	Affected organ	Parasites	Carrier	Symptoms Mosquito
1.	Malaria	RBC & Liver	*Plasmodium*	Female Anopheles	Fever with shivering
2.	Pyorrhoea	Gums	*Entamoeba gingivelis*	—	Bleeding from gums.
3.	Sleeping sickness	Brain	*Trypanosoma*	Tse-Tse flies	Fever with severe sleep.
4.	Diarrhoea	Intestine	*Entamoeba histolytica*	—	Mucous & Diarrohea with blood.
5.	Kala-ajar	Bone marrow	*Leismania donovani*	Sand flies	High fever.

- Malignant malaria is pernicious malaria.

Charles Leveran discovered the Malaria Parasite, *plasmodium* in the blood of the affected person in the year 1880.

Ronald Ross (1897) confirmed the Malaria is caused by malaria parasite and told that mosquito is the carrier of it.

Diseases caused by Bacteria :

Disease	Affected organ	Name of Bacteria	Symptoms
Tetanus	Nervous system	*Clostridium Tetani*	High fever, spasm in body, Closing of jaws etc
Cholera	Intestine	*Vibrio cholerae*	Continuous stool and vomiting
Typhoid	Intestine	*Salmonella typhia*	High fever, headache
Tuberculosis	Lungs	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*	Repeated coughing
Diphtheria	Respiratory tube	*Corynebacterium diphtheriae*	Difficulty in respiration and suffocation
Plague	Lungs, area between the two legs	*Pasteurella pesties*	Very high fever, muscular eruptions on the body
Whooping cough	Respiratory system	*Hemophilis pertusis*	Continuous coughing
Pneumonia	Lungs	*Diplococcus pneumoniae*	High fever, swelling in lungs
Leprosy	Nervous System Skin	*Mycobacterium leprae*	Spots on body, nerves affected

Disease	Affected organ	Name of Bacteria	Symptoms
Gonorrhea	Urinary Path	*Neisseria Gonorrhoeae*	Swelling in urinary path
Syphilis	Urinary path	*Treponema pallidum*	Wounds in urinogenial tract

Note : *In the year 1882, German scientist Robert Koch discovered the bacteria of Cholera and T.B.*

- Birds flu is a disease that affects human beings and spread through poultry.
- If waste material contaminate the source of drinking water, the most probability to spread the disease is Typhoid.
- Vaccine : It is a biological preparation of a weakened or killed pathogen which provides active acquired immunity to the body for a particular disease.
- Vaccination : Administration of vaccine to stimulate an individual's immune system to develop immunity to a pathogen.

Vaccine	Name of disease
DTP	Diptheria, Pertussis, Tetanus given to child up to one year.
BCG TB	Bacillus, Calmette-Guerin. It provide immunization against tuberculosis given to the child up to one to four month
OPV (Polio)	Oral polio vaccine is given to the child from 2 month to 6 year.

Louis Pasteur discovered the vaccine of Rabies and pasteurization of milk.

Re-do

Diseases caused by Viruses

	Disease	Affected organ	Name of virus	Symptoms
1.	AIDS	Defensive system (WBC)	HIV	Immune system of body became weak
2.	Dengue fever	Whole body particularly head, eyes and joints	Billions of virus	Pain in eyes, muscles, head and joints
3.	Polio	Throat, backbone Nerve	Pilio virus	Fever, body pain, backbone and intestine cells are destroyed
4.	Influenza (flu)	Whole body	Mixo virus	Suffocation, sneezing, restlessness
5.	Chicken pox	Whole body	Variola virus	High fever, radish eruption on body
6.	Small pox	Whole body	Varicella virus	Light fever, eruption of bile on body
7.	Goitre	Parathyroid gland	—	Difficulty in opening the mouth with fever
8.	Measles	Whole body	Morbeli virus	Reddish eruptions on body
9.	Trachoma	Eyes	—	Reddish eyes, pain in eyes
10.	Hepatitis or Jaundice	Liver	—	Yellow urine, Eyes and skin become yellow.
11.	Rabies	Nervous system	Rabies virus	The patient becomes mad with sever headache and high fever
12.	Meningitis	Brain	—	High fever
13.	Herpes	Skin	Herpes	Swelling in skin

Note : *AIDS – Acquired Immuno Deficiency Syndrome.*

Elisa Test : *Test of HIV Virus (AIDS)*

Medical Instrument

- Pacemaker : It is a small device that is placed in the chest to control abnormal heart beat.
- Computed Tomography Scan (CT Scan) : Used to investigate abnormal functioning of the body.
- Electro cardiograph (ECG) : To find out the abnormality of heart.
- Electroencephalogram (EEG) : Use to detect malfunctioning of brain.
- Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) : Use to find out any abnormality in the whole body.
- Auto analyser : Use to examine glucose, area and cholestrole.

Diseases caused by Protozoa :

1. Diarrhoea : The reason of this disease is the presence of internal protozoa namely *Entamoeba histolytica* which is spread through house flies. It causes wounds in the intestine. Protein digesting enzyme, trypsin is destroyed in this. This disease is mostly found in children. Disease caused by helminthes.

2. Filaria : This disease is caused by *Wuchereia baoncrofti*. This worm is transmitted by the stings of culex mosquitoes. This disease causes swelling in legs, testes and other parts of the body. This disease is also known as *Elephantiasis*.

Diseases caused by Fungus :

1. Asthma : The spores of the fungi, namely *Aspergillus fumigatus* reaches the lungs of the human and constitutes a net like formation, thus, obstructs the function of lungs. This is a infectious disease.

2. Athlete's foot : This disease is caused by the fungi namely *Tenia Pedes*. This is a infectious disease of skin which spreads mainly due to the cracking of feet.

3. Scabies : This disease is caused by the fungi namely *Acarus scabies*. In this disease the skin itches and white spots found on the skin.

4. Baldness : This is caused by the fungi namely *Taenia capitis*. Due to this hair of the head falls.

5. Ringworm : This disease spreads through the fungi namely *Trycophyton Lerucosum*. This is a infectious disease. Round red spot found on the skin.

Some Other Diseases :

1. Paralysis or Hemiplegia : In this disease within a few minutes half of the body is paralyzed. The nerves of the paralyzed part become inactive. The reason of this disease is due to high blood pressure bursting of any blood vessels of brain or insufficient supply of blood to brain.

2. Allergy : Some substance like dust, smoke, chemical, clothes, cold are dangerous to some persons and there are reactions in their body, which causes various diseases. Itching, pimples, swelling in body, black spot, eczema etc. are the examples of allergy.

3. Schizophrenia : This is a mental disease which usually found in youth. The patient considers the imagination as a truth, not to the facts. These patients are lazy, emotionless etc. Electropathy is helpful in this disease.

4. Epilepsy : This disease is caused by the internal disturbance of brain. In this disease, foam coming out of the mouth and the patient falls down unconscious.

5. Diplopia : This disease is caused by the paralysis of muscles of the eyes, in which double image is formed.

6. Bronchitis : It is caused by the inflammation of tubes leading from the wind pipe to lungs.

7. Colds : This is highly infections disease and is caused by a virus which result in bad throat, headache and watery nose.

8. Colic : Severe pain in the abdomen caused by spasm of the internal organs usually the intestines.

9. Delirium : It is a serious mental disturbance occurring under the influence of poisonous drugs.

10. Hydrophobia : A disease cause by bite of a mad dog.

11. Hyper metropia (long sightedness) : One can see the object of longer distance but not the object of nearer one. It can be corrected by convex lens.

12. Myopia (short sightedness) : In this disease person can see the object of nearer distance but can not see the object of longer distance. It is corrected by using concave lens.

13. Leukaemia : There is a great increase in the number of white blood corpuscles in system. Swelling of spleen takes place. Death occur within few days.

14. Migrain : An allergic disease in which there is a periodic attack of headache takes place. It is an incurable disease.

15. Obesity : Excessive fatness is called *obesity*.

16. Piles : There are a various vein in the rectum. Due to extra pressure on vein it prevent the free flow of blood creating problem. It is caused due to constipation.

17. Rheumatism : The symptom of this disease is fever with joints pain.

Other Disease

Atherosclerosis : Deposition of cholesterol particles in the lumen of arteries which prevent the flow of blood is called atherosclerosis.

Arteriosclerosis : Due to deposition of cholesterol and calcium salt arteries became stiff and rigid. It loses the property of elasticity due to which wall of arteries may rapture.

Uremia : Presence of excess of urea in blood is called uremia. This is caused by malfunctioning of kidney.

Glycosuria : Presence of excess of glucose in urine is known as glycosuria.

Arthritis : It is disease in which inflammation of joints takes place.

Osteoporosis : It is a age dependent disorder of bone in which low bone mass and increased fragility takes place.

Hyperglycemia : It is disorder in which the concentration of glucose in the blood is high.

Hypoglycemia : It is a condition in which the concentration of glucose in the blood is very low.

Pneumonia : Acute inflamation of alveoli of lung.

Emphysema : It is the abnormal distension of alveoli which result in the loss of elasticity. Cigarette smoke and chronic bronchitis are two main causes.

Cancer : The uncontrolled growth of cell by its multiplication.

Their are four type of cancer.

Carcinoma : It is also known as skin cancer occur in epithelial tissue.

Sarconoma : Cancerous growth in connective tissue, bones, cartilage and muscles is called sarconoma.

Leukamia : Abnormal growth in the number of leucocytes.

Lymphonoma : Cancerous growth occur in lymph node or spleen.

7. Miscellaneous

Medicinal Discoveries

Inventions/Discoveries	Inventor/Discoverer
Vitamin*	F. G. Hopkins, Cosimir Funk
Vitamin-A	Mc. Collum
Vitamin-B	Mc. Collum
Vitamin-C	Holst
Vitamin-D	Mc. Collum
Sulpha drugs	Dagmanck (Dogmanck)
Streptomycin	Selman Waksmann
Heart Transplantation	Christian Bernard
Homoeopathy	Hahnemann
Malaria parasite and treatment	Ronald Ross
Diarrhoea and treatment of plague	Kitajato
Sex hormone	Stenach
Open heart surgery	Waltallilehak
Contraceptive pills	Pincus
First test tube baby	Edwards and Stepto
Electrocardiograph	Iwanyaan
Antigen	Karl Landsteiner
RNA	James Watson and Arther Arg
DNA	James Watson and Crick
Insulin	Banting
** Funk named it 'Vitamine' (in 1912)*	
Chloroform	Harrison and Sympson
Vaccine of chicken pox	Edward Jenner
T.B. bacteria	Robert Koch
Diabetes	Banting
Penicillin	Alexander Flemming
Polio vaccine	Johan E. Salk
BCG	Guerin Calmatte
Bacteria	Luwenhook – Leeuwenhock
Blood transfer	Karl Landsteiner
Important Informations :	
Largest and heaviest mammal	Blue whale
Largest land mammal	African elephant
Largest living reptile	Sea turtle (Tortoise)
Largest living bird	Ostrich
Largest snake	Python
Largest monkey	Gorilla
Smallest bird	Humming-bird
Smallest mammal	Shrew
Largest egg	Ostrich's egg
Fastest running animal	Cheetah (Panther)
Fastest flying bird	Spine tailed Swift

Inventions/Discoveries	Inventor/Discoverer
Egg lying mammal	Echidna and Duckbiled Platypus
Tallest mammal	Giraffe (Africa)
Busiest human organ	Heart

Some Important facts

1. The study of dreams is called Oneirology.
2. The study of the beauty of human is called Kalology.
3. At the time of creation of life there was no oxygen.
4. The strongest part in the body is the enamel of teeth.
5. The sex determination of human depends on male sex chromosomes.
6. The fastest nervous speed is 532 kmph.
7. The internal area of the lungs of human is 93 sq. m. which is forty times of the external area of the body.
8. The bones are as strong as concrete and as hard as granite.
9. Inside the body approximately 150 lakh cells are destroyed every second.
10. The weight of the uterus of the woman which has not given birth to a child is 50 grams and after giving birth to a child the weight becomes 100 grams.
11. The weight of the kidney is approximately 150 grams.
12. In a single inhaling, a normal adult takes 500 ml air inside the body.
13. The capacity of heart to pump the blood is 4.5 liters per minute.
14. The length of the small intestine is approximately 7 meter and its diameter is 2.5 centimeter.
15. The blood circulation inside the body takes approximately 23 seconds.
16. The antibiotic namely, penicillin is obtained from penicillium fungus.
17. Human is the most intelligent hominid of the universe.
18. Albatross is the largest sea bird, whose spread of feather is 10-12 ft.
19. There are approximately 50 lakhs hair in the body of human.
20. In the initial stage of formation of placenta, H.C.G. hormones flow at a large quantity and excreted through urine. At this time, in the testing of urine due to presence of this hormone pregnancy test is carried out.
21. The heart beat of a child is more than that of an adult.
22. A single respiration completes in 5 seconds i.e. 2 seconds of inspiration and 3 seconds of expiration.
23. Everyday blood in the body of the human carries approximately 350 liters of oxygen to the cells of the body. Out of this 97% oxygen is carried by haemoglobin and remaining 3% is circulated by blood plasma.
24. Zinc sulphide is used as rodenticide.
25. First child born after operative procedure was caesar.
26. The largest living ape is Gorilla
27. Fish is first class protein as it contain essential amino acid.
28. The soil which are rich in calcium are known as pedocals.
29. Contour farming is a biological method of soil conservation.
30. Vermi composting is done by worm.
31. ASHA : Accredited social health activist. It is a national rural health mission which provide community health care by trained female in every village.

★★★

9

MISCELLANY

1. Firsts in India (Male)

First Governor of Bengal	Lord Clive (1757 - 60)
Last Governor of Bengal	Warren Hastings (1772 - 74)
First Governor General of Bengal	Warren Hastings (1774 - 85)
First Governor General of India	Lord William Bentic (1833 - 35)
Last Governor General and First Viceroy of India	Lord Canning (1856-62)
First President of Indian National Congress	W.C. Banerjee
First Indian Governor General of Independent India	C. Rajgopalachari (21.06.1948 - 25.01.1950)
First Indian to pass ICS	Surendra Nath Banerjee
First Indian I.C.S. Officer	Satyendra Nath Tagore
First Governor General of India (after independence)	Lord Louis Mountbatten (15 Aug. 1947 - 20 June, 1948)
First Indian Cosmonaut (to go into space)	Sqn. Ldr. Rakesh Sharma
First temporary President of the Constitutent Assembly	Dr. Sachchida Nand Sinha
First Commander-in-Chief of Free India	General K.M. Cariappa
First Indian Nobel Laureate	Rabindra Nath Tagore
First Indian Judge of the International Court of Justice	Dr. Nagendra Singh
First Indian to get Bharat Ratna Award	Dr. S. Radhakrishnan
First Field Marshal	General S.F.J. Manekshaw
The President of Constituent Assembly	Dr. Rajendra Prasad
First Indian to swim across the English Channel	Mihir Sen
First Indian to get Jnanpeeth Award	G. Shankar Kurup
First Muslim President of Indian Republic	Dr. Zakir Hussain
First Indian to win Palk-Strait Ocean Swimming Contest	Baidyanath Nath
First Speaker of Lok Sabha	G.V. Mavlankar (1952-57)
First person to make Printing Press popular in India	James Hicky
First Education Minister of Independent India	Maulana Abul Kalam Azad
First President of Indian Republic	Dr. Rajendra Prasad
First Prime Minister of Independent India	Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru
First Home Minister of Independent India	Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel
First Vice- President of Independent India	Dr. S. Radhakrishnan
First Chief of Air Staff	Air Marshal Sir Thomas Elmhirst
First Indian Air Chief of India	Air Marshal S. Mukherjee
First Chief of Army Staff	General M. Rajendra Singh
First Chief of Naval Staff of India	Vice-Admiral R.D. Katari
First large-scale Atomic Reactor of India	Apsara (1956)

First Person to get Paramvir Chakra	*Major Somnath Sharma*
First Atomic Submarine of India	*I.N.S. Chakra*
First Indian Scientist to get Nobel Prize	*C.V. Raman (Physics)*
First Indian Submarine	*I.N.S. Cauveri*
First Scientist of Indian origin, to get Nobel Prize in the field of Medical Science	*Dr. Hargovind Khurana*
First Aircraft Carrier Indian Ship	*I.N.S. Vikrant*
First Chinese pilgrim to visit India	*Fa - hien*
First Medium Range Missile	*Agni*
First e-business News Paper of India	*Financial Express*
First Scientist of Indian origin to win Nobel Prize in Physics	*Subrahmanium Chandrashekhar*
First Indian Missile	*Prithvi*
First Indian to win Stalin Award	*Saiffudin Kichlu*
India's first Nuclear Centre	*Tarapur*
First Indian to win Magsaysay Award	*Acharya Vinoba Bhave (1958)*
India's first Open University	*Andhra Pradesh Open University*
India's first Lok Sabha Member to be elected with a record maximum number of votes	*P.V. Narasimha Rao*
India's first minister to resign from Union Cabinet	*Shyama Prasad Mukherjee (1950)*
First British to visit India	*Hawkins*
First Asian Games organised	*Delhi (in 1951)*
India's first Election Commissioner	*Sukumar Sen*
First Muslim President of Indian National Congress	*Badruddin Tayab Ji*
First Chief Justice of India	*Justice Hiralal J. Kania*
First Person to submit the proposal of Indian Independence in a Congress Session	*Hasrat Mohani*
India's first University	*Nalanda University*
First Indian to climb Mt. Everest without Oxygen cylinder	*Sherpa Phu Dorji*
First foreign recipient of Bharat Ratna	*Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan*
First Indian recipient of Nobel Prize in Economics	*Dr. Amartya Sen*
First Army Institute of Information Technology founded	*Hyderabad*
First Test Tube Baby of India	*Indira (Baby Harsha)*
First Indian Pilot	*J.R.D. Tata (1929)*
First Indian to reach Antarctica	*Lt. Ram Charan (1960)*
First Post- Office opened in India	*Kolkata (1727)*
First Deputy Prime Minister of India	*Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel*
First Indian Prime Minister to resign from office	*Morarji Desai*
First Indian Prime Minister to loose an Election	*Indira Gandhi*
First President of India to die in office	*Dr. Zakir Hussain*
First Man to climb Mt. Everest twice	*Nawang Gombu*

First Indian to reach the South Pole	*Col. I.K. Bajaj*
First Indian recipient of 'Oscar Award'	*Bhanu Athaiya*
First American President to visit India	*Dwight David Eisenhower*
First British Prime Minister to visit India	*Harold Mc Millon*
First Indian author to get Anderson Award	*Ruskin Bond*
First Indian to win World Billiards Trophy	*Wilson Jones*
First Indian Space Tourist	*Santosh George*

2. Firsts in India (Female)

Indis's first Woman President	*Smt. Pratibha Patil*
India's first Woman Prime Minister	*Smt. Indira Gandhi*
India's first Woman Governor	*Sarojini Naidu*
India's first Woman ruler (on Delhi's throne)	*Razia Sultan*
India's first Woman I.P.S. officer	*Kiran Bedi*
First Woman Chief Minister of a state	*Sucheta Kripalani (U.P.)*
First Woman Union Minister	*Rajkumari Amrita Kaur*
First Woman President of INC	*Annie Besant*
First Woman Judge of the Suprime Court	*Meera Sahib Fatima Bibi*
First Woman to get Ashok Chakra	*Nirja Bhanot*
First Indian Woman Ambassador at United Nations	*Vijayalakshmi Pandit*
First Indian Woman to swim across English Channel	*Arati Saha (Gupta)*
First Indian Woman to get the Noble Prize	*Mother Teresa (1979)*
First Indian Woman to climb the Mt. Everest	*Bachendri Pal*
First Indian Woman to become 'Miss World'	*Miss Reita Faria*
First Indian Woman to climb the 'Mt. Everest' twice	*Santosh Yadav*
First Indian Woman to become 'Miss Universe'	*Sushmita Sen*
First Indian Woman to get Bharat Ratna	*Smt. Indira Gandhi*
First Woman to get Jnanpith Award	*Ashapurna Devi*
First Indian Woman to win WTA Title	*Sania Mirza*
First Indian Woman Airline Pilot	*Durga Banerjee*
First Indian Woman to win a Gold in Asian Games	*Kamaljeet Sandhu*
First Indian Woman President of I. N. Congress	*Sarojini Naidu (1925)*
First Indian Woman to win the Booker Prize	*Arundhati Roy*
First Woman Musician to get 'Bharat Ratna'	*M.S. Subbulakshmi*
First Indian Woman to go into space	*Kalpana Chawla*

3. Firsts in the World (Male & Female)

First men to climb Mt. Everest	*Sherpa Tenzing Norgay & Sir Edmund Hillary (29th May, 1953)*
First man to reach North Pole	*Robert Peary*
First man to reach South Pole	*Ronald Amundsen*
First religion of the world	*Sanatan Dharma*
First country to print books	*China*

First country to issue paper currency	China
First country to start Civil Services Competetion	China
First President of United States of America	George Washington
First Prime Minister of Great Britain	Robert Walpole
First Secretary General of United Nations	Trigve Li
First country to make education compulsory	Prussia
First country to win the World Cup Football	Uruguay (1930)
First country to make a constitution	United States of America
Pakistan's first Governor General	Mohammed Ali Jinnah
First summit of NAM was organised in	Belgrade (former Yugoslavia)
First European to visit China	Marco Polo
First men to fly an aeroplane	Wright Brothers
First person to sail around the world	Ferdinand Magellan
First country to send human to Moon	United States of America
First country to launch satellite into space	Russia (former USSR)
First country to host the modern Olympic games	Greece
First President of the Republic of China	Dr. Sun Yat-sen
First city to be attacked with Atom bomb	Heroshima (Japan)
First Radio Telescope Satellite was launched into space	Japan
First Russian (Soviet) Prime Minister to visit India	V.I. Bulganin
First University of the world	Taxila University
First man to set foot on the Moon	Neil Armstrong (U.S.A.)
First man to go into space	Major Yuri Gagarin (USSR)
First Space Shuttle launched	Columbia
First Space Ship landed on Mars	Viking-I (July, 1976)
First Woman Prime Minister of England	Margaret Thacher
First Woman Prime Minister of any muslim country	Benazir Bhutto (Pakistan)
First Woman Prime Minister of a country	S. Bhandarnayake (Sri Lanka)
First Woman cosmonaut in space	Valentina Tereshkova (USSR)
First Woman to climb Mt. Everest	Junko Tabei (Japan)
First deaf and dumb to cross the Srait of Gibralter	Taranath Shenoy (India)
First Woman President of UN General Assembly	Smt. Vijayalakshmi Pandit (1953)
First European Invader of Indian soil	Alexander, The Great
First Woman to reach the North Pole	Ann Bancroft
First Woman to reach Antartica	Jackie Ronne
First man to draw the map of earth	Anaxiemander (610-542 BC)
First man to compile Encyclopaedia	Aspheosis (Athens)
The oldest man to climb Mt. Everest	Yuichiro Miura (Japan)
First Asian to win Wimbledon Trophy	Arthur Ashe (U.S.A.)
First man to win Nobel Prize for Literature	Rene F.A. & Sulli Pradhom (France)
First man to win Nobel Prize for Peace	Jin F. Dunant (Switzerland) & Frederic Peiry (France)
First man to win Nobel Prize for Physics	W.K. Roentgen (Germany)

First man to win Nobel Prize for Chemistry	J.H. Wenthoff (Howlland)
First man to win Nobel Prize for Medicine	A.E. Wonn Behrig (Germany)
First man to win Nobel Prize for Economics	Rangar Fish (Norway) & John Tinbergen (Howlland)
First Woman President of a country	Maria Estela Peron (Argentina)
First Space Tourist (Male)	Dennis Tito (U.S.A.)
First Space Tourist (Female)	Mrs. Anousheh Ansari (Irani American)

Space Tourists : 1st : Dennis Tito (2001); 2nd : Mark Shuttleworth (2002); 3rd : Gregory Olsen (2003); 4th : Mrs. Anousheh Ansari (2004); 5th : Charles Simonyi (2006); 6th : Richards Gariatte (2008); 7th : Guy Laliberte (2009)

4. Superlatives : India

(Biggest, Highest, Largest, Longest, , Smallest etc.)

The longest river Bridge	Mahatma Gandhi Setu Patna (5.575 km.)
The largest animal Fair	Sonepur (Bihar)
The largest Auditorium	Sri Shanmukhanand Hall (Mumbai)
The largest Lake	Wular Lake (J & K)
The highest Dam	Tehri Dam, on Bhagirathi river (Uttarakhand)
The largest Desert	Thar (Rajasthan)
The largest cave Temple	Kailash Temple (Ellora, Maharashtra)
The largest Zoo	Zoological Garden (Kolkata)
The largest Mosque	Jama Masjid (Delhi)
The highest Peak	Godwin Austen/K-2 (8611m)
The longest Tunnel	Jawahar Tunnel, Banihal Pass (J & K)
The largest Delta	Sunderbans (W. Bengal)
The state with maximum forest area	Madhya Pradesh
The longest Corridor	Corridor of Ramnathswami Temple at Rameswaram (Tamil Nadu)
The highest Waterfall	Jog or Garsoppa (Karnataka)
The longest Road	Grand Trunk Road (Kolkata to Delhi)
The highest Gate way	Buland Darwaza, Fatehpur Sikri (UP)
The longest River	The Ganga
The largest Museum	Indian Museum, Kolkata
The largest Dome	Gol Gumbuz, Bijapur (in Karnataka)
The tallest Statue	Gomateswara (Karnataka)
The largest Public Sector Bank	State Bank of India
The biggest canti lever Bridge	Rabindra Setu or Howrah Bridge (Kolkata)
The longest Canal	Indira Gandhi Canal or Rajasthan Canal (Rajasthan)
The longest Railway platform	Gorakhpur (U.P.) 1355.4 m
The longest Railway tunnel	Pir Panjal Rly. Tunnel (J & K) 11.215 km
The bigest Stadium	Yuva Bharti (Salt Lake) Stadium Kolkata
The most populous City	Mumbai (Maharashtra)
The largest Sea Bridge	Anna Indira Gandhi Bridge/Pamban Bridge (Tamil Nadu)
The longest Passenger Train Route	Dibrugarh to Kanyakumari

The oldest Church	*St. Thomas Church at Palayar, Trichur (Kerala)*
The longest National Highway	*NH—7 (Varanasi to Kanyakumari)*
The state with longest Coast line	*Gujarat*
The highest Lake	*Devtal Lake, Gadhwal (Uttarakhand)*
The largest saline water Lake	*Chilka Lake (Odisha)*
The largest fresh water Lake	*Kolleru Lake (Andhra Pradesh)*
Largest Cave	*Amarnath (J&K)*
The longest river of southern India	*Godawari*
The longest Dam	*Hirakud Dam (Odisha)*
The highest Gallantry Award	*Param Vir Chakra*
The highest Award	*Bharat Ratna*
The largest Gurudwara	*Golden Temple, Amritsar*
The biggest Church	*Saint Cathedral at old Goa (Goa)*
The tallest TV Tower	*Fazilka (Punjab)*
The southern Indian state with Longest Coast line	*Andhra Pradesh*
The longest Sea Beach	*Marina Beach (Chennai)*
The Highest Road	*Road at Khardungla, (in Leh-Manali Sector)*
The largest Artificial Lake	*Govind Sagar (Bhakhra Nangal)*
The deepest River Valley	*Bhagirathi and Alaknanda*
The largest River without delta	*Narmada and Tapti*
The highest battle field and the longest Glacier	*Siachen Glacier*
The biggest river Island	*Majuli Bramhaputra river, (Assam)*
The largest Planetarium	*Birla Planetorium (Kolkata)*
The Highest Airport	*Leh Airport (Ladakh)*

5. Superlatives : World

(The Largest, Biggest, Smallest, Longest, Highest etc.)

Tallest Animal (on land)	*Giraffe*
Biggest Bell	*Great Bell at Moscow*
Fastest Bird	*Peregrine Falcon (322 km/hr)*
Largest Bird	*Ostrich*
Smallest Bird	*Humming Bird*
Longest Bridge (Railway)	*Lower Zambeji (Africa)*
Tallest Building	*Burj Khalifa, Dubai (U.A.E)*
Tallest Office Building	*Petronas Twin Towers Kuala Lumpur (Malaysia)*
Longest Big-ship Canal	*Suez canal (linking Red Sea and Mediterranean)*
Busiest Canal (Ship)	*Baltic White Sea Canal (152 miles)*
Biggest Cinema House	*Roxy (New York)*
Highest City	*Wen Chuan (Tibet, China) 16,732 ft.*
Largest City (in population)	*Tokyo [(3,43,00,000), Est. population in 2011]*
Biggest City (in area)	*Mount Isa, Queensland, Australia (41,225 sq. km.)*

Largest Continent	*Asia*
Smallest Continent	*Australia*
Largest Country (in population)	*China*
Largest Country (in area)	*Russia*
Largest Coral Formation	*The Great Barrier Reef (Australia)*
Largest Dam	*Grand Coulee – Concrete Dam (U.S.A.)*
Longest Day	*June 21 (in Northern Hemisphere)*
Shortest Day	*Dec. 22 (in Northern Hemisphere)*
Largest Delta	*Sundarbans, India (8000 sq. miles)*
Largest Desert (world)	*Sahara, Africa (84,00,000 sq. km)*
Largest Diamond	*The Cullinan (over 1 ½ lb.)*
Longest Epic	*The Mahabharata*
Largest Island	*Greenland (renamed Kalaatdlit Nunaat)*
Largest Lake (Artificial)	*Lake Volta (Ghana)*
Deepest Lake	*Baikal (Siberia, Russia); depth 5314 feet (1,637 m)*
Highest Lake	*Titicaca (Bolivia) 12,645 ft. above sea level*
Largest Lake (Fresh water)	*Lake Superior, U.S.A.*
Largest Lake (Salt water)	*Caspian Sea (3,71,000 sq. km.)*
Largest Mosque	*Masjid al-Haram, Mecca, Saudi Arabia (3,56,800 sq.m)*
Biggest Library	*National Kiev Library, Moscow and Library of the Congress, Washington*
Highest Mountain Peak (world)	*Everest (Nepal) 29,035 ft. (8,850 m)*
Highest Mountain Range	*Himalayas*
Longest Mountain Range	*Andes (S. America) about 7,000 km in length*
Biggest Museum	*British Museum (London)*
Tallest Minaret (Free standing)	*Qutub Minar, Delhi 238 ft.*
Tallest minaret	*Great Hassan Mosque, Casablanca, Morocco*
Deepest And Biggest Ocean	*The Pacific*
Largest Palace	*Imperial Palace (Gugong), Beijing (China)*
Largest Park	*National Park, Greenland*
Largest Peninsula	*Arabia (32,50,000 sq. km.)*
Coldest Place or Region	*Vostok (Antarctica), Temperature -89.2°C*
Driest Place	*Atacama Desert (South America)*
Largest Planet	*Jupiter*
Brightest and Hottest Planet (also nearest to Earth)	*Venus*
Farthest Planet (from the sun)	*Neptune*
Nearest Planet (to the sun)	*Mercury*
Smallest Planet	*Mercury*
Highest Plateau	*Pamir (Tibet)*

Longest Platform (Railway)	*Gorakhpur (U.P.) India (1355.4 m)*
Largest Platform (Railway)	*Grand Central Terminal, New York (U.S.A.)*
Largest Port	*Europoort Port and Port of Rotterdam (together), Netherlands*
Busiest Port	*Rotterdam (the Netherlands)*
Longest Railway	*Trans-Siberian Railway (5,772 miles long)*
Longest River	*Nile (6690 km), Amazon (6570 km)*
Longest River Dam	*Hirakud Dam (Odisha), India 15.8 miles*
Largest Sea-bird	*Albatross*
Largest Sea (inland)	*Caspian Sea (1,43,200 sq. miles)*
Brightest Star	*Sirius (also called Dog Star)*
Tallest Statue	*Statue of Liberty, New York (USA), 150 feet high*
Tallest Statue (bronze)	*Bronze Statue of Lrod Buddha, Tokyo (Japan)*
Tallest Tower	*Tokyo Sky Tree (Japan) 2,080 ft*
Longest Train nonstop	*Flying Scoutsman*
Longest and Deepest Rail Tunnel	*Seikan Tunnel (Japan), (53.85 km.)*
Longest and Largest Canal Tunnel	*Le Rove Tunnel (South of France)*
Longest Tunnel (Road)	*Laerdal, Norway*
Highest Volcano	*Ojos del Salado, Andes, Argentine-Chile (6,885 m.)*
Largest Volcano	*Mauna Loa (Hawaii)*
Longest Wall	*Great Wall of China (1500 miles)*
Highest Waterfall	*Salto Angel Falls (Venezuela)*
Longest Strait	*Tartar Straits (Sakhalin Island and the Russian mainland)*
Broadest Strait	*Davis Straits (Greenland and Baffin Island, Canada)*
Narrowest Strait	*Chaliks – 45 yards (Between the Greek mainland the island of Euboea in the Aegean Sea)*
Largest Bay	*Hudson Bay, Canada (shore line 7623 miles)*
Largest Gulf	*Gulf of Mexico, Shoreline 2100 miles*
Largest Archipelago	*Indonesia (over 3000 islands)*
Tallest Active Geyser	*Giant (geyser) Yelowstone Park U.S.A. 200 feet high*
Largest River Basin	*Amazon basin-27,20,000 sq. miles*
World's Rainiest spot	*Cherrapunji (Mawsynram), India*
Largest Gorge	*Grand Canyon, on the Colorado river, U.S.A.*
Lightest Gas	*Hydrogen*
Lightest Metal	*Lithium*
Highest Melting Point	*Tungsten, 3410°C*
Hardest Substance	*Diamond*
Longest Animal	*Blue whale, (recorded length 106 feet, weight – 195 tons)*
Longest Life-span of an Animal	*190 to 200 years, (Giant tortoise)*

Largest Land Animal	*African Bush Elephant*
Fastest Animal	*Cheetah (Leopard) 70 m.p.h.*
Longest jump Animal	*Kangaroo*
Longest wing spread bird	*Albatross*
Slowest Animal	*Snail*
Fastest Dog	*Persian Grey Hound (speed 43 m.p.h.)*
Longest Poisonous Snake	*King Cobra*
Biggest Flower	*Raffesia (Java)*
Largest Stadium	*Strahov Stadium in Prague, (the Czech Republic)*
Largest Church	*Basilica of St. Peter, Vatican City, Rome (Italy)*
Largest Temple	*Angkor Vat (Combodia)*
Largest Diamond Mine	*Kimbarley (S.Africa)*
Largest River in Volume	*Amazon, Brazil*
Longest Corridor	*Rameshwaram Temple's Corridor (5000 feet)*
Highest Straight Dam	*Bhakhra Dam (India)*
Highest Capital City	*La Paz (Bolivia)*
Largest Asian desert	*Gobi, Mongolia*
Largest Democracy	*India*
Longest Thoroughfare	*Verazano-Narrows, New York City Harbour*
Largest Neck Animal	*Giraffe*
Largest Animal of the Cat Family	*Lion*
Most Intelligent Animal	*Chimpanzee*
Bird, that never makes its nest	*Cuckoo*
Wingless Bird	*Kiwi*
Reptile which changes its colours	*Chameleon*
Largest Mammal	*Whale*

6. Some Important Monuments / Structures of the World

Monuments / Structure	Country	Monuments / Structure	Country
The Leaning Tower of Pisa	Italy	Kremlin (Moscow)	Russia
Imperial Palace (Tokyo)	Japan	Parthanon (Athens)	Greece
Statue of Liberty (New York)	U.S.A.	Pyramid (Giza)	Egypt
Opera House (Sydney)	Australia	Wailing Wall	Jerusalem
Eiffel Tower (Paris)	France	Taj Mahal (Agra)	India
Great Wall (North China)	China		

7. International Boundaries

Maginot Line	Germany & France	*Mannerhiem Line*	Russia & Finland
Mc Mahon Line	India & China	*Durand Line*	Pakistan & Afghanistan
Radcliffe Line	India & Pakistan	*38th Parallel*	North & South Korea
49th Parallel	U.S.A. & Canada	*Hindenburg Line*	Germany & Poland

8. National Emblems of some important Countries

Country	Emblem	Country	Emblem
India	Lioned Capitol	New Zealand	Kiwi
Pakistan*	Crescent & Star	Germany	Corn Flower
Bangladesh	Water Lily	Norway	Lion
Netherlands	Lion	France	Lily
U.K.	Rose	Iran	Rose
U.S.A.	Golden Rod	Spain	Eagle
Italy	White Lily	Japan	Chrysanthemum
Australia	Kangaroo	Canada	Maple Leaf, Lily

- *Jasmin and four main crops of Pakistan*

9. National Animals of some Countries

	Country	Animal		Country	Animal
1.	Australia	Kangaroo	2.	New Zealand	Kiwi
3.	Canada	Eagle	4.	United Kingdom	Robin redbreast
5.	Japan	Ibis	6.	India	Tiger

10. News Agencies of some Countries

Country	Agencies
U.S.A.	Associated Press (AP), United Press International (UP)
U.K.	Reuters
Russia	Telegraph Agency of the Sovereign States (TASS)
Malaysia	Malaysian National News Agency (MNNA)
Italy	Agenzia Nazionale Stampa Associate (ANSA)
Israel	Associated Israel Press (AIP)
France	Agence France Presse (A.F.P.)
India	Press Trust of India (PTI), United News of India (UNI), Samachar Bharti, Univarta
China	Xin Hua
Japan	Kyodo
Indonesia	Antara
Iran	Islamic Republic News Agency (IRNA)
Germany	Deutsche Presse Agentur (D.P.A.)
Palestine	WAFA
Australia	Australian Associated Press(A.A.P.)
Russia	Novosti
Pakistan	Pakistan Press International (PPI), Associated Press of Pakistan (APP)
Egypt	Middle East News Agency (MENA)

11. Map Lines

1. **Isohaline** : An imaginary line drawn on the map to join places of the ocean having equal salinity.

2. **Isobar** : An imaginary line drawn on the map to join places of equal atmospheric pressure.
3. **Isobaths** : An imaginary line drawn on the map to join places of equal depth in the ocean.
4. **Isohypers or Contour lines** : An imaginary line drawn on the map to join places of equal height.
5. **Isohyetes** : An imaginary line drawn on the map to join places having same amount of rainfall.
6. **Isopleth** : An imaginary line drawn on the map to join places of equal value of certain factors viz. isohyete, isotherm etc.
7. **Isohel** : An imaginary line drawn on the map to join places having recieved equal amount of sunlight.
8. **Isotherm** : An imaginary line drawn on the map to join equal temperature zones.

12. Some Important Political Parties of different Countries

Country	Political Parties
U.S.A.	Republican Party, Democratic Party
Iraq	Bath Party
Israel	Labour Party, Likud Party, Hamas Party, Shas Party
France	Socialist Party, National Front, Union for French Democracy
Australia	Liberal Party, Labour Party
Bangladesh	Bangladesh Nationalist Party, Awami League, Jatiya Party
Nepal	Nepali Communist Party, Nepali Congress Party
China	Communist Party of China
Sri Lanka	United National Party, Freedom Party
South Africa	African National Congress, National Party, Inkatha Freedom Party
U.K.	Conservative Party, Labour Party, Liberal Democratic Party,
Russia	Communist Party, Liberal Democratic Party, Russias' Choice
India	Indian National Congress, Bharatiya Janata Party, RJD, CPI, CPM, SP, BSP, LJP, TDP, AAP
Pakistan	Muslim League, Pakistan Peoples Party, Tahriq-e-Insaf Party

13. Intelligence / Detective Agencies of the World

Detective Agencies	Country
Central External Liaison Department	China
Australian Security & Intelligence Organisation	Australia
K.G.B./G.R.U.	Russia
Bureau of State Security (B.O.S.S.)	South Africa
M.I. (Military Intelligence)-5 & 6, Special Branch, Joint Intelligence Organisation	U. K.
Inter Services Intelligence (I.S.I.)	Pakistan
Research & Analysis Wing (RAW), Intelligence Bureau (IB)	India

Detective Agencies	Country
Central Intelligence Agencies (CIA), Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI)	U.S.A.
MOSSAD	Israel
Mukhbarat	Egypt
Naicho	Japan
SAVAK (Sazamane Etelaat va Amniate Kechvar)	Iran
Al Mukhbarat	Iraq
D.G.S.E. (Direction General de Securite Exterieur)	France

14. Parliaments of different Countries

Country	Parliament	Country	Parliament
India	Sansad (Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha)	Nepal	Rashtriya Panchayat
Pakistan	National Assembly	Denmark	Folketing
Britain	Parliament (House of Commons and House of Lords)	Russia	Duma and Federal Council
Germany	Bundstag (Lower House) and Bundesrat (Upper House)	China	National People's Congress
Switzerland	Federal Assembly	France	National Assembly
U.S.A.	Congress (House of Representatives and Senate)	Turkey	Grand National Assembly
Bhutan	Tshogdu	Iran	Majlis
Bangladesh	Jatiya Sansad	Afghanistan	Shora
Norway	Storting	Israel	Knesset
Spain	Cortes Generales	Maldives	Mazlis
Australia	Federal Parliament	Japan	Diet
Myanmar	Pyithu Hluttaw (People's Assembly)	Canada	Parliament

15. Some Important Signs or Symbols

Pen	Symbol of Culture & Civilization
Lotus	Culture and Civilization
Red Cross	Medical Aid & Hospital
Red Flag	Revolution; also sign of danger
Black Flag	Symbol of protest
Yellow Flag	Flown on ships or vehicles carrying patients suffering from infectious diseases
Flag flown upside down	Symbol of Distress
Flag flown at half mast	Symbol of National mourning
White Flag	Symbol of Truce
Red Tringle	Sign of Family Planning
Pegion or Dove	Symbol of Peace
Red Light	Traffic sign of 'Stop', also sign of 'Danger' or 'Emergency'
Green Light	Line clear signal or traffic sign of 'Go'
A blindfolded woman holding a balanced scale	Symbol of Justice
Black strip on fore arm	Sign of mourning or protest
One skull on two bones crossing each other diagonally.	Sign of 'Danger'
Wheel (Chakra)	Symbol of progress
Olive Branch	Symbol of peace
Tricolour	National Flag of India
Union Jack	National Flag of the U.K.
Stars and Stripes	National Flag of the U.S.A.

16. Some important Official Books

Green Book	Official reports or publications of Italy & Iran
White Book	The official publications of Portugal, China & Germany
Blue Book	Any official report of the British government
Yellow Book	The report or publication of the French government
Orange Book	Official report of the government of Netherlands
White Paper	The authoritative recital of facts issued by the government stating its views on a particular matter
Grey Book	Report of the government of Belgium and Japan
Joint Paper	The joint report of two or more than two governments

17. Newspapers & their place of publication (World)

Newspaper	Place	Newspaper	Place
The Times	London	The Gardian	London
Daily Mirror	London	Daily Mail	London
La Figaro	Paris	Le Mand	Paris
Ezbestia	Moscow	Pravda	Moscow
The Island	Colombo	Khalij Times	Dubai
Eastern Sun	Singapore	Mainichi Shimbun	Tokyo
Al Ahram	Cairo	People's Daily	Beijing
Mardeka	Jakarta	La Republica	Rome
Washington Post	Washington	Daily News	New York
New York Times	New York	Financial Times	London
Star	Johanesberg	Independent	London
The Times of India	India	The Hindu	Chennei
The Sun	U.K.	Daily Telegraph	U.K.
New Statesman	U.K.	China Times	Taiwan
Red Flag	China	Toronto Star	Canada
Bangladesh Observer	Dhaka	Dawn	Karachi

18. United Nations

- The name 'United Nations' was adopted of the suggestion of the then US President F.D. Rooswelt.
- To prepare the format of the UN, a meeting of representatives of prominent countries held from 21st August to 7th October, 1944 at Dumbarton Ox building in Washington.
- The UNO was formed on the 24th October 1945.
- The *character* of the UN was signed on the 26th June, 1945 by representatives of 50 nations, though the number of founder member countries was 51 who attended the San Fransisco Conference. Later on Poland signed the Charter and become the 51st founder member.
- At present 193 countries are members of the UN. South Sudan is the latest (193rd) member.
- The UN Charter came into force on October 24, 1945, when the Governments of China, France, the U.K., the Soviet Union and the U.S.A. and a majority of other counties had ratified it.
- The *Preamble* to the *Charter* was the work of Field Marshal Smuts.
- The Head Quarter of the UN is situated in New York (USA).
- John D Rockfeller had donated 17 acres of land in Manhutton island, on which a 39 storeyed secretariate building of the UN has been constructed.
- The main office of the UN was built in 1952, where the first meeting of the General Assembly was held in 1952.
- The UN Charter is the *Constitution* of the UN. It contains the aim and objectives of the UN and the rules and regulations for achieving these aims and purposes.
- **Flag of the UN :** White UN emblem (two bent olive branches open at the top, and in between them is world map) on a light blue background.
- **Languages of the UN :** The official languages of the UN are : (a) English (b) French (c) Chinese (d) Russian (e) Arabic and (f) Spanish. But the working Languages are English and French only.
- **Major Organs of the UN :** (1) General Assembly (GA) 2. Security Council (SC) (3) Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) (4) Trusteeship Council (TC) (5) International Court of Justice (6) The Secretariat.
- International Court of Justice sits at The Hague (Netherlands), while all other organs of the UN are situated in New York (USA).
- The Security Council consists of 15 members, each of which has one representative and one vote.
- There are 5 permanent and 10 non-permanent members of the SC. The non-permanent members are elected for a 2 year term by two thirds majority of the GA.
- The five permanent members are—USA, Russia, UK, France and China.
- The proverb 'Policeman of the world' is used for the Security Council.
- Only the permanent members have the right to 'veto'.

19. World Organisations and their Headquarters

GATT (General Agreement on Tariffs & Trade)	Geneva
Amnesty International	London (England)
Asian Development Bank (ADB)	Manila (Philippines)
ASEAN (Assosiation of South- East Asian Nations)	Jakarta (Indonesia)
NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organisation)	Brussels (Belgium)
African Union (AU)	Addis-Ababa (Ethopia)
International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC)	Geneva (Switzerland)
SAARC (South Asian Association for Regional Corporation)	Kathmandu (Nepal)
United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP)	Nairobi (Kenya)
INTERPOLE (International Police)	Lyons (France)
World Trade Organisation (WTO)(w.e.f. Jan 1, 1995)	Geneva
League of Arab States	Cario (Egypt)
COMECON	Minsk (Belarus)
World Council of Churches (WCC)	Geneva
European Energy Commission (EEC)	Geneva
Economic Commission of Africa (ECA)	Addis-Ababa
Economic Commission of West Asia (ECWA)	Baghdad
United Nations High Commission for Refugees (UNHCR)	Geneva
International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA)	Vienna (Austria)
United Nations Industrial Development Organisation (UNIDO)	Vienna (Austria)
UNCTAD (United Nations Conference on Trade and Development)	Geneva
WWF (World Wildlife Fund)	Gland (Switzerland)
International Olympic Committee (IOC)	Lusane
European Common Market (ECM)	Geneva
CHOGM (Common wealth Heads of Governments Meet)	London
OPEC (Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries)	Vienna
OECD (Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development)	Paris
CENTO (Central Treaty Organisation)	Ankara (Turkey)
Comonwealth	London
European Economy Community (EEC)	Brussels
Council of European	Strasbourg
European Space Research Organization (ESRO)	Paris
BENELUX Economic Union	Brussels
Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP)	Bangkok (Thiland)
Economic Commission for Europe (ECE)	Geneva
Economic Commission for Latin America and the Carribbean (ECLAC)	Santiago (Chile)
Economic and Social Commission for Western Asia (ESCWA)	Jordan (Amman)
ANZUS Council	Canberra (Australia)
United Nations Centre for Human Settlements (UNCHS)	New York

United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund (UNICEF)	New York
United Nations Fund for Population Activities (UNFPA)	New York
United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)	New York
United Nations Institute for Training and Research (UNITAR)	New York
United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA)	New York
United Natons Research Institute for Social Development (UNRISD)	Geneva
World Food Programme (WFP)	Rome (Italy)
Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO)	Rome (Italy)
International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO)	Montreal (Canada)
International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD)	Rome
International Labour Organisation (ILO)	Geneva
International Monetary Fund (IMF)	Washington
International Telecommunication Union (ITU)	Geneva
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)	Paris
Universal Postal Union (UPU)	Berne (Switzerland)
World Health Organisation (WHO)	Geneva
World Intellectual Property Organisation (WIPO)	Geneva
World Meteorological Organisation (WMO)	Geneva
Voluntary Service Overseas (VSO)	London
Woman Aid International	London
European Free Trade Association (EFTA)	Geneva
Organisation of Arab Petroleum Exporting Countries	Kuwait
International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) (World Bank)	Washington
Organisation of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD)	Paris
Organisation of Islamic Conference (OIC)	Mecca

20. Secretary Generals of UNO and their Tenure

Name	Country	Tenure
1. Trygve Lie (1st UN Secy. Gen.)	Norway	1946 - 1952
2. Dag Hammarskjold	Sweden	1953 - 1961
3. U - Thant	Myanmar (Burma)	1961 - 1971
4. Kurt - Waldheim	Austria	1972 - 1982
5. Javier Perez de Cuellar	Peru	1982 - 1991
6. Boutros Boutros-Ghali (1st African UN Secy. Gen.)	Egypt	1992 - 1996
7. Kofi Annan	Ghana	1997 - 2006
8. Ban Ki -moon	S. Korea	2007 - —

21. UN International Decades

2015-2024	International Decade for People of African Descent
2014-2024	United Nations Decade of Sustainable Energy for All
2013-2022	International Decade for the Rapprochement of Cultures (UNESCO)
2011-2020	Third International Decade for the Eradication of Colonialism, UN Decade on Biodiversity*, Decade of Action for Road Safety
2010-2020	UN Decade for Deserts and the Fight against Desertification*
2008-2017	Second United Nations Decade for the Eradication of Poverty*
2006-2016	Decade of Recovery and Sustainable Development of the Affected Regions (third decade after the Chernobyl disaster)
2005-2015	International Decade for Action, "Water for Life"*
2005-2014	UN Nations Decade of Education for Sustainable Development*, Second International Decade of the World's Indigenous People*
2003-2012	United Nations Literacy Decade : Education For All*
2001-2010	Second UN Decade for the Eradication of Colonialism*, International Decade for Peace and Non Violence for the Children of the World*

*UNESCO participates in the celebration of the following International Decades proclaimed by the General Assembly of the United Nations.

22. International Years

2001	International Year of Woman Empowerment
2001	International Year for Eradication of Mental Diseases (WHO)
2001	United Nation's Year for Interaction among Civilizations
2002	International Mountain Year
2002	International Year of Eco-tourism
2003	International Fresh Water Year
2004	International Rice Year
2005	International Year of Microcredit and International Year of Physics
2006	International Year of Desert and Desertification
2008	Year of Good Governance (for SAARC countries)
2010	International Year of Biodiversity
2012	International Year of Cooperatives
2012	International Year of Sustainable Energy for All
2013	International Year of Quinoa
2013	International Year of Water Cooperation
2014	International Year of Crystallography, International Year of Family Farming, International Year of Small Island Developing States, International Year of Solidarity with the Palestinian People
2015	International Year of Light and Light-based Technologies, International Year of Soils
2016	International Year of Pulses, International Year of Camelids

23. Designated SAARC Years

1989	Year of Combating Drug Abuse and Drug Trafficking	1996	Year of Literacy
1990	Year of Girl Child	1997	Year of Participatory Governance
1991	Year of Shelter	1999	Year of Biodiversity
1992	Year of Environment	2002-03	YearofContributionofYouthtoEnvironment
1993	Year of Disabled Persons	2004	Year of TB and HIV / AIDS
1994	Year of the Youth	2005	Year of South Asian Tourism
1995	Year of Poverty Eradication	2007	Year of Green South Asia

24. International U.N. Weeks

February 1st Week	World Interfaith Harmony Week
March 21 to 28	International Week of Solidarity with the people struggling against Racism and Racial Discrimination
October 4 to 10	World Space Week
October 24 to 30	International Disarmament Week

25. Important (India and World) Days

January	
Louis Braille Day	4th January
National Youth Day (Birthday of Swami Vivekanand)	12th January
Army Day (India)	15th January
Tourism Day (India)	25th January
Republic Day (India)	26th January
International Day of Commemoration in Memory of the Victims of the Holocaust	27th January
Martyrs' Day (India)	30th January
Leprosy Prevention Day	30th January
Sarvodaya Day (India)	30th January
February	
World Radio Day	13th February
Valentine Day	14th February
World Day of Social Justice	20th February
International Mother Language Day	21st February
Central Excise Tax Day	24th February
National Science Day	28th February
March	
National Safety Day (Security of Industrial Institutions)	4th March
International Women's Day, UN Day for Women's Rights & International Peace	8th March
World Kidney Day	9th March
Central Industrial Security Force (CISF) Foundation day	12th March
World Consumer Rights Day	15th March
Ordnance Manufacturing Day	18th March
World Disabled Day, International day of Happiness	20th March
World Forestry Day, International Day for the Elimination of Racial Discrimination	21st March
World Water Day	22nd March
World Meteorological Day	23rd March
Ram Manohar Lohia's Birth Day (Anniversary)	23rd March
Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev and Rajguru's Martyrdam Day	23rd March
World TB (Tuberculosis) Day	24th March
Rural Postal Life Insurance Day	24th March
Sacrifice Day of Ganesh Shankar Vidyarthi	25th March
National Day of Bangladesh	26th March
World Theatre Day	27th March
April	
World Autism Awareness Day	2nd April
International Day for Mine Awareness and Assistance in Mine Action	4th April
National Maritime Day	5th April
Special Protection Group (SPG) Foundation Day	7th April
World Health Day	7th April
World Homeopathy Day (Birth day of Samuel Hanimen)	10th April
World Aeronautics and Cosmology Day	14th April
Ambedkar's Birth Anniversary	14th April
World Haemophilia Day	17th April
World Heritage Day	18th April
Indian Civil Service Day	21st April
International Mother Earth Day	22nd April
World Books and Copyright Day	23rd April
Panchayat Divas	24th April
May	
International Labour Day (Worker's Day or May Day)	1st May
World Asthma Day	1st Tuesday of May
World Press Freedom Day	3rd May
World Red Cross Day	4th May
World Laughter Day	1st Sunday of May
Mother's Day	2nd Sunday of May
World Migratory Birds Day	8th May
International Pthyliesemia Day	8th May
National Technological Day	11th May
International Nurse Day	13th May
International Family Day	15th May
World Telecommunication/Information Society Day	17th May
Anti-Terrorism Day, World Day for Cultural Diversity for Dialogue & Development	21st May
International Day for Biological Diversity	22nd May
Commonwealth Day	24th May
Death Anniversary of Jawahar Lal Nehru	27th May
International Day of UN Peacekeepers	29th May
World No-Tobacco/No-smoking Day	31st May
June	
International Day of Innocent Children Victims of Agression	4th June
World Environment Day	5th June
World Oceans Day	8th June
Father's Day (in many countries)	3rd Sunday of June
World Elder Abuse Awareness Day	15th June
World Day to Combat Desertification & Drought	17th June

World Refugee Day	20th June
International Day of Yoga	21st June (w.e.f. 2015
UN Public Service Day	23rd June
International Day (UN) against Drug Abuse and Illicit Trafficking, Int. Day in Support of Victims of Torture	26th June
July	
Doctor's Day (Birthday of Dr. Bidhan Chandra Roy)	1st July
State Bank of India Foundation Day	1st July
International Day of Cooperatives	1st Saturday of July
World Population Day	11th July
International Nelson Mandela Day	18th July
Kargil Memorial Day (India)	26th July
International Day of Friendship	30th July
August	
World Breast Feeding Day	1st August
World Peace Day, Hiroshima Day	6th August
Quit India Day (India), Nagasaki Day, International Day of the World's Indigenous People	9th August
International Youth Day	12th August
Independence Day (India)	15th August
World Humanitarian Day	19th August
National Sports Day (Birth Day of Dhyanchand)	29th August
International Day against Nuclear Tests	29th August
September	
Teacher's Day (Birth Day of S. Radhakrishnan)	5th September
International Literacy Day	8th September
World Fraternity and Apology Day	14th September
Hindi Divas (Day)	14th September
International Day of Democracy	15th September
Engineer's Day (Birth Day of M. Vishweshwaraiya)	15th September
World Ozone Day	16th September
Railway Police Force (RPF) Foundation Day	20th September
International Day of Peace, Alzheimer's Day	21st September
World Deaf Day and World Heart Day	24th September
World Tourism Day	27th September
October	
International Day for Older Persons	1st October
Mahatma Gandhi's Birth Day *(International Day of Non-Violence)*	2nd October
Birth Day of Lal Bahadur Shastri	2nd October
World Habitat Day	1st Monday of October

World Animal Welfare Day	4th October
World Teacher's Day	5th October
World Wild Animal Day	6th October
Indian Air Force Day	8th October
World Post Day	9th october
International Day of the Girl Child	11th October
Birthday of Loknayak Jay Prakash Narayan	11th October
UN International Day for Natural Disaster Reduction	2nd Wednesday of October
World Standards Day	14th October
World Food Day	16th October
World Allergy Awareness Day	16th October
International Day for the Eradication of Poverty	17th October
World Iodine Shortage Day	21st October
U N Day, World Development Information Day	24th October
World Thrift Day	30th October
Death Anniversary of Indira Gandhi	31st October
November	
International Day for Preventing the Exploitation of the Environment in War & Armed Conflict	6th November
World Service Day	9th November
National Education Day (Birth Day of Maulana Azad)	11th November
Children's Day (Birth anniversary of Jawaharlal Nehru)	14th November
World Diabetes Day	14th November
International Day for Tolerance	16th November
National Press Day	16th November
World Students Day, World Epilepsy Day	17th November
World Day of Rememberance for Road Traffic Victims	3rd Sunday of November
National Journalism Day	17th November
World Adult Day	18th November
World Citizen Day	19th November
Universal Children's Day, Africa Industrialization Day	20th November
World Television Day	21st November
International Day for the Elimination of Violence Against Women,	25th November
World Non-veg Prevention Day	26th November
World Environment Protection Day	26th November
National Law Day	29th November
International Day of Solidarity with the Palestinian People	1st December
December	
World AIDS Day	

International Day for the Abolition of Slavery	2nd December
World Disabled Day/International Day of Persons with Disabilities	3rd December
Chemical Accidents Prevention Day	4th December
Navy Day	4th December
International Volunteers Day	5th December
International Civil Aviation Day	7th December
Armed Forces Flag Day	7th December
International Anti-Corruption Day	9th December
Girl Child Day (Balika Divas, India)	9th December
International Human Rights Day	10th December
World Children's Fund Day	11th December
International Mountain Day	11th December
National Energy Conservation Day	14th December
International Migrants Day	18th December
Liberation Day of Goa	19th December
UN Day for South-South Cooperation	19th December
International Human Solidarity Day	20th December
Kisan Divas (Birthday of Chaudhary Charan Singh)	23rd December
X-mas Day	25th December
Central Reserve Police Force (CRPF) Foundation Day	26th December

26. India's World Heritage Sites (included in UNESCO's list)

Sl.	Site	Year of inclusion
1.	Ajanta Caves (Maharashtra)	1983
2.	Ellora Caves (Maharashtra)	1983
3.	Agra Fort (U.P.)	1983
4.	Taj Mahal (U.P.)	1983
5.	Sun Temple, Konark (Odisha)	1984
6.	Mahabalipuram Temples (TN)	1984
7.	Kaziranga National Park (Assam)	1985
8.	Manas Wildlife Sanctuary (Assam)	1985
9.	Keoladeo National Park (Rajasthan)	1985
10.	Churches and Convents of Goa	1986
11.	Khajuraho Temples (M.P)	1986
12.	Monuments at Hampi (Karnataka)	1986
13.	Fatehpur Sikri (UP)	1986
14.	Pattadakal Temples (Karnataka)	1987
15.	Elephanta Caves	1987
16.	Sundarbans National Park (W.B)	1987
17.	Chola Temples, Brihadishwara Temple, Thanjavur (1987), Brihadishwara Temple, Gangaikonda Cholapuram, Airavateshwara Temple (2004)	1987-2004
18.	Nanda Devi and Valley of Flowers National Parks	1988-2005
19.	Sanchi Stupa (MP)	1989
20.	Humayun's Tomb (Delhi)	1993
21.	Qutub Minar and its Momuments (Delhi)	1993
22.	Mountain Railways *(Darjeeling Himalayan Rly.-1999, Neelgiri Mountain Rly.-2005, Kalka-Shimla Rly.-2008)*	1999-2008
23.	Mahabodhi Temple, Bodh Gaya (Bihar)	2002
24.	Rock Shelters of Bhimbetka (MP)	2003
25.	Champaner - Pavagadh Park (Gujarat)	2004
26.	Chhatrapati Shivaji Terminus (CST), Mumbai	2004
27.	Red Fort (Lal Quila) Complex, Delhi	2007
28.	Jantar Mantar of Jaipur (Rajsthan)	2010
29.	Western Ghats	2012
30.	Hill Forts of Rajasthan (6 majestic forts) *(Chittorgarh, Kumbhalgarh,Sawai Madhopur, Jhalawar, Jaipur and Jaisalmer Fort[1])*	2013
31.	*Rani-ki-Vav (the Queen's Stepwell) at Patan, Gujarat*	2014
32.	*Great Himalayan National Park Conservation Area*	2014

[1] *First inhabited World Heritage Monument (constructed in 1156).*

27. Famous Tourist Spots of India

Site	Location	Founder
Kanheri Caves	Mumbai	Buddhists
Elephanta Caves	Mumbai	Rashtrakutas
Ajanta Caves	Aurangabad	Gupta Rulers
Ellora Caves	Aurangabad	Buddhists
Kandaria Mahadev	Khajurao(M.P)	Chandela Kings
Madan Palace	Jabalpur (M.P.)	Raja Madan Shah
Mrignayani Palace	Gwalior(M.P.)	Raja Man Singh Tomar
Dhar Fort	Dhar (M.P.)	Mohammad Bin Tughlaq
Golconda Fort	Hyderabad	Qutubshahi
Cochin Fort	Kerala	Portuguese
Vijay Stambh	Chittorgarh (Raj.)	Rana Kumbha
Qutub Minar	Delhi	Qutub-ud-din Aibak
Adhai Din Ka Jhopda	Ajmer (Raj.)	Qutub-ud-din Aibak
Hauz Khas	Delhi	Alauddin Khilji
Tughlakabad	Delhi	Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
Firoz shah Kotla	Delhi	Firoz Shah Tughlaq
Bundi Fort	Bundi (Raj.)	Raja Nagar Singh
Pichhola Lake	Udaipur	—
Kakaria Lake	Ahmedabad	Sultan Qutub ud din
Jodhpur Fort	Jodhpur (Raj.)	Rao Jodha Ji
Fateh Sagar	Udaipur (Raj.)	Maharana Fateh Singh
Deeg Palace	Deeg (Raj.)	Raja Badan Singh
Rani Ki Badi	Bundi (Raj.)	Rani Nathvati

Site	Location	Founder
Chhatra Mahal	Bundi Fort	Rani Chhatrasal
Junagarh	Bikaner (Raj.)	Raja Jay Singh
Jantar-Mantar	Delhi and Jaipur	Sawai Jay Singh
Nahargarh Fort	Jaipur (Raj.)	Sawai Jay Singh
Bharatpur Fort	Bharatpur (Raj.)	Raja Surajmal Singh
Moti Masjid	Delhi Fort	Aurangzeb
Ummed Palace	Jodhpur (Raj.)	Maharaja Ummed Singh
Aram Bagh	Agra (U.P.)	Babur
Red Fort	Delhi	Shahjehan
Humayun's Tomb	Delhi	Hameeda Bano Beghum (wife of Humayun)
Shalimar Bagh (Garden)	Sri Nagar	Jehangir
St. George Fort	Chennei (T.N.)	East India Company
Sher Shah's Tomb	Sasaram (Bihar)	Son of Sher Shah
Fatehpur Sikri	Agra (U.P.)	Akbar
Old Fort (Purana Quila)	Delhi	Sher Shah Suri
Akbar's Tomb	Sikandera(U.P.)	Jehangir
Chashma - Shahi	Jammu-Kashmir	Ali Mardan Khan
Etamad-ud-daulah's Tomb	Agra (U.P.)	Noorjehan
Taj Mahal	Agra (U.P)	Shahjehan
Nishaat Bagh	Jammu - Kashmir	Asaf Ali
Sheesh Mahal	Agra (U.P.)	Shahjehan
Khas Mahal	Agra (U.P.)	Shahjehan
Dewan-e-Khas	Agra Fort (U.P.)	Shahjehan
Bada Imambada	Lucknow (U.P.)	Nawab Asaf-Ud-daulah
Chhota Imambada	Lucknow (U.P.)	Mohammad Ali Shah
Gol Ghar	Patna (Bihar)	British Government
Padari Ki Haveli	Patna (Bihar)	Father Capuchin
Fort William	Kolkata (W.B.)	Lord Clive
Bibi Ka Maqbara	Aurangabad (Maharashtra)	Aurangzeb
Safderjung ka Maqbara	Delhi	Shuja-ud-daulah
Belur Math	Kolkata (W.B.)	Swami Vivekanand
Anand Bhawan	Allahabad (U.P.)	Moti Lal Nehru
Laxman Jhula	Rishikesh (Uttarakhand)	—
Shanti Niketan	W. Bengal	Rabindranath Tagore
Sabarmati Ashram	Ahmedabad	Mahatma Gandhi
Prince of Wales Museum	Mumbai	George V
Gateway of India	Mumbai	British Government
President House	Delhi	British Government
Victoria Memorial	Kolkata (W.B)	—
Botanical Garden	Shivpur (W.B)	—
Sunset Point	Mount Abu (Raj.)	—

Site	Location	Founder
Char Minar	Hyderabad	Kuli Qutub Shah
Sun Temple	Konark (Orissa)	Narasingh Dev I
Jagannath Temple	Puri (Orissa)	Chola Gang Dev
Chenna KeshabTemple	Belur	Vishnu Vardhan
Laxman Temple	Chhatarpur (M.P.)	Chandela Rulers
Dilwada Jain Temple	Mount Abu (Raj.)	Vimal Shah
Vishnupad Temple	Gaya (Bihar)	Rani Ahilya Bai
Harmandir Sahib	Patna (Bihar)	Maharaja Ranjit Singh
Kali Temple	Kolkata (W.B.)	Rani Ras Moni
Laxmi Narayan Temple	Delhi	Birla Family
Khirki Masjid	Delhi	Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
Shershahi Masjid	Patna (Bihar)	Parvez Shah
Mecca Masjid	Hyderabad	Kuli Kutub Shah
Patthar Ki Masjid	Patna (Bihar)	Parvez Shah
Patthar Ki Masjid	Jammu-Kashmir	Noorjehan
Jama Masjid	Agra (U.P.)	Shahjehan
Moti Masjid	Agra Fort (U.P.)	Shahjehan
Jama Masjid	Delhi	Shahjehan
Charar-e-Sarif	Sri Nagar(Kashmir)	Jainul Abedin
Hajratbal Masjid	Sri Nagar(Kashmir)	—
Nakhuda Masjid	Kolkata (W. B.)	—

28. Defence of India

- ➢ The defence policy of India aims at promoting and sustaining durable peace in the subcontinent and equipping the defence forces adequately.
- ➢ The supreme commander of the Indian Armed Forces is the President of India. The responsibility for national defence, however, rests with the union cabinet. The Defence Minister is responsible to the Parliament for all matters concerning the defence of the country. Administrative and operational control of the armed force is exercised by the Ministry of Defence and the three Service Headquarters.
- ➢ The Defence Ministry consists of 4 departments : (i) Department of Defence (ii) Department of Defence Production (iii) Department of Defence Research and Development (iv) Department of Ex-Serviceman Welfare.
- ➢ In 2002, the Defence Ministry given a new name—'Integrated Headquarters of Ministry of Defence'. Indian Armed Forces are divided into three Services Army, Navy and Air Force. The three services function under their respective Chiefs of Staff. These three chiefs of staff constitute the Chief of staff Committee, the chairmanship of which rotates among the service chiefs according to seniority.
- ➢ In the contemporary world India has the fourth largest army in the world, the fifth largest air force and the seventh largest navy.

Indian Armed Forces are divided into three services :

1. **Army :** The Chief is 'Chief of the Army Staff'. Its headquarters is in New Delhi. The army is organised into the following seven commands :

Command	Headquarters	Command	Headquarters
Western Command	Chandigarh	Eastern Comm.	Kolkata
Northern Command	Udhampur	Southern Comm.	Pune
Army Training Comm.	Shimla	Central Comm.	Lucknow
South Western Comm.	Jaipur		

Note : Each Command of Indian Army is commanded by a General Officer Commanding in Chief of the rank of Lieutenant General.

2. **Navy :** The Chief is an Admiral ranked " Chief of the Naval Staff". The headquarters is in New Delhi. The Navy has three Naval Commands, commanded by Flag Officers Commanding-in-Chief of the rank of Vice-Admiral. They are :

Command	Headquarters	Command	Headquarters
Eastern Command	Visakhapatnam	Southern Command	Kochi
Western Command	Mumbai		

3. **Air Force :** The Chief is an Air Chief Marshal ranked 'Chief of the Air Staff'. Its headquarters is in New Delhi. The Air force is organized into seven commands (five Operational and two Functional Commands) :

Command	Headquarter	Command	Headquarter
Operational Commands			
Eastern Air Comd.	Shillong	Western Air Comd.	New Delhi
South-Western Air Comd.	Gandhinagar	Central Air Comd.	Allahabad
Southern Air Comd.	Tiruvananthpuram		
Functional Commands			
Maintenance Comd.	Nagpur	Training Comd.	Bangalore

4. Commissioned Ranks

Army	Air Force	Navy
General	Air Chief Marshal	Admiral
Lieutenant General	Air Marshal	Vice-Admiral
Major General	Air Vice-Marshal	Rear Admiral
Brigadier	Air Commodor	Commodor
Colonel	Group Captain	Captain
Lieutenant Colonel	Wing Commander	Commander
Major	Squadron Leader	Lieutenant Commander
Captain	Flight Lieutenant	Lieutenant
Lieutenant	Flying Officer	Sub Lieutenant

29. Internal Security of India

Organization	Year	Headquater
Assam Rifles (AR)(former Catchar Levy)	1835	Shillong
Central Reserve Police Force (CRPF)	1939	New Delhi
National Cadet Corps (NCC)	1948	New Delhi
Territorial Army (TA)	1949	In different states
Indo-Tibetan Border Police (ITBP)	1962	New Delhi
Home Guards (HG)	1962	In different states
Border Security Force (BSF)	1965	New Delhi
Central Industrial Security Force (CISF)	1969	New Delhi
Coast Guards (CG)	1977	New Delhi
National Security Guards (NSG)	1984	New Delhi

30. Defence Training Institutions of India

Army

- National Defence Academy (NDA), Khadakwasla (near Pune)
- National Defence College (NDC), New Delhi
- College of Defence Management (CDM), Secunderabad (A.P.)
- College of Military Engineering (CME), Pune (Maharashtra)
- Rashtriya Indian Military College (RIMC), Dehradun
- Armed Forces Medical College (AFMC), Pune
- Officer's Training School (OTS), Chennai
- High Altitude Warfare School Gulmarg (J&K)
- Counter Insurgency and Jungle Warfare School, Vairengte
- Infantry Schools, Mhow and Belgaum
- Armoured Corps Centre and School, Ahmednagar (Maharashtra)
- School of Artilary, Deolali

Air Force

- Air Force School, Sambra (Belgaum)
- Flying Instructors' School, Tambaram,
- Helicopter Training School, Avadi
- College of Air Warfare, Secunderabad
- Air Force Administrative College, Coimbatore
- Air Force Academy, Hyderabad
- Air Force Technical College, Jalahalli (Bangalore)
- Elementary Flying School, Bidar
- Paratroopers Training School, Agra (UP)
- Institute of Aviation Medicine, Banglore

Navy

- I.S.S. Chilka, Bhubaneswar (Orissa)
- I.N.S. Hansa, Goa
- Navy Shipwright School, Vishakhapatnam
- I.N.S. Satavahana, Visakhapatnam (AP)
- I.N.S. , Garuda, Kochi (Cochin)
- I.N.S. Shivaji, Lonavala
- I.N.S. Valsura, Jamnagar (Gujarat)
- I.N.S. Hamla, Mumbai
- I.N.S. kunjai, Mumbai
- I.N.S. Ashwini (INM), Mumbai
- I.N.S. Agrani, Coimbator
- Naval Academy, Goa

31. Foundation Day of Some States

Jan. 1	Nagaland Day
Jan. 21	Manipur, Meghalaya and Tripura Day
Feb. 6	Jammu-Kashmir Day
Feb. 20	Mizoram and Arunachal Pradesh Day
Mar. 11	Andaman & Nicobar Islands Day
Mar. 22	Bihar Day (Bihar Diwas)
Mar. 30	Rajasthan Day
Apr. 1	Utkal (Orissa), Day
Apr. 14	Tamil Nadu Day
Apr. 15	Himachal Pradesh Day
May 1	Gujarat and Maharashtra Day
May 16	Sikkim Day
Nov. 1	Chhattisgarh, Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Kerala & Andhra Pradesh Day
Nov. 9	Uttaranchal (Now Uttarakhand) Day
Nov. 15	Jharkhand Day (Jharkhand Diwas)
Dec. 19	Goa Day

32. Research Centres of India

1.	Indian Agricultural Research Institute	*New Delhi*
2.	Central Rice Research Institute	*Cuttack*
3.	Central Sugarcane Research Institute	*Coimbatore*
4.	Central Potato Research Institute	*Shimla*
5.	Central Tobacco Research Institute	*Rajamundry*
6.	Central Forest Research Institute	*Dehradun*
7.	National Sugar Research Institute	*Kanpur*
8.	Indian Lac Research Institute	*Ranchi*
9.	National Dairy Research Institute	*Karnal*
10.	Central Fuel Research Institute	*Dhanbad*
11.	Central Leather Research Institute	*Chennai*
12.	Central Mining Research Institute	*Dhanbad*
13.	Central Drug Research Institute	*Lucknow*
14.	Indian Meteorological Observatory	*Pune and Delhi*
15.	Raman Research Centre	*Bangalore*
16.	Central Scientific Instruments Organisation	*Chandigarh*
17.	National Metallurgical Laboratory	*Jamshedpur*
18.	Central Salt & Marine Chemical Research institute	*Bhavnagar*
19.	Archaeological Survey of India, India Museum	*Kolkata*
20.	Central Jute Technological Research Institute	*Kolkata*
21.	Central Coconut Research Institute	*Kasergod, Kerala*
22.	Textile Research Institute	*Ahmedabad*
23.	All India Institute of Medical Sciences (AIIMS)	*New Delhi*

24.	National Aeronautical Laboratory	*Bangalore*
25.	National Institute of Oceanography	*Panaji*
26.	National Geophysics Research Institute	*Hyderabad*
27.	Indian Institute of Petroleum	*Dehradun*
28.	Central Building Research Institute	*Roorkee*
29.	Central Road Research Institute	*New Delhi*
30.	Tata Institute of Fundamental Research	*Mumbai*
31.	High Altitude Research Laboratory	*Gulmarg*
32.	National Botanical Research Institute	*Lucknow*
33.	Central Food Technological Research Institute	*Mysore*
34.	Central Glass and Ceramic Research Institute	*Kolkata*
35.	National Enviornmental Engineering Research Institute	*Nagpur*
36.	Central Electro - Chemical Research Institute	*Karaikudi*
37.	Indian Institute of Chemical Biology	*Kolkata*
38.	Industrial Toxicology Research Centre	*Lucknow*
39.	Central Mechanical Engineering Research Institute	*Durgapur*
40.	Centre for Cellular and Molecular Biology	*Hyderabad*

33. Nuclear And Space Research Centres in India

1.	India Rare Earths Limited	*Alwaye (Kerela)*
2.	Uranium Corporation of India	*Jadugoda*
3.	Atomic Energy Commission (AEC)	*Mumbai*
4.	Electronics Corporation of India	*Hyderabad*
5.	Bhabha Atomic Research Centre (BARC)	*Trombay (Mumbai)*
6.	Radio Astronomy Centre	*Ootacamund*
7.	Tata Institute of Fundamental Research	*Mumbai*
8.	Saha Institute of Nuclear Physics	*Kolkata*
9.	Nuclear Fuel Complex	*Hyderabad*
10.	Nuclear Power Complex	*Mumbai*
11.	Centre of Earth Science's studies	*Trivendrum (Kerala)*
12.	Physical Research Laboratory	*Ahmedabad*
13.	Space Commission	*Bangalore*
14.	Vikram Sarabhai Space Centre	*Thiruvananthpuram*
15.	Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO)	*Bangalore*
16.	Space Application Centre	*Ahmedabad*
17.	Thumba Equatorial Rocket Launching Station	*Thumba (Kerala)*
18.	Indian Scientific Satellite Project	*Bangalore*
19.	College of Satellite Communication Technology	*Ahmedabad*
20.	Saha Institute of Nuclear Physics	*Kolkata*

34. Health and Medicinal Research Centres in India

All India Malaria Research Institute	*New Delhi*
National Tuberculosis Institute	*Bangalore*

Indian Cancer Research Centre	*Mumbai*
Indian Veterinary Research Institute	*Mukteshwar (H.P.), Izzatnagar (U.P.)*
Institute of Ayurvedic Studies and Research	*Jamnagar (Gujarat)*
Vallabh Bhai Patel Chest Institute	*Delhi*
Haffkine Institute	*Mumbai*
National Institute of Communicable Diseases	*Delhi*
School of Tropical Medicine	*Kolkata*
Central Leprosy Training and Research Institute	*Chingelpet*
P.G.I. Medical Education and Research	*Chandigarh*
National Institute of Nutrition	*Hyderabad*
National Institute of Occupational Health	*Ahmedabad*
King Institute of Preventive Medicine	*Guindy (Chennai)*
All India Institute of Hygiene & Public Health	*Kolkata*

35. Defence Institutes in India

Air Defence Guided Missiles School	*Gopalpur (Odisha)*
Aircraft And System Training Establishment	*Bangalore (Karnataka)*
Airforce Academy	*Dundigal, Hyderabad (Telangana)*
Airforce Technical College	*Jalahali (Bengaluru)*
Armed Forces Medical College (AFMC)	*Pune (Maharashtra)*
Defence Services Staff College (DSSC)	*Wellington (Tamil Nadu)*
Indian Millitary Academy (IMA)	*Dehradun (Uttarakhand)*
Defence Science Laboratory	*Dehradun (Uttarakhand)*
College of Millitary Engineering (CME)	*Kirki (Pune)*

36. Government Industrial Undertakings

Bharat Electronics Limited	*Jalahalli (Bengaluru)*
Heavy Engineering Corporation Ltd.	*Ranchi (Jharkhand)*
Heavy Machine Building Plant	*Ranchi (Jharkhand)*
Heavy Vehicles Factory	*Avadi (Chennai), TN*
Hindustan Aeronautics Ltd.	*Bengaluru (Karnataka)*
Hindustan Aircraft Factory	*Bengaluru (Karnataka)*
Hindustan Cables Ltd.	*Rupnarayanpur (W.B.)*
Hindustan Housing Factory Ltd.	*New Delhi*
Hindustan Latex Ltd.	*Peroorkada (Kerala)*
Hindustan Organic Chemicals Ltd.	*Kolaba (Maharashtra)*
Hindustan Photo Films Manufacturing Company Ltd.	*Ooti (Tamil Nadu/TN)*
Hindustan Zinc Ltd.	*Udaipur (Rajasthan)*
Hindustan Teleprinters Ltd.	*Chennai (Tamil Nadu)*
Integral Coach Factory	*Perambadur (T.N.)*
Security Paper Mill	*Hoshangabad (M.P.)*
Neyveli Lignite Corporation Ltd.	*Neyveli (Tamil Nadu)*

37. Famous Musical Instruments and their Exponents

Sitar	Pt. Ravi Shankar, Nikhil Banerjee, Ustad Vilayat Khan, Shujaat Khan, Jaya Biswas, Debu Choudhary, Nishaat Khan, Bande Hasan, Shahid Parvez, Uma Shankar Mishra, Buddhaditya Mukherjee,Anushka Shankar etc.
Tabla	Ustad Shafat Ahmed Khan, Sapan Choudhary, Zakir Hussain, Latif Khan, Allah Rakha Khan, Gudai Maharaj, Kishan Maharaj, Fayaz Khan, Sukhbinder Singh etc.
Flute	Pannalal Ghosh, Hari Prasad Chaurasia, Raghunath Seth, B.Kunjamani, N. Neela, Rajendra Prasanna, Rajendra Kulkarni, Prakash Saxena etc.
Sarod	Ustad Amjad Ali Khan,Ustad Ali Akbar Khan, Ustad Alauddin Khan, Hafiz Khan, Zarin Daruwala, Mukesh Sharma, Chandan Rai, Biswajit Roy Chaudhury, Sharan Rani etc.
Shehnai	Ustad Bishmillah Khan, Daya Shankar, Jagannath, Hari Singh, Shailesh Bhagwat,Ali Ahmad, Hussain Khan etc.
Violin	Dr. Smt. N. Rajan, Vishnu Gobind (VG) Jog, L. Subramaniam, Sangitha Rajan, Kunakkadi Baidyanathan, Shishir Choudhary, Lalgudi Jayaraman, R.P. Shastri, Suryadev Pawar, Govind Swami Pillai, T.N. Krishnan etc.
Veena	S. Balachandran, Badruddin Dagar, Kalyan Krishna Bhagavatar, B. Doraiswami Iyengar Gopal Krishna, Asad Ali etc.
Santoor	Pt. Shiv Kumar Sharma, Tarun Bhattacharya, Bhajan Sopori, etc.
Pakhawaj	Ustad Rehman Khan, Gopal Das, Chhatrapati Singh, Ramakant Pathak, Arun Saiwal etc.
Rudra Veena	Ushtad Sadiq Ali Khan, Zia Moinuddin Dagar Asad Ali Khan, etc.
Mridang	Thakur Bhikam Singh, Palghat Raju, Dr. Jagdish Singh, T.K. Moorthy, U.K. Sivaram, K.R. Mani etc.
Sarangi	Ustad Bendu Khan, Pt.Ramnarayanji, Aruna Kale, Santosh Mishra, Indralal, Ashiq Ali Khan etc.
Nadaswaram	Sheikh Chinna Maulana, Rajaratna Pillai, Niru Swami Pillai, N. Krishna etc.
Simphoni	Zubin Mehta.
Guitar	Vishwa Mohan Bhatt, Jatin Mazumdar, Brij Bhushan Kabra, Sri Krishna Nalin, Keshav Jalegaonkar etc.
Mandolin	U. Srinivas, Khagen Dey, Nagen Dey, etc.
Vichitra Veena	Ahmed Raza Khan, Abdul Aziz Khan etc.
Piano	V. Balsara
Ghatam	T.H. Vinayakaram
Harmonium	Jnan Prakash Ghosh, Shri Purushottam Walawalkar, Appa Jalgaonkar etc.
Jal Tarang	Himanshu Biswas, Jagdish Mohan, Ghasiram Nirmal, Ram Swaroop Prabhakar etc.
Surbahar	Imrat Khan, Anapurna Devi etc.
Israj	Alauddin Khan.
Mohan Veena	Pt. Vishwa Mohan Bhatt

38. States and their Folk Dances

Jharkhand	Chhau, Sarahul, Jat-Jatin, Karma, Danga, Bidesia, Sohrai.
Uttarakhand	Gadhwali, Kumayuni, Kajari, Jhora, Raslila, Chappeli.
Chhattisgarh	Goudi, Karma, Jhumar, Dagla, Pali, Tapali, Navrani, Diwari, Mundari.

Andhra Pradesh	Kuchipudi (Classical), Ghantamardala, Ottam Thedal, Mohiniattam, Kummi, Siddhi Madhuri, Chhadi.
Arunachal Pradesh	Mask dance (Mukhauta Nritya), War dance.
Himachal Pradesh	Jhora, Jhali, Chharhi, Dhaman, Chhapeli, Mahasu, Nati, Dangi, Chamba, Thali, Jhainta, Daf, Stick dance etc.
Goa	Mandi, Jhagor, Khol , Dakni etc.
Assam	Bihu, Bichhua, Natpuja, Maharas, Kaligopal, Bagurumba, Naga dance, Khel Gopal,Tabal Chongli, Canoe, Jhumura Hobjanai etc.
West Bengal	Kathi, Gambhira, Dhali, Jatra, Baul, Marasia, Mahal, Keertan etc.
Kerala	Kathakali (Classical), Ottam Thulal , Mohini-attam, Kaikottikali, Tappatikali, Kali Auttam.
Meghalaya	Laho, Baagla etc.
Manipur	Manipuri (Classical), Rakhal, Nat Rash, Maha Rash, Raukhat etc.
Nagaland	Chong, Khaiva, Lim, Nuralim etc.
Orissa	Odissi (Classical), Savari, Ghumara, Painka, Munari, Chhau, Chadya Dandanata etc.
Maharashtra	Lavani, Nakata, Koli, Lezim, Gafa, Dahikala Dasavtar or Bohada, Tamasha, Mauni, Powara, Gouricha etc.
Karnataka	Yakshagan, Huttari, Suggi, Kunitha, Karga, Lambi
Gujarat	Garba, Dandiya Ras,Tippani Juriun, Bhavai.
Punjab	Bhangra, Giddha, Daff, Dhaman etc.
Rajasthan	Ghumar, Chakri, Ganagor, Jhulan Leela, Jhuma, Suisini, Ghapal, Panihari, Ginad etc.
Mizoram	Khanatm, Pakhupila, Cherokan etc.
Jammu & Kashmir	Rauf, Hikat, Mandjas, Kud Dandi nach, Damali.
Tamil Nadu	Bharatnatyam, Kumi, Kolattam, Kavadi,
Uttar Pradesh	Nautanki, Raslila, Kajri, Jhora, Chappeli, Jaita.
Bihar	Jata-Jatin, Bakho-Bakhain, Panwariya, Sama-Chakwa, Bidesia, Jatra etc.
Haryana	Jhumar, Phag Dance, Daph, Dhamal, Loor, Gugga, Khor, Gagor etc.

39. Famous Places associated with eminent Persons

Place	Person	Place	Person
Corsica	Nepoleon Bonaparte	Jerusalem	Jesus Christ
Kapilvastu	Gautam Buddha	Lumbini	Gautam Buddha
Macedonia	Alexander, the Great	Mecca	Prophet Mohammed
Jeeradei	Dr. Rajendra Prasad	Waterloo	Nepoleon Bonaparte
Jalianwala Bagh	General Dyer	Porbundar	Mahatma Gandhi
Anand Bhawan	Jawaharlal Nehru	Bardoli	Sardar Patel
Chittore	Maharana Pratap	Fatehpur Sikri	Akbar, the Great
Haldi Ghati	Maharana Pratap	Puducherry	Aurobindo Ghosh
Sabarmati	Mahatma Gandhi	Talwandi	Guru Nanak
Sitab Diyara	Jai Prakash Narayan	Pawanar	Vinoba Bhave
Shantiniketan	Rabindra Nath Tagore	Seringapatnam	Tipu Sultan
Belur Math	Rama Kris. Paramhans	Kundgram	Mahavir
Sevagram	Mahatma Gandhi	Trafalgar	Nelson
Cuttack	Subhash Chandra Bose	Pawapuri	Mahavir
Kushi Nagar	Gautam Buddha	Trimurti Bhawan	Jawaharlal Nehru

40. Crematorium of Famous Persons

Raj Ghat	Mahatma Gandhi	Shanti Van	Jawahar Lal Nehru
Vijay Ghat	Lal Bahadur Shastri	Shakti Sthal	Indira Gandhi
Kishan Ghat	Ch. Charan Singh	Abhay Ghat	Morarji Desai
Veer Bhumi	Rajiv Gandhi	Samata Asthal	Jagjeevan Ram
Ekta Asthal	Giani Zail Singh, Chandra Shekhar	Karma Bhumi	Dr. Shankar Dayal Sharma
Uday Bhoomi	K.R. Narayanan	Mahaprayan Ghat	Dr. Rajendra Prasad

41. Famous Nicknames of Eminent Persons

Nickname	Person	Nickname	Person
Father of the Nation; Bapu	Mahatma Gandhi	*Grandfather of Indian Films*	Dhundiraj Govind Phalke
Frontier Gandhi; Badshah Khan	Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan	*Grand Old Man of India*	Dadabhai Naoroji
Strong (Iron) Man	Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel	*Mahamana*	Pt. Madan Mohan Malaviya
Sher-e-Kashmir	Sheikh Abdullah	*Andhra Kesari*	T. Prakasam
Napoleon of India	Samudra Gupta	*Sahid-e-Azam*	Bhagat Singh
Shakespeare of India	Mahakavi Kalidas	*Deshbandhu*	Chitta Ranjan Das
Machiavelli of India	Chanakya	*Deenbandhu*	C.F. Andrews
Akbar of Kashmir	Jainul Abdin	*Lokmanya*	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
Vishwa Kavi; Kaviguru; Gurudev	Rabindranath Tagore	*Loknayak*	Jayaprakash Narayan
Rajaji / C.R.	Chakravarti Rajagopalachari	*Bangabandhu*	Sheikh Mujibur Rahman
Bihar Kesari	Dr. Srikrishna Singh	*Chacha*	Jawaharlal Nehru
Bengal Kesari	Ashutosh Mukherji	*Man of Peace*	Lal Bahadur Shastri
Punjab Kesari	Lala Lajpat Rai	*Guruji*	M.S. Golvalkar
Desh Ratna; Ajatshatru	Dr. Rajendra Prasad	*Sparrow*	Major General Rajinder Singh
Father of Gujarat	Ravi Sankar Maharaj	*Swar Kokila*	Lata Mangeshkar
Tau	Chaudhury Devi Lal	*Udanpari*	P.T. Usha
King Maker	Earl of Warwick	*Mother*	Mother Teresa
Nightingale of India	Sarojini Naidu	*Sardar*	Vallabhbhai Patel
Lady with the lamp	Florence Nightingale	*Young Turk*	Chandra Shekhar
Lal, Bal, Pal	Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal	*G.B.S.*	George Bernard Shaw

Nickname	Person	Nickname	Person
Bihar Vibhuti	Dr. Anugrah Narayan Singh	*Deshpriya*	Yatindra Mohan Sengupta
Babuji	Jagjeevan Ram	*Kuvempu*	K.V. Puttappa
Morning Star of India Renaissance	Raja Ram Mohan Roy	*Little Corporal; Man of Destiny*	Napoleon Bonaparte
King maker of Indian History	Sayyed Bandhu	*Father of English Poetry*	Geoffery Chaucer
Rajarshee	Purushottam Das Tandon	*Netaji*	Subhash Chandra Bose
Haryana Hurricane	Kapil Dev	*Uncle Ho*	Ho Chi Minh
Magician of Hockey	Dhyanchand	*Li- Kwan*	Pearl Buck
Jana Nayak	Karpuri Thakur	*Grand Old Man of Britain*	Willium E. Gladstone
Il Duce	Benito Mussolini	*Desert Fox*	Gen. Ervin Rommel
Tota-e-Hind	Amir Khushro	*Quaid-i-Azam*	Md. Ali Jinnah
Maiden Queen	Queen Elizabeth I	*Little Master*	Sunil Gavaskar
Maid of Orleans	Joan of Arc	*Anna*	C.N. Annadurai
Man of Blood and Iron	Otto Van Bismark	*Bard of Avon*	William Shakespeare
Fuehrer	Adolf Hitler		

42. Some Great Works associated with Famous Persons

1.	Foundation of Red Cross	*Henery Dunant*
2.	Foundation of Scout	*Baden Powell*
3.	Foundation of Red Gaurds	*Garrywaldy*
4.	Founder of Socialism	*Acharya Narendra Dev*
5.	Father of Sanskrit Grammar	*Panini*
6.	Founder of Anand Van	*Baba Amte*
7.	Founder of 'Auroville Ashram' (Puducherry)	*Aurobindo Ghosh*
8.	Founder of Shantiniketan	*Rabindra Nath Tagore*
9.	Founder of Vishwabharati	*Rabindra Nath Tagore*
10.	Founder of Pawnar Ashram	*Vinoba Bhave*
11.	Founder of Bhudan Movement	*Vinoba Bhave*
12.	Founder of League of Nations	*Woodrow Willson*
13.	Founder of Golden Temple	*Guru Arjun Dev*
14.	Founder of Khalsa Panth	*Guru Gobind Singh*

43. Awards and Honours

Prize	Field
Nobel Prize	Peace, Literature, Medicine, Physics, Chemistry, (From 1901) and Economics (From 1969)
Pulitzer Prize	Journalism (From 1917)
Academy (Oscar) Awards	Film (From 1929)
Kalinga Award	Science (From 1952)
Booker Prize	Literature (From 1929)
Grammy Award	Music (From 1958)
Ramon Magasaysay Award	Government (Public) Service, Social Service, Journalism, Literature, Communication and International Understanding (From 1957)
Bharat Ratna	For outstanding contributions in the field of Art/Literature/Science and Public Service
Dada Saheb Phalke Award	Film (From 1969)
Jnanpith Award	Literature (From 1965)
Saraswati Samman	Literature (From 1991)
Vachaspati Samman	Sanskrit Literature (From 1992)
Shankar Award	Indian Philosophy , Culture and Art
Vyasa Samman	Literature
Kabir Samman	Socio - communal Harmony
Dronacharya Award	Sports Coaching / Training (From 1985)
Arjuna Award	Sports (From 1961)
Bhatnagar Award	Science (From 1957)
Dhanwantari Award	Medical Science (From 1971)
Bourlog Award	Agriculture (From 1992)

44. National and Padma Awards

Republic Day Awards : Bharat Ratna, Padma Vibhushan and Padma Shree are given for exceptional service towards the advancement of Art, Literature and Science and in recognition of public service of a high (or the highest) order.

Param Vir Chakra : It is the highest Gallantry Award. It is given for extraordinary act of bravery in the field of Naval, Air and Army.

Mahavir Chakra : It is the second highest Gallantry Award.

Vir Chakra : It is the third highest Gallantry Award.

Bharat Ratna

Bharat Ratna : The highest-civilian award is given for exceptional service the advancement of art, literature and science, and in recognition of public service of the highest order.

- The decoration is in the form of a *peepal leaf,* about 5.8 cm long, 4.7 cm wide and 3.1 mm thick. It is of toned bronze. On its obverse is embossed a replica of the sun, 1.6 cm in diameter, below which the words "Bharat Ratna" are embossed in Hindi. On the reverse are State emblem and the motto, also in Hindi. The emblem, the sun and the rim are of platinum. The inscriptions are in burnished bronze.
- The first three recipients of Bharat Ratna were C. Rajagopalchari, Dr. S. Radhakrishnan and Dr. C.V. Raman in 1954 while Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan was the *first foreigner* to be honoured with this award in 1987.

1954	Chakravarti Rajagopalachari Dr. Sarvepalli Radhakrishnan, Dr. Chandrasekhar Venkat Raman
1955	Dr. Bhagwan Das, Dr. Mokshagundam Visvesvaraiya, Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru.
1957	Pt. Govind Ballabh Pant
1958	Dr. Dhondo Keshave Karve
1961	Rajarshi Purushottam Das Tandon, Dr. Bidhan Chandra (B.C.) Roy
1962	Dr. Rajendra Prasad
1963	Dr. Zakir Hussain, Dr. Pandurang Vaman (P. V.) Kane
1966	Lal Bahadur Shastri (Posthumous)
1972	Mrs. Indira Gandhi
1975	Varahagiri Venkat (V.V.) Giri
1976	Kumaraswami (K.) Kamraj (Posthumous)
1980	Mary Teresa Bojaxhiu (Mother Teresa)
1983	Acharya Vinoba Bhave (Posthumous)
1987	Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan
1988	Marudur Gopalan (MG) Ramachandran (Posthumous)
1990	Dr. Bhim Rao Ramji Ambedkar (Posthumous), Dr. Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela
1991	Rajiv Gandhi (Posthumous), Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel (Posthumous), Morarji Ranchhodji Desai
1992	Jehangir Ratanji Dadabhai (J.R.D.) Tata, Maulana Abul Kalam Azad (Posthumous), Satyajit Ray (Posthumous)
1997	Aruna Asaf Ali (Posthumous), Guljarilal Nanda (Posthumous), Dr. Avul Pakir Jainulabdeen (A.P.J.) Abdul Kalam
1998	Madurai Sanmukhavadivu (M. S.) Subbulakshmi, Chidambaram (C.) Subramaniam
1999	Prof. Amartya Sen, Pt. Ravi Shankar, Loknayak Jay Prakash Narayan (Posthumous) and Gopinath Bordoloi (Posthumous)
2001	Lata Dinanath Mangeshkar, Ustad Bismillah Khan
2009	Pt. Bhimsen Gururaj Joshi
2014	Prof. C.N.R. Rao, Sachin Ramesh Tendulkar* (*1st player and the youngest one to get 'Bhart Ratna')
2015	Atal Bihari Bajpai, Pandit Madan Mohan Malviya (Posthumous)

Note : *Lal Bahadur Shastri was the first person to be honoured with Bharat Ratna posthumously and Indira Gandhi was the first woman recipient of Bharat Ratna.*

Padma Vibhushan : The award is given for exceptional and distinguished services in any field including service rendered by government servants.

- ➢ The decoration is circular in design, with a geometrical pattern superimposed on the circle. The diameter of the circular portion is 4.4 cm and the thickness about 0.6 mm. On the obverse, there is a lotus flower embossed on the circular space. The word "Padma" is embossed in Hindi above the word "Vibhushan" below the lotus flower. On the reverse are the State emblem and the motto in Hindi. It is of *toned bronze*. The inscription "Padma Vibhushan" on the obverse, the geometrical pattern on either side and the border around periphery are in *burnished bronze*. All embossing on either side of decoration is in *white gold*.

Padma Bhushan : The award is given for distinguished service of a high order in any field, including service rendered by government servants.

- ➢ It has the same design as the "Padma Vibhushan". On its obverse the word "Padma" appears above and the word "Bhushan" below the lotus flower. The inscription "Padma Bhushan" on the obverse, the geometrical pattern on either side and the border around periphery are in *burnished bronze*. All embossing either side of the decoration is in *standard gold*.

Padma Shri : The award is given for distinguished service in any field including service rendered by government servants.

- ➢ The name of the decoration is embossed in Hindi with the word "Padma" above and the word "Shri" below the lotus flower on the obverse. The inscription "Padam Shri" on the obverse, the geometrical pattern on either side and the border around the periphery are in *burnished bronze*. All embossing on either side of the decoration is in *stainless steel*.

Other National Awards

Appan Menon Memorial Award : The award which carries a cash prize of Rs. 1 lakh aims at providing financial assistance to journalists interested in undertaking projects related to international affairs and developmental issues relevant to India and South Asia.

Aditya Vikram Birla Kalashikhar Puraskar : The award is conferred on an artiste in the field of visual and performing arts for lifetime achievement carries Rs. 1.5 lakh in cash, a momento and scroll of honour. Previous recipients of the award include Lata Mangeshkar, M. F. Hussain, Guru Kelucharan Mohapatra, Pandit Ram Narayan, Pandit Bhimsen Joshi.

45. Gallantry Awards

Param Vir Chakra : The highest decoration for valour is the Param Vir Chakra which is awarded for the most conspicuous bravery or some daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice in the presence of the enemy, whether on land, at sea or in the air.

- ➢ The decoration is made of bronze and is circular in shape. It has, on the obverse, four replicas of "Indra's Vajra" embossed round the State emblem in the centre. On the reverse the words "Param Vir Chakra" are embossed both in Hindi and English with two lotus flowers in the middle.
- ➢ the decoration is worn on the left breast with a plain purple coloured riband about 3.2 cm in width.

Mahavir Chakra : Mahavir Chakra is the second highest decoration and is awarded for acts of conspicuous gallantry in the presence of enemy, whether on land, at sea or in the air.

- ➢ It is made of standard silver and is circular in shape. Embossed on the obverse is a five pointed heraldic star with domed centre-piece bearing the gilded State emblem in the centre. The words "Mahavir Chakra" are embossed both in Hindi and English on the reverse with two lotus flowers in the middle. The decoration is worn on the left breast with a half-white and half-orange riband about 3.2 cm in width, the orange being near the left shoulder.

Vir Chakra : Vir Chakra is third in the order of awards given for act of gallantry in the presence of the enemy, whether on land, at sea or in the air.

- ➢ The decoration is made of standard silver and is circular in shape. Embossed on the obverse is a five pointed heraldic star which has an Ashoka Chakra in the centre. Within this chakra is a domed centre-piece bearing gilded State emblem. On the reverse, words "Vir Chakra" are embossed, both in Hindi and English, with two lotus flowers in the middle. The Chakra is worn on the left breast with a half-blue and half-orange riband, about 3.2 cm in width, the orange being nearer the left shoulder.

Ashok Chakra : Ashok Chakra is the country's highest peacetime gallantry award equivalent to Param Vir Chakra.

- The Chakra is made of *gilt gold* and is circular in shape. Embossed on the obsverse is a replica of Ashok Chakra surrounded by a lotus wreath. Along the edge is pattern of lotus leaves, flowers and buds. On the reverse, the words "Ashok Chakra" are embossed both in Hindi and English, with lotus flowers in the intervening space.
- The Chakra is worn on the left breast with a green silk riband, about 3.2 cm in width and divided into two equal segments by an orange vertical line.

Kirti Chakra : The decoration is awarded for conspicuous gallantry. It is made of *standard silver* and is circular in shape. The obverse and the reverse are exactly the same as in Ashok Chakra.

- The Chakra is worn on the left breast with a green silk riband, about 3.2 cm in width and divided equally into two by orange vertical lines.

Shaurya Chakra : The decoration is awarded for an act of gallantry. It is exactly like Ashok Chakra, except that it is made of *bronze.*

- The Chakra is worn on the left breast with a green silk riband, about 3.2 cm in width and divided into four equal segments by three orange vertical lines.

Param Vishisht Seva Medal (PVSM), Ati Vishisht Seva Medal (AVSM), Vishisht Seva Medal (VSM) : The Vishist Seva Medals are awarded to personnel of all the three services in recognition of distinguished service of the "most exceptional", "exceptional" and "high" order respectively. Param Vishisht Seva Medal is made of *gold,* Ati Vishisht Seva Medal of *standard silver* and Vishisht Seva Medal of *bronze,* all circular in shape and 3.5 cm in diameter. Each medal has on its obverse five pointed stars and on its reverse the Lion Capitol. Its ribbon is golden with *one dark-blue stripe* down the centre for Param Vishisht Seva Medal, *two dark-blue stripes* dividing it into three equal parts for Ati Vishisht Seva Medal and *three dark-blue stripes* dividing it into four equal parts for Vishisht Seva Medal.

46. Recipients of the Bharatiya Jnanpith Award

- The first Jnanpith Award was given in 1965.
- The Jnanpith Award carries a citation, shawl, srifal, a bronze idol of Vagdevi Saraswati and a cash prize of ₹ 11,00,000

Sl.	Year	Recipient	Work
1st	1965	G. Shankar Kurup	Auda Kujai (Malayalam)
2nd	1966	Tara Shankar Bandyopadhyay	Ganadevata (Bengali)
3rd	1967	K.V. Putappa, Uma Shankar Joshi	Ramayan Darshanam (Kannada), Nisheeth (Gujarati)
4th	1968	Sumitra Nandan Pant	Chidambara (Hindi)

Sl.	Year	Recipient	Work
5th	1969	Prof. Raghupati Sahay 'Firaq Gorakhpuri'	Gul-e-Naghma (Urdu)
6th	1970	Vishwanath Satyanarayana	Shreemad Ramayan Kalpavriksham (Telugu)
7th	1971	Vishnu Dey	Smriti Satta Bhavishya (Bengali)
8th	1972	Ramdhari Singh 'Dinkar'	Urvashi (Hindi)
9th	1973	Gopinath Mohanty, D.R Bendre	Mati Matal (Oriya) Naku Thanthi (Kannada)
10th	1974	Vishnu Sakharam Khandekar	Yayati (Marathi)
11th	1975	P.V. Akilandam	Chittirappavai (Tamil)
12th	1976	Smt. Ashapurna Devi	Pratham Pratishruti (Bengali)
13th	1977	Dr.K. Shivram Karanth	Mukajjiya Kanasugalu (Kannada)
14th	1978	Dr Sachidananda Hiranand Vatsyayana 'Agyeya'	Kitni Nawon Mein Kitni Bar (Hindi)
15th	1979	Dr. Virendra Kumar Bhattacharya	Mrityunjay (Assamia)
16th	1980	S.K Pottekat	Oru Dishatinte Katha (Malayalam)
17th	1981	Amrita Pritam	Kagaz te Canvas (Punjabi)
18th	1982	Mahadevi Verma	Yama (Hindi)
19th	1983	Masti Venkatesh Iyengar	Chikaveer Rajendra (Kannada)
20th	1984	T. Shiv Shankar Pillai	Kayar (Malayalam)
21st	1985	Pannalal Patel	Manvini Bhavai (Gujarati)
22nd	1986	Sachida Nanda Routroy	Oriya Literature
23rd	1987	Vishnu Vaman Shirwadkar	Marathi Literature
24th	1988	Dr. C. Narayana Reddy	Telugu Literature
25th	1989	Qurrtul - ain - Hyder	Urdu Literature
26th	1990	Prof. Vinayak Krishna Gokak	Kannada Literature
27th	1991	Subhash Mukhopadhyay	Bengali Literature
28th	1992	Naresh Mehta	Hindi Literature
29th	1993	Dr. Sitakant Mahapatra	Oriya Literature
30th	1994	Prof. U. R. Ananthamurthy	Kannada Literature
31st	1995	M.T. Vasudevan Nair	Malayalam Literature
32nd	1996	Mrs. Mahashweta Devi	Bengali Literature
33rd	1997	Ali Sardar Jafri	Urdu Literature
34th	1998	Girish Karnad	Kannada Literature
35th	1999	Nirmal Verma, Gurdayal Singh	Hindi Literature, Punjabi Literature
36th	2000	Dr. Indira Goswami	Assamese Literature
37th	2001	Rajendra Keshavlal Shah	Gujarati Literature
38th	2002	D. Jayakanthan	Tamil Literature
39th	2003	Vinda Karandikar	Marathi Literature
40th	2004	Rehman Rahi	Kashmiri
41th	2005	Kunwar Narayan	Hindi Literature
42nd	2006	Satyavrat Shastri, Ravindra Kelekar	Sanskrit Literature, Konkani Literature
43rd	2007	O.N.V. Kurup	Malayalam Literature

Sl.	Year	Recipient	Work
44th	2008	Akhlaq Mohammad Khan 'Shaharyar'	Urdu Literature
45th	2009	Amarkant and Shrilal Shukla (jointly)	Hindi Literature
46th	2010	Chandrashekhar Kambar	Kannada Literature
47th	2011	Pratibha Ray	Odiya Literature
48th	2012	Ravuri Bharadhwaja	Telugu Literature
49th	2013	Kedar Nath Singh	Hindi Literature
50th	2014	Bhal Chandra Nemade	Marathi Literature

47. Recipients of Dada Saheb Falke Award

- ➢ Phalke award carries a 'Swarna Kamal', a shawl and a cash prize of Rs. 2 lakh.
- ➢ Introduced in 1969, the Dada Saheb Phalke award was first given to actress Devika Rani.

Year	Recipient	Year	Recipient
1969	Devika Rani Roerich	*1970*	Birendra Nath Sircar
1971	Prithvi Raj Kapoor (Posthumously)	*1972*	Pankaj Mallick
1973	Sulochana (Rubi Myers)	*1974*	B.N. Reddi
1975	Dhiren Ganguli	*1976*	Kanan Devi
1977	Nitin Bose	*1978*	Ray Chandra (R.C.) Boral
1979	Sohrab Modi	*1980*	P. Jairaj
1981	Naushad Ali	*1982*	L.V. Prasad
1983	Durga Khote	*1984*	Satyajit Ray
1985	V. Shantaram	*1986*	B. Nagi Reddi
1987	Raj Kapoor	*1988*	Ashok Kumar
1989	Lata Mangeshkar	*1990*	Akkineni Nageshwar Rao
1991	Bhalji (Bhalchandra Govind) Pendharkar	*1992*	Dr. Bhupen Hazarika
1993	Majrooh Sultanpuri	*1994*	Dilip Kumar
1995	Dr. Rajkumar	*1996*	Sivaji Ganesan
1997	Kavi Pradeep	*1998*	B.R. Chopra
1999	Hrishikesh Mukherjee	*2000*	Asha Bhonsle
2001	Yash Chopra	*2002*	Dev Anand
2003	Mrinal Sen	*2004*	Adoor Gopalkrishnan
2005	Braj Bhushan Chaturvedi	*2006*	Shyam Benegal
2007	Manna Dey	*2008*	V.K.Moorthy
2009	D. Rama Naidu	*2010*	K. Balachander
2011	Soumitra Chatterjee	*2012*	Praan Krishan Sikand
2013	Gulzar (Sampooran Singh Kalra)	*2014*	Shashi Kapoor

48. Important Books and Authors

[A] Indian writers and their books :

Writer	Books
Pt. Vishnu Sharma	Panchatantra
Vishakhadatta	Mudra Rakshas
Raskhan	Prem Vatika

Writer	Books
Panini	Ashtadhyayi
Shudrak	Mrichhakatikam
Kalidasa	Raghuvansham, Kumarsambhavam, Meghdootam, Abhigyanshakuntalam
Vatsyayana	Kama Sutra
Vigyaneshwar	Mitakshara
Jeemootwahan	Daybhag
Kalhana	Rajtarangini
Plini	Natural History
Kautilya	Arthashastra
Dandi	Avanti Sundari, Dashkumaracharitam
Ved Vyas	Bhagwat Gita, Mahabharata
Ashwaghosh	Buddha Charitam
Jayadev	Geet Govind
Bana Bhatt	Kadambari
Bhavabhuti	Malti Madhav
Amar Singh	Amar Kosh
Bhartrihari	Niti-Shatak, Shringar Shatak, Vairagya Shatak
Firdausi	Shahnama
Abul Fazal	Ain-i- Akbari, Akabarnama
Surdas	Sahityalahari, Sursagar
Kabirdas	Bijak, Ramayani, Sabar
Gulbadan Beghum	Humanyunama
Al-Beruni	Kitab-ul-Hind
Malik Mohammed Jayasi	Padmavat
Mulk Raj Anand	Coolie, Confession of a Lover, Two leaves and a bud
Nirad C. Chaudhury	Hinduism, Autobiography of an Unknown Indian, A Passage to England, Culture in the Vanity Bag, Continent of Crime
Rabindra Nath Tagore	Chitrangada, Gitanjali, Gora, Chandalika, Visarjana, Hungry Stones
Sumitranandan Pant	Jyotsana, Yugwani, Chidambara
Kuldip Nayyar	The Judgment, Distant Neighbours; India, The Critical Years; In Jail, India after Nehru, Between the Lines
Sri Aurobindo Ghosh	Life Divine, Essays on Gita
Swami Shivanand	Divine Life
Amrita Pritam	Death of a City, Kagaz te Canvas, Forty nine Days
Munsi Premchand	Godan, Gaban, Karmabhumi, Rangbhumi
Khushwant Singh	Indira Gandhi Returns, Indira Gandhi : Badhate Kadam, The Company of Women
B. M. Kaul	Untold Story, Confrontation with Pakistan

Writer	Books
M. K. Gandhi	Gokhale, My Political Guru ; My Experiments with Truth
Vijay Tendulkar	Sakharam Binder
R. K. Narayanan	The Dark Room, Malgudi Days, Guide, My Days, Swami and Friends
Dr. S. Radhakrishnan	Indian Philosophy
Sarojini Naidu	Golden Threshold, Broken Wings
Suryakant Tripathi Nirala	Anamika, Parimal, Gunjan, Juhi Ki Kali
Yashpal	Jhootha Sach
Jai Shankar Prasad	Kamayani, Aansoo, Skandagupta, Ajatshatru
Kazi Nazrul Islam	Agni Veena
Maithilisharan Gupt	Bharat Bharati
Ramdhari Singh Dinkar	Kurukshetra, Urvashi
Mrs. Indira Gandhi	Eternal India
S.H.Vatsyayan 'Agyeya'	Kitni Nawon Mein Kitnee Bar, Aangan Ke Paar, Dwar, Shekhar: Ek Jivani, Nadi Ke Dweep
Mahadevi Verma	Yama, Niharika, Neeraja
Amrit Lal Nagar	Amrit Aur Vish
Nayantara Sehgal	A Voice of Freedom
V. S. Naipal	Area of Darkness, A House for Mr. Biswas, A Million Mutinies Now, A Bend in the River
Devkinandan Khatri	Chandrakanta Santati
Sharat Chandra Chattopadhyay	Devdas, Charitraheen, Shrikant, Parineeta
Vrindavanlal Verma	Jhansi Ki Rani
Jainendra Kumar	Sunita, Tyagpatra
Bhagwati Charan Verma	Chitralekha
Phanishwar Nath 'Renu'	Maila Aanchal, Mare Gaye Gulfam
GajananMadhav'Muktibodh'	Chand Ka Munh Tedha Hai
Bhartendu Harischandra	Bharat Durdasha, Satya Harischandra

[B] Some Important Foreign Writers and their Books

Writer	Book
Adam Smith	Wealth of Nations
Adolf Hitler	Mein Kamph
Albert Einstein	The World as I See it
Alexander Solzhenitsyn	August 1914
A. L. Basham	The Wonder that was India
Anton Chekhov	Cherry Orchard
Arther Hele	Airport
Aristotle	Politics
Boris Pasternak	Dr. Zhivago
David Baldacci	Absolute Power

Writer	Book
Dante	Divine Comedy
E. M. Forster	A Passage to India, Maurice
Homer	Odyssey, Illiad
H. G. Wells	Shape of Things to Come
Harold Evans	Good Times, Bad Times
Henry Miller	Tropic of Cancer
Issac Newton	Principia
Katherine Mayo	Mother India
Machiavelli	The Prince
Maxim Gorky	Mother
Plato	Republic
Jean J. Rousseau	The Social Contract
John Milton	Paradise Lost, Lycidas
Winston Churchill	Gathering Storm
George Orwell	Farm House, Animal Farm
Charles Darwin	Descent of Man, Origin of Species
William Shakespeare	Commedy of Errors, As You Like It, A Mid Summer Night's Dream, Merchant of Venice, Hamlet, King Lear, Othello
George Bernard Shaw	Major Barbara, Man and Superman, Apple Carte, Arms and the Man, Pygmalion, Caesar and Cleopatra, Candida
Charles Dickens	A Tale of Two Cities, Oliver Twist, David Copperfield
J. K. Galbraith	Affluent Society, Ambassador's Journal, The Triumph
Herold Joseph Laski	Grammar of Politics, Dilema of Our Time
J. M. Barrie	Hindu Civilization, Peter Pan
Gunnar Myrdal	Against the Stream, Asian Drama
Leo Tolstoy	War and Peace
Z. A. Bhutto	Great Tragedy
Vladimir Nabakov	Lolita
Mao-tse Tung	On Contradiction

[C] Some Latest Books and Authors

Book	Writer
Playing It My Way	Sachin Tendulkar
My Journey : Trasnforming Dreams into Actions	A. P. J. Abdul Kalam
Fractured Times	Eric Hobsbawm
Neither a Hawk nor a Dove	Khurshid Mahmood Kasuri
The Sergeant's Son	Ashim Choudhury
The Cuckoo's Calling	Robert Galbraith
And then one day	Nasiruddin Shah
Gone Girl	Gilian Flynn
And The Mountains Echoed	Khaled Hosseini
The Red Sari (Biography of Sonia Gandhi)	Javier Moro
This Town	Mark Leibovish
Happy, Happy, Happy	Phil Robertson, Mark Schlabach

Book	Writer
The Dramatic Decade : The Indira Gandhi Years	Pranab Mukharjee
Shiva Triology 1. The Immortals of Meluha, 2. The Secrets of Nagas and 3. The Oath of Vayuputras)	Amish Tripathi
Romancing with Life	Dev Anand
Saurabh Ganguli : The Maharaja of Cricket	Debasheesh Dutta
Born Again on the Mountain : A Story of Losing Everything and Finding I	Arunima Sinha
Lets Kill Gandhi	Tushar Gandhi
When God is a Traveller	Arundhati Subramaniam
Manzilon se Jyada Safar	V.P. Singh
A Call To Honour : In Service of Emergent India	Jaswant Singh
Guiding Souls	Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam
Half Girlfriend	Chetan Bhagat
All My Sisters	Zudith Lenox
The Longest Race	Tom Alter
Gulab Bai : The Queen of Nautanki Theatre	Deepti Priya Mehrotra
Touch Play (Biography of Prakash Padukone)	Dev Sukumar
Out of My Comfort Zone : The Autobiography	Steev Waugh
Honeymoon	James Petterson
Da Vinci Code	Don Brown
The Gods of Antarctica	Yashwardhan Shukla
God of Small Things	Arundhati Rai
Speed Post	Shobha De
The Better Man	Anita Nayyar
Bookless in Baghdad	Shashi Thiroor
The Argumentative Indians	Dr. Amartya Sen
The Algebra of Infinite Justice	Arundhati Rai
Fire fly : A Fairy Tale	Ritu Beri
Two Lives	Vikram Seth
Glass Palace	Amitav Ghosh
The Brief History of Time	Stephen Hawking
Freedom from Fear	Aung San Suu Kyi
Fasting, Feasting	Anita Desai
The Lord of the Flies	William Goldings
Struggle for Change	K.B. Lal
Nehru Gazing at Tomorrow	H.R. Bharadwaj
Life of Pi	Yann Martel
Not Just an Accountant	Vinod Rai
Ignited Minds, Wings of Fire	Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam
Envisioning an Empowered Nation	Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam
The Lowland, Interpreter of Maladies	Jhumpa Lahiri
One Day Cricket, The Indian Challenge	Ashish Roy

Book	Writer
A View from Outside	P. Chidambaram
Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows	J.K. Rawlling
The Year of the Roester	Guy Sorman
Above Average	Amitabh Bagchi
Dalits in India : A Profile	Sukhdeo Thorat
The Top of the Raintree	Kamalini Sengapta
Terrifying Visions : Golwalkar, the RSS and India	Jyotirmay Sharma
Frontline Pakistan : The Struggle with Millitant Islam	Zahid Hussain
The Lowland	Jhumpa Lahiri
The Splender of Silence	Indu Sundaresan
The Leopard and the Fox : A Pakistani Tragedy	Tariq Ali
A Time of Transition : Rajiv Gandhi To The 21st Century	Mani Shankar Aiyer

49. Games and Sports

Olympic Games

The origin of the ancient Olympic Games is lost in the midst of pre-history, but for many centuries they were only a festival of the Greek people. The Games were first held in honour of the Greek god, Zeus in 776 BC in the plain of the kingdom of Elis, nestled in a lush valley between the Alpheus River and Mount Kronion, 15 km from the Ionian Sea. The Olympiad celebrated that year was considered as the first and was used to date subsequent historic events. But religious ceremonies and games were held in Olympia before that time. The oldest sanctuary of Greece was there, the altar of the Great Mother of Gods, Rhea (Earth). On the day of the feast, the priest stood in front of the altar, ready to perform a sacrifice. Women were forbidden to be present and the male contestants were naked. Young men waited at a distance on one stadium (about 200 yds). As soon as a signal was given they ran and the first to arrive at the altar received the torch from the priest's hand and lit the sacrificial fire.

The old Olympiads were held after every four years and the Greeks measured time in terms of Games started on the first new moon after the summer solstice, around mid-July. The ancient Olympic Games lasted for five days and the events took place in a precise order. On the first day, there were sacrifices and opening ceremonies. On the second day there were special competitions for the "ephebians". The third day was devoted to events for adult competitors : dromos, diaulos, dolichos, pugilism, wrestling, pancratium. On the fourth day, there were equestrian events, pentathlon, race with arms. On the fifth and the final day, there were closing ceremonies and proclamation of the heroes.

During the first six Olympic Games, however, the prize had been a portion of meat or 'meria' taken from an animal sacrificed to the gods. It was only after the VII Games that the olive crown was given to the winners and the moral significance of this prize was considerable. Once the prize were awarded, a flock of pigeons was released to carry the names of the champions to all the corners of Greece.

The Games came to a sudden end when the Roman Emperor Theodosius banned the competitions and their attendant sacrificial offerings as pagan manifestations.

From 395 AD onwards the fall of Olympia was very rapid. In that year the first damage was caused by the invasion of Alaric's barbarians. A year earlier the famous crysele-phantide statue of Zeus had been taken to Constantinople. It was destroyed in 475 AD during the great fire. Following the attacks of the Goths, a fire destroyed the temple of Zeus; earthquakes from 522 to 551 and the most severe of all in 580 brought down whatever had remained standing. Glory had vanished and of the vast riches there were now left but a few ruins and the name of Olympia. Something immortal remained, however, and that was the Olympic spirit.

Modern Olympic Games

The revival work of the Games was undertaken by Baron Pierre de Coubertin nearly 1,500 years after the last of the ancient Games. He was born into a family of Italian origin which had settled in France. It was on November 25, 1892, during a conference at Sorbonne about the history of physical exercises, that he first pronounced those famous six words in public "The Restoration of the Olympic Games!" He said that the Games would ennoble and strengthen amateur sports to give them strength and lasting quality for an essential role in the world of modern education.

It was at the International Congress for the Study of the Propagation of the Principles of Amateurism held in Paris in June 1894 that the delegates led by Baron Pierre de Coubertin and associates unanimously voted to restore the Olympic Games and to create an International Olympic Committee to oversee them. De Coubertin had planned to propose Paris for the site of the first modern Olympics in 1900 but the enthusiasm and zeal of the delegates was so great that they insisted the first Games to be held in 1896. Athens was, therefore, the venue for the 1896 Games. Since then these Games are held every four years.

Olympic Symbol : It comprises five rings or circles, linked together to represent the sporting friendship of all people. The rings also symbolise the continents—Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia and America. Each ring is of a different colour, i.e., blue, yellow, black, green and red. The rings are meant to represent five continents viz., Africa (black), America (red), Asia (yellow), Australia (green) and Europe (Blue).

Olympic Flag : The Olympic flag, created in 1913 at the suggestion of Baron Pierre de Coubertin, was solemnly inaugurated in Paris in June 1914 but it was riased over an Olympic stadium for the first time at the Antwerp Games (Belgium) in 1920. There is also a second Olympic flag, which is used for the Winter Games. These flags are made of white silk and contain above mentioned five interwined rings. From left to right the rings are blue, yellow, black, green and red.

Olympic Flame : It was at the Amsterdam Games in 1928 that for the first time an Olympic flame was ceremonially lighted and burned in a giant torch at the entrance of the stadium. The modern version of the flame was adopted in 1936 at the Berlin Games. The Olympic flame symbolises the continuity between the ancient and modern Games. The torch, used to kindle the flame, is first lit by the sun's rays at Olympia, Greece, and then carried to the site of the Games by relay of runners. Ships and planes are used when necessary. On July 15, 1976, space age technology was used to transport the flame from one continent to another.

Olympic Motto : The Olympic motto is *"Citius-Altius-Fortius"* (faster, higher, stronger). Rev. Father Didon (1840-1900), headmaster of a school near Paris and a great promoter of sports in the French Catholic colleges first used the *motto* and had it embroidered on the pennants of his school clubs. This succinct definition of the philosophy of sport appealed to father Didon's friend, Baron Pierre de Coubertin who was responsible for the revival of the Olympic Games nearly 1,500 years after the last of the ancient Games. It was adopted at his suggestion at the International congress for the "Study and Propagation of the Principles of Amateurism" on June 23, 1894, the same day on which the restoration of the Olympic Games and the creation of the International Olympic Committee were also decided.

Olympic Prizes, Medals and Certificates : While in ancient times the Olympic heroes received a crown of olive branches for their exploits, modern Olympic champions are rewarded with medals and certificates. The winning athlete now receives a Gold medal, the athlete in the second place is awarded a Silver medal and the third placed athlete wins a Bronze medal. In addition, all athletes ranking from first to sixth receive a certificate. Each medal is 60 mm in diameter and 3 mm thick. The first and second place medals are made of 92.5 per cent silver and the medals for the first winner is then plated with 6 gram of fine gold. Thus this medal is not of full gold. The third place medal is of bronze.

- Olympic games were started in 776 B.C. on Mount Olympus in the honour of Greek God 'Zeus'.
- The modern Olympic games started in Athens, the capital of Greece on 6th April, 1896 with great efforts made by Pierre de Coubertin of France.
- The Olympic games are organised after every four years.
- In the flag of Olympics, there is a symbol of five coloured circles joining each other.
- The flag of Olympic Games was recognised in the year 1913 and was hoisted first time in the Antwerp Olympic Games in 1920.
- The tradition to lit the Olympic flame was started in Amsterdom Olympic Games in 1928.
- The Head Office of International Olympic Committee is in Lusane (Switzerland).
- Participation of women in the Olympic games started in the Second Olympic Games in 1900.
- First Indian player who participated in the Olympic games was an Anglo Indian 'Norman Prichard', who took part in the Second Olympic Games in 1900 and won two Silver medals in Athletics.
- Marrie Lila Ro is 1st Indian woman participant in the Olympic games.
- International Olympic Committee was founded in 1894 at "Chakhon".
- Generally, in the inaugural ceremony of Olympic games the team of Greece got first place and host team is placed in the last in March Past parade. The teams of other places are placed in the alphabetical order of English alphabets.
- The first woman referee in the football was a Canadian lady Sonia Denancord in (Atlanta Olympics).
- The maximum no. of gold medal winner sports woman is Larina Lavyanina. She won 18 medals including 9 gold medals.
- The maximum gold medal winner sports woman is Christina Otty. She got 6 gold medals in swimming in Seoul Olympic of 1986.

- The maximum gold medal winner male player in an Olympic is Michael Phelps of USA. He won 8 gold medals in swimming in the Beijing Olympics 2008.

London Olympics 2012

Mascot : Wenlock and Mandeville

- India ranked 55th in the medals tally with a total of 6 medals (2 Silver and 4 Bronze).
- The London Olympic Games were inaugurated by Queen Elizabeth II on July 27, 2012 in the Olympic Stadium, London.
- London is the first city in the world to stage Olympic Games thrice, after the 1908 and 1948 Summer Olympics. Entitled *Isles of Wonder*, the opening ceremony was devised by Oscar Award – winning director Daniel Boyle of *Slumdog Millionaire* fame with music directors Rick Smith and Karl Hyde of the electronic music duo *Underworld*.
- The inaugural ceremony of the London Olympic 2012 also had an Indian flavour in the form of music composers Ilayaraja and A. R. Rahman.
- The theme for the night, *Isles of Wonder* was inspired by William Shakespeare's play *'The Tempest'*.
- The 2012 Olympic programme featured 26 sports disciplines. For the first time, women's boxing is included in the programme. In tennis, mixed doubles event returns to the Olympic programme for the first time since 1924.
- Under the slogan "Inspire a Generation", the 30th edition of the Olympic Games will also be recorded as the first in which all participating delegations have female athletes. Brunei, Qatar and Saudi Arabia have included women for the first time, and Qatar named the female shooter, Bahiya–al–Hamad, as its flag-bearer.
- Yi Siling of China took the honour of claiming the first Gold Medal of the London Olympics when she won the women's 10 metre Air Rifle event on July 28, 2012.
- Wrestler Sushil Kumar led the Indian contingent holding the Indian tricolour in the opening ceremony, while female boxer M. C. Mary Kom was the flag bearer in the closing ceremony.
- The Indian Olympic Association (IOA) had sent a total of 83 athletes to compete in 13 sports, making it the largest contingent India has ever sent to the Olympic Games.
- In London Olympics India bagged a total of 6 medals with 1 Silver of Vijay Kumar in Shooting (Men's 25m Rapid Fire Pistol) and the second Silver medal of Sushil Kumar in Wrestling (Men's 66kg Freestyle), alongwith one Bronze each of Gagan Narang in Shooting (Men's 10m Air Rifle), Yogeshwar Dutt in Wrestling (Men's 60kg Freestyle), Saina Nehwal in Badminton (Women's Singles) and M. C. Mary Kom in Boxing (Women's Fly, 51 kg).
- Sushil Kumar's historic feat of winning back-to-back Olympic medals on the very last day of London Olympics 2012 turned out to be the high point of country's compaign. His Silver was India's fourth Wrestling medal in the Olympics and second in London after Yogeshwar Dutt, who won a Bronze in the 60 kg Freestyle event.

- KD (Khashaba Dadasaheb) Jadhav had won the country's first medal in Wrestling in 1952 Olympics at Helsinki.
- American swimmer Michael Phelps, the greatest Olympian of all time with his record 22 Olympic Medals, out of which 6 are from London Olympics, retired from the game after winning his fourth consecutive Gold on August 4, 2012. He also holds the all time records for Gold Medals (18, double that of the next highest record holders), Gold Medals in individual events (11), and Olympic medals in individual events for a male (13).
- Jamaica was dominant on the track again in London; highlighted by the men's 4 × 100m relay record. This record-breaking race marked the third time since 2008 that the Jamiacan team had broken the record. Bolt also became an Olympic legend by repeating as champion in both the 100 metre and 200-metre sprints.

Medals Tally (Top Ten Nations and India) of London Olympics, 2012

S.No.	Country	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total
1	USA	46	29	29	104
2	China	38	27	23	88
3	Britain	29	17	19	65
4	Russia	24	26	32	82
5	S. Korea	13	08	07	28
6	Germany	11	19	14	44
7	France	11	11	12	34
8	Italy	08	09	11	28
9	Hungary	08	04	05	17
10	Australia	07	16	12	35
55	India	00	02	04	06

Some important results of Team events in London Olympics

Sport	Male		Female	
	Winner	Runner	Winner	Runner
Hockey	Germany	Netherlands	Netherlands	Argentina
Football	Mexico	Brazil	U.S.A.	Japan
Volleyball	Russia	Brazil	Brazil	U.S.A.
Basketball	U.S.A.	Spain	U.S.A.	France
Water Polo	Croatia	Italy	U.S.A.	Spain

Journey of Olympics (Since 1896)

First Olympics

- Year – 1896
- Date – April 4 to 15
- Place – Athens (Greece)
- Participating Countries – 13
- Players – 311 (all males)
- Game Competitions – 42
- India's position – *Not participated*

Second Olympics

- Year – 1900
- Date – May 20 to October 28
- Place – Paris (France)
- Participating Countries – 22
- Players – 1330 (11 females)
- Competitions – 60
- India's position – 2 Silver medals (Wonby Norman Prichard–Athletics)

Third Olympics

- Year – 1904
- Date – July 1 to November 23
- Place – St. Louis (America)
- Participating Countries – 12
- Players – 625 (8 females)
- Competitions – 67
- India's position – *Not participated*

Fourth Olympics

- Year – 1908
- Date – April 27 to October 31
- Place – London (Britain)
- Participating Countries – 22
- Players – 2035 (36 females)
- Competitions – 104
- India's position – *Not participated*

Fifth Olympics

- Year – 1912
- Date – May 5 to July 22
- Place – Stockholm (Sweden)
- Participating Countries – 28
- Players – 2547 (57 females)
- Competitions – 106
- India's position – *Not participated*

Sixth Olympics

- Year – 1916
- Date – Cancelled due to World War I
- Place – Berlin (Germany)

Seventh Olympics

- Year – 1920
- Date – April 20 to Sept. 12
- Place – Antwerp (Belgium)
- Participating Countries – 29
- Players – 2607 (64 females)
- Competitions – 104
- India's position – Did not win any medal

Eighth Olympics

- Year – 1924
- Date – May 4 to July 27
- Place – Paris (France)
- Participating Countries – 44
- Players – 3092 (136 females)
- Competitions - 126
- India's position – Did not win any medal

Ninth Olympics

- Year – 1928
- Date – May 17 to August 12
- Place – Amsterdam (Holland)
- Participating Countries – 46
- Players – 3014 (290 females)
- Competitions – 109
- India's position – 1 Gold medal (in hockey)

Tenth Olympics

- Year – 1932
- Date – July 30 to August 14
- Place – Los Angels (USA)
- Participating Countries – 37
- Players – 1408 (127 females)
- Competitions – 117
- India's position – 1 Gold medal (in hockey)

Eleventh Olympics

- Year – 1936
- Date – August 1 to 16
- Place – Berlin (Germany)
- Participating Countries – 49
- Players – 4066 (328 females)
- Competitions – 129
- India's position – 1 Gold medal (in hockey)

Twelfth Olympics

- Year – 1940
- Cancelled due to World War II
- Place – Tokyo, later on Helsinki

Thirteenth Olympics

- Year – 1944
- Cancelled due to World War II
- Place – London (Britain)

Fourteenth Olympics

- Year – 1948
- Date – July 29 to August 14
- Place – London (Britain)
- Participating Countries – 59
- Players – 4099 (385 females)
- Competitions – 136
- India's position – 1 Gold medal (in hockey)

Fifteenth Olympics

- Year – 1952
- Date – July 19 to August 3
- Place – Helsinki (Finland)
- Participating Countries – 69
- Players – 4925 (518 females)
- Competitions – 149
- India's position – 1 Gold medal (in hockey) and 1 Bronze medal (in wrestling)

Sixteenth Olympics

- Year – 1956
- Date – Nov. 22 to Dec. 8
- Place – Melbourne (Australia)
- Participating Countries – 71
- Players – 3342 (384 females)
- Competitions – 145
- India's position – 1 Gold medal (in hockey)

Seventeenth Olympics

- Year – 1960
- Date–August 25 to September 11
- Place – Rome (Italy)
- Participating Countries – 83
- Players – 5348 (61 females)
- Competitions – 150
- India's position - 1 Silver medal (in hockey)

Eighteenth Olympics

- Year – 1964
- Date – October 10 to 24
- Place – Tokyo (Japan)
- Participating Countries – 93
- Players – 5140 (683 females)
- Competitions – 163
- India's position – 1 Gold medal (hockey)

Nineteenth Olympics

- Year – 1968
- Date – October 12 to 27
- Place – Mexico City (Mexico)
- Participating Countries – 112
- Players – 5531 (781 females)
- Competitions – 182
- India's position – 1 Bronze medal (in hockey)

Twentieth Olympics

- Year – 1972
- Date – August 26 to Sept. 10
- Place – Munich (W. Germany)
- Participating Countries – 122
- Players – 7147 (1070 females)
- Competitions – 195
- India's position –1 Bronze medal (in hockey)

Twenty First Olympics

- Year – 1976
- Date – July 17 to August 1
- Place – Montreal (Canada)
- Participating Countries – 92
- Players – 6152 (1261 females)
- Competitions – 198
- India's position - Did not win any medal, were at position 7th in hockey

Twenty Second Olympics

- Year – 1980
- Date – July 19 to August 3
- Place – Moscow (Soviet Union)
- Participating Countries – 81
- Players – 5326 (1088 females)
- Competitions – 203
- India's position – 1 Gold medal (in hockey)

Twenty Third Olympics

- Year – 1984
- Date – July 28 to August 12
- Place – Los Angeles (U.S.A.)
- Participating Countries – 140
- Players – 7078 (1620 females)
- Competitions – 221
- India's position – Did not win any medal, 5th position in hockey

Twenty Fourth Olympics

- Year – 1988
- Date – September 17 to October 2
- Place – Seoul (S. Korea)
- Participating Countries – 159
- Players – 8,465
- Competitions - 237
- India's position – Did not win any medal, ranked sixth in hockey

Twenty Fifth Olympics

- Year – 1992
- Date – July 25 to August 9
- Place – Barcelona (Spain)
- Participating Countries – 169
- Players – 9,367
- Competitions - 257
- India's position – Did not win any medal

Twenty Sixth Olympics

- Year – 1996
- Date – July 19 to August 4
- Place – Atlanta (U.S.A.)
- Participating Countries – 197
- Players – 10,310
- Competitions – 271
- India's position – Leander Paes won a Bronze medal (in Lawn Tennis).

Twenty Seventh Olympics

- Year – 2000
- Date – Sept. 15 to Oct. 1
- Place – Sydney (Australia)
- Participating Countries – 200
- Number of players – 10,321
- Competitions – 300
- India's position – Karnam Malleshwari won a Bronze medal in the Weight lifting (in the 69 kg category).

Twenty Eighth Olympics

- Year – 2004
- Date – August 13 to August 29
- Place – Athens (Egypt)
- Participating Countries – 201
- Number of players – 10,500
- Competitions – 301
- India's position – Major Rajyavardhan Singh Rathore won a Silver medal (Shooting).

Twenty Ninth Olympics

- Year – 2008
- Place – Beijing (China)
- Participating Countries – 204
- Players – 10,708
- Competitions – 302
- India's position - 50th (with 1 Gold and 2 Bronze medals)

Thirtyth Olympics

- Year – 2012 (July. 27 – Aug. 12)
- Place – London
- Participating Countries – 204
- Players – 10,500
- Competitions (events) – 302
- India's position - 55th (with 2 Silver and 4 Bronze medals)

Thirty-first Olympics

- Year – 2016 (Aug. 05 – Sep. 21)
- Place (Proposed)- Rio de Janerio (Brazil)

Thirty-second Olympics

- Year—2020
- Place (Proposed)—Tokyo (Japan)

Paralympics and Winter Olympics

- **London Paralympics 2012 (Aug. 29-Sept. 09, 2012)** : London, the host city welcomed the 14th Paralympic Games with a spectacular Opening Ceremony, held in the Olympic Stadium. A total of 4294 athletes from 164 countries participated in the Games. China won the most medals – 231 (95 Gold, 71 Silver, 65 Bronze) followed by Russian Federation - 102 (36 G, 38S, 28 B) and Great Britain- 120 (34 G, 43 S, 43 B).

In London Paralympics 2012 :Girisha H. Nagarajegowda (Karnataka) clinched the only medal after bagging the Silver in the Men's High Jump F42 event. Girisha is the third Indian after Javelin thrower Bhimrao Kesarkar and Shot put thrower Joginder Singh Bedi to claim Silver at the Paralympic Games. Kesarkar and Bedi won Silver at the 1984 Paralympics.

First Ever Gold for India : India's Devendra created history by winning the first ever gold for the country in Athens Paralympics 2004. He claimed gold in Javelin throw.

- The **first Games for disabled athletes** were held in 1948 in Stoke Mandeville, England. On the day of the Opening Ceremony of the 1948 Olympic Games in London, the Stoke Mandeville Games were also launched and the first competition for wheelchair-bound athletes was organized.
- Olympic style Games for athletes with disability were organized for the first time in Rome in 1960, immediately after the Olympic Games. They are considered the **first Paralympic Games**
- Since then, Paralympic Games have been organized after every four years. The Paralympic Games have always been held in the same year as the Olympic Games.
- Other disability groups were added in Toronto (Canada) in 1976 and the idea of merging together different disability groups for international sports competitions, was conceived. In the same year, the first Paralympic Winter Games took place in Sweden.

The next Paralympic Games will be held in 2016 in Rio de Janerio.

Winter Olympic Games :The Winter Olympic Games started in 1924 AD when the first Games were held at Chamonix, France followed by St. Moritz, Switzerland (1928 & 1948); Lake Placid, New York (1932 & 1980); Garmisch-Parthenkirchen, Germany (1936); Oslo, Norway (1952); Cortina d'Ampezzo, Italy (1956); Squaw Valley, California (1960); Innsbruck, Austria (1964 & 1976); Grenoble, France (1968); Sapporo, Japan (1972); Sarajevo, Yugoslavia (1984); Calgary, Canada (1988) and Albertville, France (1992). The XVII Winter Olympic Games were held in Lilleharnmer (Norway) in February 1994. Incidentally, the 1994 Games were the first in accordance with the International Olympic Committee's new cycle of having Winter Games and Summer Games two years apart, instead of in the same year, as had been the tradition since the commencement of these Games in 1924.

The XIX Winter Games were held in Salt Lake City (USA) from February 9 to 24, 2002. Germany topped in the Medals Tally winning 35 medals (including 12 Golds) while Norway finished as runner-up bagging 24 medals (11 Golds).

The XX Winter Olympics 2006 were held in Turin (Italy) from February 10-26, 2006. Germany once again topped the medals tally, after the 2002 Salt Lake Winter Olympics. The four-member Indian team was led by luge athlete Shiva Keshavan.

XXI Winter Olympics 2010 (February 12-28, 2010) :The 21st Winter Olympic was held in Vancouver, Canada from February 12 to 28, 2010. Total 2700 players of 82 countries participated in this 17 days sports festival.

XXII Winter Olympics 2014 (February 7-23, 2014) :22nd Winter Olympic Games at Sochi (Russia), the 17 day costlisest Olympics ever ($51 billion) of sport-driven global unity concluded on February 23, 2014.

Sochi Winter Olympics 2014 saw three athletes from India, luger Shiva Keshawan (fifth consecutive participation in the Winter Olympics), Alpine skier Himanshu Thakur and cross-country skier Nadeem Iqbal represent the country, but their performance was dismal.

Medals Tally of Top Five Countries in the 22nd Winter Olympics 2014

Country	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total
Russia	13	11	9	33
Norway	11	5	10	26
Canada	10	10	5	25
USA	9	7	12	28
Netherlands	06	06	02	14

Sites of Winter Olympic Games

Year	Place	Year	Place
1924	Chamonix, France	1928	St. Moritz, Switzerland
1932	Lake Placid, New York	1936	Garmisch-Partenkirchen, Germany
1948	St. Moritz, Switzerland	1952	Oslo, Norway
1956	Cortina d'Ampezzo, Italy	1960	Squaw Valley, California
1964	Innsbruck, Austria	1968	Grenoble, France
1972	Sapporo, Japan	1976	Innsbruck, Austria
1980	Lake Placid, New York	1984	Sarajevo, Yugoslavia
1988	Calgary, Alberta	1992	Albertville, France
1994	Lillehammer, Norway	1998	Nagano, Japan
2002	Salt Lake City, USA	2006	Turin, Italy
2010	Vancouver, Canada	2014	Sochi, Russia
2018	Pyeong Chang, S. Korea (Scheduled)		

Commonwealth Games

After Olympics, Commonwealth Games is the second largest sports festival in the world. The Games are held once in four years but only in between the Olympic years. The Games were originally known as the British Empire Games.

- ➢ The 1st Commonwealth Games were held in 1930 at Hamilton, Canada.
- ➢ The 10th Commonwealth Games were held at Christchurch, New Zealand in 1974 and the 15th in Victoria (Canada) in 1994, where about 3,350 athletes from 64 nations (including South Africa, which joined the family of Commonwealth athletes after 36 years) participated.
- ➢ Namibia also, which gained its independence in 1990, made its debut while Hong Kong made its final appearance in the Games before being ceded to China in 1997.
- ➢ India, for the first time, participated in the second Commonwealth games held in London in 1934.

Commonwealth Games : At a Glance

Year	Places	Countries	Events	First	India's Medals
1930	Hamilton (Canada)	11	6	England	N. P.
1934	London (England)	16	6	England	B–1
1938	Sydney (Australia)	15	7	Australia	No medal
1950	Auckland (New Zealand)	12	7	Australia	N. P.
1954	Vancouver (Canada)	24	9	England	No medal
1958	Cardiff (Britain)	35	9	England	G–2, S–1
1962	Perth (Australia)	35	9	Australia	N. P.
1966	Kingston (Jamaica)	34	9	England	G–3, S–4, B–5
1970	Edinburgh (U.K.)	42	9	Australia	G–5, S–3
1974	Christchurch (N. Zealand)	38	9	Australia	G–4, S–8, B–3
1978	Edmonton (Canada)	48	10	Canada	G–5, S–4, B–6
1982	Brisbane (Australia)	47	10	Australia	G–5, S–8, B–3
1986	Edinburgh (U.K.)	26	10	England	N. P.
1990	Auckland (New Zealand)	55	10	Australia	G–13, S–8, B–11
1994	Victoria (Canada)	64	—	Australia	G–6, S–11, B–7
1998	Kuala Lumpur (Malaysia)	70	16	Australia	G–7, S–10, B–8
2002	Manchester (England)	72	17	Australia	G–30, S–22, B–17 (3rd)
2006	Melbourne (Australia)	71	—	Australia	G–22, S–17, B–12 (4th)
2010	Delhi (India)	71	—	Australia	G–38, S–27, B–36 (2nd)
2014	Glassgow (Scottland)	71	18	England	G–15, S–30, B–19 (5th)
2018	Gold Coast City (Australia)		Scheduled		

XX Commonwealth Games (July 23 to August 3, 2014)

- ➢ The XIX Commonwealth Games were held in Glasgow (Scotland) from July 23 to August 3, 2014. Around 4,950 athletes from 71 nations participated in this 11-day sports extravaganza.
- ➢ England topped the medals tally with 174 (58 Gold, 59 Silver and 57 Bronze) medals, while Australia finished second with 137 (49 Gold, 42 Silver and 46 Bronze) medals. Canada was placed third with 82 medals (32 Gold, 16 Silver and 34 Bronze).
- ➢ The England's Jodie Stimpson won the first gold medal of the XX Commonwealth Games in Glasgow on July 24.
- ➢ The thistle man named 'Clyde' (named after the river w hich flows through the host city, Glasgow), the official mascot of the XX Commonwealth Games, was designed by Beth Gilmour (aged 12 years).

MEDALS TALLY (Top Ten Countries)

Country	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total
England	58	59	57	174
Australia	49	42	46	137
Canada	32	16	34	82
Scottland	19	15	19	53
India	15	30	19	64
New Zealand	14	14	17	45
South Africa	13	10	17	40
Nigeria	11	11	14	36
Kenya	10	10	05	25
Jamaica	10	4	08	22

Best Athlete : *Canadian gymnast Franki Jones (won 6 medals, including 1 gold in the rhythmic gymnastics events) was honoured with the David Dixon Award after being adjudged the 'Best Athlete of the XX Commonwealth Games'.*

- ➢ 'Clyde' was the **mascot** of the 2014 Commonwealth Games.
- ➢ No. of Commonwealth countries : 53
- ➢ No. of exhisting teams : 71
- ➢ Inauguration : 23rd July, 2014
- ➢ Closing : 3rd August, 2014
- ➢ Events : 272 events in 21 disciplines
- ➢ Officially opened by : Queen Elizabeth II on 23rd July, 2014 at Celtic Park, Glasgow.
- ➢ Queen's Baton last runner : Sir Chris Hoy

ASIAN GAMES

- The first Asian Games began on March 4, 1951 in New Delhi.
- The Asian Games Association has chosen shining sun as its symbol.
- The AGF (Asian Games Federation) adopted *'Ever Onward'*, given by Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru, as the *motto* of the Asian Games.
- The emblem of Asian Games is a 'bright full rising sun' with interlocking rings.
- The Maharaja of Patiala presented the Torch and the Flag for the first Asian Games and since then they have been carried from country to country.

ASIAN Games since 1951

Game Serial	Year	Places	Number of countries	Number of sports	Number of players
1st	1951	New Delhi (India)	11	6	491
2nd	1954	Manila (Philippines)	18	8	1021
3rd	1958	Tokyo (Japan)	20	13	1422
4th	1962	Jakarta (Indonesia)	16	13	1545
5th	1966	Bangkok (Thailand)	18	14	1945
6th	1970	Bangkok (Thailand)	18	13	1752
7th	1974	Tehran (Iran)	25	16	2869
8th	1978	Bangkok (Thailand)	25	19	3000
9th	1982	New Delhi (India)	33	21	3447
10th	1986	Seoul (S. Korea)	27	25	3883
11th	1990	Beijing (China)	37	27	4500
12th	1994	Hiroshima (Japan)	42	34	7300
13th	1998	Bangkok (Thailand)	41	38	7000
14th	2002	Busan (S. Korea)	44	38	9919
15th	2006	Doha (Qatar)	45	39	10000+
16th	2010	Guangzou (China)	45	42	9704
17th	2014	Incheon (South Korea)	45	36	9501

- 18th Asian Games will be held in Jakarta, Indonesia in 2018.

Position of India in Asian Games Medal Tally

Sl.	Year	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total	Position
1.	1951	15	18	21	54	2nd
2.	1954	5	4	9	18	5th
3.	1958	5	4	4	13	7th
4.	1962	10	13	11	34	3rd
5.	1966	7	5	11	23	5th
6.	1970	6	9	10	25	5th
7.	1974	4	12	12	28	7th
8.	1978	11	11	6	28	5th
9.	1982	13	19	25	57	5th
10.	1986	5	9	23	37	5th
11.	1990	1	8	14	23	11th
12.	1994	4	3	15	22	8th
13.	1998	7	11	17	35	9th
14.	2002	11	12	13	36	8th
15.	2006	10	18	26	54	8th
16.	2010	14	17	33	64	6th
17.	2014	11	10	36	57	8th

XVII Asian Games (19 Sept. – 4 Oct. 2014)

- 17th Asian Games (2014), officially known as the XVII Asiad, was opened by S.Korean President Ms. Park Geun-hye on 19 Sept. 2014 at Incheon Asiad Main Stadium.
- India bagged the first gold medal at Incheon, when Jitu Rai won Gold in the men's 50 m pistol.
- China, South Korea and Japan came first, second and third respectively in the 17th Asian Games.
- XVII Asiad came to a close on Oct. 4, 2014 with China (151 Gold, 108 Silver and 83 Bronze) topping the overall medals tally.
- India won 11 gold, 10 silver and 36 bronze medals and managed to occupy the 8th position.

17th ASIAN GAMES
Final Medals Tally of Top 10 Countries

Country	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total
China	151	108	83	342
S. Korea	79	71	84	234
Japan	47	76	77	200
Kazakhastan	28	23	33	84
Iran	21	18	18	57
Thailand	12	7	28	47
North Korea	11	11	14	36
India	11	10	36	57
Chinese Taipei	10	18	23	51
Qatar	10	0	4	14

XVII ASIAN GAMES : General Information

★ Host city : Incheon, South Korea

- Incheon was awarded the right on April 17, 2007, defeating Delhi, India to host the Games. Incheon is the third city in South Korea after Seoul (1986) and Busan (2002) to host the Asian Games.

★ Motto : *Diversity Shines Here* ★ Participating Nations : 45 ★ Athletes participating : 9,501 (5,823 men, 3,678 women ★ Events : 439 in 36 sports ★ Opening ceremony : September 19 ★ Closing ceremony : October 4 ★ Athlete's Oath : Oh Jin-hyek Nam Hyun-hee ★ Torch Lighter : Lee Young-ae ★ Main venue : Incheon Asiad Main Stadium ★ Total Medals : 1454 [439 (G) + 439 (S) + 576 (B)] ★ Timekeeper : Swiss watchmaker company Tissot was the official timekeeper of the Games.

★ Mascots :

- The Prototypes for Harbour seals from Baengnyeong island off west coast of the Korean Peninsula, named Vichuon, Barame and Chumuro, were the mascots of the Games.
- Three Spotted seal siblings was unveiled on 4 November ,2010 as official mascot of the Games in Songdo Island, Incheon. The three seals, known as "Barame", "Chumuro" and "Vichuon", means

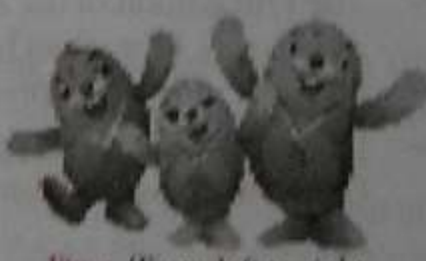


Fig. : (From left to right Chumuro Vichuon and Barame) wind, dance and light in Korean language, is in accordance with the theme of main venue.

- The prototype was taken from Baengnyeong Island. According to the organisers, the mascot was chosen as symbolic to the future peace between South Korea and North Korea.

★ **Emblem :**

- A huge wing consisting of a string of "A", the first letter of "Asia", with a shining sun at its upper left, symbolising the Asian people holding hands in the sky was the official emblem. The official emblem also unveiled on same day (4 Nov., 2010).

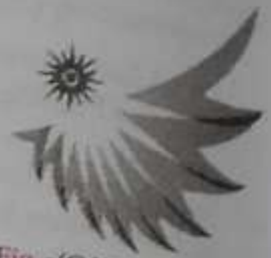


Fig. : (Official emblem of the 2014 Asian Games)

- China broke the 150-Gold barrier and finished on top with a tally of 342 medals in all. It was followed by South Korea with 79 Gold and Japan with 47 Gold. Kazakhstan, Iran, Thailand and North Korea took 4th, 5th, 6th and 7th spots respectively.
- India signed off with 57 medals—11 Gold, 10 Silver and 36 Bronze, taking the 8th position. The tally dipped considerably compared to the 2010 edition in Guangzhou, China. In 2010, the country had ended sixth with 65 medals—14 Gold, 17 Silver and 34 Bronze.
- The first Gold at the Incheon Games for India was earned by Jitu Rai in men's 50m pistol.
- Legendary boxer M C Mary Kom became the first Indian woman boxer to clinch Asian Games Gold.
- Yogeshwar Dutt won Gold in 65 kg freestyle wrestling, ending country's 28-year-old medal drought in that event.
- Seema Punia earned country its first athletics Gold medal in the Asian Games by winning the women's discus throw event.
- In a nail-biting action, hockey squad led by Sardar Singh defeated Pakistan to win the Asian Games men's hockey Gold after 16 years.
- Women's 4 × 400m relay team clinched the record fourth consecutive Gold. Gold medals in other disciplines—fetched by compound men's team archers, men's squash team spearheaded by Saurav Ghosal, tennis mixed doubles pair of Sania Mirza and Saket Myneni, and the kabaddi men's and women's teams. Other notable achievement was the women sailing team winning the first medal at the Asian Games.

★ **Records :**

- The 17th edition of the Asian Games registered 14 new world records and 28 Asian ones. More than half of the new world records were set by weightlifters breaking nine of the preexisting records in the sport of weightlifting.
- Japanese swimmer Hagino Kosuke, who won seven medals, including four Golds, won the Samsung Most Valuable Player of the Games award.

★ **Other major achievers :**

- Swimmer Dmitry Igorevich Balandin of Kazakhstan won three Golds in 50, 100 and 200 metre breaststroke competitions.

- Korea's Kim Cheong-yong (17) became the youngest shooter in Asian Games to achieve top honour in 10 metre air pistol, winning two Golds.
- Sorn Seavmey earned Cambodia its first Gold at Asian Games after a 44 years of wait, by winning the Taekwondo, 73-kg event.
- Yao Jinnan, the Chinese Gymnast, won four Golds in Team, Individual all-around, Uneven bars and Floor exercise events.

★ **The Host :** Incheon was the third city in South Korea, after Seoul and Busan, to host the Asian Games.

★ **The Next Host :** Indonesia will host the next XVIII edition of the Asian Games in Jakarta, in 2018.

★ **Closing Ceremony :** The closing ceremony was held on Oct. 4, 2014 with the theme "Our Cherished Memories of Incheon".

- The ceremony also included the segment from next Asian Games host city, Jakarta. It started with "The colours of Jakarta", featured a Javanese dance known as Ronggeng. It followed by "The spirit of South Sumatra featured Malay dance.
- Participants from 45 countries participated in 439 events in the following 36 sports :

  1. Aquatics (Diving, Swimming, Synchronised Swimming, Water Polo), 2. Archery, 3. Athletics, 4. Badminton, 5. Baseball (Baseball, Softball), 6. Basketball, 7. Bowling, 8. Boxing, 9. Canoe (Canoe Sprint, Obstacle, Slalom) 10. Cricket, 11. Cycling (Track, Road, Mountain Bike, BMX), 12. Equestrian, 13. Fencing, 14. Football 15. Golf, 16. Gymnastic (Artistic, Rhythmic, Trampoline), 17. Handball, 18. Hockey, 19. Judo, 20. Kabaddi, 21. Karate, 22. Modern Pantathlon, 23. Rowing, 24. Rugby, 25. Sailing, 26. Sepaktakraw, 27. Shooting, 28. Squash, 29. Table Tennis, 30. Tackwando, 31. Tennis (Tennis, Soft Tennis), 32. Triathlon, 33. Volleyball (Beach Volleyball, Volleyball), 34. Weightlifting 35.Wrestling, 36. Wushu.

SAF Games

The South Asian Federation Games (SAF Games) is a sport festival of South Asian countries. The South Asian Sports Federation comprising India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Bhutan and Maldives was formed in New Delhi on November 26, 1982.

- The first SAF Games were held in Kathmandu in 1984 followed by Dhaka (1985), Kolkata (1987), Islamabad (1989), Colombo (1991), Dhaka (1993) and Chennai (1995).
- The Eighth SAF Games (Septemebr 25-October 4, 1999) were held in Kathmandu.
- As hitherto, India notched the top position winning 197 medals including 102 Gold. Nepal with 65 medals including 31 golds and Sri Lanka 119 medals (16 golds) finished on the second and third places, respectively.
- The 10th South Asian Federation Games (18-28 August, 2006) were held in Sri Lanka and India retained the crown, with 118 Gold, 69 Silver and 47 Bronze. Pakistan (43–44–71) and hosts Sri Lanka (37–63–78) came on the second and third positions respectively in the medals tally.

Flag and Motto of the SAF Games : The SAF Games flag includes a dove, suggesting the desire for peace in the area. The motto of the SAF Games is 'Peace, Prosperity and Progress'.

New Name for SAF Games : The SAF Games have been rechristened as South Asian Games, according to a decision taken by the South Asian Sports Federation at its 32nd meeting held in Islamabad (Pakistan) on April 2, 2004.

11th South Asian Games

- India retained the crown at the 11th SA Games (January 29 - February 09, 2010) played in Dhaka, Bangladesh.
- It finished on top of the medals tally with 90 gold, 55 silver and 30 bronze medals.
- Pakistan came second and the hosts Bangladesh third.
- India dominated the events in badminton, swimming, T.T. and shooting.

Medals Tally

S. No.	Country	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total
1.	India	90	55	30	175
2.	Pakistan	19	25	36	80
3.	Bangladesh	18	23	56	97
4.	Sri Lanka	16	35	54	105
5.	Nepal	08	09	19	36
6.	Afghanistan	07	09	16	32
7.	Bhutan	0	02	03	05
8.	Maldives	0	0	02	02

12th South Asian Games : India will be the host for the 12th South Asian Games, were rescheduled to be held in 2013, but not held till now.

Some Important Sports And Related Information

Cricket

- It is believed that Cricket was started in England in 1300 A.D.
- It started as a game of shepherds and became popular among other classes in 18th century A.D.
- After some time a club known as "Merylebone Cricket Club" (M.C.C.) was formed at Lords in London.
- Cricket became popular in Australia due to British influence there.
- The first official cricket test match was played in the year 1877 between Australia and England in Melbourne.
- When some other countries started playing Cricket Imperical Cricket Conference was formed in 1909 which gave birth to International Cricket Conference in 1956.
- The first One Day International cricket match was played in the year 1971 between England and Australia in Melbourne.

The ICC World Test Championship

The ICC World Test Championship is intended to become the premier championship for Test cricket run by International Cricket Council (ICC).

The first ICC World Test Championship is to be held in 2017 in England.

The original plans to hold the competition in 2013 were abandoned due to financial problems.

It will replace the One-day International competition the ICC Champions Trophy, which was held in 2013 for the last time.

- The first World Cup of one day matches was played in 1975 in London. West Indies won the World Cup beating Australia by 17 runs.
- The apex institution of world cricket is the 'International Cricket Council' (ICC) and its headquarters is now in Dubai from August 1, 2005. Earlier it was in Lords (England).
- Australia has won maximum of five World Cups till 2015.
- In India Cricket was introduced by British royalty. Parsee community of India was the first to take part in Cricket in 1848.
- Later on Parsee team visited England in 1886. Matches between European and Parsee teams, called Presidency matches, were started in Poona (now Pune) and Bombay (now Mumbai).
- Raja Bhupindra Singh of Patiala donated the Ranji Trophy in 1934 for the national championship of Cricket.
- The Board of Control for Cricket in India was formed in 1927.

Measurements in cricket :

Length of the Pitch – 22 yards (20.11metres)
Length of the Crease – 1.22 – 1.83 metres (4 ft.)
Weight of the Ball – 155 to 163 gram
Circumference of the Ball – 22.4 -22.9 cm (9 Inch)
Length of the Bat – 96.5 cm (38 inch)
Width of the Bat – 10.8 cm (4.25 inch)
Length of the Stumps – 71.1 cm (28 inch)
Length of Bells – 11.1cm (each bell)

Winners of World Cup Cricket since 1975

Year	Place	Winner	Runners up
1975	England	West Indies	Australia
1979	England	West Indies	England
1983	England	India	West Indies
1987	India and Pakistan	Australia	England
1991	Australia and New Zealand	Pakistan	England
1996	India, Pakistan and Sri Lanka	Sri Lanka	Australia
1999	England	Australia	Pakistan
2003	South Africa	Australia	India
2007	West Indies	Australia	Sri Lanka
2011	India, Sri Lanka & Bangladesh	India	Sri Lanka
2015	Australia & New Zealand	Australia	New Zealand
2019	England	Scheduled	
2023	India	Scheduled	

Cricket World Cup 2011, 2015 and 2019

- Initially India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka and Bangladesh were to host jointly the 2011 cricket World Cup, which comes to the sub continent after a gap of 15 years, but after the terrorist attack on Sri Lankan cricket team in Pakistan, Pakistan's name has been canceled from the hosts' list by the ICC.
- India was the main host of World Cup 2011.

- Inauguration ceremony was held at Sheikh Muzib Statidum, Dhaka, Bangladesh on 17th Feb., 2011, while the final match was held at Wankhede Stadium, Mumbai on April 2, 2011.
- M.S. Dhoni, the Captain of Indian Team was adjudged the 'Man of the Match', while Yuvraj Singh was declared the 'Man of the Tournament' in ICC Cricket World Cup 2011.
- India, Pakistan and Sri Lanka were the co-hosts for the 1996 world cup.
- Out of total 49 matches in 2011 World Cup India hosted 29 matches (including the final), Sri Lanka 12 and Bangladesh 8 matches respectively.
- The matches of Cricket World Cup 2011 held in 12 cities of *three host countries* (India, Sri Lanka and Bangladesh and total 14 teams participated in two groups, i.e. Group 'A' and Group 'B'. India was in Group 'B'.
- India beat Australia in Quarter Final (QF), Pakistan in Semi Final (SF) and Sri Lanka in Final match.
- Jumbo (the elephant) : The mascot of 2011 World Cup Cricket was unveiled in Colombo on April 02, 2010.
- The 2015 World Cup has been awarded jointly to Australia and New Zealand, while England will be the host for the 2019 edition of the Cup.
- Some important Terminologies of Cricket : Played on, Appeal, Bye, Leg Bye, Power Play, Follow on, Dusara, Beamer, Hoober Shot, Lost Ball, Duck worthLuis, Retired Hurt, Chinaman, Batsman, Bowler, Wicket Keeper, Fielder, LBW (Leg Before Wicket), Catch, Hit wicket, Throw, Maiden over, Four, Sixer, Wide, Swing, Stroke, Cover, Mid on, Mid Off, Mid wicket, Over the wicket, Round the wicket, Leg spinner, Off spinner, Over throw, Over Slip, Gulley, Cover point, Silly point, Long off, Long on, Third man, Short pitch, Hook, Dead ball, Run out, Popping crease, Pitch, Bouncer (or Bumper), Full Toss, Yorker, Yorked, Googly, Wicket Maiden, Snick, Duck, Hat -Trick, Rubber, The Ashes, Scoring a Ton etc.

ICC Twenty-20 Cricket World Cup

- The first ICC Twenty-20 (T–20) World Cup Cricket held in South Africa in September 11-24, 2007. In the final match played at Wanderers stadium in Johannesburg, India thrashed Pakistan by 5 runs and clinched the first T-20 world cup trophy.
- Pakistan emerged winners of the second (2009) edition of the ICC Twenty-20 World Cup Cricket, beating Sri Lanka by 8 wickets in the final in London, England on June 21, 2009.
- In the third (2010) edition of the ICC T-20 World Cup Cricket England clinched the cup, defeating Australia by 7 wickets in the final in Bridgetown, Barbados (West Indies), on May 16, 2010.
- In the fourth ICC T-20 World Cup (2012) West Indies defeated the host Sri Lanka in the final at Colombo on Oct. 7, 2012.
- The fifth (ICC T-20 World Cup) was hosted by Bangladesh in 2014, from March 16 to April 6. Sri Lanka defeated India in the final by 6 wickets at Sher-e-Bangla Stadium in Dhaka (Bangladesh). Virat Kohli was declared 'Man of the Series'.
- India will host its sixth edition in 2016.

- In all the five ICC T-20 World Cup held till 2014, M.S. Dhoni was the Captain of Indian team.

4th ICC Women's World Twenty-20

- Two time defending champion Australia won ICC Women's World Twenty-20 Championship 2014, defeating England by 6 wickets, in the final at Dhaka (Bangladesh) on April 06, 2014.

Football

- It is believed that Football is also of British origin. However, it is said that a game similar to Football was played in 500 B.C. by the Greeks of Sparta and they called this game 'Harpaston'. The first football club of the world 'Sheffield Football Club' was founded in the year 1857 in England. Football was introduced in India by the Britishers in 1848 and the first football club of India was 'Dalhousie Club'. The Indian Football Association, the oldest football association in the east, was formed in 1878. The apex institution of football is 'Federation of International de Football Association' (FIFA), which was formed by seven countries on May 21, 1904. The headquarters of FIFA is in Paris (France). In order to distinguish this game from the carrying cum kicking game i.e. Rugby, it was given the name of "Soccer". This name was given to this game (Football) by an association named London Football Association which was formed in 1863 in England. The Football World Cup, organized by the FIFA, is the biggest competition.
- Football was included as a competitive game in Olympic Games officially in 1908.
- India took part in the World Olympic Football Competition in 1948 in London.
- Besides Olympic competitions, World Cup Football Championships were planned by two Frenchmen i.e. M Jules Rimet and Henry Delaunay.
- Jules Rimet was president of the French Football Federation and remained president of FIFA from 1924 to 1954.
- The first World Cup was organised at Monte Video (Uruguay) in 1930.
- The Trophy for this championship was named as "Jules Rimet Cup". This trophy became the permanent property of Brazil, as this country had won the world title for the third time (1958, 1962 and 1970).
- From 1974 (Xth championship of Germany) onwards, the trophy was named as "The FIFA World Cup". This was a new trophy cast in 18 ct. gold.
- In India Indian Football Association (IFA) organises National Football Championship.
- The trophy awarded in their competition is called Santosh Trophy, which was donated in the memory of Manmath Nath Roy Chaudhary of Santosh (now a part of Bangladesh).
- Durand Cup tournament, the oldest football tournament of India and the second oldest tournament of the world was started in 1888.
- Durand Cup tournament was first organised at Shimla and is being held in Delhi since 1940.
- A new chapter was added to the annals of the country's (India's) soccer with the launch of the Football Players' Association (FPA) of India in Kolkata on August 13, 2006.

- FIFA announced (in April 17, 2007) an assistance of $ 1 million to Indian football by launching 'Win in India with India' project that will initially run for a period of four year.
- FIFA President Joseph S. Blatter (during his visit to India in April, 2007) hinted that India could gain another grant of $ 400,000 for the third 'FIFA Goal Project' it was entitled to.
- The All India Football Federation (AIFF) has started the 'Goal Project' in Manipur and the second was launched in Delhi.
- FIFA and the Asian Football Confederation (AFC) have identified Sikkim as the third site of the project.
- According to Mr. Blatter the new project that the FIFA has specially launched for India will get annual grant of $ 250,000 for four years.
- FIFA World Cup is played after every four years.

Winners of World Cup Football

Year	Place	Mascot	Winner	Runners up
1930	Uruguay	—	Uruguay	Argentina
1934	Italy	—	Italy	Czechoslovakia
1938	France	—	Italy	Hungary
1942	Cancelled	—	—	—
1946	(2nd World War)			
1950	Brazil	—	Uruguay	Brazil
1954	Switzerland	—	West Germany	Hungary
1958	Sweden	—	Brazil	Sweden
1962	Chile	—	Brazil	Czechoslovakia
1966	England	Willie	England	West Germany
1970	Mexico	Juanito	Brazil	Italy
1974	West Germany	Tip and Tap	West Germany	Holland
1978	Argentina	Gauchito	Argentina	Holland
1982	Spain	Naranjito	Italy	West Germany
1986	Mexico	Pique	Argentina	West Germany
1990	Italy	Ciao	West Germany	Argentina
1994	U.S.A.	Striker	Brazil	Italy
1998	France	Footix	France	Brazil
2002	Japan and S. Korea	Ato, Kaz & Nik	Brazil	Germany
2006	Germany	Goleo	Italy	France
2010	South Africa	Zakumi	Spain	Netherlands(Holland)
2014	Brazil	Fuleco	Germany	Argentina
2018	Russia	—	(Scheduled)	—
2022	Qatar	—	(Scheduled)	

- **The measurements of the playground :**
  Length of the ground (Field)– 91 to 120 metres
  Width of the ground (Field) – 45 to 91 metres
  Weight of the ball – 396 to 453 grams
  Circumference of the ball – 68 to 71 cm

- **Some important Terminologies of Football :** Abbey, Dribble, Extra time, Full back, Half back, Striker, Centre, Forward, Penalty kick, Free kick, Scissor Kick, Goal Kick, Direct Kick, Corner Kick, Referee, Tie breaker, Hat trick, Hand ball, Sweeper, Back, Throw in, Hand-ball (fault), Touch line, Place Kick or Kick off, Direct Free Kick, Indirect Free Kick, Tackle, Off side, Sliding Tackle, Drop Ball, Sudden death, Penalty shoot out etc.

20th FIFA World Cup Football–2014

Official Logo : Juntos num so ritmo (all in one rhythm)

- Mascot—Fuleco
- Started—June 12, 2014 in Sao Paulo (Brazil)
- Final Match held—July 13, 2014 in Maracana, Rio de Janerio (Brazil)
- Winner—Germany
- Runners up—Argentina
- Third Position—Netherlands
- Total—64 matches
- Golden Ball Award Winner (for best player)—Lionel Messi (Argentina)
- Golden Boot Award Winner (for top scorer)—James Rodriguez (Columbia)
- Golden Glove Award Winner (for best goalkeeper)—Manuel Neuer (Germany)

Hockey

- 'Blackheath Rugby and Hockey Club' is the first hockey club in the world which was set up in the year 1861 in England.
- London was the first city in England to popularize this game in the 1870s.
- In the year 1886, Hockey Association of England was formed in London.
- The apex institution of hockey is *'Federation Internationale de Hockey'*, established on January 7, 1924, with headquarters at Vienna (Austria) and later shifted to Paris (France). The first International Hockey Match was played between Wales and Ireland in Rayle on June 26, 1895.
- Hockey was introduced in the Olympic games for the first time in 1908 in London.
- Indian Hockey Federation (IHF) was formed on the 7th November, 1925 at Gwalior.
- Since 1944, National Hockey Championship is organised by the I.H.F. every year.
- All India Women's Hockey Federation was formed in 1947.
- India took that part in Olympics for the first time in 1928 (in Amsterdam Olympics).
- In Olympics, India has won the hockey title a maximum of 8 times. The first World Cup Hockey was played in Barcelona in 1971.

World Cup Hockey

Year	Place	Winner	Runners up	India's position
1971	Barcelona	Pakistan	Spain	Third
1972	Amsterdam	Holland	India	Second

Year	Place	Winner	Runners up	India's position
1975	Kuala Lumpur	India	Pakistan	First
1978	Buenos Aires	Pakistan	Holland	Sixth
1982	Mumbai	Pakistan	West Germany	Fifth
1986	London	Australia	England	Twelfth
1990	Lahore	Holland	Pakistan	Tenth
1994	Sydney	Pakistan	Holland	Fifth
1998	Utrecht	Holland	Spain	Ninth
2002	Kuala Lumpur	Germany	Australia	Tenth
2006	Monchengladbach (Germany)	Germany	Australia	Eleventh
2010	New Delhi	Australia	Germany	Eighth
2014	The Hegue	Australia	Netherlands	Ninth

- The next World Cup Hockey (Mens) is proposed to be held in 2018 in Bhubneshwar (India).
- Measurements (Hockey):

No. of Players – 11 players in each team
Length of the Playing field – 91.44 metres
Width of the Playing field – 50 to 55 metres
Weight of the Ball – 155 to 163 grams
Circumference of the Ball – 223 - 224 cm.
Colour of the Ball – White
Weight of the Hockey (Stick) – 280 grams (max)

- Terminology – Advantage, Back -stick, Bully, Carry, Dribble, Dodge, Goal line, Green Card, Flick, Free hit, Face of stick, Jab Stroke, Lung Stroke, Melee, Off side, Penalty shoot out, Short Corner, Striking circle or Shooting circle, Square pass, Tackling, Through pass, Under cutting, Stick, Penalty stroke, Scoop, Side line, Tie breaker, Penalty, Under cutting, Volley, Centre forward, Roll in, Push in, Shooting, Half volley, Full back etc.

Volleyball

- Volleyball, the game played with an inflated bladder and a high net was invented in 1895 at Holyoke Y.M.C.A. Gymnasium in United States of America by a Physical Director William J. Morgan.
- Its first name was 'MINTONNETTE' which was later named as Volleyball by Dr. A.T. Halsted of Springfield College because the ball had to be volleyed with hands from one side to the other.
- 'International Volleyball Association' was formed in 1947 with its headquarters in Paris (France).
- The first World Volleyball Championship was held in 1949 at Prague.
- The first Asian Volleyball Championship was held at Tokyo (Japan) in 1955 (India beats Japan in the final).
- The Volleyball Federation of India was formed in 1950.
- Measurements (Volleyball) – Length of the court - 18 metre, Width of the court – 9 metre, Weight of the ball – 250 to 260 grams, Circumference of the ball – 65-67 cm, Net – 1m (± 3 cm) wide and 9.5 m long, Net's height – 2.43m (for men) and 2.24 m (for women)

Ball's internal pressure – 0.40 - 0.45 Kg/cm.

- Terminology (Volleyball) – Antennae, Attack hit, Back zone players, Dribbling, Libero, Front zone players, Blocking, Smash, Rotation, Boosting, Net fault, Volley pass, Forearm pass, Service, Hook serve, Set up, Referee etc.

Table Tennis

- This game was started in England in 1880s. 'International Table Tennis Association' was established in 1926.
- The first match of The Table Tennis World Championship was played in 1927.
- Table Tennis was introduced in the Olympic games much later in 1988 at Seoul (S. Korea).
- Table Tennis Association of India was formed in 1938.
- Measurements (Table Tennis): Length of the table – 2.74 metre (9 feet), Width of the table – 1.52 metre (5 feet), Height of the table – 76 cm, Weight of the ball – 2.4 to 2.53 gram, Diametre of the ball – 37.2 -38.2 mm, Colour of the ball – white or yellow.
- Terminologies (Table Tennis): Foil , End line, Late control, Flat hit, Block stroke, Service, Penholder grip, Back spin, Centre line, Half court, Side spin, Swing stroke, Push stroke, Rally, Let, Reverse, Top spin, Drop shot, Lob, Chopped return,Counter hitting etc.

Basketball

- The game Basketball was invented by Dr. James Naismith of U.S.A. in 1891 at Springfield College.
- International Basketball Federation was set up in 1932.
- Basketball Federation of India was formed in 1950. Its first World Championship was played in 1950.
- Measurements (Basketball): Length of the court – 28 metre, Width of the court – 15 metre, Height of the basket from ground – 3.05 metre, Weight of the ball – 600 to 650 grams.
- Terminology (Basketball)– Dribbling, Front court, Second dribble, Two count stop, Travelling or shifting, Pivoting, Held ball, Jump ball, Violation, Foul, Feinting or Dodging, Shooting, Set shot, Ring, Guard point, Dead ball, Basket Rudnick, Hook pass, Goal, Centre line, Free throw line, Onsted, Fast break, Lay-up shot, Man to man defence, Pack, Three point, Turn over, Assist, Throw, Goal Tending, Steal, Tap etc.

Badminton

- Modern Badminton was probably developed in the 17th century and named from the place 'Badminton' in Gloucestershire (England).
- The International Badminton Federation (IBF) was established in 1934.
- Badminton Association of India was formed in 1934.
- The trophy for the international matches was named Thomas Cup after the name of the first president of the IBF Sir George Thomas. Thomas Cup competition (for men) started in 1948 - 49. Uber Cup Championship (for women) started in 1956.
- World Badminton Championship started in 1977.
- Measurements (Badminton): Length of the court – 44 feet, Width – 20 feet (for Doubles) and 17 feet (for Singles), Height of the net – 5 feet, Weight of the

Shuttle cock – 4.74 to 5.50 gram, Overall length of the Racket – 680 mm (2.5 ft.) maximum, Overall width of the Racket – 230 mm (9 inches) maximum, Overall length of the racket head – 290 mm (11.5 inches) maximum, Weight of the racket – between 85 to 140 grams.

- Terminology (Badminton) : Badminton Court, End, Trans Lines, Back gallery, Service Court, Let, Forward Stroke, Backward Stroke, Toss or Lob, Clear, Smash, Net strokes, Rally, Setting, First hand or Second hand, Side out, Base of operation, Rotation, Long service, Net fault, Double fault, Foot Fault, Service break, Match point, Set point, High service, Cross shot, Service change, Drive, Drop shot, Duce, Advance etc.

Lawn Tennis

- Tennis was introduced by Major Wingfeild in Wales in 1870.
- All England Championship (popularly known as Wimbledon Championship) started in 1877 for men only. Tennis competitions for women (in Wimbledon Championship) were introduced in 1884.
- Measurements (Tennis) : Length of the court – 78 feet or 23.77 m (singles), Width of the court – 27 feet or 8.23 m (singles), 36 feet or 10.97 m (doubles), Height of the net – 3 feet (0.914 m) , Weight of the ball – 56.0 to 59.4 gram, Maximum length of the frame of the racket – 32 inches (81.28 cm), Colour of the ball – white or yellow
- Terminology (Tennis) : Ace, Advantage, A Let, Back hand drive, Deuce, Chip Shot, Volley, Half volley, Let fault, Foot fault, Double fault, Smash, Service, Grand slam, Singles sticks, Love, Slice.

Polo

- Measurements (Polo) : Length of the field – 300 yards, Width of the field – 150 yards, Distance between the goals – 250 yards, Distance between the goal posts – 8 yards.
- Terminology : Bunker, Chuker, Mallet etc.

Wrestling

- Measurements (Wrestling) : In International Competitions there is a circular area with 9 metre diameter with circle in the centre of 1 metre diameter . Competitions played on a mattress, the mattress is 1:1 metre diameter high.
- Terminology : Heave, Half, Nelson, Rebuts, Hold sager etc.

Chess

- The number of squares on a chessboard : 64, Colour of the squares – White and black, Number of same colour Chess - 16
- Terminology : Bishop, Gambit, Checkmate, Stalemate, Pawn, Grandmaster etc.

Golf

- Diameter of the hole : 4 inches
- Terminology : Bogie, Fore some, Stymie, T, Put hole, Nib lick, Caddy, Limns, Iron, Putting, The green, Bunker etc.

Water Polo

- The length and width of the field : 30 X 20 yards
- Terminology : 2 metre line, 4 metre line, Goal line, Caps, Personal, Fault, Ball under etc.

Baseball

- The distance of each base is 90 feet, The distance of the base along with its hypotenuse – 127 feet
- Terminology : Home, Diamond, Pitcher, Put out, Home run, Strike, Ant rubber etc.

Billiards

- Terminology : Cue, Jigger, Pot, Break Pot, In luck, In off, Cans, Bolting, Hazard, Long etc.

Rifle Shooting

- Terminology : Target, Bulls eye, Muzzle flub etc.

Kho-Kho

- Terminology : Chasers, Active Chaser, Runners, Diving, Taking a direction, To recede, Tapping, Trapping, Dupe turn, Late Kho, Giving Kho, Fake Kho etc.

Swimming

- Terminology : Crawl, Breast Stroke, Spring Board, Twist, Butter fly.

Boxing

- Length and width of the ring : Minimum 4.9X4.9 m^2 and maximum 6.10X6.10 m^2
- Terminology : Punch, Upper cut, Round, Jab, Hook, Knock down, Knock out, Hitting willow, Ring, Break, Bell, Belt, Blow, Bounce, Bout.

Marathon

- The distance of the marathon run : 26 mile 385 yards or 42.195 km.

Cups and Trophies (Associated with Sports /Games)

Sport	**Cups and Trophies**
Hockey	Aga Khan Cup, Begam Rasul Trophy (women's), Maharaja Ranjit Singh Gold Cup, Lady Ratan Tata Trophy (women's), Gurunanak Championship (women's) Dhyanchand Trophy, Nehru Trophy, Sindhia Gold Cup, Murugappa Gold Cup, Wellington Cup etc.
Football	Beghum Hazarat Mahal Cup, BILT Cup, Bordoloi Trophy, Colombo Cup, Confederation Cup, D C M Trophy, Durand Cup, Rovers Cup, B.C. Rai Trophy (National Championship), FIFA World Cup, Jules Rimet Trophy, Kalinga Cup, Santosh Trophy (National Championship), IFA Shield, Scissor Cup, Subroto Mukherjee Cup, Sir Ashutosh Mukherjee Trophy, Todd Memorial Trophy, Vittal Trophy, etc.
Cricket	Anthony D' Mellow Trophy, Ashes, Asia Cup, Benson and Hedges Cup, Bose Trophy, Champions Trophy, Charminar Challenger Cup, C.K. Naidu Trophy, Cooch - Behar Trophy, Deodhar Trophy, Duleep Trophy, Gavaskar - Border Trophy, G.D. Birla Trophy, Gillette Cup, Ghulam Ahmad Trophy, Hakumat Rai Trophy, ICC World Cup, Irani Trophy, Interface Cup, Jawaharlal Nehru Cup, Lomboard World Challenge Cup, Mc Dowells Challenge Cup, Merchant Cup, Moin - ud - Dowla Cup, Nat West Trophy, Prudential Cup (World Cup), Rani Jhansi Trophy, Ranji Trophy, Rohinton Baria Trophy, Rothmans Cup, Sahara Cup, Sharjah Cup, Sheesh Mahal Trophy, Sheffield Shield, Singer Cup, Sir Frank Worrel Trophy, Texaco Cup, Titan Cup, Vijay Hazare Trophy, Vijay Merchant Trophy, Vizzy Trophy, Wisden Trophy, Wills Trophy, World Series Cup.

Sport	Cups and Trophies
Table Tennis	Berna Bellack cup (men), Corbillion Cup (women), Jai Laxmi cup (women), Rajkumari Challenge Cup (women junior), Ramanuja Trophy (men junior), Travancore Cup (women), Swathling Cup (men)etc.
Badminton	Aggrawal Cup, Amrit Diwan Cup, Asia Cup, Australasia Cup, Chaddha Cup, European Cup, Harilela Cup, Ibrahim Rahimatollah Challenger Cup, Konica Cup, Narang Cup, S.R. Ruia Cup, Sophia Cup, Kitiakara Cup, Thomas Cup, Tunku Abdulrahman Cup, Uber Cup, World Cup, Yonex Cup etc.
Basket ball	Basalat Jha Trophy, B.C. Gupta Trophy, Federation Cup, S.M. Arjuna Raja Trophy, Todd Memorial Trophy, William Jones Cup, Bangalore Blues Challenge Cup, Nehru Cup, Federation Cup
Bridge	Basalat Jha Trophy, Holkar Trophy, Ruia Gold Cup, Singhania Trophy, etc
Polo	Ezra Cup, Gold Cup, King's Cup, Prithi Pal Singh Cup, Radha Mohan Cup, Winchester Cup etc.
Athletics	Charminar Trophy, Federation Cup etc.
Air Racing	Jawaharlal Challenge Trophy, King's Cup, Schneider Cup
Billiards	Arthur Walker Trophy, Thomas Cup etc.
Boxing	Aspy Adjahia Trophy, Federation Cup , Val Baker Trophy etc.
Golf	Canada Cup, Eisenhower Trophy, Muthiah Gold Cup, Nomura Trophy, President's Trophy, Prince of Wales Cup, Ryder Cup, Solheim Cup, Topolino Trophy, Walker Cup, World Cup etc.
Chess	Naidu Trophy, Khaitan Trophy, Limca Trophy, Lin Arec City Trophy, World Cup etc.
Horse Racing	Beresford Cup, Blue Riband Cup, Derby, Grand National Cup etc.
Netball	Anantrao Pawar Trophy etc.
Rugby Football	Bledisloe Cup, Calcutta Cup, Webb Ellis Trophy, etc.
Shooting	North Wales Cup, Welsh Grand Prix etc.
Volleyball	Centennial Cup, Federation Cup, Indira Pradhan Trophy, Shivanthi Gold Cup, etc.
Yatching	America Cup etc.

Famous Stadia and Sports

➢ Government of India has recently constituted "National Playing Fields Association of India (NPFAI)" under an ambitious scheme of 'Kendriya Yuva Karya Evam Khel Mantralay' to cater to the development of Games & Sports and the players as well.

Stadium	Sports	Place
Indraprastha Stadium	Indoor Games	Delhi
Jawaharlal Nehru Stadium	Athletics	Delhi
Ferozeshah Kotla Ground	Cricket	Delhi
Ambedkar Stadium	Football	Delhi
Shivaji Stadium	Hockey	Delhi
National Stadium	Hockey	Delhi
National Stadium	Hockey & others	Mumbai
Wankhede Stadium	Cricket	Mumbai

Stadium	Sports	Place
Brabourne Stadium	Cricket	Mumbai
Eden Gardens	Cricket	Kolkata
Green Park Stadium	Cricket	Kanpur
Keenan Stadium	Cricket	Jamshedpur
Nehru (Chepak) Stadium	Cricket	Chennai
Varabati Stadium	Cricket	Cuttack
Aintree, Doncaster, Epsom	Horse racing	England (U.K.)
Flemington	Horse racing	Melbourn (Australia)
Headingley Manchester	Cricket	England (U.K.)
Lords, Oval, Leeds	Cricket	England (U.K.)
Black Heath	Rugby Football	London (U.K.)
Wimbledon	Lawn Tennis	London (U.K.)
Wembley Stadium	Football	London (U.K.)
Brookland	Football	England (U.K.)
Twickenham	Rugby Football	England (U.K.)
Putney Mart Lake	Boat race	England (U.K.)
Trent Bridge	Cricket	England (U.K.)
White City	Dog race	England (U.K.)
Hurlington	Polo	England (U.K.)
Henlay	Regata	England
Brisbane, Melbourne, Perth, Sydney	Cricket	Australia
Yankee Stadium	Boxing	New York (USA)
Brooklyn	Baseball	New York (USA)
Forest Hill	Tennis	USA
Sendy Lodge	Golf	Scotland

National Games and Sports of Some Countries

Country	Sports	Country	Sports
United States of America	Baseball	England	Cricket
Spain	Bull -fighting	Japan	Ju-Jitsu
Canada	Ice Hockey	Australia	Cricket
India	Hockey	Pakistan	Hockey
Russia	Chess	China	Table Tennis
Scotland	Rugby Football		

Court, Campus or Field Associated with Sports

Court/Campus/Field	Games / Sports	Court/Campus/Field	Games / Sports
Arena	Horse riding	Diamond	Baseball
Field	Polo, Football, Hockey	Track	Athletics
Ring	Sketing, Boxing	Pitch	Cricket
Course	Golf	Greens	Bowls
Pool	Swimming	Rink	Curling, Ice hockey
Board	Table tennis	Range	Shooting, Archery
Mat	Judo, Karate, Taikwondo	Vellodrome	Cycling
Court	Tennis, Badminton, Net Ball, Handball, Volleyball, Squash, Kho – kho, Kabaddi		

Number of Players in Some Popular Sports/Games

Sports	Number of Players (on each side or in each team)
Baseball	9
Rugby football	15
Polo	4
Water polo	7
Kho Kho	9
Kabaddi	7
Hockey, Football and Cricket	11
Netball	7
Volleyball	6
Badminton, Tennis and Table tennis	1 or 2 (Singles & Doubles respectively)
Basketball	5
Gymnastic	Several individuals compete simultaneously
Billiards / Snooker	1
Boxing / Chess	1
Bridge	2
Croquet	13 or 15
Golf	Several individuals compete simultaneously
Lacrosse	12

50. National Parks (Established after, 1998)

Name	State	Estd. Year	Popular Species
Balphakram National Park	Meghalaya	2013	Wild water buffalo, Red panda, Elephant and eight cat species, Tiger and Marbled cat
Chandoli National Park	Maharashtra	2004	Bengal Tiger, Indian leopard, Indian bison, Sloth bear, Indian giant squirrels, Barking dear
Jaldapara National Park	West Bengal	2012	Indian one horned Rhinoceros, Leopard, Hog deer, Wild pigs, Bison, Sambhar, Barking deer
Kalesar National Park	Haryana	2003	Wildboar, Sambhar, Hare, Red jungle Fowl, Chital, Parcupine
Mathikettan Shola National Park	Kerala	2003	Elephant
Mukurthi National Park	Tamil Nadu	2001	Nilgiri tahr, Indian Elephant, Bengal Tiger, Nilgiri Langur
Orang National Park	Assam	1999	Royal Bengal Tiger, One horned rhinoceros, Asiatic Elephant, Pygmydog, Wild bear, Hog deer
Papikonda National Park	Andhra Pradesh	2008	Tiger, Leopard, Sambhar, Spotted dear, Bison

★★★

10

COMPUTER

Introduction

- The era of 20th and 21st century has witnessed rapid developments in science and technology influencing every aspect of human life. One of the greatest things that man has ever created is, perhaps, 'the Computer'. The computer is truly an amazing machine. Computer is being used in areas of administration, medicine, education, sports, defence, shops, home, markets and many more. Computer and Information Technology (IT), in recent years, has become an integral part of our life. We can see it almost everywhere.
- A computer is an electronic machine that helps to process data. It is used to solve problems relating to almost all fields such as education, home, medicine, science and technology, research, designing, publishing, communication etc.
- A computer is an information-processing and information-accessing tool. This means that a computer accepts some information or data from the outside world. It processes it to produce a new information.
- Information processing is the essence of computing.
- Meaning of Computer : The word computer has derived from an English word 'Compute', which means 'to calculate'.
- Computer is an electronic device which processes the input informations according to the given set of instructions, called program.
- Blaise Pascal had developed the first mechanical calculator in 1642 AD, which is called 'Pascalene'.
- British scientist Charles Babbage was the first person to conceive an automatic calculator or a computer in 1833. He is called the 'Father of modern computer'.
- The credit of developing first computer program goes to Lady Ada Augusta, a student of Babbage.
- Herman Holorith prepared an electronic tabulating machine in 1880, which was automatically functional with the help of Punch Card.
- Howard Ekin developed the first Mechanical Computer 'Mark - I' in 1937.
- J.P. Ekart and John Moschley invented world's first electronic computer 'ENIAC-I' in 1946 and paved the way for first revolution in the field of calculating machine or computer. Electronic Valve or Vacuum Tube was used as a switch in the computer.
- John Van Newman invented EDVAC (Electronic Descrete Variable Computer) in 1951, in which he used Stored Program. The credit of using Binary System in computers also goes to him. Indeed Mr. Newman contributed most in the development of computer and thus gave a right direction to the Computer Revolution (Second Revolution).

Five Generations of Computer

Generation	Period	Main Electronic components	Main Computers
I	1940-52	Electronic Valve Vacuum Tube	EDSAC, EDVAC, UNIVAC
II	1952-64	Transistor	IBM-700, IBM-1401, IBM-1620, CDC-1604, CDC-3600, ATLAS, ICL-1901

Generation	Period	Main Electronic components	Main Computers
III	1964-71	Integrated Circuit	IBM–360, IBM–370, NCR–395, CDC–1700, ICL–2903
IV	1971 -	Largely Integrated Circuit	APPLE, DCM
V	—	Optical Fibre	

Types of Computer : According to size and capacity these are following types of Computer —

1. **Micro Computer :** These computers are used by individual, thus also called PC or Personal Computer. These days P.Cs are largely used for domestic and official purposes etc.
2. **Mini Computer :** This type of computer is comparatively larger than that of micro computer. This is 5 to 50 times more powerful than that of a Micro Computer.
3. **Main Frame Computer :** These are large sized computers. By Time Sharing and Multi Tasking techniques many people rather more than 100 people can work at a time on different terminals of this computer.
4. **Super Computer :** These are very powerful computers and have more storage capacity. These are the most expensive and the fastest computers, able to process most complex jobs with a very high speed.
5. **Quantum Computer :** The development of this type is in final stage. Probably Quantum Computers will be more advanced than that of human brain. In Quantum Computers Q -Bit will be used in lieu of Binary Bits.

Programming Languages of different generations

Generation	Languages
1st Generation (1940-52)	FORTRAN- i
2nd Generation (1952-64)	FORTRAN-ii, ALGOL - 60, COBOL, LISP
3rd Generation (1964-71)	PL / I, ALGOL - W, ALGOL - 68, Pascal, SIMULA - 67, APL, SNOBOL, 4 BASIC, C
4th Generation (1971- —)	CLUE, ALFARD, UCLID, Reformed Pascal, MODULA, EDA, ORACLE
5th Generation (For future)	Artificial Intelligence Languages.

Some Important Facts related to Computers

- December 2 is observed as Computer Literacy Day.
- India has announced New Computer Policy in 1984.
- First computer (made in India) is 'Siddharth', which was manufactured by Electronics Corporation of India.
- First computer in India was installed in the *Main Post Office of Bangalore* on August 16, 1986.
- First Pollution Free Computerized Petrol Pump of India is in Mumbai.
- First Computer University (in Private Sector) in India is Rajeev Gandhi Computer University.
- Bangalore (now Bangaluru) is also known as the Silicon Valley of India.
- First Indian News Paper to be available on Internet is 'The Hindu'.
- First Indian magazine to be available on Internet is 'India Today'.

- First Indian political party which has created its website on internet is 'Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP)'.
- Mainly there are three types of Computer, Digital, Analog and Hybrid.
- First Super Computer of the world is CRAY K-1-S, developed by Cray K Company of U.S.A.
- 'Deep Blue' is a Super Computer which had defeated World Chess Champion Garry Kasparov. This Super Computer is able to do the work equivalent to the work of 32 computers and can think 20 crore steps of chess in 1 second.

Super Computers developed in the World	
Name	**Manufacturer**
CRAY KIS	CRAY K Research Co., USA
Deep Blue	IBM Co., USA
Blue Gene	IBM Co., USA
COSMOS	Cambridge University, UK.

- First Electronic Digital Computer of the world is 'ENIAC'.
- Most popular Operating System in the world is WINDOWS.
- USENET is a link to connect all the universities.
- First book on Personal Computer was written by Ted Nelson.
- The book of Ted Nelson 'Soul of New Machine', won Pulitzer Prize.
- First magazine on Computer is 'Computer and Automotion'.
- First home Computer is Comodor VIC / 20.
- First Practical Digital computer is UNIVAC.
- FORTRAN is the first Programming Language.
- PROLOG is the language of the fifth generation of computer.
- J.S. Kilbi developed the IC chips.
- A computer error is known as Bug.
- C-DAC (Centre for Development and Advanced Computing) was established in Pune in 1988.

Super Computers developed in India	
Name	**Manufacturer**
FLO SOLVER	NAL, Bangalore
PACE	DRDO
PARAM-10000	C - DAC, Pune
CHIPP - 16	C-Dot, Bangalore
MULTIMICRO	IIS, Bangalore
MACH	IIT, Bombay

- Super computer PARAM - 10000, having the capacity of 1 billion calculations per second, was made by the scientists of C - DAC of Pune on March 28, 1998. The main credit for the development of the PARAM-10000 goes to Dr. Vijay P. Bhaskar, Executive Director of C-DAC, Pune.
- National Aeronautics Laboratories, Bangalore was the first in India to develop a Super Computer named FLO SOLVER.
- Laser Printers are the fastest printers.
- IBM (International Business Machine) is an American computer company.
- Computer virus is a man made digital parasite, which corrupts (infects) the file and known as 'File corrupter'.
- Modem is a device which connects the computers and works based on telephone lines.
- Y-2 K was a technical problem, associated with the calendar (Date, Month and Year) known as 'Millenium Bug'.
- The development of computer started in India since 1955.
- Indian Institute of Science, Bangalore has developed 'Simputer', which is a small palm sized touch screen computer.

- First computerarium in India is in Bangaluru (Karnataka).
- Vellanad of Thiruvananthpuram district in Kerala has been declared the first fully computerised village of India.
- PC, Home computer, Electronic notebook etc. are the examples of micro computer.
- Some Operating Systems, used in micro computers are — CP / M, Mac OS (Apple), DOS, Pro DOS, MS DOS / PC DOS, XENIX, WINDOWS, LINUX etc.
- *Linus Benedict Torvalds*, creator and coordinator of the Unix like Operating System. Linus was born in Helsinki, Finland on December 28, 1969.
- On Sept. 17, 1991 Linus completed the first version of Linux. He made the wisest decision in Operating System history by releasing Linux under General Public Licence, thereby making it open and free to all.
- He is one of the pioneers who advocated the idea of free software and thereby changed the software market.
- A computer may be used to control purely mechanical action. It has two main parts : (i) Hardware and (ii) Software.

Hardware

Computer performs some operations to solve problems. For this the various units of a computer system must perform and co-ordinate all operations.

- A computer has three main units : 1. Input unit, 2. Processing unit and 3. Output unit. These are the physical units of a computer system. These units constitute the hardware of a computer.
- The computer has its own internal 'language'.
- The computer is essentially made of electronic components. All these components are capable of generating any one of the two states, either a low (or a 0 volt) or a high (say 5 volts).
- It is difficult to talk always in terms of currents and voltages to represent information. Therefore, computer scientists use a special convention. A high is symbolically represented by a '1' and a low is represented by a '0'. The 1s and 0s are known as binary digits, or in short 'bits' (the term 'binary' refers to something that has two parts).
- Computers always work with bits. They do not understand any other form.
- Computer scientists use combination of 8 bits taken together to represent various symbols.
- Because every bit can take one of 2 possible values, the total number of combinations possible, using 8 bits, the computer can represent 256 different symbols.
- This is enough to cover our entire range of alphabets, numbers and other special characters like $, @, +, ₹ etc. Such a combination of 8 bits is called a byte.
- To build complex information like paragraphs and mathematical equations, we would need a larger number of bytes or characters. Thus we have the kilobyte, megabyte and gigabyte.
- In computers information is represented using multiples of 8 (2^3) bits, since 8 bits are the smallest unit of information. Therefore, higher units are expressible in multiples of 2^3.

- The power of two closest to a kilo (1000) is $2^{10} = 1024$.
- Megabytes is used in a more conventional sense and is equal to 1 million bytes or 1000 kilobytes.
- A gigabyte refers to 1000 megabytes approximately or 1 million kilobytes.
- The earliest computers were designed so that there components could work with 8 bits at a time.
- While the earliest machine were 8-bit machines, contemporary computers can work with 16, 32 and even 64 bits. This is called the data width of the computer.

Units of Data Measurement

4 Bit	=	1 Nibble
2 Nibble (8 Bit)	=	1 Byte
1024 Byte	=	1 Kilo byte (KB)
1024 KB	=	1 Mega byte (MB)
1024 MB	=	1 Giga byte (GB)
1024 GB	=	1 Tera byte (TB)
1024 TB	=	1 Peta byte (PB)

- The basic elements of computers that can signal a 1 or a 0 are called flip-flops. It is a simple electrical device and can either be a '0' or a '1', which means that the flow of current is either inward or outward.
- Modern computers use a very tiny set of flip-flops known as a register. The most important characteristic of these registers is that the binary digits can be stored in them using certain voltages.
- The entire independent circuits can be designed on a small piece of a semi conductor material like silicon.
- Silicon is obtained from sand and is a poor conductor of electricity. But, by chemical processes, the surface and the enterior of a silicon 'chip' are modified to give it electronic capabilities. Such miniature circuits are called Integrated Circuits (IC).
- By 1971, engineers were able to put a few component switches — necessary to build a complete computer on a single chip of silicon. This tiny silicon chip was called the microprocessor.
- Because the computer is a binary machine, it performs mathematical operations using the binary number system.
- The binary number system is similar to the decimal system where we use ten digits, 0, 1, 2, 3.... 8, 9 to represent all numerical values. The only difference is in the number of digits used.
- The computer converts all decimal numbers into binary numbers or combinations of bits. Then by acting upon individual bits, it can perform the required mathematical operation addition, subtraction, etc.
- The internal circuits that can perform mathematical operations on bits are usually made of two or more logic gates. Logic gates are components that generate a 1 or a 0 depending on the input.
- The three basic logic gates are AND, OR and NOT.
- A computer is organized into three basic units :

1. the Central Processing Unit (CPU)
2. the Memory Unit (MU) and
3. the Input / Output Unit

1. Central Processing Unit (CPU)

The CPU is the part of a computer that performs the main function of information processing. The memory unit stores data. The computer supplies processed information back to the users using special output devices.

- The Central Processing Unit or CPU, is the most important part of the computer. It is called the brain of the computer. It makes all the required calculations and processes data.
- The CPU can be divided into three main components : (a) ALU (b) CU and (c) Registers.

(a) *The Arithmetic and Logic Unit (ALU)* : ALU performs all the mathematical and logical operations on the information supplied to the CPU.

(b) *Control Unit (CU)* : This unit directs the working of the CPU. It fetches instructions (Programs) from the memory and according to the instructions, controls the flow of data between the ALU and other parts of the computer.

(c) *Registers* : Registers are storage locations that hold instructions or data while the CPU is using them. The registers consist of flip-flops and the registers used by the CPU are the fastest memory elements in the computer. In contrast, the memory unit holds instructions and data before or after the CPU processes these.

Main attributes of CPU

(a) *Data Width* : It refers to the number of bits of data that can be manipulated within the CPU at one given time.

- The data width of a computer is also called its word size.
- Computers have data widths ranging from 8 to 64 bits.
- A higher data width means the CPU is capable of processing data faster. A CPU with a higher data width is more powerful.

(b) *Address Range* : Address range refers to the amount of memory that can be directly read or written by the CPU.

(c) *Clock Speed* : The speed of CPU is known as Clock Speed. The computer is essentially composed of tiny devices that can be put on or off to indicate 1 or 0.

- At any moment several thousand such devices change their state. To synchronize the change of all these components the CPU uses an internal clock.
- With every tick of this clock all switches that need to change their position do so in perfect harmony.
- The larger the number of ticks per second the faster is the speed of the CPU.
- The ticks per second of the internal clock are measured in megahertz and gigahertz.
- Hertz is a unit of frequency .
- 1 MHz = 1million 'ticks' per second, 1 GHz = 1000 MHz
- Higher the clock-speed, faster the computer.

2. Memory Unit (MU)

The memory unit stores all instructions and data for the CPU. Memory Unit is an important part of the computer system. The storage device of a computer system is known as memory. Memory Unit can receive data, hold it and deliver according to the instructions from the control unit.

- Memory is of two kinds : (a) Primary and (b) Secondary.

(a) *Primary Memory* : It is often referred to as the working memory or the main memory of a computer system. It is capable of sending and receiving data at a very high speed. It is temporary in nature i.e. Data stored in primary memory are lost when the computer is switched off. So it is also called volatile memory. Example of primary memory is RAM.

- Primary memory is directly accessible to the CPU. It must be able to provide data very quickly.
- The two basic kinds of primary memory are the Random Access Memory (RAM) and the Read Only Memory (ROM).
- The RAM is a read / write memory.
- The CPU can change the contents of the RAM at any time. In addition, RAM is volatile.
- The RAM capacity greatly influences the computing ability of the computer. Capacity is usually measured in kilobytes and megabytes.
- The ROM can not be altered.
- Informations is stored on the ROM at the time of its manufacture. The information might be in the form of crucial instructions that govern the working of the computer.
- The ROM is non-volatile and retains its information even after the power is turned off.
- The PROM (Programmable Read Only Memory), however, has the option of being programmed, i.e. the manufacturer of the computer may choose to load a program designed by his company into this PROM, and then the computer would use this PROM like any other ROM.

(b) *Secondary Memory* : It is used to store data for a long term. It operates at a much slower rate than primary memory. Secondary memory is permanent in nature, so it is also called non-volatile. It is also cheaper than primary memory. Examples of secondary memory are floppy disks, hard disks, magnetic tapes etc.

- Primary memory is fast but expensive. To reduce storage costs, computers also use secondary memory.
- It is not directly accessible to the CPU. Information is moved from the secondary memory to the primary memory first and then to the CPU.
- Common examples of secondary memory are floppy diskettes, hard (fixed) discs and magnetic tapes.
- A floppy diskette is a plastic disk coated with magnetic material.
- Special devices known as disk drives are capable of reading from and writing to floppies using special magnetic 'head'.
- Any piece of information stored on a floppy diskette can be directly accessed.
- Magnetic tapes are long plastic tapes coated with magnetic material.

- Magnetic tapes can store far larger amounts of data than the floppy diskette. But a problem with magnetic tapes is that information can not be accessed directly as in the case of floppy diskettes.
- The third type of medium, called fixed or hard disks, are more or less similar to the floppy diskette. But one hard disk drive contains several discs of a hard material.
- Another popular storage medium is the compact disk (CD). Unlike the media described above, CDs are an 'optical' medium.
- An optical medium is one where the properties of light is used for the medium to perform its basic functions.
- Conventional CDs are made of a special kind of plastic.
- The CD is read using a laser beam .
- Secondary memory is much slower, but it is non-volatile and can be used to store information for long periods of time.

3. Input/Output

- There has to be a physical channel that permits users to supply informations to the computer.
- Devices that permit users to supply information to the computer are called 'input' devices.
- Input unit enables us to enter (or "Input") data into a computer. The common input devices are keyboard and mouse.
- Similarly, a physical channel that permits a computer to convey the processed information to the outside world. Devices that permit such a function are called 'output' devices.
- Output unit enables the computer to show us the result and the information that we want. The common output devices are monitor, printer and speakers.
- Input and output devices are indispensable, but are not a part of the CPU. They are also called peripheral devices, suggesting that they lie on the periphery of the CPU.
- These devices are also called an interface, because they translate informations for man and machine.
- The most popular input device used in contemporary computers is the keyboard.
- Another way to input information into a computer is to use an Optical Mark Reader (OMR). Optical Mark Readers are capable of reading specially prepared forms. These forms have a provision for black marks to be made using a pen or a pencil in a specific position.
- Most competitive examinations that deal with a large number of students usually use this system.
- Banks use another input device called a Magnetic Ink Character Reader (MICR).
- Special numbers are written on bank cheques using magnetic ink and in a particular style to write different numbers. The MICR passes over the words or characters, examines the shape of the magnetic field created by the character, and is thus able to recognize it.

- Bar codes are often imprinted on products in merchandise stores. A bar code consists of several parallel vertical lines of different thickness that represent the binary digits.
- The bits form a code that can be used to identify the object on which the bar code is imprinted. A bar code reader is used to read the bar codes by detecting the bars by using light.
- The bar code can represent information like the price of the product or its date of expiry etc.
- Menu-driven programs, where the user sees the host of on-screen choices, sometimes use another input devices called the mouse.
- The mouse is a pointing device. It can be gripped in the palm of the hand and moved over a horizontal surface. The motion of the mouse can be monitored by the computer in different ways.
- The movement is measured and transmitted to the computer. This generates a corresponding movement of an on-screen marker called a cursor from one option to another.
- To select an option, the user presses one of the mouse's buttons.
- Another, input device is a digital camera. A digital camera has a circuit that is sensitive to light.
- The two most common devices are the Visual Display Unit (VDU) and the printer.
- A Visual Display Unit (VDU) uses a cathode ray tube to display informations.
- To represent any character, VDU illuminates a particular pattern of these dots. These dots are also known as pixels, a short form for picture - elements.
- Printers print characters on paper or other similar medium.
- Printers come in three popular versions : dot matrix printers, ink-jet printers and laser printers.
- Dot matrix printers print characters in the form of combinations of very tiny dots. The printing head aligns its 'pins' to match a particular pattern of dots.
- Ink-jet printers spray jets of ink on to the paper to print any character. The characters are absolutely smooth as ink is sprayed in a continuous flow.
- Laser printer, uses a laser beam to actually 'burn' the characters on to the paper.
- We need to issue the computer a detailed sequence of instructions that it needs to follow to operate upon any data. Such a sequence is called a program.
- A program may directly be written to the RAM or may be stored in some form of secondary memory.
- It may be transferred from the secondary memory to the RAM as and when required.
- Execution of a program means that data is moved around in the CPU according to a well-detailed sequence by the programme.
- Computer programs are written using special languages called programming languages.
- There are several programming languages. Each language has its own 'grammar' called its syntax.

Types of Programming Languages

- Machine language and the assembly language are examples of low-level languages.
- A special program called Assembler converts all instructions into the binary format.
- Because all such instructions must finally be converted to the binary form, all high - level languages have their own translation programs called compilers or interpreters.
- Examples of popular high - level languages are C, C++, JAVA, Pascal, Fortran etc.

Software

- Software relates to set of programs. The software controls the computer hardware parts and make them operational. In other words, it governs the operations of a computer system.
- Software is a general term used for all computer programs. This distinguishes programs from the physical components of the computer, which are collectively called the hardware.
- Software is generally divided into two kinds of programs : Application programs and System's programs.
- Applications programs are programs that permit the computer to be used as a tool for some specific tasks.
- A common term used for special text editors is word processors.
- Another popular type of application programs is the Data Base Management Systems (DBMS).
- The most important system's program is an operating system.
- Operating systems help users interact with the computer.
- Unix, MS - DOS, Linux, Windows, Mac OS are some of the most popular operating systems used by contemporary computers.

Important Keyboard Shortcuts (Commands)

Short Cut Keys	Description	Short Cut Keys	Description
Ctrl + A	Select All	Ctrl + Y	Redo
Ctrl + B	Bold	Ctrl + Z	Undo
Ctrl + C	Copy	Ctrl + W	Close File
Ctrl + D	Font Dialogue Box	Ctrl + X	Cut
Ctrl + E	Centre Alignment	Ctrl + F2	Print Preview
Ctrl + I	Italics	F1	Help
Ctrl + J	Justified Alignment	F2	Edit/Rename
Ctrl + L	Left Alignment	F4	Properties
Ctrl + N	Opens New blank document	F5	Go to
Ctrl + O	Opens existing document	F7	Spell Check
Ctrl + R	Right Allignment	F12	Save As
PrtScn	Print screen/Take a screen shot	ESC	Escape
Alt + Tab	Switch to next opened program	Ctrl + S	Save
Ctrl + Home	Go to beginning of a File / Worksheet	Ctrl + U	Underline
Ctrl + End	Go to end of a File / Worksheet	Ctrl + P	Print
Alt + Shift + Tab	Switch to previous opened program	Ctrl + K	Hyperlink
Alt + F4	Close window / Shut down		

Glossary

Active Cell : The cell in MS Excel with dark boundary is called the active cell.

ALU : It stands for Arithmetic Logic Unit. All calculations in computer are done here.

Application Software : It is designed to perform some specific applications such as payroll, word processing, graphics etc.

Batch Processing : Data are processed in a batch.

BIOS : It stands for Basic Input Output System. This program is stored in ROM.

Bit : It is the short form of Binary Digit.

Boot Loader : It reads the main portion of the operating system from secondary memory.

Byte : One byte is a collection of 8 bits.

Cell : Cells are boxes created by the intersection of rows and columns.

Cell Pointer : The boundary of active cell is called cell pointer.

Copyright : It means the material and information are the personal property of the owner or producer.

Counter feiting : It is a process of making and distributing illegal copies of software packages.

Cracker : A cracker is a person who breaks into a computer system to steal the information as programs for unauthorized use.

CU : It stands for Control Unit. It controls the computer system.

Data : Data are raw facts and figures.

Database : It is a collection of files. Data remains in an organized form in a database.

Data Capture : It is a process of collecting or capturing data from a site or a source.

Data Manipulation : Captured data are manipulated to produce information.

Data processing : It is the process to get meaningful information from data.

DBMS : It stands for Database Management System. It is a software package to manage database.

DHTML : It stands for Dynamic Hyper Text Markup Language. It is used to create dynamic content on web pages.

Dial Up Networking : It is the method by which a computer is connected to the Internet using telephone.

DOS : It stands for Disk Operating System. It is an operating system.

Ethics : Ethics are rules and beliefs.

Fields : A field in database is a collection of bytes that contain data about an item.

File :A file is a collection of related records.

GML :It stands for General Mark-up Language.

Hacker :A hacker is a person who breaks into a computer system to get access the information stored there.

HTML :It stands for Hyper Text Markup Language. It is used to create web-pages.

IAB :It stands for Internet Activities Board which was formed in 1983. It is now called as Internet Architectural Board.

IAS :It stands for Internet Application Software also known as Browsers.

IETF :It stands for Internet Engineer Task Force.

IRTF :It stands for Internet Research Task Force.

ISP :It stands for Internet Service Provider.

Internet Society :It was formed in 1992 to promote the use of Internet.

Input Unit :It is a part of computer system and used to enter data.

Linux :It is a Unix like Operating System with graphical user interface.

MAC OS :It is an Operating System used in Macintosh Computer, developed by Apple.

Modem :It is a device to connect different computer systems to the internet using telephone or cable lines.

MU :It stands for Memory Unit. It is used to store data.

Online Processing : It is used when data are coming continuously without delay.

Operating Unit :It is used to take output from the computer.

Operating System :It is an interface between the human user and the computer hardware.

Piracy :It is the illegal reproduction and distribution of software application.

Primary Key :It is a field with unique value for each record.

Primary Memory :It is the main memory of a computer system.

Query :It is used to extract information from a database.

Range of Cells :It is group of neighbouring cells that touch each other.

RDBMS :It stands for Relational Database Management System.

Record :It is the collection of related fields.

Secondary Memory :It is the permanent memory of the computer.

Software :It relates to sets of programs.

SOLARIS :It is a Unix like Operating System developed by Sun Microsystems.

Sorting :It is arranging of data in order.

System Software :It performs the basic functions that are necessary to operate a computer system.

Tag :It is part of HTML. It determines the way, the browser displays text in a Web Page.

Unix :It is a powerful multiuser operating system. It uses command line user interface.

Virus :It is a harmful computer program.

Some Memorable Facts

- A computer is a data processing machine.
- It has two main parts: hardware and software.
- Hardware comprises of the physical units of a computer system.
- Software is a set of programs.
- Both hardware and software together make a computer system functional.
- Data are raw facts and figures.
- An operating system is an interface between the user and the computer hardware.
- An operating system manages computer resources.
- An operating system performs different functions.
- An operating system is responsible for process management, file management, etc.

Most popular Social Networking Sites
Facebook, Twitter, Linkedin and Instagram

- There are many kinds of operating system.
- Some popular operating systems are DOS, UNIX, Windows, LINUX, Mac OS, etc.
- The Windows Explorer program is more efficient for viewing folders in Windows.
- Windows Explorer is divided vertically into two parts or two panes.
- The left side pane displays disk drives and folders in a hierarchical order.
- The right pane displays the contents of the folder/ drive that is selected on left side pane.
- The process of linking text values in a series within a formula is called 'concatenation'.
- The computer is a data processing machine.
- Data processing involves some activities like data computing data manipulation and information management.

Most popular online Shopping Websites
Amazon.com, Flipkart.com and ebay.com

- A database is a collection of interrelated data.
- Computers are very useful for maintaining databases.
- A relational database is a collection of data items organized as a set of formally described tables from which data can be accessed or reassembled in many different ways without having to reorganize the database tables.
- MS Access is a powerful program to create and manage our databases.
- A table is a collection of data about a specific topic.
- A form is a graphical representation of a table.
- A report is a presentation of data in a printed format.
- We can create mailing labels for your database using MS Access.
- Internet is the network of computer networks with millions of computer attached to it.
- Websites are files in servers, which are powerful computers.
- Websites contain pages called Web Pages.
- The collection of all websites is called World Wide Web or WWW.
- Hyper text was first coined by Ted Nelson in 1960s.

- HTML is a markup language. It is used to create Web Pages. It uses commands called Tags.
- Text editors are used to compose HTML documents. HTML documents are viewed in Web browsers.
- In the Photoshop toolbox, the tools are grouped by type.
- Some of the tool icons have a tiny black triangle in the lower - right corner of their icons. This means that there are more tools of the same general kind available on a pop-up menu.
- Most Popular Mobile Operating System is Android, followed by iOS & Windows.
- Versions of Android (old to now) are :
  Cupcake → Donut → Eclairs → Froyo → Ginger Bread → Ice Cream Sandwich → Jelly Beam → Kit-kat → Lollipop.

Abbreviations associated with Computer

CDAC	Centre for Development of Advanced Parallel Computing
C-DOT	Centre for Development Of Telematrics
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
ROM	Read Only Memory
RAM	Random Access Memory
BIOS	Basic Input-Output System
MODEM	Modulation-Demodulation
CAD	Computer Aided Design
PSTN	Public Switched Telephone Network
PSPDN	Packet Switched Public Data Network
RABMN	Remote Area Business Message Network
LAN	Local Area Network
WAN	Wide Area Network
MAN	Metropolitan Area Network
CDMA	Code Division Multiple Access
GAIS	Gateway Internet Access Service
E-Mail	Electronic Mail
CD	Compact Disc
LDU	Liquid Display Unit
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CAM	Computer Aided Manufacturing
CATScan	Computerised Axial Tomography Scan
COBOL	Common Business Oriented Language
COMAL	Common Algorithmic Language
DOS	Disc Operating System
DTS	Desk Top System
DTP	Desk Top Publishing

E-Commerce	Electronic Commerce
ENIAC	Electronic Numerical Integrator And Calculator
FAX	Fascimile Automated Xerox
FLOPS	Floating Operations Per Second
FORTRAN	Formula Translation
HLL	High Level Language
HTML	Hyper Text Markup Language
IBM	International Business Machine
IC	Integrated Circuit
ISH	International Super Highway
LISP	List Processing
LLL	Low Level Language
MICR	Magnetic Ink Character Recognition/Reader
MIPS	Million Instructions Per Second
MOPS	Million Operations Per Second
MPU	Micro Processor Unit
NICNET	National Informatics Centre Network
OMR	Optical Mark Reader/Recognition
PC-DOS	Personal Computer Disk Operation System
PROM	Programmable Read Only Memory
SNOBOL	StriNg Oriented symBOlic Language
UPS	Uninterruptable Power Supply
VDU	Visual Display Unit
VLSI	Very Large Scale Integration
WWW	World Wide Web

Abbreviations

AVES	Acute Viral Encephalitic Syndrome
BCTT	Bank Cash Transaction Tax
BCSBI	Banking Codes and Standard Board of India
CIC	Central Information Commission
CSTO	Collective Security Treaty Organization
CNLU	Chanakya National Law University
DII	Domestic Institutional Investor
DTH	Direct to Home
ECGC	Export Credit Guarantee Corporation
FDI	Foreign Direct Investment
FII	Foreign Institutional Investor
GANDHI	Green Action for National Dandi Heritage Initiative
GUAM	Georgia, Ukraine, Azerbaijan and Moldova
GAGAN	GPS Aided Geo-Augmented Navigation

HPAI	Highly Pathogenic Avian Influenza
IAEA	International Atomic Ener gy Agency
IITF	India International Trade Fair
IMO	Instant Money Order
IBSA	India, Brazil, South Africa
IRDA	Insurance Regulatory Authority
KYC	Know Your Customer
MRO	Mars Reconnaissance Orbiter
NADT	National Authority on Drugs and Therapeutics
NCCE	National Council for Clinical Establishments
NCH	National Consumer Helpline
NEIA	National Export Insurance Account
NMDP	National Maritime Development Programme
MNREGA	Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act
NJC	National Judicial Council
NOTE	National Organization for Tobacco Eradication
OCI	Overseas Citizen of India
PETA	Peoples for Ethical Treatment of Animal
PURA	Providing Urban Amenities in Rural Areas
PHFI	Public Health Foundation of India
QIB	Qualified Institutional Buyer
QIP	Qualified Institutional Placement
RLDA	Railway Land Development Authority
RTA	Railway Territorial Army
RTC	Round Table Conference
RTG	Radio-isotope Thermo-electric Generator
SCRAMJET	Supersonic Combustion Ramjet
SIM	Subscriber Identification Module
SWIFT	Society for World-Wide International Financial Transactions
SWOT	Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities, Threats
SYL	Sutlej-Yamuna Link (canal)
YWCA	Young Women's Christian Association
UID	Unique Identity Number
UIDAI	Unique Identification Authority of India
VAT	Value Added Tax
ZSI	Zoological Survey of India

★★★

Appendix-1

Census of India 2011 : Figures At A Glance

(Revised as per Final Population Totals)

	2001	2011	Increase
No. of States/UTs	35	35	—
No. of Districts	593	640	47
No. of Sub-Districts	5,463	5,924	461
No. of Towns	5,161	7,933	2,772
No. of Statutory Towns	3,799	4,041	242
No. of Census Towns	1,362	3,892	2,530
No. of Villages	6,38,588	6,40,930	2,342

Total Population	Absolute			Percentage*		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	1,21,08,54,977	83,37,48,852	37,71,06,125	100.0	68.8	31.2
Males	62,32,70,258	42,77,81,058	19,54,89,200	100.0	68.6	31.4
Females	58,75,84,719	40,59,67,794	18,16,16,925	100.0	69.1	30.9
Decadal change 2001–2011	Absolute			Percentage*		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	18,19,59,458	9,09,73,022	9,09,86,436	17.7	12.3	31.8
Males	9,09,65,182	4,60,30,080	4,49,35,102	17.1	12.1	29.9
Females	9,09,94,276	4,49,42,942	4,60,51,334	18.3	12.5	34.0
Sex Ratio	943	949	929			
Child Population in the Age Group 0-6 years	Absolute			% to Total Population*		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	16,45,15,253	12,13,22,865	4,31,92,388	13.6	14.6	11.5
Males	8,57,52,254	6,30,84,449	2,26,67,805	13.8	14.7	11.6
Females	7,87,62,999	5,82,38,416	2,05,24,583	13.4	14.3	11.3
Child Sex Ratio	918	923	905			
Literates Age Group 7 + years	Absolute			Literacy rate		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	76,36,38,812	48,27,93,835	28,08,44,977	73.0	67.8	84.1
Males	43,47,63,622	28,13,61,374	15,34,02,248	80.9	77.1	88.8
Females	32,88,75,190	20,14,32,461	12,74,42,729	64.6	57.9	79.1
Scheduled Caste Population	Absolute			% to Total Population*		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	20,13,78,086	15,38,50,562	4,75,27,524	16.6	18.5	12.6
Males	10,35,35,165	7,91,18,138	2,44,17,027	16.6	18.5	12.5
Females	9,78,42,921	7,47,32,424	2,31,10,497	16.7	18.4	12.7
Scheduled Tribe Population	Absolute			% to Total Population*		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	10,42,81,034	9,38,19,162	1,04,61,872	8.6	11.3	2.8
Males	5,24,09,823	4,71,26,341	52,83,482	8.4	11.0	2.7
Females	5,18,71,211	4,66,92,821	51,78,390	8.8	11.5	2.9

Total Workers*	Absolute			Work Participation Rate		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	48,17,43,311	34,85,97,535	13,31,45,776	39.8	41.8	35.3
Males	33,18,65,930	22,67,63,068	10,51,02,862	53.3	53.0	53.8
Females	14,98,77,381	12,18,34,467	2,80,42,914	25.5	30.0	15.4
Main Workers	Absolute			% to Total Workers*		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	36,25,65,571	24,58,68,421	11,66,97,150	75.2	70.5	87.6
Males	27,32,09,976	17,80,95,330	9,51,14,646	82.3	78.5	90.5
Females	8,93,55,595	6,77,73,091	2,15,82,504	59.6	55.6	77.0
Marginal Workers*	Absolute			% to Total Workers		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	11,92,96,891	10,28,48,265	1,64,48,626	24.8	29.5	12.4
Males	5,87,16,571	4,87,28,355	99,88,216	17.7	21.5	9.5
Females	6,05,80,320	5,41,19,910	64,60,410	40.4	44.4	23.0
Marginal Workers* (3–6 months)	Absolute			% to Total Marginal Workers		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	9,70,44,107	8,30,31,670	1,40,12,437	81.3	80.7	85.2
Males	4,85,79,387	4,00,34,385	85,45,002	82.7	82.2	85.6
Females	4,84,64,720	4,29,97,285	54,67,435	80.0	79.4	84.6
Marginal Workers* (Less than 3 months)	Absolute			% to Total Marginal Workers		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	2,22,52,784	1,98,16,595	24,36,189	18.7	19.3	14.8
Males	1,01,37,184	86,93,970	14,43,214	17.3	17.8	14.4
Females	1,21,15,600	1,11,22,625	9,92,975	20.0	20.6	15.4
Total Cultivators*	Absolute			% to Total Workers		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	11,86,92,640	11,49,68,498	37,24,142	24.6	33.0	2.8
Males	8,27,06,724	7,98,39,098	28,67,626	24.9	35.2	2.7
Females	3,59,85,916	3,51,29,400	8,56,516	24.0	28.8	3.1
Total Agricultural Labourers*	Absolute			% to Total Workers		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	14,43,29,833	13,69,94,451	73,35,382	30.0	39.3	5.5
Males	8,27,40,351	7,79,30,236	48,10,115	24.9	34.4	4.6
Females	6,15,89,482	5,90,64,215	25,25,267	41.1	48.5	9.0
Total Household Industry Workers*	Absolute			% to Total Workers		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	1,83,36,307	1,19,47,619	63,88,688	3.8	3.4	4.8
Males	97,75,635	58,63,891	39,11,744	2.9	2.6	3.7
Females	85,60,672	60,83,728	24,76,944	5.7	5.0	8.8
Total Other Workers*	Absolute			% to Total Workers		
	Total	Rural	Urban	Total	Rural	Urban
Persons	20,03,84,531	8,46,86,967	11,56,97,564	41.6	24.3	86.9
Males	15,66,43,220	6,31,29,843	9,35,13,377	47.2	27.8	89.0
Females	4,37,41,311	2,15,57,124	2,21,84,187	29.2	17.7	79.1

* subject to revision.

Our useful Competitive Books

Lucent's
Objective
General Knowledge

Lucent's
General English
For Competitive Exam

Lucent's
General Science
(English Edition)

Lucent's
Verbal Reasoning
(English Edition)

Lucent's
Computer

Lucent's
Complete
Mathematics
(English Edition)

Lucent's
SSC
Higher Mathematics
(English Edition)

Lucent's
Probable
Synonyms
Antonyms

Lucent's
Quantitative
Aptitude
For CAT/XAT
(English Edition)

Lucent's
Language of
Chemistry
(English Edition)

Lucent's
Marketing
Economics & Banking
(English Edition)

Lucent's
General Study
Ecology & Environment
UPSC, CDS, NDA, IFS, IES, State Public Service Comm., SSC, UGC/NET JRF, SLET, CTET, STET and other Competitive Exams.